MIPS32® 1004K™ CPU Family Software User's Manual

Document Number: MD00622
Revision 01.21
December 15, 2011

Unpublished rights (if any) reserved under the copyright laws of the United States of America and other countries.

This document contains information that is proprietary to MIPS Tech, LLC, a Wave Computing company (“MIPS”) and MIPS’ affiliates as applicable. Any copying, reproducing, modifying or use of this information (in whole or in part) that is not expressly permitted in writing by MIPS or MIPS’ affiliates as applicable or an authorized third party is strictly prohibited. At a minimum, this information is protected under unfair competition and copyright laws. Violations thereof may result in criminal penalties and fines. Any document provided in source format (i.e., in a modifiable form such as in FrameMaker or Microsoft Word format) is subject to use and distribution restrictions that are independent of and supplemental to any and all confidentiality restrictions. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES MAY A DOCUMENT PROVIDED IN SOURCE FORMAT BE DISTRIBUTED TO A THIRD PARTY IN SOURCE FORMAT WITHOUT THE EXPRESS WRITTEN PERMISSION OF MIPS (AND MIPS’ AFFILIATES AS APPLICABLE) reserve the right to change the information contained in this document to improve function, design or otherwise.

MIPS and MIPS’ affiliates do not assume any liability arising out of the application or use of this information, or of any error or omission in such information. Any warranties, whether express, statutory, implied or otherwise, including but not limited to the implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose, are excluded. Except as expressly provided in any written license agreement from MIPS or an authorized third party, the furnishing of this document does not give recipient any license to any intellectual property rights, including any patent rights, that cover the information in this document.

The information contained in this document shall not be exported, reexported, transferred, or released, directly or indirectly, in violation of the law of any country or international law, regulation, treaty, Executive Order, statute, amendments or supplements thereto. Should a conflict arise regarding the export, reexport, transfer, or release of the information contained in this document, the laws of the United States of America shall be the governing law.

The information contained in this document constitutes one or more of the following: commercial computer software, commercial computer software documentation or other commercial items. If the user of this information, or any related documentation of any kind, including related technical data or manuals, is an agency, department, or other entity of the United States government ("Government"), the use, duplication, reproduction, release, modification, disclosure, or transfer of this information, or any related documentation of any kind, is restricted in accordance with Federal Acquisition Regulation 12.212 for civilian agencies and Defense Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement 227.7202 for military agencies. The use of this information by the Government is further restricted in accordance with the terms of the license agreement(s) and/or applicable contract terms and conditions covering this information from MIPS Technologies or an authorized third party.

MIPS, MIPS I, MIPS II, MIPS III, MIPS IV, MIPS V, MIPSr3, MIPS32, MIPS64, microMIPS32, microMIPS64, MIPS-3D, MIPS16, MIPS16e, MIPS-Based, MIPSsim, MIPSpro, MIPS-VERIFIED, Aptiv logo, microAptiv logo, interAptiv logo, microMIPS logo, MIPS Technologies logo, MIPS-VERIFIED logo, proAptiv logo, 4K, 4Kc, 4Km, 4Kp, 4KE, 4KEc, 4KEm, 4KEp, 4KS, 4KSc, 4KSd, M4K, M14K, 5K, 5Kc, 5Kf, 24K, 24Kc, 24Kf, 24KE, 24KEc, 24KEf, 34K, 34Kc, 34Kf, 74K, 74Kc, 74Kf, 1004K, 1004Kc, 1004Kf, 1074K, 1074Kc, 1074Kf, R3000, R4000, R5000, Aptiv, ASMACRO, Atlas, "At the core of the user experience.", BusBridge, Bus Navigator, CLAM, CorExtend, CoreFPGA, CoreLV, EC, FPGA View, FS2, FS2 FIRST SILICON SOLUTIONS logo, FS2 NAVIGATOR, HyperDebug, HyperJTAG, IASim, iFlowtrace, interAptiv, JALGO, Logic Navigator, Malta, MDMX, MED, MGB, microAptiv, microMIPS, Navigator, OCI, PDtrace, the Pipeline, proAptiv, Pro Series, SEAD-3, SmartMIPS, SOC-it, and YAMON are trademarks or registered trademarks of MIPS and MIPS’ affiliates as applicable in the United States and other countries.

All other trademarks referred to herein are the property of their respective owners.

Table of Contents

Chapter 1: Introduction to the MIPS32® 1004K™ CPU Family 25
1.1: 1004K™ CPU Features 26
1.2: 1004K™ CPU Block Diagram 29
1.2.1: Logic Blocks 30
1.2.1.1: Execution Unit 31
1.2.1.2: Multiply/Divide Unit (MDU) 31
1.2.1.3: System Control Coprocessor (CP0) 31
1.2.1.4: Memory Management Unit (MMU) 32
1.2.1.5: Fetch Unit 32
1.2.1.6: Thread Schedule Unit (TSU) 33
1.2.1.7: Instruction Cache 33
1.2.1.8: Load/Store Unit 33
1.2.1.9: Data Cache 34
1.2.1.10: Bus Interface Unit (BIU) 34
1.2.1.11: Power Management 34
1.2.1.12: MIPS16e™ Application Specific Extension 34
1.2.1.13: EJTAG Debug 35
1.2.1.14: CorExtend® User Defined Instructions 35

Chapter 2: Pipeline of the 1004K™ CPU 37
2.1: Pipeline Stages 37
2.1.1: IF Stage: Instruction Fetch First 38
2.1.2: IS - Instruction Fetch Second 39
2.1.3: IR - Instruction Recode (MIPS16e only) 39
2.1.4: IK - Instruction Kill (MIPS16e only) 39
2.1.5: IT - Instruction Fetch Third 39
2.1.6: RF - Register File Access 39
2.1.7: AG - Address Generation 39
2.1.8: EX - Execute/Memory Access 39
2.1.9: MS - Memory Access Second 40
2.1.10: ER- Exception Resolution 40
2.1.11: WB - Writeback 40
2.2: Instruction Fetch 40
2.2.1: Branch History Table 45
2.2.1.1: Branch Target Calculation 45
2.2.2: Return Prediction Stack 46
2.2.3: ITLB 46
2.2.4: Cache Miss Timing 47
2.2.5: MIPS16e™ 47
2.3: Load Store Unit 48
2.3.1: DTLB 49
2.3.2: Data Cache Access 50
2.3.3: Outstanding misses 51
2.3.4: Uncached Accesses 51
2.4: MDU Pipeline 51
2.4.1: High-Performance MDU 52
2.4.2: DSP ASE Instruction Latencies 54

2.4.3: High-performance MDU Pipeline Stages 56
2.4.4: High-performance MDU Divide Operations 57
2.4.5: Low-Area MDU 58
2.5: Skewed ALU 58
2.6: Interlock Handling 59
2.7: Instruction Interlocks 60
2.8: Hazards 61
2.8.1: Types of Hazards 62
2.8.1.1: Execution Hazards 62
2.8.1.2: Instruction Hazards 63
2.8.2: Instruction Listing 64
2.8.2.1: Instruction Encoding 64
2.8.3: Eliminating Hazards 65
2.9: Instruction Rollback And Its Implications 65

Chapter 3: Floating-Point Unit of the 1004Kf™ CPU 67
3.1: Features Overview 67
3.1.1: IEEE Standard 754 68
3.2: Enabling the Floating-Point Coprocessor 68
3.3: Data Formats 69
3.3.1: Floating-Point Formats 69
3.3.1.1: Normalized and Denormalized Numbers 71
3.3.1.2: Reserved Operand Values—Infinity and NaN 71
3.3.1.3: Infinity and Beyond 71
3.3.1.4: Signalling Non-Number (SNaN) 71
3.3.1.5: Quiet Non-Number (QNaN) 72
3.3.2: Fixed-Point Formats 72
3.4: Floating-Point General Registers 73
3.4.1: FPRs and Formatted Operand Layout 73
3.4.2: Formats of Values Used in FP Registers 73
3.4.3: Binary Data Transfers (32-Bit and 64-Bit) 75
3.5: Floating-Point Control Registers 76
3.5.1: Floating-Point Implementation Register (FIR, CP1 Control Register 0) 77
3.5.2: Floating-Point Condition Codes Register (FCCR, CP1 Control Register 25) 79
3.5.3: Floating-Point Exceptions Register (FEXR, CP1 Control Register 26) 79
3.5.4: Floating-Point Enables Register (FENR, CP1 Control Register 28) 80
3.5.5: Floating-Point Control and Status Register (FCSR, CP1 Control Register 31) 81
3.5.6: Operation of the FS/FO/FN Bits 83
3.5.6.1: Flush To Zero Bit 84
3.5.6.2: Flush Override Bit 84
3.5.6.3: Flush to Nearest 85
3.5.6.4: Recommended FS/FO/FN Settings 85
3.5.7: FCSR Cause Bit Update Flow 86
3.5.7.1: Exceptions Triggered by CTC1 86
3.5.7.2: Generic Flow 86
3.5.7.3: Multiply-Add Flow 86
3.5.7.4: Cause Update Flow for Input Operands 87
3.5.7.5: Cause Update Flow for Unimplemented Operations 87
3.6: Instruction Overview 87
3.6.1: Data Transfer Instructions 87
3.6.1.1: Data Alignment in Loads, Stores, and Moves 88
3.6.1.2: Addressing Used in Data Transfer Instructions 88
3.6.2: Arithmetic Instructions 89

3.6.3: Conversion Instructions ... 90
3.6.4: Formatted Operand-Value Move Instructions ... 91
3.6.5: Conditional Branch Instructions ... 91
3.6.6: Miscellaneous Instructions ... 92
3.7: Exceptions ... 92
3.7.1: Precise Exception Mode ... 93
3.7.2: Exception Conditions ... 93
3.7.2.1: Invalid Operation Exception ... 94
3.7.2.2: Division By Zero Exception ... 95
3.7.2.3: Underflow Exception ... 95
3.7.2.4: Overflow Exception ... 95
3.7.2.5: Inexact Exception ... 95
3.7.2.6: Unimplemented Operation Exception ... 95
3.8: Pipeline and Performance ... 96
3.8.1: Pipeline Overview ... 96
3.8.1.1: FR Stage - Decode, Register Read, and Unpack ... 96
3.8.1.2: M1 Stage - Multiply Tree ... 97
3.8.1.3: M2 Stage - Multiply Complete ... 97
3.8.1.4: A1 Stage - Addition First Step ... 97
3.8.1.5: A2 Stage - Addition Second and Final Step ... 97
3.8.1.6: FP Stage - Result Pack ... 97
3.8.1.7: FW Stage - Register Write ... 97
3.8.2: Bypassing ... 97
3.8.3: Repeat Rate and Latency ... 98

Chapter 4: The MIPS® DSP Application-Specific Extension ... 99
4.1: Additional Register State for the DSP ASE ... 99
4.1.1: Additional HI-LO Registers ... 99
4.1.2: DSP Control Register ... 99
4.2: Software Detection of the DSP ASE ... 101

Chapter 5: Memory Management of the 1004K™ CPU ... 103
5.1: Introduction ... 103
5.2: Modes of Operation ... 105
5.2.1: Virtual Memory Segments ... 105
5.2.1.1: Unmapped Segments ... 106
5.2.1.2: Mapped Segments ... 107
5.2.2: User Mode ... 107
5.2.3: Supervisor Mode ... 108
5.2.4: Kernel Mode ... 110
5.2.4.1: Kernel Mode, User Space (kuseg) ... 112
5.2.4.2: Kernel Mode, Kernel Space 0 (kseg0) ... 112
5.2.4.3: Kernel Mode, Kernel Space 1 (kseg1) ... 112
5.2.4.4: Kernel Mode, Kernel/Supervisor Space 2 (ksseg/kseg2) ... 113
5.2.4.5: Kernel Mode, Kernel Space 3 (kseg3) ... 113
5.2.5: Debug Mode ... 113
5.2.5.1: Conditions and Behavior for Access to drseg, EJTAG Registers ... 114
5.2.5.2: Conditions and Behavior for Access to dmseg, EJTAG Memory ... 114
5.3: Translation Lookaside Buffer ... 115
5.3.1: Joint TLB ... 115
5.3.2: Instruction TLB ... 117
5.3.3: Data TLB ... 118
5.4: Virtual-to-Physical Address Translation ... 118

5.4.1: Hits, Misses, and Multiple Matches ... 120
5.4.2: Memory Space ... 121
5.4.2.1: Page Sizes ... 121
5.4.2.2: Replacement Algorithm ... 121
5.4.3: TLB Instructions ... 122
5.4.4: Shared TLB mode ... 123
5.5: Fixed Mapping MMU ... 123
5.6: System Control Coprocessor ... 126

Chapter 6: Exceptions and Interrupts in the 1004K™ CPU ... 127
6.1: Exception Conditions ... 127
6.2: Exception Priority ... 128
6.3: Interrupts ... 129
6.3.1: Interrupt Modes ... 130
6.3.1.1: Interrupt Compatibility Mode ... 131
6.3.1.2: Vectored Interrupt Mode ... 133
6.3.1.3: External Interrupt Controller Mode ... 135
6.3.2: Generation of Exception Vector Offsets for Vectored Interrupts ... 138
6.3.3: Global Interrupt Controller ... 139
6.4: GPR Shadow Registers ... 139
6.5: Exception Vector Locations ... 140
6.6: General Exception Processing ... 143
6.7: Debug Exception Processing ... 146
6.8: Exceptions ... 147
6.8.1: Reset Exception ... 147
6.8.2: Debug Single Step Exception ... 148
6.8.3: Debug Interrupt Exception ... 149
6.8.4: Non-Maskable Interrupt (NMI) Exception ... 149
6.8.5: Interrupt Exception ... 150
6.8.6: Debug Instruction Break Exception ... 150
6.8.7: Watch Exception — Instruction Fetch or Data Access ... 150
6.8.8: Address Error Exception — Instruction Fetch/Data Access ... 151
6.8.9: TLB Refill Exception — Instruction Fetch or Data Access ... 152
6.8.10: TLB Invalid Exception — Instruction Fetch or Data Access ... 152
6.8.11: Cache Error Exception ... 153
6.8.12: Bus Error Exception — Instruction Fetch or Data Access ... 154
6.8.13: Debug Software Breakpoint Exception ... 154
6.8.14: Execution Exception — System Call ... 155
6.8.15: Execution Exception — Breakpoint ... 155
6.8.16: Execution Exception — Reserved Instruction ... 155
6.8.17: Execution Exception — Coprocessor Unusable ... 156
6.8.18: Execution Exception — CorExtend block Unusable ... 156
6.8.19: Execution Exception — DSP ASE State Disabled ... 156
6.8.20: Execution Exception — Floating Point Exception ... 157
6.8.21: Execution Exception — Integer Overflow ... 157
6.8.22: Execution Exception — Trap ... 157
6.8.23: Execution Exception — C2E ... 158
6.8.24: Execution Exception — IS1 ... 158
6.8.25: Execution Exceptions — MT_ov, MT_under, MT_invalid, MT_yield_sched ... 158
6.8.26: Thread Exceptions — MT_gs, MT_gss ... 159
6.8.27: Debug Data Break Exception ... 159
6.8.28: TLB Modified Exception — Data Access ... 160
6.9: Exception Handling and Servicing Flowcharts ... 160

Chapter 7: CP0 Registers of the 1004K™ CPU 167
7.1: CP0 Register Summary 167
7.2: CP0 Register Descriptions 170
7.2.1: Index Register (CP0 Register 0, Select 0) 170
7.2.2: MVPControl Register (CP0 Register 0, Select 1) 171
7.2.3: MVPConf0-1 Registers (CP0 Register 0, Select 2-3) 173
7.2.4: Random Register (CP0 Register 1, Select 0) 174
7.2.5: VPEControl Register (CP0 Register 1, Select 1) 175
7.2.6: VPEConf0 Register(CP0 Register 1, Select 2) 176
7.2.7: VPEConf1 Register(CP0 Register 1, Select 3) 178
7.2.8: YQMask Register (CP0 Register 1, Select 4) 178
7.2.9: VPESchedule Register (CP0 Register 1, Select 5) 179
7.2.10: VPEScheFBack Register (CP0 Register 1, Select 6) 179
7.2.11: VPEOpt Register (CP0 Register 1, Select 7) 179
7.2.12: EntryLo0 and EntryLo1 Registers (CP0 Registers 2 and 3, Select 0) 180
7.2.13: TCStatus Register (CP0 Register 2, Select 1) 182
7.2.14: TCBind Register (CP0 Register 2, Select 2) 184
7.2.15: TCRestart Register (CP0 Register 2, Select 3) 184
7.2.15.1: Special Handling of TCRestart Register in Processors Implementing MIPS16e™ ASE 185
7.2.16: TCHalt Register (CP0 Register 2, Select 4) 185
7.2.17: TCContext Register (CP0 Register 2, Select 5) 186
7.2.18: TCSchedule Register (CP0 Register 2, Select 6) 186
7.2.19: TCScheFBack Register (CP0 Register 2, Select 7) 186
7.2.20: TCOpt Register (CP0 Register 3, Select 7) 186
7.2.21: Context Register (CP0 Register 4, Select 0) 187
7.2.22: UserLocal Register (CP0 Register 4, Select 2) 188
7.2.23: PageMask Register (CP0 Register 5, Select 0) 188
7.2.24: Wired Register (CP0 Register 6, Select 0) 189
7.2.25: SRSConf0 (CP0 Register 6, Select 1) 190
7.2.26: SRSConf1-4 (CP0 Register 6, Select 2-5) 191
7.2.27: HWREna Register (CP0 Register 7, Select 0) 191
7.2.28: BadVAddr Register (CP0 Register 8, Select 0) 192
7.2.29: Count Register (CP0 Register 9, Select 0) 193
7.2.30: EntryHi Register (CP0 Register 10, Select 0) 193
7.2.31: Compare Register (CP0 Register 11, Select 0) 194
7.2.32: Status Register (CP0 Register 12, Select 0) 195
7.2.32.1: Operating Modes 195
7.2.32.2: Coprocessor Accessibility 196
7.2.33: IntCtl Register (CP0 Register 12, Select 1) 200
7.2.34: SRSCtl Register (CP0 Register 12, Select 2) 202
7.2.35: SRSMap Register (CP0 Register 12, Select 3) 204
7.2.36: Cause Register (CP0 Register 13, Select 0) 205
7.2.37: Exception Program Counter (CP0 Register 14, Select 0) 209
7.2.38: Processor Identification (CP0 Register 15, Select 0) 210
7.2.39: EBase Register (CP0 Register 15, Select 1) 211
7.2.40: CDMMBase Register (CP0 Register 15, Select 2) 212
7.2.41: CMGCR Base Register (CP0 Register 15, Select 3) 213
7.2.42: Config Register (CP0 Register 16, Select 0) 214
7.2.43: Config1 Register (CP0 Register 16, Select 1) 216
7.2.44: Config2 Register (CP0 Register 16, Select 2) 219
7.2.45: Config3 Register (CP0 Register 16, Select 3) 221
7.2.46: Config7 Register (CP0 Register 16, Select 7) 222
7.2.47: LLAddr Register (CP0 Register 17, Select 0) 225

7.2.48: WatchLo Register (CP0 Register 18, Select 0-3)........ 225
7.2.49: WatchHi Register (CP0 Register 19, Select 0-3) 226
7.2.50: Debug Register (CP0 Register 23, Select 0) 227
7.2.51: Trace Control Register (CP0 Register 23, Select 1) 231
7.2.52: Trace Control2 Register (CP0 Register 23, Select 2) 232
7.2.53: User Trace Data1 Register (CP0 Register 23, Select 3) and User Trace Data2 Register (CP0 Register 24, Select 3)........ 234
7.2.54: TraceIBPC Register (CP0 Register 23, Select 4) 235
7.2.55: TraceDBPC Register (CP0 Register 23, Select 5)........ 236
7.2.56: Debug Exception Program Counter Register (CP0 Register 24, Select 0) 237
7.2.57: Trace Control3 Register (CP0 Register 24, Select 2) 238
7.2.58: Performance Counter Register (CP0 Register 25, select 0-3) 239
7.2.59: ErrCtl Register (CP0 Register 26, Select 0)........ 250
7.2.60: CacheErr Register (CP0 Register 27, Select 0)........ 252
7.2.61: ITagLo Register (CP0 Register 28, Select 0)........ 257
7.2.62: DTagLo Register (CP0 Register 28, Select 2 258
7.2.63: L23TagLo Register (CP0 Register 28, Select 4)........ 260
7.2.64: IDataLo Register (CP0 Register 28, Select 1) 260
7.2.65: DDataLo Register (CP0 Register 28, Select 3)........ 260
7.2.66: L23DataLo Register (CP0 Register 28, Select 5) 261
7.2.67: IDataHi Register (CP0 Register 29, Select 1) 261
7.2.68: L23DataHi Register (CP0 Register 29, Select 5)........ 262
7.2.69: ErrorEPC (CP0 Register 30, Select 0) 262
7.2.70: DeSave Register (CP0 Register 31, Select 0) 263

Chapter 8: Hardware and Software Initialization of the 1004K™ CPU........ 265
8.1: Hardware-Initialized Processor State 265
8.1.1: Coprocessor 0 State 265
8.1.2: TLB Initialization........ 267
8.1.3: Bus State Machines 267
8.1.4: Static Configuration Inputs 267
8.1.5: Fetch Address 267
8.2: Software Initialized Processor State........ 267
8.2.1: Register File........ 267
8.2.2: TLB........ 267
8.2.3: Caches 267
8.2.4: Coprocessor 0 State 268
8.2.5: Multi-threading Initialization........ 268
8.2.6: Multi-CPU Initialization 268

Chapter 9: Caches 269
9.1: Instruction Cache........ 269
9.1.1: I-Cache Virtual Aliasing........ 270
9.1.2: Precode Bits........ 270
9.1.3: Parity 270
9.2: Data Cache........ 270
9.2.1: D-Cache Virtual Aliasing 271
9.2.2: Parity 272
9.2.3: Coherence State Encoding 272
9.3: Write Back Buffer........ 272
9.3.1: Uncached Accelerated Stores........ 273
9.4: Cache Protocols 274
9.4.1: Cache Organization 274

9.4.2: Cacheability Attributes 274
9.4.3: Replacement Policy 275
9.4.4: Line Locking 276
9.5: CACHE Instruction 277
9.6: Software Cache Testing 277
9.6.1: I-Cache and Primary D-cache Tag Arrays 277
9.6.2: Duplicate D-cache Tag Array 278
9.6.3: I-Cache Data Array 278
9.6.4: I-Cache WS Array 278
9.6.5: D-Cache Data Array 278
9.6.6: D-cache WS Array 278
9.7: Memory Coherence Issues 279

Chapter 10: Power Management in the 1004K™ CPU 281
10.1: Register-Controlled Power Management 281
10.2: Instruction-Controlled Power Management 282
10.2.1: CPUWait IE/IXMT Ignore 282

Chapter 11: EJTAG Debug Support in the 1004K™ CPU 285
11.1: Debug Control Register 286
11.1.1: DebugVectorAddr Register 290
11.2: Hardware Breakpoints 291
11.2.1: Features of Instruction Breakpoint 291
11.2.2: Features of Data Breakpoint 291
11.2.3: Instruction Breakpoint Registers Overview 292
11.2.4: Data Breakpoint Registers Overview 292
11.2.5: Conditions for Matching Breakpoints 293
11.2.5.1: Conditions for Matching Instruction Breakpoints 293
11.2.5.2: Conditions for Matching Data Breakpoints 293
11.2.6: Debug Exceptions from Breakpoints 294
11.2.6.1: Debug Exception by Instruction Breakpoint 294
11.2.6.2: Debug Exception by Data Breakpoint 295
11.2.7: Breakpoint used as Triggerpoint 296
11.2.8: Instruction Breakpoint Registers 297
11.2.8.1: Instruction Breakpoint Status (IBS) Register 297
11.2.8.2: Instruction Breakpoint Address n (IBAn) Register 298
11.2.8.3: Instruction Breakpoint Address Mask n (IBMn) Register 298
11.2.8.4: Instruction Breakpoint ASID n (IBASIDn) Register 299
11.2.8.5: Instruction Breakpoint Control n (IBCn) Register 299
11.2.9: Data Breakpoint Registers 300
11.2.9.1: Data Breakpoint Status (DBS) Register 301
11.2.9.2: Data Breakpoint Address n (DBAn) Register 302
11.2.9.3: Data Breakpoint Address Mask n (DBMn) Register 302
11.2.9.4: Data Breakpoint ASID n (DBASIDn) Register 302
11.2.9.5: Data Breakpoint Control n (DBCn) Register 303
11.2.9.6: Data Breakpoint Value n (DBVn) Register 305
11.2.9.7: Data Breakpoint Value High n (DBVHn) Register 305
11.3: Test Access Port (TAP) 305
11.3.1: EJTAG Internal and External Interfaces 306
11.3.2: Test Access Port Operation 306
11.3.2.1: Test-Logic-Reset State 308
11.3.2.2: Run-Test/Idle State 308
11.3.2.3: Select_DR_Scan State 308

11.3.2.4: Select_IR_Scan State 308
11.3.2.5: Capture_DR State 308
11.3.2.6: Shift_DR State 308
11.3.2.7: Exit1_DR State 308
11.3.2.8: Pause_DR State 308
11.3.2.9: Exit2_DR State 309
11.3.2.10: Update_DR State 309
11.3.2.11: Capture_IR State 309
11.3.2.12: Shift_IR State 309
11.3.2.13: Exit1_IR State 309
11.3.2.14: Pause_IR State 309
11.3.2.15: Exit2_IR State 309
11.3.2.16: Update_IR State 310
11.3.3: Test Access Port (TAP) Instructions 310
11.3.3.1: BYPASS Instruction 310
11.3.3.2: IDCODE Instruction 311
11.3.3.3: IMPCODE Instruction 311
11.3.3.4: ADDRESS Instruction 311
11.3.3.5: DATA Instruction 311
11.3.3.6: CONTROL Instruction 311
11.3.3.7: ALL Instruction 311
11.3.3.8: EJTAGBOOT Instruction 311
11.3.3.9: NORMALBOOT Instruction 312
11.3.3.10: FASTDATA Instruction 312
11.3.3.11: TCBCONTROLA Instruction 312
11.3.3.12: TCBCONTROLB Instruction 312
11.3.3.13: TCBCONTROLC Instruction 312
11.3.3.14: TCBDATA Instruction 312
11.3.3.15: PCSAMPLE Instruction 313
11.3.3.16: TCBCONTROLD Instruction 313
11.3.3.17: TCBCONTROLE Instruction 313
11.3.3.18: FDC Instruction 313
11.4: EJTAG TAP Registers 313
11.4.1: Instruction Register 313
11.4.2: Data Registers Overview 313
11.4.2.1: Bypass Register 314
11.4.2.2: Device Identification (ID) Register 314
11.4.2.3: Implementation Register 314
11.4.2.4: EJTAG Control Register 315
11.4.3: Processor Access Address Register 321
11.4.3.1: Processor Access Data Register 321
11.4.4: Fastdata Register (TAP Instruction FASTDATA) 321
11.5: TAP Processor Accesses 323
11.5.1: Fetch/Load and Store From/To the EJTAG Probe Through dmseg 323
11.6: PC Sampling 325
11.6.1: PC Sampling in Wait State 325
11.7: Fast Debug Channel 325
11.7.1: Common Device Memory Map 326
11.7.2: Fast Debug Channel Interrupt 326
11.7.3: 1004K™CPU FDC Buffers 327
11.7.4: Sleep mode 328
11.7.5: FDC TAP Register 328
11.7.6: Fast Debug Channel Registers 329

11.7.6.1: FDC Access Control and Status (FDACSR) Register (Offset 0x0)................................... 329
11.7.6.2: FDC Configuration (FDCFG) Register (Offset 0x8).. 330
11.7.6.3: FDC Status (FDSTAT) Register (Offset 0x10) 331
11.7.6.4: FDC Receive (FDRX) Register (Offset 0x18)... 332
11.7.6.5: FDC Transmit n (FDTXn) Registers (Offset 0x20 + 0x8*n) 332
11.8: MIPS® Trace 333
11.8.1: Processor Modes 334
11.8.2: Software Versus Hardware Control.. 334
11.8.3: Trace Information 334
11.8.4: Load/Store Address and Data Trace Information... 335
11.8.5: Programmable Processor Trace Mode Options... 336
11.8.6: Programmable Trace Information Options 336
11.8.6.1: User Data Trace 336
11.8.7: Enable Trace to Probe On-chip Memory... 336
11.8.8: TCB Trigger.. 337
11.8.9: Cycle-by-Cycle Information 337
11.8.10: Instruction and Data Cache Miss Tracing 337
11.8.11: Coherence Manager Trace Correlation.. 338
11.8.12: Performance Counter Tracing.. 338
11.8.13: Filtered Data Trace Mode 339
11.8.14: PC tracing off 339
11.8.15: TMOAS Handling 340
11.8.16: Controling Trace in a Multi-CPU CPS 342
11.8.17: Memory-mapped Access to PDtrace Controls and On-Chip Trace Buffer................................ 343
11.8.18: Trace Message Format 345
11.8.19: Trace Word Format.. 345
11.9: PDtrace™ Registers (Software Control).. 346
11.10: Trace Control Block (TCB) Registers (Hardware Control)... 346
11.10.1: TCBCONTROLA Register.. 347
11.10.2: TCBCONTROLB Register.. 350
11.10.3: TCBDATA Register 354
11.10.4: TCBCONTROLC Register 355
11.10.5: TCBCONTROLD Register 356
11.10.6: TCBCONTROLE Register... 357
11.10.7: TCBCONFIG Register (Reg 0)... 358
11.10.8: TCBTW Register (Reg 4) 360
11.10.9: TCBRDP Register (Reg 5) 360
11.10.10: TCBWRP Register (Reg 6) 361
11.10.11: TCBSTP Register (Reg 7)... 361
11.10.12: TCBTRIGx Register (Reg 16-23) 362
11.10.13: Register Reset State 364
11.11: Enabling MIPS Trace.. 365
11.11.1: Trace Trigger from EJTAG Hardware Instruction/Data Breakpoints.. 365
11.11.2: Turning On PDtrace™ Trace 365
11.11.3: Turning Off PDtrace™ Trace 367
11.11.4: TCB Trace Enabling.. 368
11.11.5: Tracing a Reset Exception... 368
11.12: TCB Trigger Logic 368
11.12.1: Trigger Units Overview... 368
11.12.2: Trigger Source Unit 369
11.12.3: Trigger Control Units.. 370
11.12.4: Trigger Action Unit 370
11.12.5: Simultaneous Triggers 370

11.12.5.1: Prioritized Trigger Actions ... 370
11.12.5.2: OR’ed Trigger Actions ... 371
11.13: MIPS Trace Cycle-by-Cycle Behavior ... 371
11.13.1: FIFO Logic in PDtrace and TCB Modules ... 371
11.13.2: Handling of FIFO Overflow in the PDtrace Module ... 371
11.13.3: Handling of FIFO Overflow in the TCB ... 372
11.13.3.1: Probe Width and Clock-ratio Settings ... 372
11.13.4: Adding Cycle Accurate Information to the Trace ... 373
11.14: TCB On-Chip Trace Memory ... 373
11.14.1: On-Chip Trace Memory Size ... 373
11.14.2: Trace-From Mode ... 373
11.14.3: Trace-To Mode ... 373

Chapter 12: Inter-Thread Communication Unit of the 1004K™ CPU ... 375
12.1: Features Overview ... 375
12.2: ITC Storage ... 375
12.3: ITC Views ... 376
12.3.1: Bypass View ... 377
12.3.2: Control View ... 377
12.3.3: Empty/Full Synchronized View ... 377
12.3.4: Empty/Full Try View ... 377
12.3.5: P/V Synchronized View ... 377
12.3.6: P/V Try View ... 378
12.3.7: Reserved Views ... 378
12.4: ITC Address Space ... 378

Chapter 13: Policy Manager in the 1004K™ CPU ... 381
13.1: Thread Scheduling Unit ... 381
13.2: Policy Managers ... 382
13.2.1: Basic Round-Robin Policy Manager ... 382
13.2.2: Weighted Round-Robin Policy Manager (WRR) ... 382
13.2.3: Enhanced Weighted Round-Robin Policy Manager (WRR2) ... 383
13.2.3.1: Throttle Functionality and Operation ... 383
13.2.4: TCSchedule Register ... 383
13.2.5: TCScheFBack Register ... 385
13.2.5.1: VPESchedule Register ... 385
13.2.6: VPEScheFBack Register ... 385
13.2.7: Group Rotation Schedule ... 386

Chapter 14: Instruction Set Overview ... 389
14.1: CPU Instruction Formats ... 389
14.2: Load and Store Instructions ... 390
14.2.1: Scheduling a Load Delay Slot ... 390
14.2.2: Defining Access Types ... 390
14.3: Computational Instructions ... 391
14.3.1: Cycle Timing for Multiply and Divide Instructions ... 392
14.4: Jump and Branch Instructions ... 392
14.4.1: Overview of Jump Instructions ... 392
14.4.2: Overview of Branch Instructions ... 392
14.5: Control Instructions ... 393
14.6: Coprocessor Instructions ... 393

Chapter 15: 1004K™ Processor CPU Instructions 395
15.1: Understanding the Instruction Descriptions 395
15.2: 1004K™ Opcode Map 395
15.3: Floating Point Unit Instruction Format Encodings 402
15.4: MIPS32® Instruction Set for the 1004K™ CPU 403
CACHE 424
LL 430
PAUSE 431
PREF 433
SC 436
SYNC 438
WAIT 442

Chapter 16: MIPS16e™ Application-Specific Extension to the MIPS32® Instruction Set 443
16.1: Instruction Bit Encoding 443
16.2: Instruction Listing 446

Appendix A: References 449

Appendix B: Revision History 451

List of Figures

Figure 1.1: 1004K™ CPU Block Diagram 30
Figure 1.2: Address Translation During a Cache Access 32
Figure 2.1: 1004K™ CPU Pipeline Stages 38
Figure 2.2: IFU Block Diagram 42
Figure 2.3: Timing of 32-bit Mode Sequential Fetches 43
Figure 2.4: Timing of 32-bit Mode Branch Taken Path 43
Figure 2.5: Fetch Timing of 32-bit Mode Branch Mispredict 44
Figure 2.6: Execution Timing of 32-bit Mode Branch Mispredict (Single TC) 44
Figure 2.7: Execution Timing of 32-bit Mode Branch Mispredict (Multiple TCs) 45
Figure 2.8: Timing of an ITLB Miss 47
Figure 2.9: Timing of a Cache Miss 47
Figure 2.10: LSU Pipeline 49
Figure 2.11: DTLB Miss Timing 50
Figure 2.12: Cache Miss Timing 51
Figure 2.13: Multiply Pipeline 56
Figure 2.14: Multiply With Dependency From ALU 56
Figure 2.15: Multiply With Dependency From Load Hit 56
Figure 2.16: Multiply With Dependency From Load Miss 57
Figure 2.17: subtractMUL Bypassing Result to Integer Instructions 57
Figure 2.18: MDU Pipeline Flow During a 8-bit Divide (DIV) Operation 58
Figure 2.19: MDU Pipeline Flow During a 16-bit Divide (DIV) Operation 58
Figure 2.20: MDU Pipeline Flow During a 24-bit Divide (DIV) Operation 58
Figure 2.21: MDU Pipeline Flow During a 32-bit Divide (DIV) Operation 58
Figure 2.22: Load Data Bypass 59
Figure 2.23: ALU Data Bypass 59
Figure 3.1: FPU Block Diagram 68
Figure 3.2: Single-Precision Floating-Point Format (S) 70
Figure 3.3: Double-Precision Floating-Point Format (D) 70
Figure 3.4: Word Fixed-Point Format (W) 72
Figure 3.5: Longword Fixed-Point Format (L) 73
Figure 3.6: Single Floating-Point or Word Fixed-Point Operand in an FPR 73
Figure 3.7: Double Floating-Point or Longword Fixed-Point Operand in an FPR 73
Figure 3.8: Effect of FPU Operations on the Format of Values Held in FPRs 75
Figure 3.9: FPU Word Load and Move-to Operations 76
Figure 3.10: FPU Doubleword Load and Move-to Operations 76
Figure 3.11: FIR Format 78
Figure 3.12: FCCR Format 79
Figure 3.13: FEXR Format 79
Figure 3.14: FENR Format 80
Figure 3.15: FCSR Format 81
Figure 3.16: FS/FO/FN Bits Influence on Multiply and Addition Results 84
Figure 3.17: Flushing to Nearest when Rounding Mode is Round to Nearest 85
Figure 3.18: FPU Pipeline 96
Figure 3.19: Arithmetic Pipeline Bypass Paths 98
Figure 4.1: MIPS32® DSP ASE Control Register (DSPControl) Format 99
Figure 5.1: Address Translation During a Cache Access with TLB MMU 104
Figure 5.2: Address Translation During a Cache Access with FM MMU 104

Figure 5.3: 1004K™ CPU Virtual Memory Map 106
Figure 5.4: User Mode Virtual Address Space 107
Figure 5.5: Supervisor Mode Virtual Address Space 109
Figure 5.6: Kernel Mode Virtual Address Space 111
Figure 5.7: Debug Mode Virtual Address Space 113
Figure 5.8: JTLB Entry (Tag and Data) 115
Figure 5.9: Overview of a Virtual-to-Physical Address Translation 119
Figure 5.10: 32-bit Virtual Address Translation 120
Figure 5.11: TLB Address Translation Flow in the 1004K™ CPU 122
Figure 5.12: FM Memory Map (ERL=0) in the 1004K™ CPU 125
Figure 5.13: FM Memory Map (ERL=1) in the 1004K™ CPU 126
Figure 6.1: Interrupt Generation for Vectored Interrupt Mode 134
Figure 6.2: Interrupt Generation for External Interrupt Controller Interrupt Mode 137
Figure 6.3: General Exception Handler (HW) 161
Figure 6.4: General Exception Servicing Guidelines (SW) 162
Figure 6.5: TLB Miss Exception Handler (HW) 163
Figure 6.6: TLB Exception Servicing Guidelines (SW) 164
Figure 6.7: Reset and NMI Exception Handling and Servicing Guidelines 165
Figure 7.1: Index Register Format 171
Figure 7.2: MVPControl Register Format 171
Figure 7.3: MVPConf0 Register Format 173
Figure 7.4: MVPConf1 Register Format 174
Figure 7.5: Random Register Format 175
Figure 7.6: VPEControl Register Format 175
Figure 7.7: VPEConf0 Register Format 176
Figure 7.8: VPEConf1 Register Format 178
Figure 7.9: YQMask Register Format 179
Figure 7.10: VPEOpt Register Format 179
Figure 7.11: EntryLo0, EntryLo1 Register Format 181
Figure 7.12: TCStatus Register Format 182
Figure 7.13: TCBind Register Format 184
Figure 7.14: TCRestart Register Format 184
Figure 7.15: TCHalt Register Format 185
Figure 7.16: TCContext Register Format 186
Figure 7.17: TCOpt Register Format 187
Figure 7.18: Context Register Format 187
Figure 7.19: UserLocal Register Format 188
Figure 7.20: PageMask Register Format 189
Figure 7.21: Wired and Random Entries in the TLB 190
Figure 7.22: Wired Register Format 190
Figure 7.23: SRSConf0 Register Format 190
Figure 7.24: HWREna Register Format 191
Figure 7.25: BadVAddr Register Format 193
Figure 7.26: Count Register Format 193
Figure 7.27: EntryHi Register Format 194
Figure 7.28: Compare Register Format 195
Figure 7.29: Status Register Format 196
Figure 7.30: IntCtl Register Format 201
Figure 7.31: SRSCtl Register Format 202
Figure 7.32: SRSMap Register Format 205
Figure 7.33: Cause Register Format 205
Figure 7.34: EPC Register Format 210
Figure 7.35: PRId Register Format 210

Figure 7.36: EBase Register Format ... 211
Figure 7.37: CDMMBase Register ... 212
Figure 7.38: CMGCRBase Register ... 213
Figure 7.39: Config Register Format — Select 0 ... 214
Figure 7.40: Config1 Register Format ... 216
Figure 7.41: Config2 Register Format ... 219
Figure 7.42: Config3 Register Format ... 221
Figure 7.43: Config7 Register Format ... 223
Figure 7.44: LLAddr Register Format ... 225
Figure 7.45: WatchLo Register Format ... 225
Figure 7.46: WatchHi Register Format ... 226
Figure 7.47: Debug Register Format ... 227
Figure 7.48: TraceControl Register Format ... 231
Figure 7.49: TraceControl2 Register Format ... 233
Figure 7.50: User Trace Data1/User Trace Data2 Register Format ... 235
Figure 7.51: TraceIBPC Register Format ... 235
Figure 7.52: TraceDBPC Register Format ... 236
Figure 7.53: DEPC Register Format ... 238
Figure 7.54: TraceControl3 Register Format ... 238
Figure 7.55: Performance Counter Control Register ... 240
Figure 7.56: Performance Counter Count Register ... 249
Figure 7.57: ErrCtl Register ... 250
Figure 7.58: CacheErr Register (Primary Caches) ... 252
Figure 7.59: CacheErr Register (Secondary Cache) ... 255
Figure 7.60: ITagLo Register Format ($ErrCtl_{WST}$=0, $ErrCtl_{SPR}$=0) ... 257
Figure 7.61: ITagLo Register Format ($ErrCtl_{WST}$=1, $ErrCtl_{SPR}$=0) ... 257
Figure 7.62: ITagLo Register Format ($ErrCtl_{WST}$=0, $ErrCtl_{SPR}$=1) ... 257
Figure 7.63: DTagLo Register Format ($ErrCtl_{WST}$=0, $ErrCtl_{SPR}$=0) ... 258
Figure 7.64: DTagLo Register Format ($ErrCtl_{WST}$=1, $ErrCtl_{SPR}$=0) ... 258
Figure 7.65: DTagLo Register Format ($ErrCtl_{WST}$=0, $ErrCtl_{SPR}$=1) ... 258
Figure 7.66: IDataLo Register Format ... 260
Figure 7.67: DDataLo Register Format ... 261
Figure 7.68: L23DataLo Register Format ... 261
Figure 7.69: IDataHi Register Format ... 262
Figure 7.70: L23DataHi Register Format ... 262
Figure 7.71: ErrorEPC Register Format ... 263
Figure 7.72: DeSave Register Format ... 263
Figure 9.1: Instruction Cache Organization ... 270
Figure 9.2: Data Cache Organization ... 271
Figure 11.1: DCR Register Format ... 286
Figure 11.2: DebugVectorAddr Register Format ... 290
Figure 11.3: IBS Register Format ... 297
Figure 11.4: IBAn Register Format ... 298
Figure 11.5: IBMn Register Format ... 298
Figure 11.6: IBASIDn Register Format ... 299
Figure 11.7: IBCn Register Format ... 300
Figure 11.8: DBS Register Format ... 301
Figure 11.9: DBAn Register Format ... 302
Figure 11.10: DBMn Register Format ... 302
Figure 11.11: DBASIDn Register Format ... 303
Figure 11.12: DBCn Register Format ... 303
Figure 11.13: DBVn Register Format ... 305
Figure 11.14: DBVHn Register Format ... 305

Figure 11.15: TAP Controller State Diagram ... 307
Figure 11.16: Concatenation of the EJTAG Address, Data and Control Registers... 311
Figure 11.17: TDI to TDO Path When in Shift-DR State and FASTDATA Instruction is Selected ... 312
Figure 11.18: Device Identification Register Format ... 314
Figure 11.19: Implementation Register Format ... 315
Figure 11.20: EJTAG Control Register Format ... 316
Figure 11.21: Endian Formats for the PAD Register... 321
Figure 11.22: Fastdata Register Format ... 322
Figure 11.23: TAP Register PCsample Format... 325
Figure 11.24: Fast Debug Channel Buffer Organization ... 327
Figure 11.25: FDC TAP Register Format... 328
Figure 11.26: FDC Access Control and Status Register... 329
Figure 11.27: FDC Configuration Register... 330
Figure 11.28: FDC Status Register ... 331
Figure 11.29: FDC Receive Register ... 332
Figure 11.30: FDC Transmit Register ... 332
Figure 11.31: MIPS® Trace Modules in the 1004K™ CPU ... 333
Figure 11.32: A TMOAS Trace Record ... 341
Figure 11.33: PD Trace Architecture... 343
Figure 11.34: TCBCONTROLA Register Format ... 347
Figure 11.35: TCBCONTROLB Register Format ... 350
Figure 11.36: TCBDATA Register Format ... 354
Figure 11.37: TCBCONTROLC Register Format ... 355
Figure 11.38: TCBCONTROLD Register Format ... 356
Figure 11.39: TCBCONTROLE Register Format ... 358
Figure 11.40: TCBCONFIG Register Format ... 359
Figure 11.41: TCBTW Register Format ... 360
Figure 11.42: TCBRDP Register Format ... 361
Figure 11.43: TCBWRP Register Format ... 361
Figure 11.44: TCBSTP Register Format ... 362
Figure 11.45: TCBTRIGx Register Format ... 362
Figure 11.46: TCB Trigger Processing Overview... 369
Figure 13.1: TSU Block Diagram ... 381
Figure 13.2: *TCSchedule* Register (CP0 Register2, Select 6) ... 383
Figure 13.3: TCScheFBack Register (CP0 Register2, Select 7) ... 385
Figure 13.4: VPESchedule Register (CP0 Register1, Select 5) Register ... 385
Figure 13.5: *VPEScheFBack* Register (CP0 Register1, Select 6) ... 386
Figure 14.1: Instruction Formats ... 390
Figure 15.1: Usage of Address Fields to Select Index and Way... 424

List of Tables

Table 2.1: Recode bandwidth ... 48
Table 2.2: MDU Comparison ... 52
Table 2.3: High-performance MDU Stalls ... 53
Table 2.4: Multiply Repeat Rates ... 53
Table 2.5: DSP Instruction Delays ... 54
Table 2.6: Multiply Repeat Rates ... 55
Table 2.7: Delays for Interesting Sequences with *DSPControl* Dependency ... 56
Table 2.8: Pipeline Interlocks ... 60
Table 2.9: Instruction Interlocks ... 61
Table 2.10: Execution Hazards ... 62
Table 2.11: Instruction Hazards ... 63
Table 2.12: Hazard Instruction Listing ... 64
Table 3.1: Parameters of Floating-Point Data Types ... 69
Table 3.2: Value of Single or Double Floating-Point Data Type Encoding ... 70
Table 3.3: Value Supplied When a New Quiet NaN is Created ... 72
Table 3.4: Coprocessor 1 Register Summary ... 77
Table 3.5: Read/Write Properties ... 77
Table 3.6: FIR Bit Field Descriptions ... 78
Table 3.7: FCCR Bit Field Descriptions ... 79
Table 3.8: FEXR Bit Field Descriptions ... 80
Table 3.9: FENR Bit Field Descriptions ... 80
Table 3.10: FCSR Bit Field Descriptions ... 81
Table 3.11: Cause, Enables, and Flags Definitions ... 82
Table 3.12: Rounding Mode Definitions ... 83
Table 3.13: Zero Flushing for Tiny Results ... 84
Table 3.14: Handling of Denormalized Operand Values and Tiny Results Based on FS Bit Setting ... 84
Table 3.15: Handling of Tiny Intermediate Result Based on the FO and FS Bit Settings ... 84
Table 3.16: Handling of Tiny Final Result Based on FN and FS Bit Settings ... 85
Table 3.17: Recommended FS/FO/FN Settings ... 85
Table 3.18: FPU Data Transfer Instructions ... 88
Table 3.19: FPU Loads and Stores ... 88
Table 3.20: FPU Move To and From Instructions ... 88
Table 3.21: FPU IEEE Arithmetic Operations ... 89
Table 3.22: FPU-Approximate Arithmetic Operations ... 89
Table 3.23: FPU Multiply-Accumulate Arithmetic Operations ... 90
Table 3.24: FPU Conversion Operations Using the FCSR Rounding Mode ... 90
Table 3.25: FPU Conversion Operations Using a Directed Rounding Mode ... 90
Table 3.26: FPU Formatted Operand Move Instruction ... 91
Table 3.27: FPU Conditional Move on True/False Instructions ... 91
Table 3.28: FPU Conditional Move on Zero/Non-Zero Instructions ... 91
Table 3.29: FPU Conditional Branch Instructions ... 92
Table 3.30: Deprecated FPU Conditional Branch Likely Instructions ... 92
Table 3.31: CPU Conditional Move on FPU True/False Instructions ... 92
Table 3.32: Result for Exceptions Not Trapped ... 94
Table 3.33: 1004Kf CPU FPU Latency and Repeat Rate ... 98
Table 4.1: MIPS® DSP ASE Control Register (DSPControl) Field Descriptions ... 99
Table 4.2: The Instructions that Set the ouflag bits in DSPControl ... 100

Table 5.1: User Mode Segments 108
Table 5.2: Supervisor Mode Segments 110
Table 5.3: Kernel Mode Segments 112
Table 5.4: Physical Address and Cache Attributes for dseg, dmseg, and drseg Address Spaces 114
Table 5.5: Accesses to drseg Address Range 114
Table 5.6: Accesses to dmseg Address Range 114
Table 5.7: TLB Tag Entry Fields 116
Table 5.8: TLB Data Entry Fields 116
Table 5.9: TLB Instructions 122
Table 5.10: Cache Coherency Attributes 123
Table 5.11: Cacheability of Segments with Fixed Mapping Translation 124
Table 6.1: Priority of Exceptions 128
Table 6.2: Interrupt Modes 130
Table 6.3: Relative Interrupt Priority for Vectored Interrupt Mode 133
Table 6.4: Exception Vector Offsets for Vectored Interrupts 138
Table 6.5: Exception Vector Base Addresses when SI_UseExceptionBase equals 0 141
Table 6.6: Exception Vector Base Addresses when SI_UseExceptionBase equals 1 141
Table 6.8: Exception Vectors 142
Table 6.7: Exception Vector Offsets 142
Table 6.9: Value Stored in EPC, ErrorEPC, or DEPC on an Exception 144
Table 6.10: Debug Exception Vector Addresses 147
Table 6.11: Register States an Interrupt Exception 150
Table 6.12: Register States on a Watch Exception 151
Table 6.13: CP0 Register States on an Address Exception Error 152
Table 6.14: CP0 Register States on a TLB Refill Exception 152
Table 6.15: CP0 Register States on a TLB Invalid Exception 153
Table 6.16: CP0 Register States on a Cache Error Exception 154
Table 6.17: Register States on a Coprocessor Unusable Exception 156
Table 6.18: Register States on a Floating Point Exception 157
Table 6.19: Thread exception codes in VPEControl[EXCPT] 159
Table 6.20: Register States on a TLB Modified Exception 160
Table 7.1: CP0 Registers 167
Table 7.2: CP0 Register Field Types 170
Table 7.3: Index Register Field Descriptions 171
Table 7.4: MVPControl Register Field Descriptions 171
Table 7.5: MVPConf0 Register Field Descriptions 173
Table 7.6: MVPConf1 Register Field Descriptions 174
Table 7.7: Random Register Field Descriptions 175
Table 7.8: VPEControl Register Field Descriptions 175
Table 7.9: VPEConf0 Register Field Descriptions 177
Table 7.10: VPEConf1 Register Field Descriptions 178
Table 7.11: YQMask Register Field Descriptions 179
Table 7.12: VPEOpt Register Field Descriptions 180
Table 7.13: EntryLo0, EntryLo1 Register Field Descriptions 181
Table 7.14: Cache Coherency Attributes 181
Table 7.15: TCStatus Register Field Descriptions 182
Table 7.16: TCBind Register Field Descriptions 184
Table 7.18: TCHalt Register Field Descriptions 185
Table 7.17: TCRestart Register Field Descriptions 185
Table 7.19: TCOpt Register Field Descriptions 187
Table 7.21: UserLocal Register Field Descriptions 188
Table 7.20: Context Register Field Descriptions 188
Table 7.22: PageMask Register Field Descriptions 189

Table 7.23: Values for the Mask Field of the PageMask Register 189
Table 7.24: Wired Register Field Descriptions 190
Table 7.26: HWREna Register Field Descriptions 191
Table 7.25: SRSConf0 Register Field Descriptions 191
Table 7.27: RDHWR Register Numbers 192
Table 7.28: BadVAddr Register Field Description 193
Table 7.29: Count Register Field Description 193
Table 7.30: EntryHi Register Field Descriptions 194
Table 7.31: Compare Register Field Description 195
Table 7.32: Status Register Field Descriptions 196
Table 7.33: IntCtl Register Field Descriptions 201
Table 7.34: SRSCtl Register Field Descriptions 203
Table 7.35: Sources for new $SRSCtl_{CSS}$ on an Exception or Interrupt 204
Table 7.36: SRSMap Register Field Descriptions 205
Table 7.37: Cause Register Field Descriptions 206
Table 7.38: Cause Register ExcCode Field 208
Table 7.39: EPC Register Field Description 210
Table 7.40: PRId Register Field Descriptions 210
Table 7.42: CDMMBase Register Field Descriptions 212
Table 7.41: EBase Register Field Descriptions 212
Table 7.43: CMGCRBase Register Field Descriptions 213
Table 7.44: Config Register Field Descriptions 214
Table 7.45: Cache Coherency Attributes 216
Table 7.46: Config1 Register Field Descriptions 216
Table 7.47: Config2 Register Field Descriptions 219
Table 7.48: Config3 Register Field Descriptions 221
Table 7.49: Config7 Register Field Descriptions 223
Table 7.50: LLAddr Register Field Descriptions 225
Table 7.52: WatchHi Register Field Descriptions 226
Table 7.51: WatchLo Register Field Descriptions 226
Table 7.53: Debug Register Field Descriptions 228
Table 7.54: TraceControl Register Field Descriptions 231
Table 7.55: TraceControl2 Register Field Descriptions 233
Table 7.56: UserTraceData1/UserTraceData2 Register Field Descriptions 235
Table 7.57: TraceIBPC Register Field Descriptions 235
Table 7.58: TraceDBPC Register Field Descriptions 236
Table 7.59: BreakPoint Control Modes: IBPC and DBPC 237
Table 7.60: DEPC Register Formats 238
Table 7.61: TraceControl3 Register Field Descriptions 238
Table 7.62: Performance Counter Register Selects 239
Table 7.63: Performance Counter Control Register Field Descriptions 240
Table 7.64: Performance Counter Count Register Field Descriptions 241
Table 7.65: Event Descriptions 243
Table 7.66: Performance Counter Count Register Field Descriptions 249
Table 7.67: CACHE Test Mode Control 250
Table 7.68: ErrCtl Register Field Descriptions 251
Table 7.69: CacheErr Register Field Descriptions (Primary Caches) 253
Table 7.70: CacheErr Register Field Descriptions (Secondary Cache) 255
Table 7.71: ITagLo Register Field Descriptions 257
Table 7.72: DTagLo Register Field Descriptions 258
Table 7.73: IDataLo Register Field Description 260
Table 7.74: DDataLo Register Field Description 261
Table 7.75: L23DataLo Register Field Description 261

Table 7.76: IDataHi Register Field Description 262
Table 7.77: L23DataHi Register Field Description 262
Table 7.78: ErrorEPC Register Field Description 263
Table 7.79: DeSave Register Field Description 264
Table 9.1: Coherent State Encoding 272
Table 9.2: Way Selection Encoding, 4 Ways 277
Table 11.1: DCR Register Field Descriptions 286
Table 11.2: Debug Exception Vectors 290
Table 11.3: DebugVectorAddr Register Field Descriptions 291
Table 11.4: Overview of Status Register for Instruction Breakpoints 292
Table 11.5: Overview of Registers for Each Instruction Breakpoint 292
Table 11.6: Overview of Status Register for Data Breakpoints 292
Table 11.7: Overview of Registers for Each Data Breakpoint 292
Table 11.8: Rules for Update of BS Bits on Data Breakpoint Exceptions 295
Table 11.9: Addresses for Instruction Breakpoint Registers 297
Table 11.10: IBS Register Field Descriptions 297
Table 11.11: IBAn Register Field Descriptions 298
Table 11.13: IBASIDn Register Field Descriptions 299
Table 11.12: IBMn Register Field Descriptions 299
Table 11.14: IBCn Register Field Descriptions 300
Table 11.15: Addresses for Data Breakpoint Registers 300
Table 11.16: DBS Register Field Descriptions 301
Table 11.17: DBAn Register Field Descriptions 302
Table 11.18: DBMn Register Field Descriptions 302
Table 11.19: DBASIDn Register Field Descriptions 303
Table 11.20: DBCn Register Field Descriptions 303
Table 11.21: DBVn Register Field Descriptions 305
Table 11.22: DBVHn Register Field Descriptions 305
Table 11.23: EJTAG Interface Pins 306
Table 11.24: Implemented EJTAG Instructions 310
Table 11.25: Device Identification Register 314
Table 11.26: Implementation Register Descriptions 315
Table 11.27: EJTAG Control Register Descriptions 316
Table 11.28: Fastdata Register Field Description 322
Table 11.29: Operation of the FASTDATA Access 323
Table 11.30: FDC TAP Register Field Descriptions 328
Table 11.31: FDC Register Mapping 329
Table 11.32: FDC Access Control and Status Register Field Descriptions 330
Table 11.34: FDC Status Register Field Descriptions 331
Table 11.33: FDC Configuration Register Field Descriptions 331
Table 11.35: FDC Receive Register Field Descriptions 332
Table 11.37: FDTXn Address Decode 333
Table 11.36: FDC Transmit Register Field Descriptions 333
Table 11.38: TMOAS Trace Record Field Descriptions 341
Table 11.39: Mapping TCB Registers in drseg 344
Table 11.40: A List of Coprocessor 0 Trace Registers 346
Table 11.41: TCB EJTAG Registers 346
Table 11.43: TCBCONTROLA Register Field Descriptions 347
Table 11.42: Registers Selected by $TCBCONTROLB_{REG}$ 347
Table 11.44: TCBCONTROLB Register Field Descriptions 350
Table 11.45: Clock Ratio encoding of the CR field 354
Table 11.46: TCBDATA Register Field Descriptions 354
Table 11.47: TCBCONTROLC Register Field Descriptions 355

Table 11.49: Port Control Values ... 357
Table 11.48: TCBCONTROLD Register Field Descriptions ... 357
Table 11.50: TCBCONTROLE Register Field Descriptions ... 358
Table 11.51: TCBCONFIG Register Field Descriptions ... 359
Table 11.52: TCBTW Register Field Descriptions ... 360
Table 11.53: TCBRDP Register Field Descriptions ... 361
Table 11.54: *TCBWRP* Register Field Descriptions ... 361
Table 11.55: TCBSTP Register Field Descriptions ... 362
Table 11.56: TCBTRIGx Register Field Descriptions ... 362
Table 12.1: ITC Storage Cell Tag Format ... 376
Table 12.2: ITC View Addresses ... 376
Table 12.3: ITC AddressMap0 Register Format ... 378
Table 12.4: ITCAddressMap1 Register Format ... 378
Table 12.5: AddressMap0 Register Field Descriptions ... 378
Table 12.6: AddressMap1 Register Field Descriptions ... 379
Table 13.1: TCSchedule Register Field Descriptions ... 384
Table 13.2: TCScheFBack Register Field Descriptions ... 385
Table 13.3: VPESchedule Register Field Descriptions ... 385
Table 13.4: *VPEScheFBack* Register Field Descriptions ... 386
Table 13.5: Rotation of Group Priority Levels ... 386
Table 13.6: Priority Level Rotation (3TCs in group1, 1 TC in group0) ... 387
Table 14.1: Byte Access Within a Doubleword ... 391
Table 15.1: Symbols Used in the Instruction Encoding Tables ... 395
Table 15.2: MIPS32 Encoding of the Opcode Field ... 396
Table 15.3: MIPS32 SPECIAL Opcode Encoding of Function Field ... 396
Table 15.4: MIPS32 REGIMM Encoding of rt Field ... 396
Table 15.5: MIPS32 SPECIAL2 Encoding of Function Field ... 397
Table 15.6: MIPS32 Special3 Encoding of Function Field for Release 2 of the Architecture ... 397
Table 15.7: MIPS32 MOVCI Encoding of tf Bit ... 397
Table 15.8: MIPS32 SRL Encoding of Shift/Rotate ... 397
Table 15.9: MIPS32 SRLV Encoding of Shift/Rotate ... 397
Table 15.10: MIPS32 BSHFLEncoding of sa Field ... 398
Table 15.11: MIPS32® *ADDU.QB* Encoding of the op Field ... 398
Table 15.12: MIPS32® *CMPU.EQ.QB* Encoding of the op Field ... 398
Table 15.13: MIPS32® *ABSQ_S.PH* Encoding of the op Field ... 399
Table 15.14: MIPS32® *SHLL.QB* Encoding of the op Field ... 399
Table 15.15: MIPS32® *LX* Encoding of the op Field ... 399
Table 15.16: MIPS32® *DPAQ.W.PH* Encoding of the op Field ... 399
Table 15.17: MIPS32® *EXTR.W* Encoding of the op Field ... 400
Table 15.18: MIPS32 COP0 Encoding of rs Field ... 400
Table 15.19: MIPS32COP0 Encoding of Function Field When rs=CO ... 400
Table 15.20: MIPS32 COP1 Encoding of rs Field ... 400
Table 15.21: MIPS32 COP1 Encoding of Function Field When rs=S ... 401
Table 15.22: MIPS32 COP1 Encoding of Function Field When rs=D ... 401
Table 15.23: MIPS32 COP1 Encoding of Function Field When rs=W or L ... 401
Table 15.24: MIPS32 COP1 Encoding of tf Bit When rs=S or D, Function=MOVCF ... 402
Table 15.25: MIPS64 COP1X Encoding of Function Field ... 402
Table 15.26: MIPS32 COP2 Encoding of rs Field ... 402
Table 15.27: Floating Point Unit Instruction Format Encodings ... 402
Table 15.28: 1004K™ CPU Instruction Set ... 403
Table 15.29: List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the Arithmetic sub-class ... 412
Table 15.30: List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the GPR-Based Shift sub-class ... 414
Table 15.31: List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the Multiply sub-class ... 415

Table 15.32: List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the Bit/ Manipulation sub-class 418
Table 15.33: List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the Compare-Pick sub-class.............................. 419
Table 15.34: List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the Accumulator and DSPControl Access sub-class. 420
Table 15.35: List of instructions in the MIPS32™ DSP ASE in the Indexed-Load sub-class.............................. 422
Table 15.36: List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the Branch sub-class 423
Table 15.37: Usage of Effective Address.. 424
Table 15.38: Encoding of Bits[17:16] of CACHE Instruction 425
Table 15.39: Encoding of Bits [20:18] of the CACHE Instruction, ErrCtl[WST,SPR] Cleared............................. 425
Table 15-1: Encoding of Bits [20:18] of the CACHE Instruction, ErrCtl[WST] Set. ErrCtl[SPR] Cleared............. 428
Table 15.40: Encoding of Bits [20:18] of the CACHE Instruction, ErrCtl[SPR] Set, ErrCtl[WST] Cleared 429
Table 15.41: Values of *hint* Field for PREF Instruction 433
Table 15.42: Encodings of the Bits[10:6] of the SYNC instruction; the SType Field... 440
Table 16.1: Symbols Used in the Instruction Encoding Tables... 443
Table 16.2: MIPS16e Encoding of the Opcode Field 444
Table 16.3: MIPS16e JAL(X) Encoding of the x Field... 444
Table 16.4: MIPS16e SHIFT Encoding of the f Field 444
Table 16.5: MIPS16e RRI-A Encoding of the f Field.. 444
Table 16.6: MIPS16e I8 Encoding of the funct Field.. 444
Table 16.7: MIPS16e RRR Encoding of the f Field.. 445
Table 16.8: MIPS16e RR Encoding of the Funct Field 445
Table 16.9: MIPS16e I8 Encoding of the s Field when funct=SVRS 445
Table 16.10: MIPS16e RR Encoding of the ry Field when funct=J(AL)R(C).. 445
Table 16.11: MIPS16e RR Encoding of the ry Field when funct=CNVT 445
Table 16.12: MIPS16e Load and Store Instructions 446
Table 16.13: MIPS16e Save and Restore Instructions 446
Table 16.14: MIPS16e ALU Immediate Instructions 446
Table 16.15: MIPS16e Arithmetic Two or Three Operand Register Instructions 446
Table 16.16: MIPS16e Special Instructions 447
Table 16.17: MIPS16e Multiply and Divide Instructions... 447
Table 16.18: MIPS16e Jump and Branch Instructions... 447
Table 16.19: MIPS16e Shift Instructions... 448

Chapter 1

Introduction to the MIPS32® 1004K™ CPU Family

The 1004K™ CPU from MIPS Technologies is a high-performance, low-power, 32-bit MIPS® RISC CPU family intended for custom system-on-silicon applications. The CPU is designed for semiconductor manufacturing companies, ASIC developers, and system OEMs who want to rapidly integrate their own custom logic and peripherals with a high-performance RISC processor. A 1004K CPU is fully synthesizable to allow maximum flexibility; it is highly portable across processes and can easily be integrated into full system-on-silicon designs. This allows developers to focus their attention on end-user specific characteristics of their product.

The 1004K CPU is ideally positioned to support new products for emerging segments of the digital consumer, network, systems, and information management markets, enabling new tailored solutions for embedded applications.

The 1004K family has two members: the MIPS32® 1004Kc™ CPU and the MIPS32 1004Kf™ CPU.

- The 1004Kc is a 32-bit RISC CPU for high performance applications.
- The 1004Kf CPU adds an IEEE-754 compliant floating point unit.

The term *1004K CPU,* as used in this document, generally refers to all CPUs in the 1004K family. When referring to characteristics unique to an individual family member, the specific CPU type is identified.

On a 1004K CPU, instruction and data caches are configurable as 8, 16, 32, or 64 KB in size. Each cache is organized as 4-way set associative. The data cache features non-blocking load misses. On a cache miss, the processor can continue executing instructions until a dependent instruction is reached. Both caches are virtually indexed and physically tagged. Virtual indexing allows the cache to be indexed in the same clock in which the address is generated rather than waiting for the virtual-to-physical address translation in the TLB. The data cache utilizes a standard MESI protocol for support of memory coherence in a multi-CPU 1004K Coherent Processing System (CPS).

The CPU implements the MIPS32 Release 2 Instruction Set Architecture (ISA) and the MIPS16e™ Application Specific Extension (ASE) for code compression. The CPU also implements the MIPS MT Application Specific Extension, which defines the architectural state and new instructions that allow multithreading on a MIPS CPU.

A distinguishing characteristic of the 1004K family is the inclusion of the MIPS DSP Application Specific Extension (ASE). The MIPS DSP ASE provides support for a number of powerful data processing operations. It includes instructions for executing fractional arithmetic (Q15/Q31) and for saturating arithmetic. Additionally, for smaller data sizes, SIMD operations are supported, allowing 2x16b or 4x8b operations to occur simultaneously. Another feature of the ASE is the inclusion of additional HI/LO accumulator registers to improve the parallelization of independent accumulation routines.

The Multiply-Divide Unit (MDU) is fully pipelined and supports a maximum issue rate of one 32x32 multiply (MUL/MULT/MULTU), multiply-add (MADD/MADDU), or multiply-subtract (MSUB/MSUBU) operation per clock.

The basic Enhanced JTAG (EJTAG) features provide run control with stop, single stepping, and re-start, and with software breakpoints through the SDBBP instruction. Support for connection to an external EJTAG probe through the

Test Access Port (TAP) and the Fast Debug Channel mechanism for efficient data transfer are also included. Instruction and data virtual address hardware breakpoints as well as the MIPS Trace mechanism can be optionally included.

The bus interface implements the Open Core Protocol (OCP) [14], with 64-bit read and write data buses, and includes an additional intervention port for implementing cache coherency in a multi-CPU 1004K Coherent Processing System. The bus interface operates at the same frequency as the CPU itself.

The rest of this chapter provides an overview of the MIPS32 1004K CPU and consists of the following sections:

- Section 1.1 “1004K™ CPU Features”
- Section 1.2 “1004K™ CPU Block Diagram”

1.1 1004K™ CPU Features

- 8-9-stage pipeline
- 32-bit Address Paths
- 64-bit Data Paths to Caches
- MIPS32 Enhanced Architecture (Release 2) Features
  - Standardized Instruction Set Architecture
  - Vectored interrupts and support for an external interrupt controller
  - Programmable exception vector base
  - Atomic interrupt enable/disable
  - GPR shadow sets
  - Bit field manipulation instructions
- MIPS DSP ASE
  - Fractional data types (Q15, Q31)
  - Saturating arithmetic
  - SIMD instructions operate on 2x16b or 4x8b simultaneously
  - 3 additional pairs of accumulator registers
- MIPS16e Application Specific Extension
  - 16 bit encodings of 32-bit instructions to improve code density
  - Special PC-relative instructions for efficient loading of addresses and constants
  - Data type conversion instructions (ZEB, SEB, ZEH, SEH)

    - Compact jumps (JRC, JALRC)
    - Stack frame set-up and tear down “macro” instructions (SAVE and RESTORE)
- MIPS MT Application Specific Extension (ASE)
    - Support for 1 or 2 Virtual Processing Elements (VPEs)
    - One Thread Context (TC) per VPE
    - Multi-core Inter-Thread Communication (ITC) memory for efficient communication & data transfer.
- Programmable L1 Cache Sizes
    - Individually configurable instruction and data caches
    - Sizes of 8, 16, 32, or 64 KB
    - 4-Way set associative
    - Up to 9 non-blocking loads
    - Data cache supports coherent and non-coherent Write-back with write-allocation
    - 256-bit (32-byte) cache line size, doubleword sectored - suitable for standard single-port SRAM
    - Cache line locking support
    - Non-blocking prefetches
    - Duplicate tag array in D-cache allows coherence requests to access the cache in parallel with normal load/store traffic
- Data and Instruction ScratchPad RAMs
    - Separate RAMs for Instruction and Data
    - Addressable up to 1MB
    - 64-bit OCP interfaces for external access
- Standard Memory Management Unit
    - 16/32/64 dual-entry MIPS32-style JTLB per VPE with variable page sizes
    - JTLBs are sharable under software control
    - 4-5 entry instruction TLB
    - 8-entry data TLB
- OCP Bus Interface Unit (BIU)

- 32b address and 64b data
- Supports bursts of 4x64b
- 8 entry write buffer - handles eviction data, intervention response, uncached, and uncached accelerated store data
- Simple Byte enable mode allows easier bridging to other bus standards
- Extensions for management of front side L2 cache
- Intervention port supports memory coherency for use in a 1004K Coherent Processing System

- CorExtend® User Defined Instruction capability
  - Optional support for the CorExtend feature allows users to define and add instructions to the CPU (as a build-time option)
  - Single- or multi-cycle instructions
  - Source operations from register, immediate field, or local state
  - Destination to a register or local state
  - Interface to multiply-divide unit, allowing sharing of accumulation registers
- Multiply-Divide Unit
  - Maximum issue rate of one 32x32 multiply per clock
  - Early-in divide control. Minimum 11, maximum 34 clock latency on divide
- Floating Point Unit (1004Kf only)
  - IEEE-754 compliant floating point unit
  - Compliant to MIPS 64b FPU standards
  - Supports single and double precision datatypes
- Coprocessor2 Interface
  - 64-bit interface to user designed coprocessor
- Power Control
  - No minimum frequency
  - Power-down mode
  - Support for software-controlled clock divider
  - Support for extensive use of fine-grain clock gating

- EJTAG Debug Support
  - Start, stop, and single stepping control
  - Software breakpoints via the SDBBP instruction
  - Optional hardware breakpoints on virtual addresses; 0, 2, or 4 instruction and 0,1, or 2 data breakpoints per VPE
  - Test Access Port (TAP) facilitates high speed download of application code
  - Fast Debug Channel with configurable FIFO depth for efficient data transfer to and from probe
  - Optional MIPS Trace hardware to enable real-time tracing of executed code

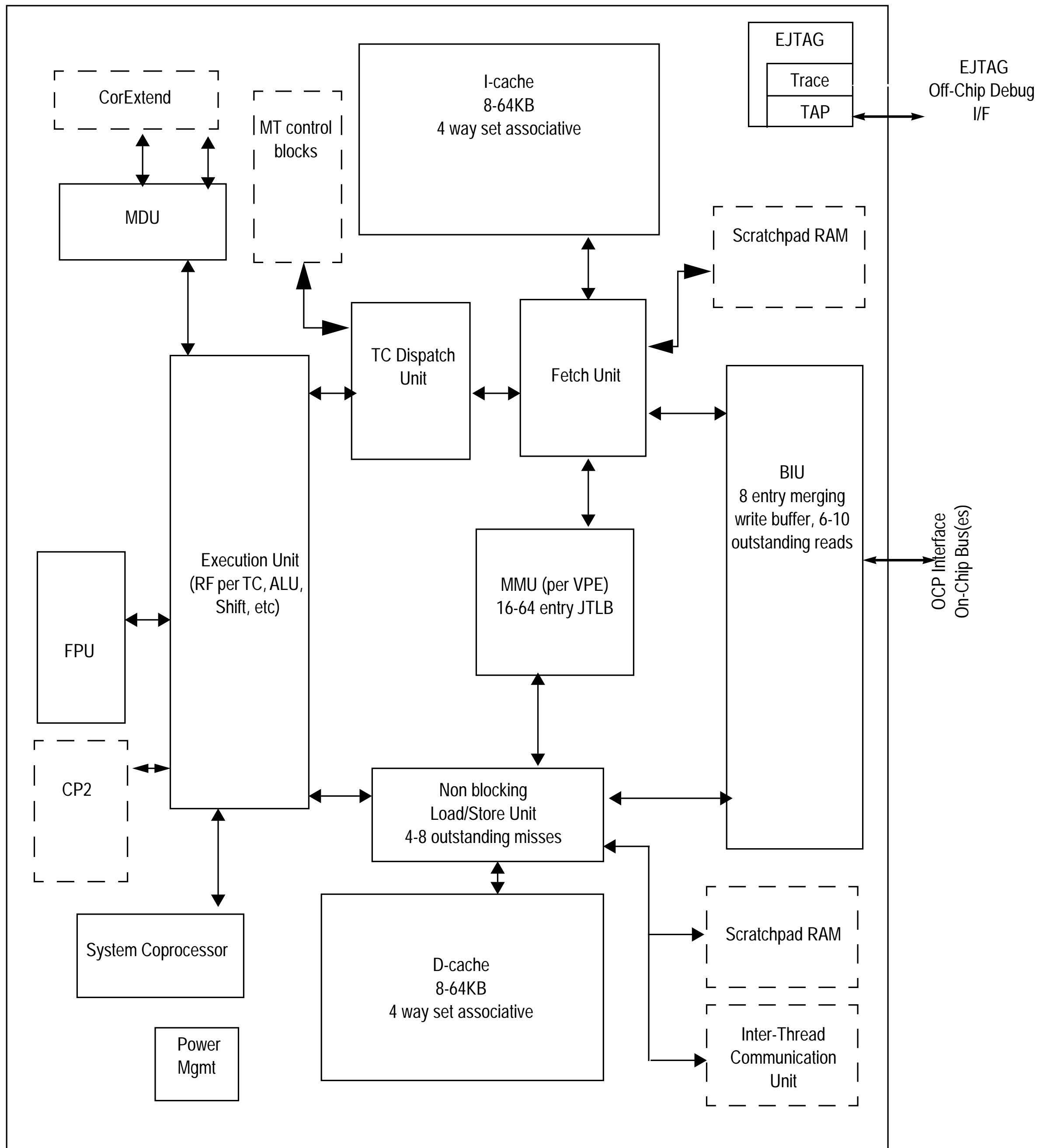
1.2 1004K™ CPU Block Diagram

The 1004K CPU contains a number of blocks, as shown in the block diagram in Figure 1.1. The major blocks are as follows:

- Execution Unit (ALU)
- Multiply-Divide Unit (MDU)
- System Control Coprocessor (CP0)
- Memory Management Unit (MMU)
- Floating Point Unit (FPU) - only in 1004Kf
- Cache Controller
- Bus Interface Unit (BIU)
- Power Management
- MIPS16e support
- Instruction Cache (I-cache)
- Data Cache (D-cache)
- Enhanced JTAG (EJTAG) Controller
- CorExtend® User Defined Instructions (UDI)

Figure 1.1 shows a block diagram of a 1004K CPU.

Figure 1.1 1004K™ CPU Block Diagram



1.2.1 Logic Blocks

The following subsections describe the various logic blocks of the 1004K CPU.

1.2.1.1 Execution Unit

The CPU execution unit implements a load-store architecture with single-cycle Arithmetic Logic Unit (ALU) operations (logical, shift, add, subtract) and an autonomous multiply-divide unit. Each TC on the CPU contains thirty-two 32-bit general-purpose registers (GPRs) used for scalar integer operations and address calculation. The register file consists of two read ports and one write port and is fully bypassed to minimize operation latency in the pipeline.

The execution unit includes:

- 32-bit adder used for calculating the data address
- Logic for branch determination and branch target address calculation
- Bypass multiplexers used to avoid stalls when executing instruction streams where data-producing instructions are followed closely by consumers of their results
- Zero/One detect unit for implementing the CLZ and CLO instructions
- ALU for performing bitwise logical operations
- Shifter and Store aligner
- Floating Point Unit Interface
- Coprocessor2 Interface

The execution unit also includes the following DSP ASE operations for various data types:

- two-cycle add, sub, absolute, shift, compare
- two-cycle compare, byte manipulation, precision control

1.2.1.2 Multiply/Divide Unit (MDU)

The Multiply/Divide unit performs multiply and divide operations.The MDU consists of a pipelined 32x32 multiplier, result-accumulation registers (HI and LO), multiply and divide state machines, and all multiplexers and control logic required to perform these functions. This pipelined MDU supports execution of a multiply or multiply-accumulate operation every clock cycle. Unlike some previous CPUs, there is no dependence between operand size and issue rate for multiplies. Divide operations are implemented with a simple 1 bit per clock iterative algorithm and require 35 clock cycles in worst case to complete. Early-in to the algorithm detects sign extension of the dividend, if it is actual size is 24, 16 or 8 bit. the divider will skip 7, 15 or 23 of the 32 iterations.

The MDU accumulators are accessible from the CorExtend block. Many CorExtend instruction types can make use of the HI/LO accumulation registers.

The MDU also implements various shift instructions operating on the HI/LO register and multiply instructions as defined in the DSP ASE. It supports all the data types required for this purpose and includes three extra HI/LO registers as defined by the ASE.

1.2.1.3 System Control Coprocessor (CP0)

In the MIPS architecture, CP0 is responsible for the virtual-to-physical address translation, cache protocols, the exception control system, the processor's diagnostics capability, operating mode selection (kernel vs. user mode), and

the enabling/disabling of interrupts. Configuration information such as cache size, set associativity, and presence of build-time options are available by accessing the CP0 registers. Refer to Chapter 7, "CP0 Registers of the 1004K™ CPU" on page 167 for more information on the CP0 registers. Refer to Chapter 11, "EJTAG Debug Support in the 1004K™ CPU" on page 285 for more information on EJTAG debug registers. Most of CP0 is replicated per VPE. A small amount of state is replicated per TC, and some is shared between the VPEs.

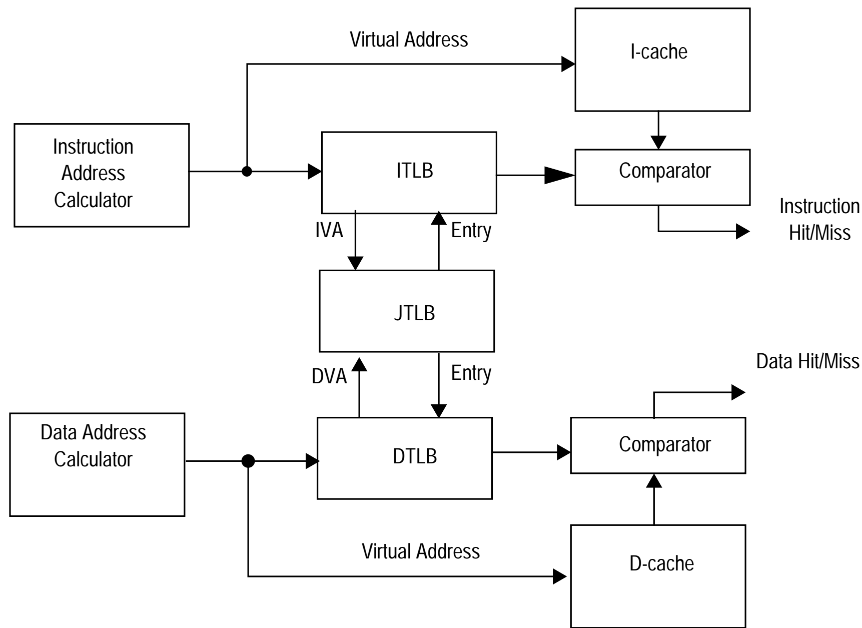
1.2.1.4 Memory Management Unit (MMU)

The 1004K CPU contains an MMU per VPE that interfaces between the execution unit and the cache controllers, shown in Figure 1.2. Although the 1004K CPU implements a 32-bit architecture, the Memory Management Unit (MMU) is modeled after the MMU originally found in the 64-bit R4000 family, as defined by the MIPS32 architecture.

On the 1004K CPU, by default each MMU is based on a Translation Lookaside Buffer (TLB). The TLB consists of three or four translation buffers: a configurable 16/32/64 dual-entry fully associative Joint TLB (JTLB) per VPE, a 4-5 entry fully associative Instruction TLB (ITLB) and a 8-entry fully associative data TLB (DTLB). The ITLB and DTLB, also referred to as the micro TLBs, are managed by the hardware and are not software visible. The micro TLBs contain subsets of the JTLB. When translating addresses, the corresponding micro TLB (I or D) is accessed first. If there is not a matching entry, the JTLB is used to translate the address and refill the micro TLB. If the entry is not found in the JTLB, then an exception is taken.

Figure 1.2 shows how the address translation mechanism interacts with cache accesses.

Figure 1.2 Address Translation During a Cache Access



1.2.1.5 Fetch Unit

The fetch unit is responsible for providing instructions to the execution unit for all TCs. The fetch unit includes:

- Control logic for the instruction cache
- MIPS16e instruction recoder

- Dynamic branch prediction
  - 512-entry bimodal branch history table for predicting conditional branches
  - 4-entry return prediction stack for predicting return addresses
- 6 or 8 entry instruction buffer per TC to decouple the fetch and execution pipelines
- Interface to Instruction ScratchPad RAM

When executing instructions from multiple TCs, a portion of the IBF is used as a skid buffer. Instructions are held in the IBF after being sent to the execution unit. This allows stalled instructions to be flushed from the execution pipeline without needing to be refetched. This feature is disabled when the IBF is configured with only 6 entries.

1.2.1.6 Thread Schedule Unit (TSU)

This unit is responsible for dispatching instructions from different Thread Contexts (TCs). An external policy manager assigns priorities for each TC. The TSU determines which TCs are runnable and selects the highest priority one available. If multiple are available, a round-robin mechanism will select between them fairly.

The policy manager is a customer configurable block. Simple round-robin or fixed priority policies can be implemented by tying off signals on the interface. A reference policy manager is also included that implements a weighted round-robin algorithm for long-term distribution of execution bandwidth.

When the CPU is configured with a single TC, there is no selection needed. In these configurations, the IT pipeline stage where TC selection is normally done can be bypassed, reducing the pipeline length from 9 to 8 stages.

1.2.1.7 Instruction Cache

The instruction cache is an on-chip memory array of up to 64 KB. The cache is virtually indexed and physically tagged, allowing the virtual-to-physical address translation to occur in parallel with the cache access rather than having to wait for the physical address translation. The tag holds 20 or 21 bits of the physical address, a valid bit, a lock bit, and optionally a parity bit. There is a separate 6b array which holds data for all 4 ways to be used in the Least Recently Used (LRU) replacement scheme. Some precode information is included in the instruction cache data array. An additional 6b per pair of 32b instructions is used to enable quick detection of branches and jumps in the fetch unit. If parity is implemented, a single bit covers the 6b precode and 8b cover the 64b data.

The CPU supports instruction cache locking. Cache locking allows critical code to be locked into the cache on a “per-line” basis, enabling the system designer to maximize the efficiency of the system cache. Cache locking is always available on all instruction cache entries. Entries can be marked as locked or unlocked (by setting or clearing the lock bit) on a per-entry basis using the CACHE instruction.

The LRU array must be bit-writable. The tag and data arrays only need to be word-writable.

1.2.1.8 Load/Store Unit

The Load/Store Unit is responsible for data loads and stores. It includes:

- Data cache control logic
- 4-8 line fill/store buffer
- ScratchPad RAM interface

1.2.1.9 Data Cache

The data cache is an on-chip memory array of up to 64 KB. The cache is virtually indexed and physically tagged, allowing the virtual-to-physical address translation to occur in parallel with the cache access. The tag holds 20 or 21 bits of the physical address, a valid bit, a lock bit, and optionally a parity bit. A separate array holds the LRU bits (6b), dirty bits (4b), and optionally, dirty parity bits (4b) for all 4 ways. A duplicate tag array contains the same information as the primary tag array and is used to filter intervention traffic so that only those interventions that hit in the cache are processed by the main execution pipeline. The data array is optionally parity protected with 1b per 8b of data.

In addition to instruction cache locking, all CPUs also support a data cache locking mechanism identical to the instruction cache, with critical data segments to be locked into the cache on a “per-line” basis. The locked contents cannot be selected for replacement on a cache miss, but can be updated on a store hit.

Cache locking is always available on all data cache entries. Entries can be marked as locked or unlocked on a per-entry basis using the CACHE instruction.

The physical data cache memory must be byte writable to support sub-word store operations. The LRU/dirty bit array must be bit-writable.

1.2.1.10 Bus Interface Unit (BIU)

The Bus Interface Unit (BIU) controls the external interface signals. Additionally, it contains the implementation of a collapsing write buffer. This buffer is used to stage intervention response data as well as to gather multiple writes together from dirty line evictions and uncached accelerated stores. The write buffer consists of 8 32B entries.

1.2.1.11 Power Management

The CPU offers a number of power management features, including low-power design, active power management, and power-down modes of operation. The CPU is a static design that supports slowing or stopping the clocks to reduce power.

In the 1004K Coherent Processing System, the Cluster Power Controller(CPC) can take advantage of this capability to shut down the clocks to an idle CPU. Additionally, if the implementation supports it, the CPC can also gate off the power to a CPU for further power savings.

A register-controlled power management mode in the CPU provides three bits in the CP0 Status register for software control of the power management function and allows interrupts to be serviced even when the CPU is in power-down mode.

Additionally, the clock going to most flops in the design will be stopped when the CPU detects that all TCs are idle or blocked enabling a low power sleep state.

Refer to Chapter 10, “Power Management in the 1004K™ CPU” on page 281 for more information on power management.

1.2.1.12 MIPS16e™ Application Specific Extension

The 1004K CPU includes support for the MIPS16e ASE. This ASE improves code density through the use of 16-bit encodings of MIPS32 instructions plus some MIPS16e-specific instructions. PC relative loads allow quick access to constants. Save/Restore macro instructions provide for single instruction stack frame setup/teardown for efficient subroutine entry/exit. Sign- and zero-extend instructions improve handling of 8bit and 16bit datatypes.

A decompressor converts the MIPS16e 16-bit instructions fetched from the instruction cache or external interface back into 32-bit instructions for execution by the CPU.

Refer to the *MIPS32® Architecture For Programmers, Volume IV-a: The MIPS16e™ Application-Specific Extension to the MIPS32® Architecture* [4] and to Chapter 4, "The MIPS® DSP Application-Specific Extension" on page 99 for more information on the features of the MIPS16e ASE.

1.2.1.13 EJTAG Debug

All CPUs provide basic EJTAG support with debug mode, run control, single step, and software breakpoint instruction (SDBBP) as part of the CPU. These features allow for the basic software debug of user and kernel code. A TAP controller is also included for each VPE, enabling communication with an external EJTAG probe through a dedicated port. This provides the possibility for debugging without debug code in the application, and for download of application code to the system.The TAP controller also includes the Fast Data Channel mechanism which includes a pair of configurable FIFOs for sending data between the CPU and the probe. The FIFOs and the ability to generate an interrupt based on data/space availablity enable data transfer with very low overhead to the software executing on the CPU.

An optional EJTAG feature is hardware breakpoints. A 1004K CPU may have up to four instruction breakpoints and two data breakpoints per VPE, or no breakpoints. The hardware instruction breakpoints can be configured to generate a debug exception when an instruction is executed anywhere in the virtual address space. Bit mask and Address Space Identifier (ASID) values may apply in the address compare. These breakpoints are not limited to code in RAM like the software instruction breakpoint (SDBBP). The data breakpoints can be configured to generate a debug exception on a data transaction. The data transaction may be qualified with both virtual address, data value, size and load/store transaction type. Bit mask and ASID values may apply in the address compare, and byte mask may apply in the value compare.

Another optional debug feature is support for MIPS Trace that enables real-time tracing capability. Trace information is sent out of the CPU and is interleaved with trace data from the Coherence Manager and other CPUs. The trace of program flow is highly flexible and can include the instruction program counter as well as data addresses and data values. The trace features can provide a powerful software debugging mechanism.

Refer to the *EJTAG™ Specification* [15] and to Chapter 11, "EJTAG Debug Support in the 1004K™ CPU" on page 285 for more information on the EJTAG features.

1.2.1.14 CorExtend® User Defined Instructions

This optional module contains support for CorExtend user defined instructions. These instructions must be defined at build-time for the 1004K CPU. This feature makes 16 instructions in the opcode map available for customer usage, and each instruction can have single or multi-cycle latency. A CorExtend instruction can operate on any one or two general-purpose registers or immediate data contained within the instruction, and can write the result of each instruction back to a general purpose register or a local register. Implementation details for CorExtend can be found in the *CorExtend® Instruction Integrator's Guide for MIPS32® Cores* [12].

Refer to Section Table 15.5 "MIPS32 SPECIAL2 Encoding of Function Field" for a specification of the opcode map available for user defined instructions.

Chapter 2

Pipeline of the 1004K™ CPU

The 1004K CPU implements a 8-9-stage pipeline. The pipeline allows the processor to achieve high frequency while minimizing device complexity, reducing both cost and power consumption. This chapter contains the following sections:

- Section 2.1 “Pipeline Stages”
- Section 2.2 “Instruction Fetch”
- Section 2.3 “Load Store Unit”
- Section 2.4 “MDU Pipeline”
- Section 2.5 “Skewed ALU”
- Section 2.6 “Interlock Handling”
- Section 2.7 “Instruction Interlocks”
- Section 2.8 “Hazards”
- Section 2.9 “Instruction Rollback And Its Implications”

2.1 Pipeline Stages

The pipeline consists of eight or nine stages:

- IF - Instruction fetch First
- IS - Instruction fetch Second
- IR - Instruction recode (MIPS16e only)
- IK - Instruction kill (MIPS16e only)
- IT - Instruction fetch Third
- RF - Register File
- AG - Address Generation
- EX - EXecute
- MS - Memory Second

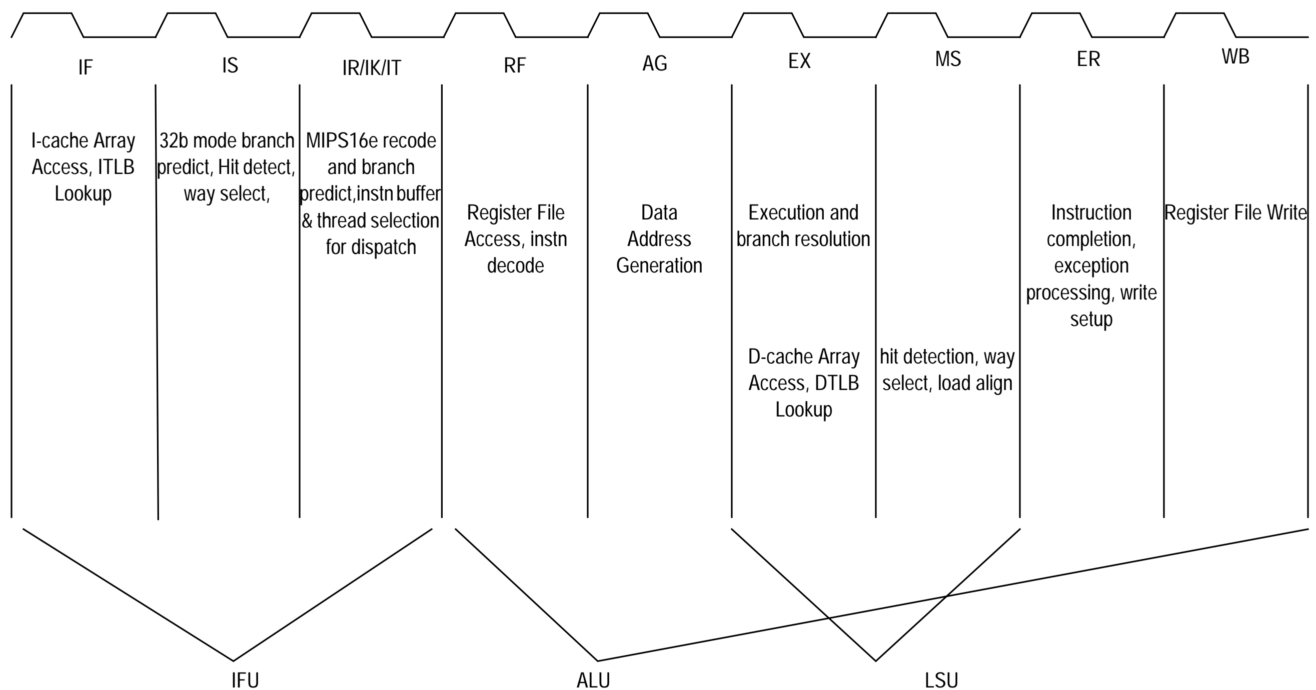
- ER - Exception Resolution
- WB - WriteBack

Two additional stages are conditionally added to the fetch pipeline after the IS stage when executing MIPS16e code. The IR and IK stages are generally bypassed while executing 32-bit code. The IT stage is included for TC selection. In a single TC configuration, this stage is bypassed, yielding eight pipeline stages rather than nine.

A 1004K CPU implements a bypass mechanism that allows the result of an operation to be sent directly to the instruction that needs it without having to write the result to the register and then read it back.

Figure 2.1 shows the basic pipeline organization. The various parts of the pipeline are described in more detail in this chapter.

Figure 2.1 1004K™ CPU Pipeline Stages



2.1.1 IF Stage: Instruction Fetch First

- I-cache tag/data arrays accessed
- Branch History Table accessed
- ITLB address translation performed
- EJTAG break/watch compares done

2.1.2 IS - Instruction Fetch Second

- Detect I-cache hit
- Way select
- MIPS32 Branch prediction

2.1.3 IR - Instruction Recode (MIPS16e only)

- MIPS16 recode
- MIPS16 branch prediction
- Stage is bypassed when executing MIPS32 code

2.1.4 IK - Instruction Kill (MIPS16e only)

- Kill MIPS16 instructions (due to branches as an example)
- Stage is bypassed when executing MIPS32 code

2.1.5 IT - Instruction Fetch Third

- Stage is bypassed on single TC configurations when executing MIPS32 code and the instruction buffer is empty
- Instruction Buffer
- Branch target calculation
- Thread selection for dispatch based on policy manager

2.1.6 RF - Register File Access

- Register File access
- Instruction decoding/dispatch logic
- Bypass muxes

2.1.7 AG - Address Generation

- D-cache Address Generation
- Bypass muxes

2.1.8 EX - Execute/Memory Access

- Skewed ALU
- DTLB

- Start DCache access
- Branch Resolution

2.1.9 MS - Memory Access Second

- Complete DCache access
- DCache hit detection
- Way select mux
- Load align

2.1.10 ER- Exception Resolution

- Instruction completion
- Register file write setup
- Exception processing

2.1.11 WB - Writeback

- Register file writeback occurs on rising edge of this cycle

2.2 Instruction Fetch

The IFU is responsible for supplying instructions to the execution units and handling the results of all control transfer instructions (branches, jumps, etc.). The IFU operation encompasses five pipe stages: IF (**I**nstruction fetch **F**irst), IS (**I**nstruction fetch **S**econd), IR (Instruction Recode), IK (Instruction Kill) and IT (**I**nstruction fetch **T**hird). The instruction cache tags and data are accessed in IF, and the hit determination and the first part of the 32-bit mode target calculation is done in IS. The IR and IK stage handle MIPS16e recoding. The remainder of the 32-bit mode target calculation as well as instruction buffering to the ALUis done in the IT stage. This instruction buffering decouples the IFU from the rest of the pipeline, allowing fetches to proceed even if the processor execution is stalled for some reason. The fetch pipeline and cache bandwidth is 64 bits, supplying up to two instructions per cycle in MIPS32 mode, which allows the IFU to get ahead of the ALU and shields the execution pipeline from some IFU miss penalties.

On the very front of the pipe, before the IF stage there is a mux to select the TC that will start a fetch. Potentially in every cycle a different TC can be fetched assuming that there is more than one TC that is fetchable. Based on the choice of the TC, its predicted program counter value is chosen as the next instruction fetch address.

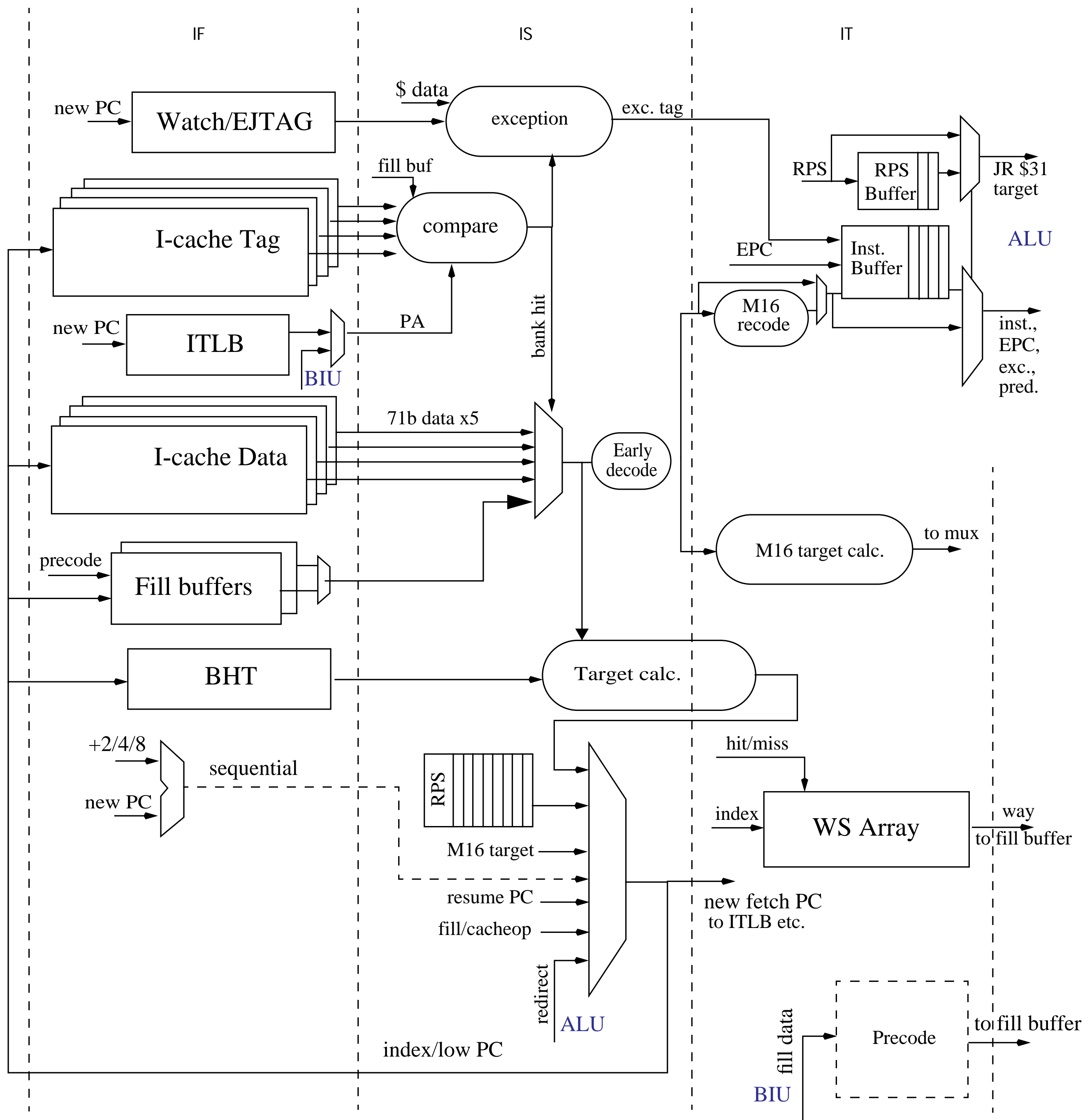
In addition, the instruction buffers are replicated per TC so that each TC can continue to fetch as and when it gets an opportunity to be fetched and stores its instructions in its instruction buffer for dispatch. For example, when one of the TCs has an instruction cache miss, the other threads can keep fetching as long as the they hit in the cache. When there are two outstanding cache misses, a TC with a third miss would be blocked from being fetched but TCs that hit in the instruction cache could continue being fetched.

In the IT stage of the pipe, a dispatch scheduler unit chooses amongst all the TCs with an instruction available in its instruction buffer for dispatch.

The instruction buffer in the IT stage of the pipe also doubles as a skid buffer. In the event of a cache miss on a load followed by a dependency on the load data, the dependent instruction as well as any subsequent instructions for that TC that might have been issued from the IT stage are flushed back to the instruction buffer. This is done to avoid stalling the whole pipe so that the other TCs can continue with their operations. However, by flushing these instructions to the instruction buffer instead of causing a refetch from the cache, when the dependency for this TC is resolved, this TC can start issuing immediately instead of waiting for a full fetch from the caches. This feature is disabled when the 6 entry instruction buffer configuration is selected.

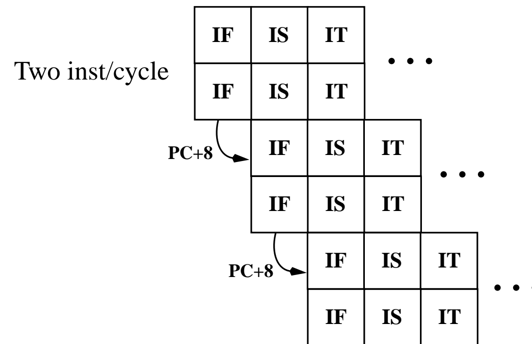
Figure 2.2 shows the general datapath of the IFU along with major structures. In order to avoid complexity, the figure below does not include the TC selection mux for fetching (at front of pipe) or the TC selection mux in the policy manager in the IT stage.

Figure 2.2 IFU Block Diagram



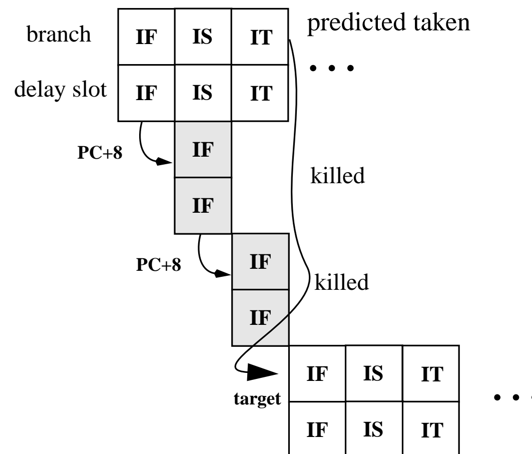
The following diagrams illustrate the timing of various IFU operations when executing a single thread. The simplest of these is the sequential fetch path, in which the next fetch PC is incremented by 8 bytes in parallel with the cache lookup. If each fetch hits in the cache, the IFU can provide two instructions per cycle and will quickly fill up the instruction buffer, after which it will stall based on a buffer full signal. However, if there are other TCs that do not have their instruction buffer full, the IFU will continue to fetch those TCs, avoiding a stall in the IFU.

Figure 2.3 Timing of 32-bit Mode Sequential Fetches



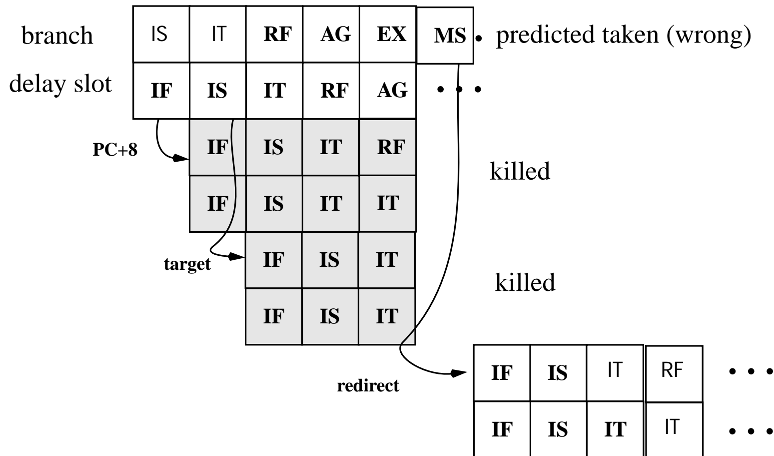
Another common situation is a control transfer instruction (branch/jump). The calculation of the target for 32-bit mode instructions starts in the IS stage, but does not complete until the IT stage. For a predicted taken path this means that if the delay slot of that branch is in the same fetch bundle, there will be a 2 cycle bubble since the sequential fetches will not be used. If the delay slot is in the next fetch bundle, there will be a 1 cycle bubble.

Figure 2.4 Timing of 32-bit Mode Branch Taken Path



For conditional branches, the control transfer is most likely speculative, based upon the branch history table. The resolution of this branch by the ALU will be calculated in the EX stage and will be used by the IFU in the MS stage, resulting in a several-cycle fetch bubble. The following figure illustrates one possibility assuming the instruction buffer is empty and the delay slot is in the next fetch bundle.

Figure 2.5 Fetch Timing of 32-bit Mode Branch Mispredict



The delay slot lessen the impact of a mispredict on the execution pipeline, though. Assuming no stalls, the ALU sees a five-cycle bubble.This figure shows the 9 stage pipeline when the core is configured with multiple TCs. The bypass of the IT stage in a single TC configuration would reduce the bubble to four cycles. The following two figures show the two situations.

Figure 2.6 Execution Timing of 32-bit Mode Branch Mispredict (Single TC)

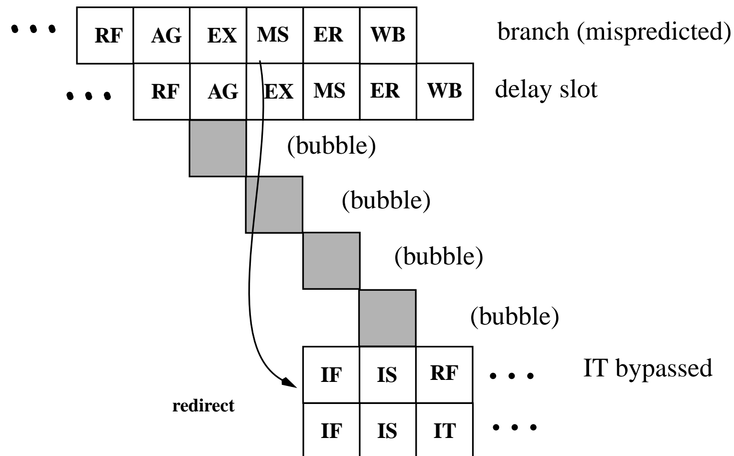


Figure 2.7 Execution Timing of 32-bit Mode Branch Mispredict (Multiple TCs)

2.2.1 Branch History Table

A branch history table (BHT) will be accessed in parallel with the cache in the IF stage. This table is a 512-entry bimodal predictor. The table is indexed with bits 11:3 of the VA and each entry contains a two bit saturating counter that indicates whether a branch is taken or not. The indexing is down to bit 3 because in 32b code there can only be one branch every 64b because of the branch delay slot. In MIPS16e code, the smaller instructions and lack of delay slots means that up to 4 branches can exist within a 64b fetch bundle and will share the same BHT entry. However, in typical code, the branch density is lower than in 32b code and keeping the same 64b indexing maintains reasonable prediction accuracy. It is also important to note that the on the 1004K CPU, all the TCs use the same BHT.

Unlike some previous MIPS processors, the 1004K CPU uses the BHT to predict branch likely instructions. Architecturally, these are specified to only be used when a branch is taken > 95% of the time. However, the default settings of many compilers use these even when that is not the case. The delay slot characteristics (the delay slot is only executed if the branch is taken) allow a useful instruction to be placed in the delay slot instead of a NOP. When used in this fashion, dynamic prediction is much more accurate than statically predicting a branch likely as taken.

Unconditional branches (BEQ r0, r0 and BGEZAL r0) are detected by the precode logic and will be statically predicted taken, bypassing the BHT.

The ALU verifies the correctness of the prediction when the branch reaches the EX stage. In the case of a mispredict, the instructions on the mispredicted path will be killed and the fetch will be redirected to the correct instruction. When executing from a single TC, this will cause a 4-5 cycle bubble in the pipeline.

2.2.1.1 Branch Target Calculation

Branch target calculation is done in the IT stage. This alleviates a critical timing path in the IFU and removes the need for replicating the branch target logic on all 4 ways of the cache. In the case of a jump or a branch that is predicted taken, subsequent fetches from that TC will be killed (after the fetch of the delay slot). This added cycle is generally covered by the instruction buffer. If only a single TC is fetching and executing, a string of taken branches will slowly drain the instruction buffer as only two instructions are fetched every three cycles. The BogoMIPS calculation in most Linux distrbutions uses a very tight loop like this and will end up underreporting the capabilities of the CPU.

2.2.2 Return Prediction Stack

The return prediction stack (RPS) is a simple stack to hold return addresses. Every time a JAL, JALR ra, or BGEZAL is seen, the link address is pushed onto the stack. When a JR ra is executed, a link address is popped off of the stack. If calling convention is maintained and the stack doesn't overflow, this will have very high prediction accuracy. The RPS contains 4 entries.

The ALU will verify the correctness of the prediction in the EX stage. If the prediction was wrong, the fetch will be redirected in the MS stage and there will be a 4-5 cycle bubble from the misprediction.

JR that don't use ra are not predicted. The IFU will stall that TC until the ALU reads the register file. The timing on this will be the same as for a return mispredict.

On the 1004K CPU, there is one RPS shared between all the TCs. However, only one TC can use it at any point in time. A TC begins to utilize the RPS when it is the only TC that is runnable (i.e., when the 1004K CPU enters single-threaded mode).

2.2.3 ITLB

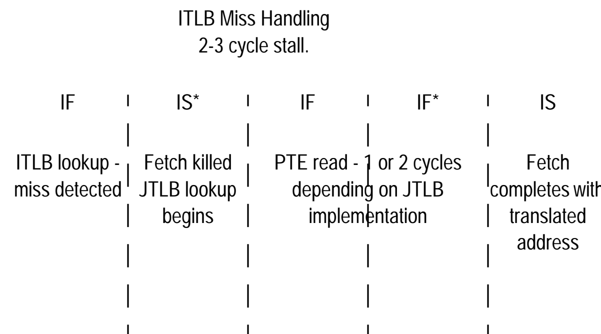
The IFU relies on a small subset of TLB entries stored locally in a four-entry ITLB to translate the PC into a physical address for tag comparison. The ITLB stores mappings for 4KB or 1MB pages or sub-pages (i.e. if the JTLB page is 64KB, only the 4KB sub-page containing the desired virtual address will be mapped into the ITLB). The ITLB access occurs in parallel with the primary cache lookup. If there is a miss in the ITLB, the BIU must look up the entry in the main JTLB.

On the 1004K CPU, to avoid multiple misses from many TCs thrashing the ITLB, there is a per-TC ITLB entry. Thus, a TC has access to one dedicated per-TC ITLB entry in addition to the three other common ITLB entries. When one of the 3 common ITLB entries is replaced (using an LRU algorithm), each of the per-TC entries will be checked to see if that translation had been used more recently than the per-TC entry. If it has, the evicted translation will replace the previous private translation.

A miss in the ITLB will be detected in the IF stage, and the IFU will kill that fetch. The virtual address and the miss indication will be sent to the BIU during IF, allowing the JTLB to start a lookup in the next cycle. The latency of the JTLB lookup can be impacted by several factors. The JTLB can be busy processing a DTLB miss or a TLB operation, delaying the start of the JTLB lookup. Also, the JTLB access time depends on how it is implemented. An SRAM-based PFN array will take an extra cycle over a flop-based version, yielding a 3 cycle latency instead of 2. The fetch will be restarted when the JTLB indicates that data is going to be returned. When there are multiple TCs running, after an ITLB miss request is dispatched to the JTLB, other TCs can keep fetching behind this ITLB miss. If another TC has an ITLB miss, then that TC will only restart fetching once the first ITLB miss has been serviced by the JTLB. In other words, at any point in time there can be only one outstanding ITLB miss but the ITLB miss is non-blocking for other TCs.

The cache coherence attributes can be reduced to one bit (uncached/cached) for the instruction cache. An ITLB entry will also record the associated JTLB entry, so that for a JTLB write, the ITLB can invalidate its copy if present.

Figure 2.8 Timing of an ITLB Miss

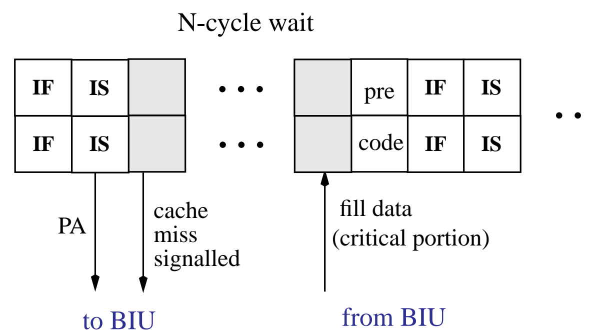


2.2.4 Cache Miss Timing

A miss in the instruction cache will be detected in the IS stage. The IFU will allocate one of the entries in the fill buffer and send the translated physical address and the miss indication to the BIU during the next cycle. The IFU will then enter an idle state and, assuming no redirect event, will replay the IF stage once the data returns from the BIU. Prior to writing into the cache, the IFU precodes the instructions with some additional information about branches/jumps that help speed up fetch unit processing of those instructions. Precoding the instructions and the write into the fill buffer will happen in the cycle the BIU returns the data, and in the following IF stage the data can be bypassed from the fill buffer. Thus, the IFU portion of the cache miss penalty is normally 4 cycles. The total miss penalty could range from a minimum of 10-12 cycles for an L2 hit to 50 or more for an access to main memory.

In the case of the 1004K CPU with multiple TCs running, a cache miss is non-blocking. Up to three outstanding cache misses (two on bus and one pending) are supported and it is possible for other TCs to keep fetching as long as they are hitting out of the instruction cache even with three pending cache misses.

Figure 2.9 Timing of a Cache Miss



2.2.5 MIPS16e™

The IFU is responsible for recoding MIPS16e instructions. Before the MIPS16e instruction is sent to the ALU, it is recoded into a 32b instruction. Some additional state is used for the MIPS16e instructions that does not have a direct counterpart in the MIPS32 instruction set (such as PC-relative loads and adds). This recoding step is handled in an additional pipeline stage that is only active when executing MIPS16e code.

In each cycle, the recode logic processes 32b of the instruction stream and puts 1-2 instructions in the fetch buffer. Many instructions can be generated two at a time, but there are two exceptions: JAL(X) and EXTENDED instruc-

tions are 32b. When the JAL(X) is in the 32b fetch window, it will be recoded in one cycle. If the JAL(X) starts in the middle of a fetch window, the first instruction will be recoded in the first cycle, and the fetch window will be shifted so the JAL(X) can be recoded in the second cycle. EXTENDs are handled the same way—the EXTEND and the instruction it is extending are only recoded when they are in the fetch window together. Since a single fetch of 64bits can result in up to 4 MIPS16e instructions, in MIPS16e mode, the processor fetches every other cycle. On the 1004K CPU, it is possible for these empty fetch cycles to be consumed by any other TC running in MIPS32 mode and thus keep the fetch pipe busy.

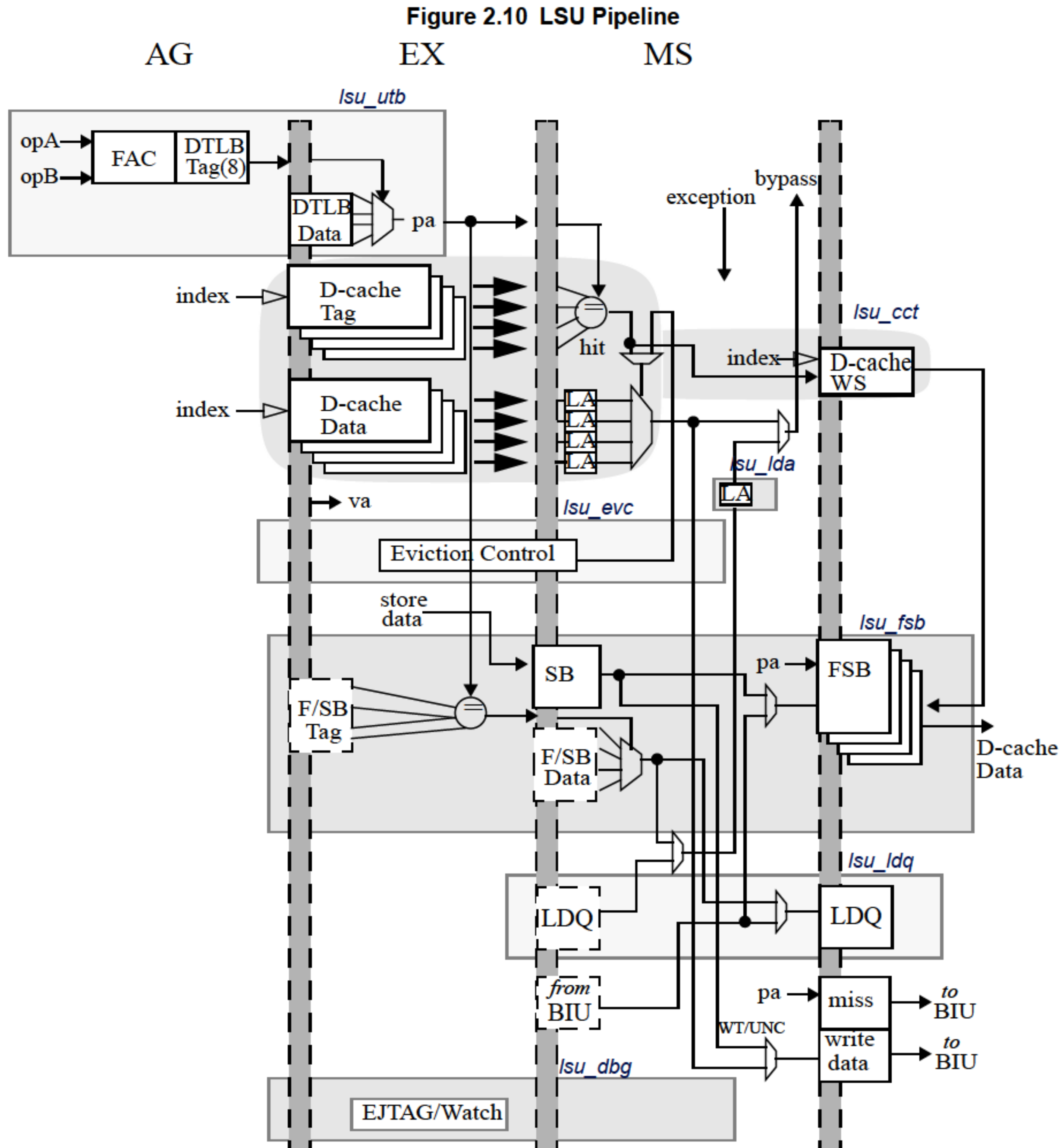
Table 2.1 Recode bandwidth

First 16b	Second 16b	32b Instns generated
16b instruction	16b instruction	2
Extend	16 instruction	1
16b instruction	Extend/JAL(X)	1
JAL(X)		1

2.3 Load Store Unit

The Load Store Unit (LSU) is responsible for loads and stores. This primarily includes the data cache control logic.

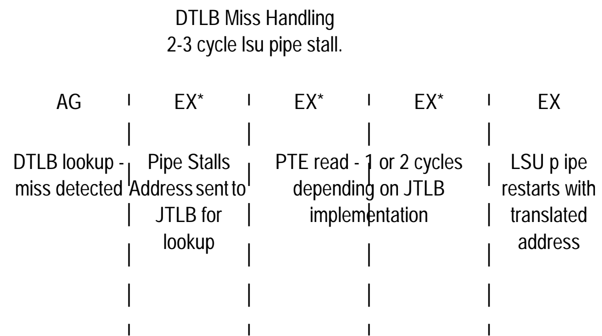
Figure 2.10 LSU Pipeline



2.3.1 DTLB

The data cache access begins in the AG stage. The ALU generates the virtual address in this stage. In parallel, the source operands are passed to the LSU and the 8-entry DTLB is accessed. If there is a miss in the DTLB, the LSU will stall and give the address to the BIU to lookup in the JTLB. If there is a hit in the JTLB, the page information will be returned to the LSU and the access will continue. Since it is only the LSU pipe that stalls on a DTLB miss, it is possible for other non load-store instructions to keep progressing down the ALU pipe.

Figure 2.11 DTLB Miss Timing



The DTLB will only store mappings either for 4K or 1M pages or subpages of a larger JTLB entry. A DTLB entry will also record the associated JTLB entry, so that for a JTLB write, the DTLB can invalidate its copy if present. The DTLB uses a pseudo-LRU replacement algorithm.

2.3.2 Data Cache Access

The data cache access is done during the EX stage. The tag and data arrays are accessed and the values are saved in flops for use in the MS stage. In parallel with the array lookup (in EX), the physical address is used to do an early tag compare on entries in the Fill Store Buffer (FSB) and Store Buffer (SB).

The SB is a single entry buffer that is used to stage store data into the other structures. It is fully bypass-able, allowing a load immediately after a store to the same address to execute without stalls. From the SB, the store data will move into the FSB if the store hits in the cache or it is an allocating miss. The store data is then written into the cache opportunistically.

During the MS stage, the data cache tags are compared to the physical address to determine whether a reference hit in the cache or not. If there is a hit, the way select (WS) array will be written to mark the most recently used way, and load data will be bypassed back to the ALU. On a cache miss, an FSB entry is allocated to hold the fill data as it returns from the BIU. The WS array is read and the replacement way is determined. If the line selected for replacement is dirty, an eviction will begin and the dirty data will be written back to memory. A load miss will also allocate an entry in the Load Queue (LDQ). This buffer is used to hold the aligned load data while it is being staged back into the ALU.

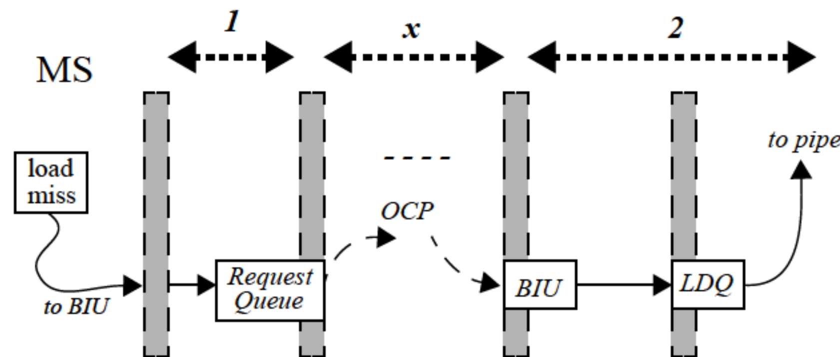
Once a line is scheduled for eviction, subsequent accesses can still hit in the evicted line as follows:

- An evicted clean line remains in the data cache until the new line replaces it. Loads can hit the evicted line as usual. However, stores will miss and force the evicted line to be re-allocated after the new line has been allocated. The allocation of the new line happens after all data is received from the main memory bus, but can be delayed since the refill happens opportunistically when the cache port is unused by the pipeline.

- An evicted dirty line remains in the data cache only until the line is written into the Write-Back Buffer (WBB). While it is in the cache, the behavior is the same as described above for clean lines. NOTE: The data movement from the cache into the WBB is also opportunistic and can be delayed until the pipeline is not accessing the cache.

The CPU portion of a load miss is shown in Figure 2.12. It takes one cycle to get from the LSU through the BIU and out onto the OCP bus. It takes at least 1 cycle for the data to be returned. Then 2 more cycles are required to get the data back to the ALU.

Figure 2.12 Cache Miss Timing



2.3.3 Outstanding misses

The 1004K CPU features non-blocking D-cache misses. In the cases where the following instructions are not dependent on the load data, the CPU can continue executing instructions while the miss is being processed. The CPU can handle multiple outstanding misses.

- Up to 8 independent cache lines - this includes cache refills requested for loads, stores, and prefetches as well as single uncached load requests. Multiple cacheable requests to the same line can be merged. This limit is dependent on the number of Fill-Store Buffer (FSB) entries the CPU is configured with.

- Up to 9 load misses - Up to 9 separate loads can be outstanding. The loads can be to different cache lines or multiple loads can be to the same cache line. This includes blocked ITC loads. This limit is dependent on the number of Load Data Queue (LDQ) entries the CPU was built with.

2.3.4 Uncached Accesses

Uncached accesses are handled similarly to cached accesses. The cacheability of the reference is not known until the address translation has completed in the EX stage, so the cache access is performed anyway. On an uncached reference, a miss will be forced. Uncached loads will request the exact amount of data required and allocate an FSB and LDQ entry. Uncached loads are non-blocking just like cached misses. Uncached stores will be sent to the BIU.

To the LSU, uncached accelerated stores look the same as uncached stores. In the BIU, however, they are handled differently—the BIU will attempt to gather uncached accelerated stores and do a bursted write to improve bus efficiency.

2.4 MDU Pipeline

The autonomous multiply/divide unit (MDU) has a separate pipeline for multiply and divide operations. This pipeline operates in parallel with the integer unit (ALU) pipeline and does not stall when the ALU pipeline stalls. This allows multi-cycle MDU operations, such as a divide, to be partially masked by system stalls and/or other integer unit instructions.

The CPU can be configured with either a high-performance or a low-area Multiply-Divide Unit (MDU). Most systems should utilize the high-performance MDU. For systems which are extremely cost sensitive and which do not

plan to utilize multiply or divide operations very often, the low-area MDU can be used. The following table summarizes the differences between the two options.

Table 2.2 MDU Comparison

Feature	High-Performance MDU	Low-Cost MDU
Fully MIPS32 Compliant	Yes	Yes
DSP-ASE Support	Yes	No
CorExtend/UDI Support	Yes	No
Approximate Size	90KGates	10KGates
Multiplier Implementation	32x32 Booth recoded array	Iterative
Early-In Divide Algorithm	Yes	No
Multiply/MAC Throughput	1 per cycle	1 every 32 cycles
Multiply Latency	1 cycle	32 cycles
Divide Latency	9, 17, 25, or 33[1] cycles	33 cycles
Config.MDU	0	1

1. The early-in divide algorithm shortens the divide depending on the size of the dividend

Since the Low-Cost multiplier does not include DSP-ASE or UDI support, it is only available in systems configured without UDI support and without DSP-ASE hardware.

The following subsections describe the multiplier options in more detail.

2.4.1 High-Performance MDU

The high-performance MDU consists of a 32x32 booth recoded multiplier array, separate carry-lookahead adders for multiply and divide, result/accumulation registers (*HI* and *LO*), multiply and divide state machines, and all necessary multiplexers and control logic.

Due to the multiplier array, the high-performance MDU supports execution of a multiply operation every clock cycle. Divide operations are implemented with a simple 1 bit per clock iterative algorithm with an early in detection of sign extension on the dividend *(rs)*. An attempt to issue a subsequent MDU instruction which would access the *HI* or *LO* register before the divide completes causes a delay in starting the subsequent MDU instruction. Some concurrency is enabled by the separate adders for the multiply and divide data paths. The MDU instruction may start executing once the divide is ensured of writing to the *HI* and *LO* registers before the MDU instruction will access them. A MUL instruction, which does not access the *HI* or *LO* register, may start executing anytime relative to a previous divide instruction.

Table 2.3 lists the number of stall cycles incurred between two dependent instructions. A stall of 0 clock cycles means that the first and second instructions can be issued back to back in the code without the MDU causing any stalls in the ALU pipeline.

Table 2.3 High-performance MDU Stalls

Size of Operand 1st Instruction[1]	Instruction Sequence		Stall Clocks
	1st Instruction	2nd Instruction	
32 bit	MULT/MULTU, MADD/MADDU, or MSUB/MSUBU	MADD/MADDU, MSUB/MSUBU, or MFHI/MFLO	0
32 bit	MUL	Integer operation[1]	4
8 bit	DIVU	MFHI/MFLO	7
16 bit	DIVU	MFHI/MFLO	15
24 bit	DIVU	MFHI/MFLO	23
32 bit	DIVU	MFHI/MFLO	31
8 bit	DIV	MFHI/MFLO	9[2]
16 bit	DIV	MFHI/MFLO	17[2]
24 bit	DIV	MFHI/MFLO	25[2]
32 bit	DIV	MFHI/MFLO	33[2]
any	MFHI/MFLO	Integer operation[1]	4
any	MTHI/MTLO	MADD/MADDU, MSUB/MSUBU	1
any	MTHI/MTLO	MFHI/MFLO	0

[1] Integer Operation refers to any integer instruction that uses the result of a previous MDU operation.
[2] If both operands are positive, then the two Sign Adjust stages are bypassed. Delay is then the same as for DIVU.

Table 2.4 lists the throughput rate for sequences of muliply instructions. The repeat rate of 1 for MULT/MULTU/MADD/MADDU/MSUB/MSUBU to MADD/MADDU/MSUB/MSUBU are achieved by feeding the result of the $M3_{MDU}$ stage for the first instruction back into the $M3_{MDU}$ stage for the second instruction.

Table 2.4 Multiply Repeat Rates

Instruction Sequence		Repeat Rate
1st Instruction	2nd Instruction	
MULT/MULTU, MADD/MADDU, MSUB/MSUBU	MADD/MADDU, MSUB/MSUBU	1
MUL	MUL (no data dependency)	1-3[1,2]

[1] There is no data dependency between first and second MUL. Otherwise, the repeat rate is the same as for MUL to integer operations in Figure 2.3
[2] MULs can be issued at the maximum rate of 3 every 5 cycles. Three can be issued back to back, but a fourth one would stall.

2.4.2 DSP ASE Instruction Latencies

Some cores may include support for DSP-ASE. Logic for these instructions is primarily located in the ALU and MDU blocks. Any DSP instructions accessing the accumulators or performing multiplication are implemented in the MDU. All others are implemented in the ALU. In addition to the "normal" MIPS32 HI/LO accumulator, the DSP ASE introduces three additional HI/LO accumulator pairs.

The latency and repeat rate for the BPOSGE32 instruction is similar to those for a MIPS32 conditional branch instruction. However, unlike a MIPS32 conditional branch instruction, BPOSGE32 is dependent on *DSPControl.Pos* and not a GPR. The LHX and LWX instructions are treated as non-blocking loads by the CPU; they have dependencies on the index and base registers. The delay and repeat rates for other DSP instructions are shown in the following tables. The 'delay' in Table 2.5 is in terms of pipeline clocks and refers to the number of cycles the pipeline must stall the second instruction to wait for the result of the first instruction. A delay of zero means that the first and second instructions can be issued back to back without stalling the pipeline. A delay of one means that if issued back to back, the pipeline will stall for one cycle.

Table 2.5 DSP Instruction Delays

Dependency on[1]	Instruction Sequence		Delay Clocks
	1st Instruction	2nd Instruction	
GPR	MUL*, EXT*, MFHI, MFLO (multiplies or HI/LO reads that write to a GPR)	Instruction with GPR input	4
GPR	Other (ALU) DSP instruction with GPR result	Instruction with GPR input	1
HI/LO	DPAQ*, DPSQ*, MULSAQ*, MAQ*, MADD*, MSUB*, MULT*, MTHI, MTLO, MTTR, SHILO*, MTHLIP (HI/LO writes)	MFHI, MFLO, MFTR (HI/LO reads)	0
HI/LO	*_SA (MAC's that saturates after accumulate)	DPAQ*, DPSQ*, MULSAQ*, MAQ*, MADD*, MSUB* (MAC's)	1
HI/LO	DPAQ_S.*, DPSQ_S.*, MULSAQ*, MAQ_S.*, MADD*, MSUB* (MAC's that do not saturate after accumulate)	DPAQ*, DPSQ*, MULSAQ*, MAQ*, MADD*, MSUB* (MAC's)	0
HI/LO	MTHI, MTLO, MTTR, SHILO*, MTHLIP (HI/LO writes that are not multiplies)	DPAQ*, DPSQ*, MULSAQ*, MAQ*, MADD*, MSUB* (MAC's)	1
HI/LO	DPAQ*, DPSQ*, MULSAQ*, MAQ*, MADD*, MSUB*, MULT*, MTHI, MTLO, MTTR, EXT*, SHILO*, MTHLIP (HI/LO writes)	EXT*, SHILO* (HI/LO shifts)	3
HI/LO	DPAQ*, DPSQ*, MULSAQ*, MAQ*, MADD*, MSUB*, MULT*, MTHI, MTLO, MTTR, SHILO*, MTHLIP (HI/LO writes)	MTHLIP	3

1. For dependencies on a HI/LO accumulator, the delay clocks shown assume that the 1st and 2nd instruction are operating on the same accumulator.

The delays shown in table Table 2.5 with a dependency on a HI/LO accumulator pair assume that the dependent instruction sequence is operating on the *same* accumulator pair. This is the worst case situation. The delay clock value can be reduced when the second instruction operates on a different accumulator. For example, consider the following sequence:

```
MULT (writing to accumulator 0)
MADD (writing to accumulator 1)
MSUB (writing to accumulator 2)
EXTR (reading from accumulator n)
```

If the EXTR instruction is reading accumulator 2 (n=2), then a delay of 3 cycles would apply between the MSUB and EXTR operation, as directly indicated in Table 2.5. If the EXTR reads accumulator 1, then a delay of 2 cycles would apply between the MADD and EXTR, since there's already one unrelated instruction in between the dependent ones. If the EXTR reads accumulator 0, then a delay of 1 would apply between the MULT and EXTR. Finally, if the EXTR instruction is reading accumulator 3, then no delay would be incurred in the sequence.

Table 2.6 shows the repeat rates for interesting sequences of instructions which perform multiplication. The repeat rate is the number of cycles the second instruction can be issued after the first instruction. A repeat rate of 1 indicates that the second instruction can be issued immediately after the first instruction with no delay cycle in between. For the first row, the repeat rate is for the case where there is no GPR dependency between the first and the second instruction.

Table 2.6 Multiply Repeat Rates

1st Instruction	2nd Instruction	Repeat Rate
MUL, MULQ*, MULE*	MUL, MULQ*, MULE*	1
DPAQ_S.*, DPSQ_S.*, MULSAQ*, MAQ_S.*, MADD*, MSUB*, MULT	DPAQ*, DPSQ*, MULSAQ*, MAQ*, MADD*, MSUB*	1
*_SA	DPAQ*, DPSQ*, MULSAQ*, MAQ*, MADD*, MSUB*	2

Dependencies on the *DSPControl* register are handled in hardware. "Hot" values for most fields in this register are kept in EX/MS staging registers so the next instruction to execute will be able to use the most recent value as its input. The *ouflag* field is an exception because some of the *ouflag* bits are updated later than EX. For example, the DPAQ_SA instruction will update some *ouflag* bits when it completes at the end of the A stage in the MDU pipeline. However, a subsequent RDDSP* instruction needs to examine the *ouflag* value in EX. To handle this, additional logic has been added to ensure that the RDDSP* instruction is stalled until there are no DSP instruction in the MDU pipeline which may modify an *ouflag* bit.

Table 2.7 shows the delays for interesting sequences of instructions in which there is a dependency on the *DSPControl* register. The delays given assume that there is no data dependency other than that on the *DSPControl* register between the first and second instruction.

Table 2.7 Delays for Interesting Sequences with *DSPControl* Dependency

1st Instruction	2nd Instruction	Delay Clocks
ADDSC	ADDWC	0
CMP*	PICK*	0
WRDSP*	INSV*	0

2.4.3 High-performance MDU Pipeline Stages

The multiply operation begins in B_{MDU} stage, which would be the EX stage in the integer pipeline. The booth recoding function occurs at this time. The multiply calculation requires three clocks and occurs in the $M1_{MDU}$, $M2_{MDU}$, and $M3_{MDU}$ stages. The carry-lookahead-add (CLA) function occurs at the end of the $M3_{MDU}$ stage. In the A_{MDU} stage, the result is selected from the multiply data path, *HI* register, and *LO* register to be returned to the ALU for the MFHI, MFLO, and MUL instructions. If the MDU instruction is not one of these, the result is selected to be written into the *HI/LO* registers instead. The result is ready to be read from the *HI/LO* registers in the W_{MDU} stage.

The following figures illustrate a multiply (accumulate) instruction and the interaction with the main integer pipeline. These figures are applicable to MUL, MULT, MULTU, MADD, MADDU, MSUB, and MSUBU instructions

Figure 2.13 Multiply Pipeline

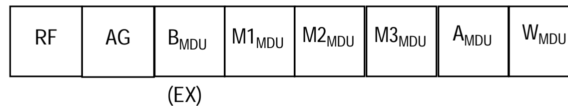


Figure 2.14 Multiply With Dependency From ALU

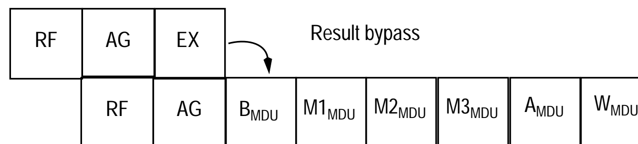
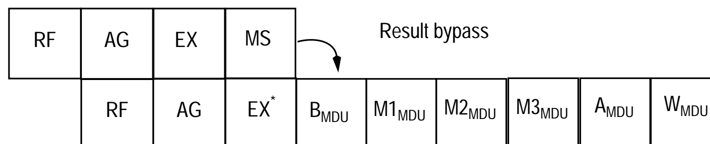
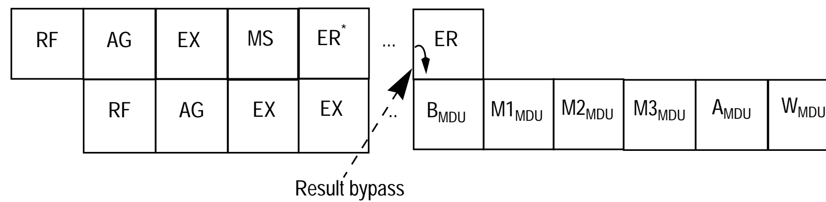


Figure 2.15 Multiply With Dependency From Load Hit



* - MUL enters EX stage but stalls because data is not ready

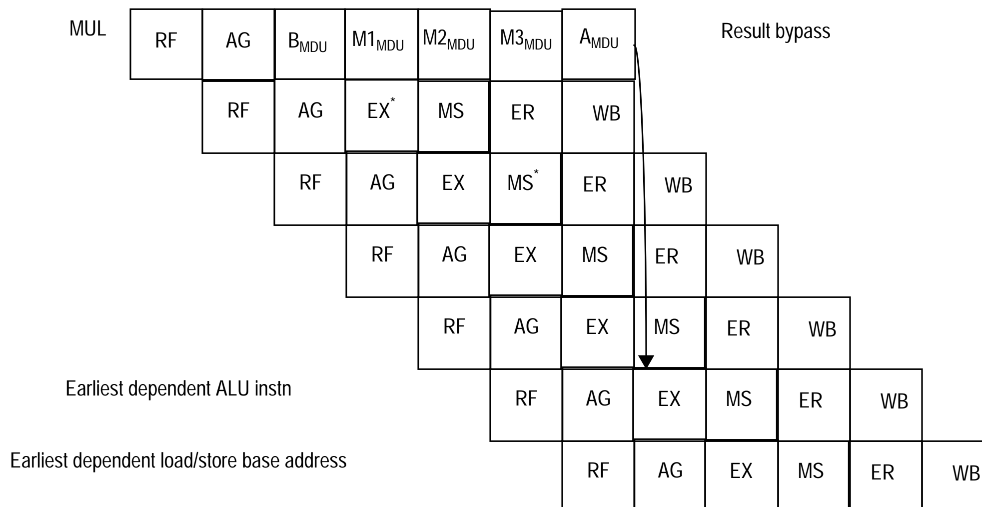
Figure 2.16 Multiply With Dependency From Load Miss



The following figure shows the results of the GPR targeted MUL instruction being bypassed to a later instruction. Independent instructions can execute while the multiply is happening. If a dependent instruction is found, it will stall until the result is available. When the MUL completes, it will arbitrate for access to the write port of the register file. If the integer pipe is busy with other instructions, the MDU pipeline will stall until the result can be written.

If the MUL target is being used as the base address for a load or store instruction, it needs to be bypassed by the AG stage, so one extra cycle will be required.

Figure 2.17 subtractMUL Bypassing Result to Integer Instructions



2.4.4 High-performance MDU Divide Operations

Divide operations are implemented using a simple non-restoring division algorithm. This algorithm works only for positive operands, hence the first cycle of the M_{MDU} stage is used to negate the *rs* operand (RS Adjust) if needed. Note that this cycle is spent even if the adjustment is not necessary. In cycle 2, the first add/subtract iteration is executed. In cycle 3 an early-in detection is performed. The adjusted *rs* operand is detected to be zero extended on the upper most 8, 16 or 24 bits. If this is the case the following 7, 15 or 23 cycles of the add/subtract iterations are skipped. During the next maximum 31 cycles (4-34), the remaining iterative add/subtract loop is executed.

The remainder adjust (Rem Adjust) cycle is required if the remainder was negative. Note that this cycle is spent even if the remainder was positive. A sign adjust is performed on the quotient and/or remainder if necessary. The sign adjust stages are skipped if both operands are positive.

Figure 2.18, Figure 2.19, Figure 2.20 and Figure 2.21 show the worst case latencies for 8, 16, 24 and 32 bit divide operations, respectively. The worst case repeat rate is either 14, 22, 30 or 38 cycles (two less if the *sign adjust* stage is skipped).

Figure 2.18 MDU Pipeline Flow During a 8-bit Divide (DIV) Operation

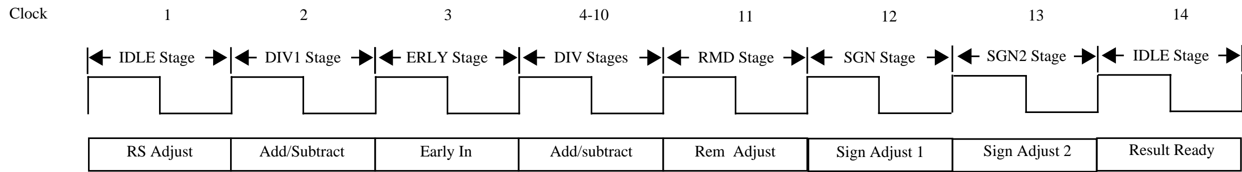


Figure 2.19 MDU Pipeline Flow During a 16-bit Divide (DIV) Operation

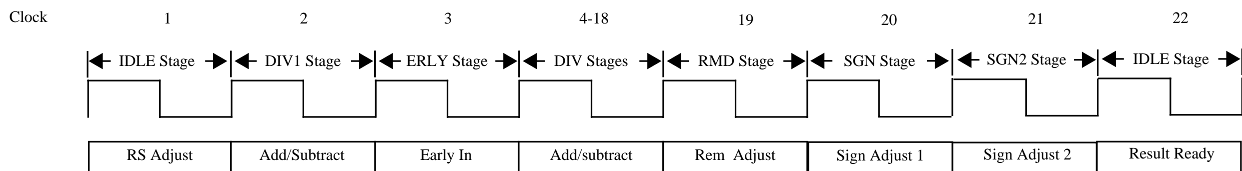


Figure 2.20 MDU Pipeline Flow During a 24-bit Divide (DIV) Operation

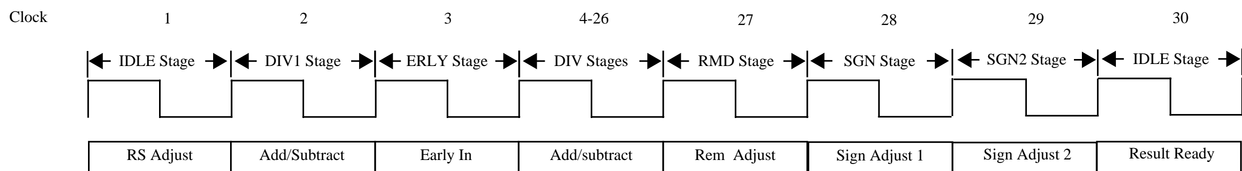
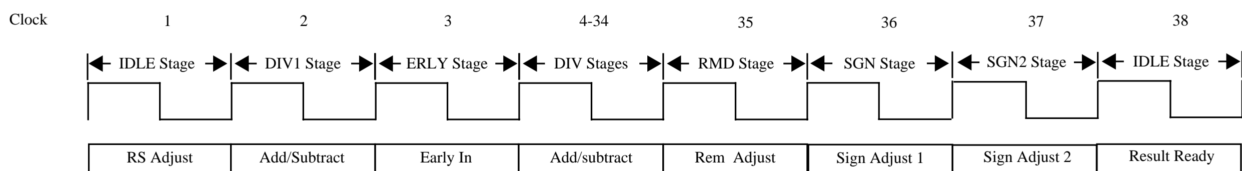


Figure 2.21 MDU Pipeline Flow During a 32-bit Divide (DIV) Operation



2.4.5 Low-Area MDU

The low-area MDU implements a simple iterative algorithm for both multiply and divide operations. performance optimizations are not done in order to keep the area and complexity as small as possible.

2.5 Skewed ALU

The 1004K CPU has a skewed ALU. This is referring to the fact that the ALU is located in the EX stage instead of the AG stage. This allows the load to use delay to be two cycles, the same as it was in the shorter 4KE pipeline. Software optimized for that pipeline can run without incurring additional stalls. Of course, this does not come for free - an

ALU instruction generating the base address for a load or store will have an additional cycle stall. Independent of the ALU location, pointer chasing loads (loads generating the base address for following loads) will see the full 3 cycles of cache access time.

This is shown in Figure 2.22. The earliest an ALU consumer of load data can issue is two cycles after the load. The earliest a load/store consumer can issue is three cycles after the load.

The bypass of data from the ALU is shown in Figure 2.23. For back to back ALU instructions, the result is bypassed from the EX stage to the AG stage. For an ALU bypassing to the base address register of a load or store, the bypassing is from the EX stage to the RF stage and the load cannot issue until two cycles after the ALU instruction. Note that the data register for a store is not used in the AG stage and a dependency there will look like the ALU to ALU bypass.

Figure 2.22 Load Data Bypass

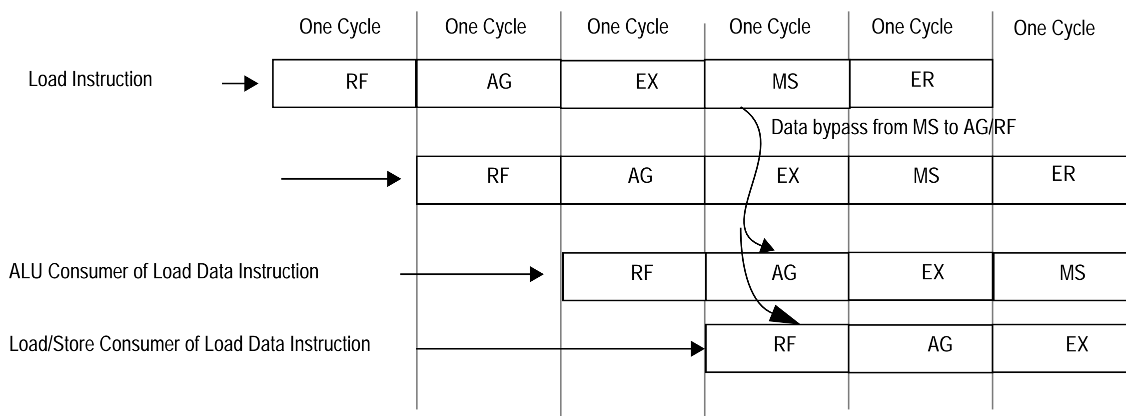
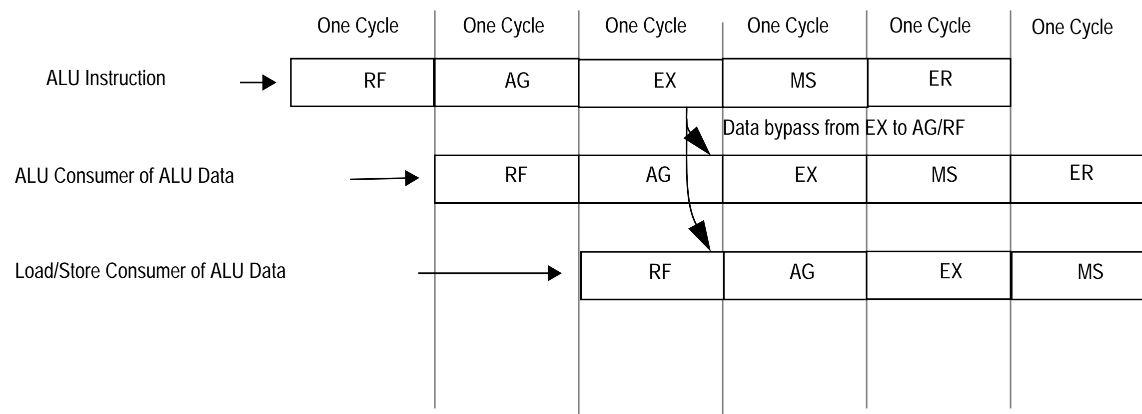


Figure 2.23 ALU Data Bypass



2.6 Interlock Handling

Smooth pipeline flow is interrupted when cache misses occur or when data dependencies are detected. Interruptions handled entirely in hardware, such as cache misses, are referred to as *interlocks*. At each cycle, interlock conditions are checked for all active instructions.

Table 2.8 lists the types of pipeline interlocks for the 1004K processor CPU.

Table 2.8 Pipeline Interlocks

Interlock Type	Sources	Rollback Condition	Slip Stage
GPR dependency - load/store address	Dest. register for any instruction in previous cycle	Dependency caused by a long latency load	AG
	Dest. register for loads/MFCx/MDU instns in previous 2 cycles		
MDU busy	Previous MDU operation not completed	MFHI/LO following a DIV	AG
GPR dependency	Dest. register for loads/MFCx/MDU instns in previous cycle	Dependency caused by a long latency load	EX
LDQ full	Load in pipe while Load Queue is full	None	
Blocking load bubble	Blocking load immediately following another blocking load	None	
SYNC, I-Cache	Previous I-Cache not completed	I-Cache inst. while previous I-Cache not completed	
Destination GPR dependency	Outstanding GPR write to same register	Dependency caused by a long latency load	MS
WBB full	Store/CACHE instn in pipe while Write-back Buffer is full	None	
SPRAM busy	SPRAM load/store in pipe while SPRAM is busy	None	
FSB flush	SYNC/CACHE/load/store instn requires Fill Store Buffer to be flushed	None	
DTLB miss	Load/Store address miss in microTLB	None	
CACHE	CACHE instn needs to re-access data cache	None	
L2 CACHE	Previous L2 CACHE not completed	None	
Blocking load miss	Load misses with non-blocking loads disabled	None	ER

In the 1004K, some interlocks stall the pipeline and block all TCs until the interlock condition is satisfied. In other cases, the instruction that is waiting for an interlock event is rolled back to allow other TCs to make progress. Table 2.8 identifies the interlocks that can be rolled back.

2.7 Instruction Interlocks

Most instructions can be issued at a rate of one per clock cycle. In order to adhere to the sequential programming model, the issue of an instruction must sometimes be delayed. This to ensure that the result of a prior instruction is

available. Table 2.9 details the instruction interactions that prevent an instruction from advancing in the processor pipeline.

Table 2.9 Instruction Interlocks

Instruction Interlocks			
First Instruction	**Second Instruction**	**Issue Delay (in Clock Cycles)**	**Slip Stage**
LB/LBU/LH/LHU/LL/LW/LWL/LWR	ALU Consumer of load data	1	EX stage
	Load/Store consumer for base address register	2	AG stage
MFC0	ALU consumer of destination register	2	EX stage
	Load/store consumer for base address	3	AG stage
MULTx/MADDx/MSUBx	MFLO/MFHI	0	
MUL/MFHI/MFLO	ALU Consumer of target data	4	EX stage
	Load/Store consumer of target data for base address	5	AG stage
MULTx/MADDx/MSUBx	MULT/MUL/MADD/MSUB MTHI/MTLO/DIV	0	EX stage
DIV	MUL/MULTx/MADDx/MSUBx/MTHI/MTLO/MFHI/MFLO/DIV	See Figure 2.3	EX stage
DSP related instructions	ALU consumer or other DSP instruction	See Table 2.5	EX stage
DSP instruction updating *DSPControl.ouflag*	RDDSP/WRDSP	See 2.4.2	EX stage
TLBWR/TLBWI	Load/Store/PREF/CACHE/COP0 op	2	EX stage
TLBR		1	EX stage

2.8 Hazards

In general, the 1004K CPU ensures that instructions are executed following a fully sequential program model. Each instruction in the program sees the results of the previous instruction. There are some deviations to this model. These deviations are referred to as *hazards*.

Prior to Release 2 of the MIPS32® Architecture, hazards (primarily CP0 hazards) were relegated to implementation-dependent cycle-based solutions, primarily based on the SSNOP instruction. This has been an insufficient and error-prone practice that must be addressed with a firm compact between hardware and software. As such, new instructions have been added to Release 2 of the architecture which act as explicit barriers that eliminate hazards. To the extent that it was possible to do so, the new instructions have been added in such a way that they are backward-compatible with existing MIPS processors.

However, on the 1004K CPU there are a number of inter-TC hazards that cannot be resolved even by using the hazard barrier instructions. As such on the 1004K CPU the TCs have no relation to each other and software has to enforce that relation to avoid these hazards.

2.8.1 Types of Hazards

With one exception, all hazards were eliminated in Release 1 of the Architecture for unprivileged software. The exception occurs when unprivileged software writes a new instruction sequence and then wishes to jump to it. Such an operation remained a hazard, and is addressed by the capabilities of Release 2.

In privileged software, there are two different types of hazards: *execution hazards* and *instruction hazards*. Both are defined below.

2.8.1.1 Execution Hazards

Execution hazards are those created by the execution of one instruction, and seen by the execution of another instruction. These hazards should be resolved by executing an EHB instruction or an instruction hazard barrier (JR.HB, JALR.HB, or ERET) between the two instructions. Table 2.10 lists execution hazards.

Table 2.10 Execution Hazards

Producer	→	Consumer	Hazard On	Spacing (Instructions)
TLBWR, TLBWI	→	TLBP, TLBR	TLB entry	2
		Load/store using new TLB entry	TLB entry	3
MTC0	→	Load/store affected by new state	WatchHi WatchLo	2
MTC0	→	MFC0	any cp0 register	2
MTC0	→	EI/DI	Status	2
MTC0	→	RDHWR $3	Count	2
MTC0	→	ERET	EPC DEPC ErrorEPC	2
MTC0	→	ERET	Status	2
EI, DI	→	Interrupted instruction	$Status_{IE}$	2
MTC0	→	Interrupted instruction	Status	2
MTC0	→	User-defined instruction (only for Pro core)	StatusERL StatusEXL	4
MTC0	→	Interrupted Instruction	$Cause_{IP}$	2
TLBR	→	MFC0	EntryHi, EntryLo0, EntryLo1, Page- Mask	2
TLBP	→	MFC0	Index	2
MTC0	→	TLBR TLBWI TLBWR	EntryHi	2
MTC0	→	TLBP Load/store affected by new state	$EntryHi_{ASID}$	2
MTC0	→	TLBWI TLBWR	EntryLo0 EntryLo1	2
MTC0	→	TLBWI TLBWR	Index	2

Table 2.10 Execution Hazards

Producer	→	Consumer	Hazard On	Spacing (Instructions)
MTC0	→	RDPGPR WRPGPR	$SRSCtl_{PSS}$	1
MTC0	→	CACHE	DDataLo, DTagLo	1
MTC0	→	Instruction not seeing a Timer Interrupt	Compare update that clears Timer Interrupt	4[1]
MTC0	→	Load/Store affected by new state	$EntryHi_{ASID}$	3
MTC0	→	Load/Store affected by new state	$Status_{ERL}$	3
MTC0	→	Load/Store affected by new state	$Debug_{LSNM}$	3
MTC0	→	Coprocessor instruction affected by new state	$Status_{CU}$	4
MTC0	→	Coprocessor instruction affected by new state	$Status_{FR}$	4
MTCO	→	DSP instruction affected by new state	$Status_{MX}$	4
MTCO	→	CorExtend instruction affected by new state	$Status_{CEE}$	3
MTC0	→	MFTR / MTTR	$VpeControl_{TargTC}$	4
MTC0	→	Instruction affected by change	Any other CP0 register	2
CACHE	→	MFC0, generally cacheop results being consumed by MFC0 instruction.	Cache related CP0 registers	2

1. This is the minimum value. Actual value is system-dependent since it is a function of the sequential logic between the *SI_TimerInt* output and the external logic which feeds *SI_TimerInt* back into one of the *SI_Int* inputs, or a function of the method for handling *SI_TimerInt* in an external interrupt controller.

2.8.1.2 Instruction Hazards

Instruction hazards are those created by the execution of one instruction, and seen by the instruction fetch of another instruction. Table 2.11 lists instruction hazards. Because the fetch unit is decoupled from the execution unit, these hazards are rather large. The use of a hazard barrier instruction is highly recommended for reliable clearing of instruction hazards.

Table 2.11 Instruction Hazards

Producer	→	Consumer	Hazard On	Spacing (Instructions)
TLBWR, TLBWI	→	Instruction fetch using new TLB entry	TLB entry	10
MTC0	→	Instruction fetch seeing the new value including: 1 change to ERL followed by an instruction fetch from the useg segment and 2 change to ERL or EXL followed by a Watch exception	Status	10
MTC0	→	Instruction fetch seeing the new value	$EntryHi_{ASID}$	10
MTC0	→	Instruction fetch seeing the new value	WatchHi WatchLo	10

Table 2.11 Instruction Hazards

Producer	→	Consumer	Hazard On	Spacing (Instructions)
Instruction stream write via CACHE	→	Instruction fetch seeing the new instruction stream	Cache entries	10
Instruction stream write via store	→	Instruction fetch seeing the new instruction stream	Cache entries	System-dependent[1]

1. This value depends on how long it takes for the store value to propagate through the system.

2.8.2 Instruction Listing

Table 2.12 lists the instructions designed to eliminate hazards. See the document titled *MIPS32® Architecture for Programmers Volume II: The MIPS32 Instruction Set* (MD00084) for a more detailed description of these instructions.

Table 2.12 Hazard Instruction Listing

Mnemonic	Function
EHB	Clear execution hazard
ERET	Clears both execution and instruction hazards
JALR.HB	Clears both execution and instruction hazards
JR.HB	Clears both execution and instruction hazards
SYNCI	Synchronize caches after instruction stream write

2.8.2.1 Instruction Encoding

The EHB instruction is encoded using a variant of the NOP/SSNOP encoding. This encoding was chosen for compatibility with the Release 1 SSNOP instruction, such that existing software may be modified to be compatible with both Release 1 and Release 2 implementations. See the EHB instruction description for additional information.

The JALR.HB and JR.HB instructions are encoding using bit 10 of the *hint* field of the JALR and JR instructions. These encodings were chosen for compatibility with existing MIPS implementations, including many which pre-date the MIPS32 architecture. Because a pipeline flush clears hazards on most early implementations, the JALR.HB or JR.HB instructions can be included in existing software for backward and forward compatibility. See the JALR.HB and JR.HB instructions for additional information.

The SYNCI instruction is encoded using a new encoding of the REGIMM opcode. This encoding was chosen because it causes a Reserved Instruction exception on all Release 1 implementations. As such, kernel software running on processors that don't implement Release 2 can emulate the function using the CACHE instruction. SYNCI must be used in conjunction with an instruction hazard barrier to ensure that the updated value is seen.

```
SYNCI  offset(base)
SYNC
JR.HB
NOP
```

2.8.3 Eliminating Hazards

The Spacing column shown in Table 2.10 and Table 2.11 indicates the number of unrelated instructions (such as NOPs or SSNOPs) that, prior to the capabilities of Release 2, would need to be placed between the producer and consumer of the hazard in order to ensure that the effects of the first instruction are seen by the second instruction. Entries in the table that are listed as 0 are traditional MIPS hazards which are not hazards on the 1004K CPU.

With the hazard elimination instructions available in Release 2, the preferred method to eliminate hazards is to place one of the instructions listed in Table 2.12 between the producer and consumer of the hazard. Execution hazards can be removed by using the EHB, JALR.HB, or JR.HB instructions. Instruction hazards can be removed by using the JALR.HB or JR.HB instructions, in conjunction with the SYNCI instruction.

2.9 Instruction Rollback And Its Implications

As described earlier (and listed out in Table 2.8), the 1004K CPU has the capability to rollback certain instructions when a TC is stalled so as to unstall the shared pipeline and allow other TCs to make forward progress. Flushing back a dependent instruction on a load miss is a good example of this. Another example is a I-side cacheop being rolled back if the fetch unit is already processing another cacheop.

However, instruction rollbacks associated with dependency stalls on shared resources (like cacheops) can have some interesting side effects. As an example, if two TCs are executing cacheops (lets say TC0 and TC2) and a TC in the middle (TC1) is executing other instructions and hitting out of the cache, in a pathological case, it is possible that TC0’s cahceops will keep getting rolled back and TC2’s cacheops will complete. However, the processor is not deadlocked or livelocked and is making forward progress on other TCs. In such situations, it is possible to see temporary starvation of a TC.

Chapter 3

Floating-Point Unit of the 1004Kf™ CPU

This chapter describes the MIPS64® Floating-Point Unit (FPU) included in the 1004Kf CPU. This chapter contains the following sections:

- Section 3.1 "Features Overview"
- Section 3.2 "Enabling the Floating-Point Coprocessor"
- Section 3.3 "Data Formats"
- Section 3.4 "Floating-Point General Registers"
- Section 3.5 "Floating-Point Control Registers"
- Section 3.6 "Instruction Overview"
- Section 3.7 "Exceptions"
- Section 3.8 "Pipeline and Performance"

3.1 Features Overview

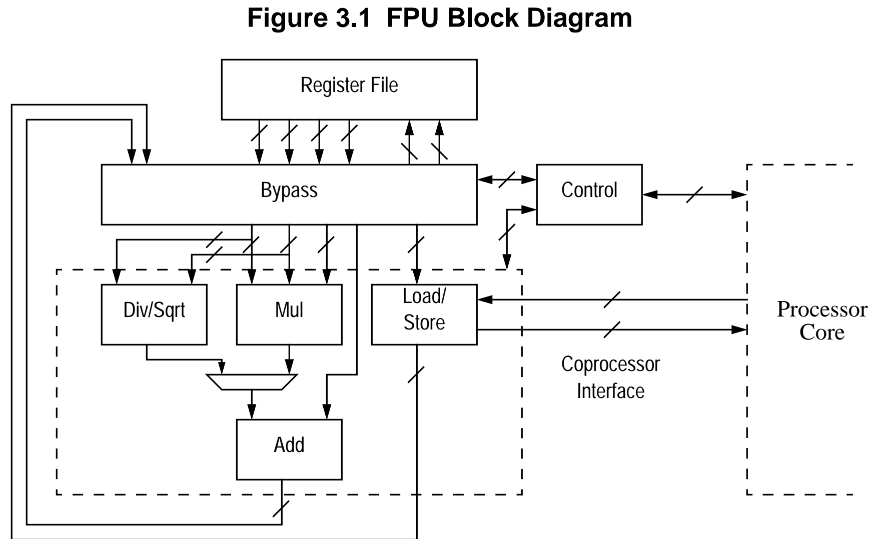
The FPU is provided via Coprocessor 1. Together with its dedicated system software, the FPU fully complies with the ANSI/IEEE Standard 754-1985, *IEEE Standard for Binary Floating-Point Arithmetic*. The MIPS architecture supports the recommendations of IEEE Standard 754, and the coprocessor implements a precise exception model. The key features of the FPU are listed below:

- Full 64-bit operation is implemented in both the register file and functional units.
- A 32-bit Floating-Point Control Register controls the operation of the FPU, and monitors condition codes and exception conditions.
- Full multithreaded support is included. Each TC will contain a full 32-entry floating point register file plus the FCSR control register.
- Like the main CPU, Coprocessor 1 is programmed and operated using a Load/Store instruction set. The CPU communicates with Coprocessor 1 using a dedicated coprocessor interface. The FPU functions as an autonomous unit. The hardware is completely interlocked such that, when writing software, the programmer does not have to worry about inserting delay slots after loads and between dependent instructions.
- Additional arithmetic operations not specified by IEEE Standard 754 (for example, reciprocal and reciprocal square root) are specified by the MIPS architecture and are implemented by the FPU. In order to achieve low latency counts, these instructions satisfy more relaxed precision requirements.

- The MIPS architecture further specifies compound multiply-add instructions. These instructions meet the IEEE accuracy specification where the result is numerically identical to an equivalent computation using multiply, add, subtract, or negate instructions.

Figure 3.1 depicts a block diagram of the FPU.

Figure 3.1 FPU Block Diagram



The MIPS architecture is designed such that a combination of hardware and software can be used to implement the architecture. The 1004K CPU FPU can operate on numbers within a specific range (in general, the IEEE normalized numbers), but it relies on a software handler to operate on numbers not handled by the FPU hardware (in general, the IEEE denormalized numbers). Supported number ranges for different instructions are described later in this chapter. A fast Flush To Zero mode is provided to optimize performance for cases where IEEE denormalized operands and results are not supported by hardware. The fast Flush to Zero mode is enabled through the CP1 *FCSR* register; use of this mode is recommended for best performance.

3.1.1 IEEE Standard 754

The IEEE Standard 754-1985, *IEEE Standard for Binary Floating-Point Arithmetic*, is referred to in this chapter as "IEEE Standard 754". IEEE Standard 754 defines the following:

- Floating-point data types
- The basic arithmetic, comparison, and conversion operations
- A computational model

IEEE Standard 754 does not define specific processing resources nor does it define an instruction set.

For more information about this standard, see the IEEE web page at `http://stdsbbs.ieee.org/`.

3.2 Enabling the Floating-Point Coprocessor

The FPU can be configured at build time to have a single thread context or to be fully multithreaded. When multi-threaded, each TC has its own separate FPU regfile context.

NOTE: If the single-threaded FPU is used, it may only be used by one TC at any given time by setting the TCU1 bit in the *TCStatus* register of that TC. It is the operating system's responsibility to make sure that only one TC owns the FPU as described above. Any attempt to execute a floating-point instruction by a TC that does not own the Floating-Point Coprocessor, causes a Coprocessor Unusable exception.

3.3 Data Formats

The FPU provides both floating-point and fixed-point data types, which are described below:

- The single- and double-precision floating-point data types are those specified by IEEE Standard 754.
- The fixed-point types are signed integers provided by the MIPS architecture.

3.3.1 Floating-Point Formats

The FPU provides the following two floating-point formats:

- a 32-bit single-precision floating point (type S, shown in Figure 3.2)
- a 64-bit double-precision floating point (type D, shown in Figure 3.3)

The floating-point data types represent numeric values as well as the following special entities:

- Two infinities, $+\infty$ and $-\infty$
- Signaling non-numbers (SNaNs)
- Quiet non-numbers (QNaNs)
- Numbers of the form: $(-1)^s\ 2^E\ b_0.b_1\ b_2..b_{p-1}$, where:
  - s = 0 or 1
  - E = any integer between E_min and E_max, inclusive
  - b_i = 0 or 1 (the high bit, b_0, is to the left of the binary point)
  - p is the signed-magnitude precision

The single and double floating-point data types are composed of three fields—sign, exponent, fraction—whose sizes are listed in Table 3.1.

Table 3.1 Parameters of Floating-Point Data Types

Parameter	Single	Double
Bits of mantissa precision, p	24	53
Maximum exponent, E_max	+127	+1023
Minimum exponent, E_min	-126	-1022
Exponent *bias*	+127	+1023
Bits in exponent field, *e*	8	11

Table 3.1 Parameters of Floating-Point Data Types (Continued)

Parameter	Single	Double
Representation of b_0 integer bit	hidden	hidden
Bits in fraction field, *f*	23	52
Total format width in bits	32	64
Magnitude of largest representable number	3.4028234664e+38	1.7976931349e+308
Magnitude of smallest normalized representable number	1.1754943508e-38	2.2250738585e-308

Layouts of these three fields are shown in Figure 3.2 and Figure 3.3 below. The fields are:

- 1-bit sign, *s*
- Biased exponent, $e = E + bias$
- Binary fraction, $f = .b_1\ b_2..b_{p-1}$ (the *b*0 bit is *hidden*; it is not recorded)

Figure 3.2 Single-Precision Floating-Point Format (S)

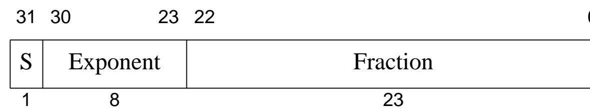
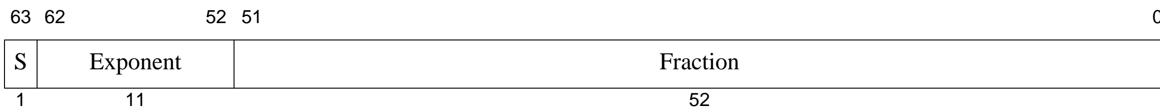


Figure 3.3 Double-Precision Floating-Point Format (D)



Values are encoded in the specified format using the unbiased exponent, fraction, and sign values listed in Table 3.2. The high-order bit of the Fraction field, identified as b_1, is also important for NaNs.

Table 3.2 Value of Single or Double Floating-Point Data Type Encoding

Unbiased E	f	s	b_1	Value V	Type of Value	Typical Single Bit Pattern[1]	Typical Double Bit Pattern[1]
E_max + 1	≠ 0		1	SNaN	Signaling NaN	0x7fffffff	0x7fffffff ffffffff
			0	QNaN	Quiet NaN	0x7fbfffff	0x7ff7ffff ffffffff
E_max +1	0	1		- ∞	Minus infinity	0xff800000	0xfff00000 00000000
		0		+ ∞	Plus infinity	0x7f800000	0x7ff00000 00000000
E_max to *E_min*		1		$-(2^E)(1.f)$	Negative normalized number	0x80800000 through 0xff7fffff	0x80100000 00000000 through 0xffefffff ffffffff
		0		$+(2^E)(1.f)$	Positive normalized number	0x00800000 through 0x7f7fffff	0x00100000 00000000 through 0x7fefffff ffffffff

Table 3.2 Value of Single or Double Floating-Point Data Type Encoding (Continued)

Unbiased E	f	s	b_1	Value V	Type of Value	Typical Single Bit Pattern[1]	Typical Double Bit Pattern[1]
E_min -1	≠ 0	1		$-\ (2^{E_min})(0.f)$	Negative denormalized number	`0x807fffff`	`0x800fffff ffffffff`
		0		$+\ (2^{E_min})(0.f)$	Positive denormalized number	`0x007fffff`	`0x000fffff ffffffff`
E_min -1	0	1		- 0	Negative zero	`0x80000000`	`0x80000000 00000000`
		0		+ 0	positive zero	`0x00000000`	`0x00000000 00000000`

1. The "Typical" nature of the bit patterns for the NaN and denormalized values reflects the fact that the sign might have either value (NaN) and that the fraction field might have any non-zero value (both). As such, the bit patterns shown are one value in a class of potential values that represent these special values.

3.3.1.1 Normalized and Denormalized Numbers

For single and double data types, each representable nonzero numerical value has just one encoding; numbers are kept in normalized form. The high-order bit of the p-bit mantissa, which lies to the left of the binary point, is "hidden," and not recorded in the *Fraction* field. The encoding rules permit the value of this bit to be determined by looking at the value of the exponent. When the unbiased exponent is in the range *E_min* to *E_max*, inclusive, the number is normalized and the hidden bit must be 1. If the numeric value cannot be normalized because the exponent would be less than *E_min*, then the representation is denormalized, the encoded number has an exponent of *E_min* – 1, and the hidden bit has the value 0. Plus and minus zero are special cases that are not regarded as denormalized values.

3.3.1.2 Reserved Operand Values—Infinity and NaN

A floating-point operation can signal IEEE exception conditions, such as those caused by uninitialized variables, violations of mathematical rules, or results that cannot be represented. If a program does not trap IEEE exception conditions, a computation that encounters any of these conditions proceeds without trapping but generates a result indicating that an exceptional condition arose during the computation. To permit this case, each floating-point format defines representations (listed in Table 3.2) for plus infinity (+∞), minus infinity (-∞), quiet non-numbers (QNaN), and signaling non-numbers (SNaN).

3.3.1.3 Infinity and Beyond

Infinity represents a number with magnitude too large to be represented in the given format; it represents a magnitude overflow during a computation. A correctly signed ∞ is generated as the default result in division by zero operations and some cases of overflow as described in Section 3.7.2 "Exception Conditions".

Once created as a default result, ∞ can become an operand in a subsequent operation. The infinities are interpreted such that -∞ < (every finite number) < +∞. Arithmetic with ∞ is the limiting case of real arithmetic with operands of arbitrarily large magnitude, when such limits exist. In these cases, arithmetic on ∞ is regarded as exact, and exception conditions do not arise. The out-of-range indication represented by ∞ is propagated through subsequent computations. For some cases, there is no meaningful limiting case in real arithmetic for operands of ∞. These cases raise the Invalid Operation exception condition as described in Section 3.7.2.1 "Invalid Operation Exception".

3.3.1.4 Signalling Non-Number (SNaN)

SNaN operands cause an Invalid Operation exception for arithmetic operations. SNaNs are useful values to put in uninitialized variables. An SNaN is never produced as a result value.

IEEE Standard 754 states that "Whether copying a signaling NaN without a change of format signals the Invalid Operation exception is the implementor's option." The MIPS architecture makes the formatted operand move instructions (MOV fmt, MOVT.fmt, MOVF.fmt, MOVN fmt, MOVZ.fmt) non-arithmetic; they do not signal IEEE 754 exceptions.

3.3.1.5 Quiet Non-Number (QNaN)

QNaNs provide retrospective diagnostic information inherited from invalid or unavailable data and results. Propagation of the diagnostic information requires information contained in a QNaN to be preserved through arithmetic operations and floating-point format conversions.

QNaN operands do not cause arithmetic operations to signal an exception. When a floating-point result is to be delivered, a QNaN operand causes an arithmetic operation to supply a QNaN result. When possible, this QNaN result is one[1] of the operand QNaN values. QNaNs do have effects similar to SNaNs on operations that do not deliver a floating-point result—specifically, comparisons. (For more information, see the detailed description of the floating-point compare instruction, C.cond.fmt.).

When certain invalid operations not involving QNaN operands are performed but do not trap (because the trap is not enabled), a new QNaN value is created. Table 3.3 shows the QNaN value generated when no input operand QNaN value can be copied. The values listed for the fixed-point formats are the values supplied to satisfy IEEE Standard 754 when a QNaN or infinite floating-point value is converted to fixed point. There is no other feature of the architecture that detects or makes use of these "integer QNaN" values.

Table 3.3 Value Supplied When a New Quiet NaN is Created

Format	New QNaN value
Single floating point	`0x7fbf ffff`
Double floating point	`0x7ff7 ffff ffff ffff`
Word fixed point	`0x7fff ffff`
Longword fixed point	`0x7fff ffff ffff ffff`

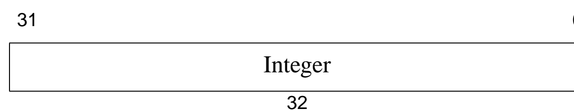
3.3.2 Fixed-Point Formats

The FPU provides two fixed-point data types:

- a 32-bit Word fixed point (type W), shown in Figure 3.4
- a 64-bit Longword fixed point (type L), shown in Figure 3.5

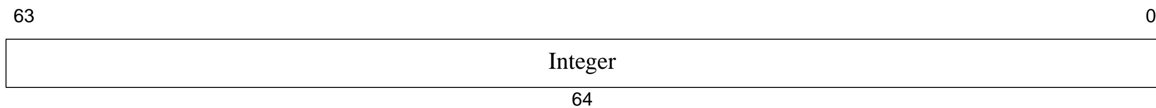
The fixed-point values are held in 2's complement format, which is used for signed integers in the CPU. Unsigned fixed-point data types are not provided by the architecture; application software can synthesize computations for unsigned integers from the existing instructions and data types.

Figure 3.4 Word Fixed-Point Format (W)



1. In case of one or more QNaN operands, a QNaN is propagated from one of the operands according to the following priority: 1: fs, 2: ft, 3: fr.

Figure 3.5 Longword Fixed-Point Format (L)



3.4 Floating-Point General Registers

This section describes the organization and use of the Floating-Point general Registers (FPRs). The FPU is a 64b FPU, but a 32b register mode for backwards compatibility is also supported. The FR bit in the CP0 *Status* register determines which mode is selected:

- When the FR bit is a 1, the FPU is in FR64 mode and the 64b register model is used, which defines 32 64-bit registers with all formats supported in a register.
- When the FR bit is a 0, the FPU is in FR32 mode and the 32b register model is used, which defines 32 32-bit registers with D-format values stored in even-odd pairs of registers; thus the register file can also be viewed as having 16 64-bit registers. When configured this way, there are several restrictions for double operation:
  - Any double operations which specify an odd register as a source or destination will cause a ReservedInstruction exception
  - MTHC1/MFHC1 instructions which access an odd FPU register will signal a Reserved Instruction exception.

3.4.1 FPRs and Formatted Operand Layout

FPU instructions that operate on formatted operand values specify the Floating-Point Register (FPR) that holds the value. Operands that are only 32 bits wide (*W* and *S* formats) use only half the space in an FPR.

Figure 3.6 and Figure 3.7 show the FPR organization and the way that operand data is stored in them.

Figure 3.6 Single Floating-Point or Word Fixed-Point Operand in an FPR

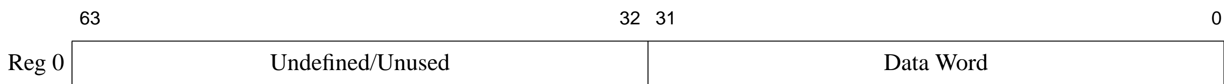
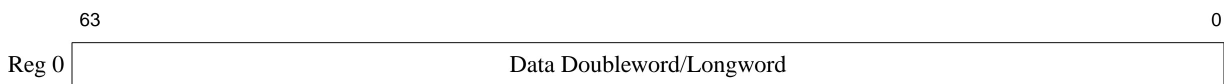


Figure 3.7 Double Floating-Point or Longword Fixed-Point Operand in an FPR



3.4.2 Formats of Values Used in FP Registers

Unlike the CPU, the FPU neither interprets the binary encoding of source operands nor produces a binary encoding of results for every operation. The value held in a floating-point operand register (FPR) has a format, or type, and it can be used only by instructions that operate on that format. The format of a value is either *uninterpreted*, *unknown*, or one of the valid numeric formats: *single* or *double* floating point, and *word* or *long* fixed point.

The value in an FPR is always set when a value is written to the register as follows:

- When a data transfer instruction writes binary data into an FPR (a load), the FPR receives a binary value that is *uninterpreted*.

- A computational or FP register move instruction that produces a result of type *fmt* puts a value of type *fmt* into the result register.

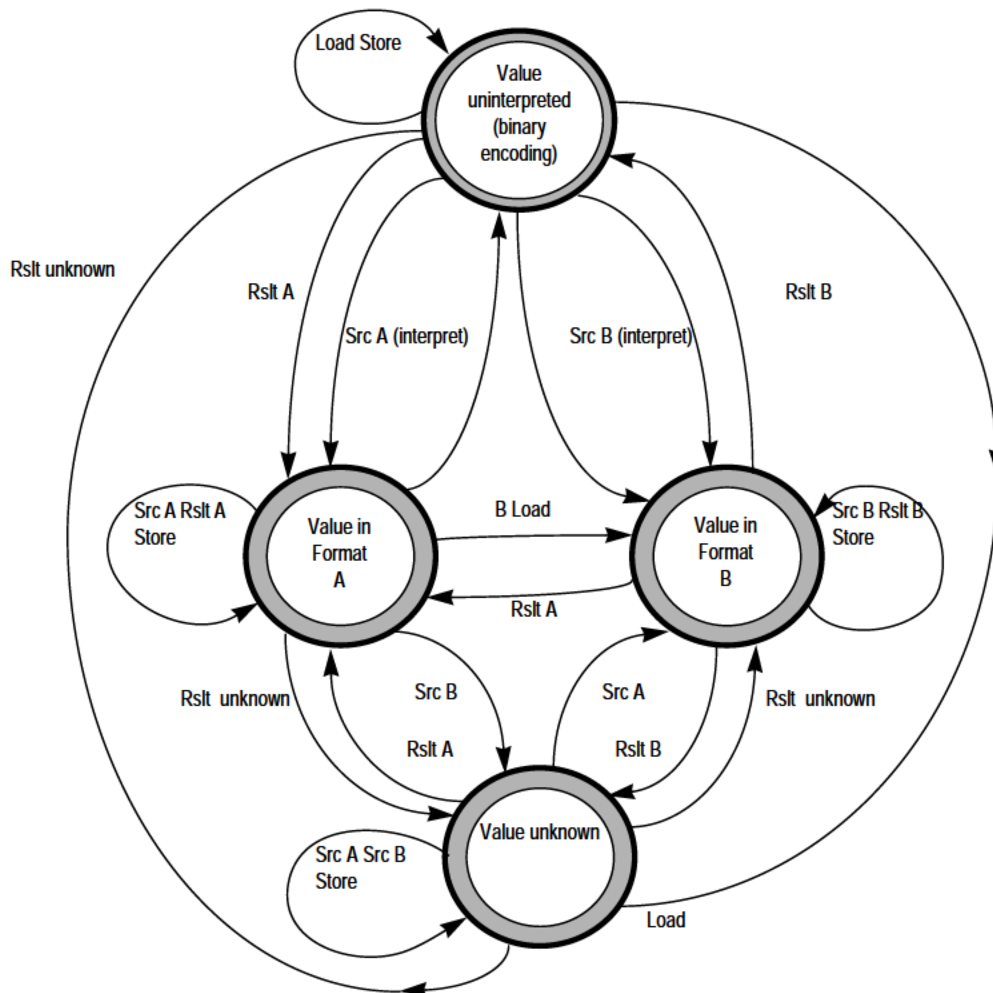
When an FPR with an *uninterpreted* value is used as a source operand by an instruction that requires a value of format *fmt*, the binary contents are interpreted as an encoded value in format *fmt*, and the value in the FPR changes to a value of format *fmt*. The binary contents cannot be reinterpreted in a different format.

If an FPR contains a value of format *fmt*, a computational instruction must not use the FPR as a source operand of a different format. If this case occurs, the value in the register becomes *unknown*, and the result of the instruction is also a value that is *unknown*. Using an FPR containing an *unknown* value as a source operand produces a result that has an *unknown* value.

The format of the value in the FPR is unchanged when it is read by a data transfer instruction (a store). A data transfer instruction produces a binary encoding of the value contained in the FPR. If the value in the FPR is *unknown*, the encoded binary value produced by the operation is not defined.

The state diagram in Figure 3.8 illustrates the manner in which the formatted value in an FPR is set and changed.

Figure 3.8 Effect of FPU Operations on the Format of Values Held in FPRs



A, B: Example formats
Load: Destination of LWC1, LDC1, **or** MTC1 instructions.
Store: Source operand of SWC1, SDC1, **or** MFC1 instructions.
Src fmt: Source operand of computational instruction expecting format "fmt."
Rslt fmt: Result of computational instruction producing value of format "fmt."

3.4.3 Binary Data Transfers (32-Bit and 64-Bit)

The data transfer instructions move words and doublewords between the FPU FPRs and the remainder of the system. The operations of the word and doubleword load and move-to instructions are shown in Figure 3.9 and Figure 3.10, respectively.

The store and move-from instructions operate in reverse, reading data from the location that the corresponding load or move-to instruction had written.

Figure 3.9 FPU Word Load and Move-to Operations

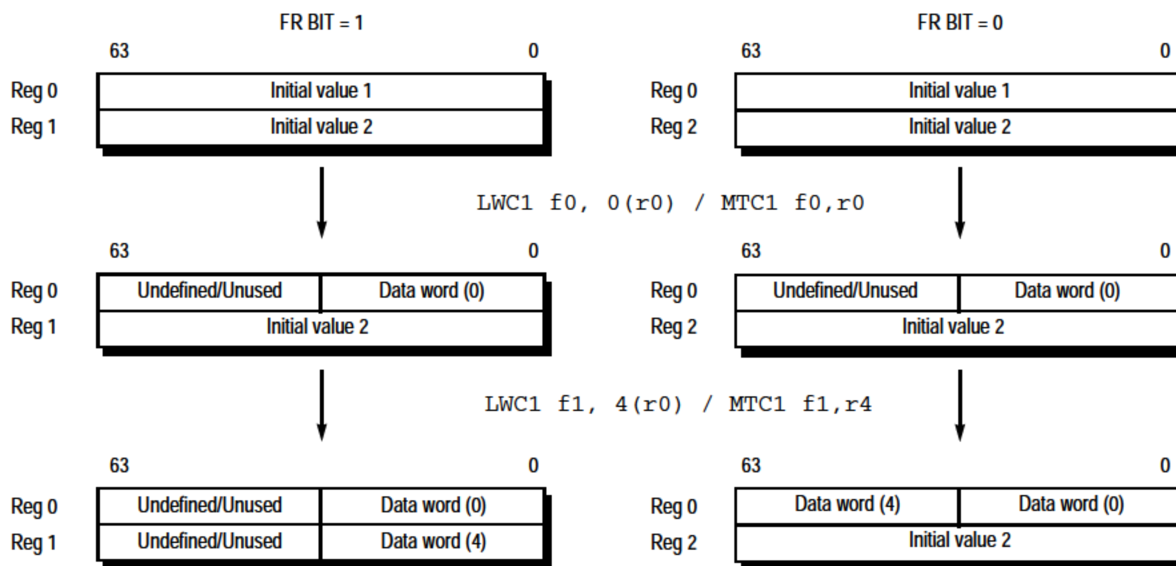
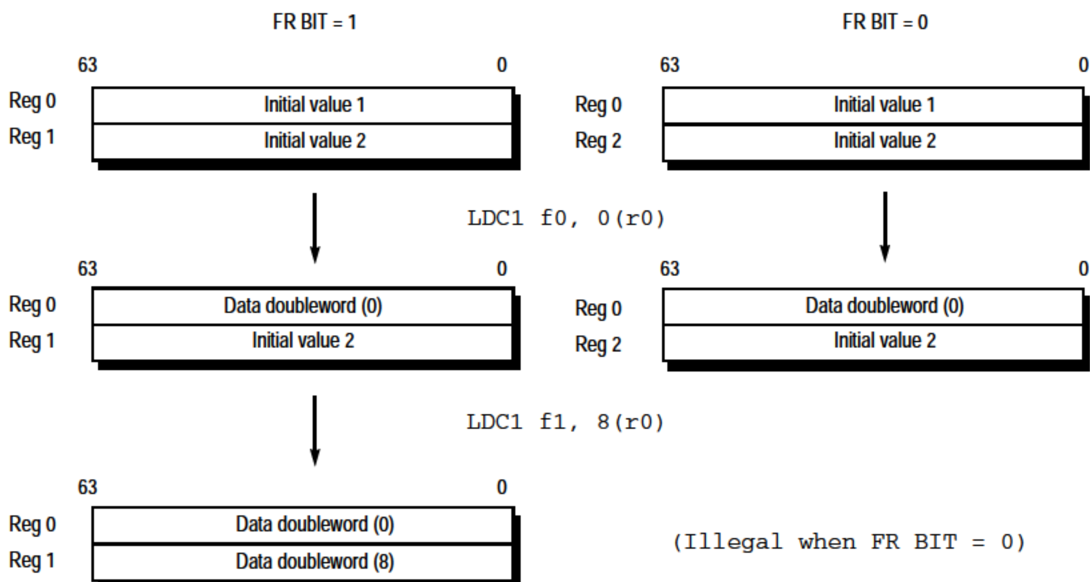


Figure 3.10 FPU Doubleword Load and Move-to Operations



3.5 Floating-Point Control Registers

The FPU Control Registers (FCRs) identify and control the FPU. The five FPU control registers are 32 bits wide: *FIR*, *FCCR*, *FEXR*, *FENR*, *FCSR*. Three of these registers, *FCCR*, *FEXR*, and *FENR*, select subsets of the floating-point Control/Status register, the *FCSR*. These registers are also denoted Coprocessor 1 (CP1) control registers.

CP1 control registers are summarized in Table 3.4 and are described individually in the following subsections of this chapter. Each register's description includes the read/write properties and the reset state of each field.

Table 3.4 Coprocessor 1 Register Summary

Register Number	Register Name	Function
0	FIR	Floating-Point Implementation register. Contains information that identifies the FPU.
25	FCCR	Floating-Point Condition Codes register.
26	FEXR	Floating-Point Exceptions register.
28	FENR	Floating-Point Enables register.
31	FCSR	Floating-Point Control and Status register.

Table 3.5 defines the notation used for the read/write properties of the register bit fields.

Table 3.5 Read/Write Properties

Read/Write Notation	Hardware Interpretation	Software Interpretation
R/W	All bits in this field are readable and writable by software and potentially by hardware. Hardware updates of this field are visible by software reads. Software updates of this field are visible by hardware reads. If the reset state of this field is "Undefined," either software or hardware must initialize the value before the first read returns a predictable value. This definition should not be confused with the formal definition of UNDEFINED behavior.	
R	This field is either static or is updated only by hardware. If the Reset State of this field is either "0" or "Preset", hardware initializes this field to zero or to the appropriate state, respectively, on powerup. If the Reset State of this field is "Undefined", hardware updates this field only under those conditions specified in the description of the field.	A field to which the value written by software is ignored by hardware. Software may write any value to this field without affecting hardware behavior. Software reads of this field return the last value updated by hardware. If the Reset State of this field is "Undefined," software reads of this field result in an UNPREDICTABLE value except after a hardware update done under the conditions specified in the description of the field.
0	Hardware does not update this field. Hardware can assume a zero value.	The value software writes to this field must be zero. Software writes of non-zero values to this field might result in UNDEFINED behavior of the hardware. Software reads of this field return zero as long as all previous software writes are zero. If the Reset State of this field is "Undefined," software must write this field with zero before it is guaranteed to read as zero.

3.5.1 Floating-Point Implementation Register (FIR, CP1 Control Register 0)

The Floating-Point Implementation Register (*FIR*) is a 32-bit read-only register that contains information identifying the capabilities of the FPU, the Floating-Point processor identification, and the revision level of the FPU. Figure 3.11 shows the format of the *FIR*; Table 3.6 describes the *FIR* bit fields.

Figure 3.11 FIR Format

31–25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15–8	7–0
0	FC	0	F64	L	W	3D	PS	D	S	ProcessorID	Revision

Table 3.6 FIR Bit Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	**Bits**			
FC	24	Indicates that full convert ranges are implemented: 0: Full convert ranges not implemented 1: Full convert ranges implemented This bit is always 1 to indicate that full convert ranges are implemented. This means that all numbers can be converted to another type by the FPU (If FS bit in FCSR is not set Unimplemented Operation exception can still happen on denormal operands though).	R	1
F64	22	Indicates that this is a 64-bit FPU: 0: Not a 64-bit FPU 1: A 64-bit FPU. This bit is always 1 to indicate that this is a 64-bit FPU.	R	1
L	21	Indicates that the long fixed point (L) data type and instructions are implemented: 0: Long type not implemented 1: Long implemented This bit is always 1 to indicate that long fixed point data types are implemented.	R	1
W	20	Indicates that the word fixed point (W) data type and instructions are implemented: 0: Word type not implemented 1: Word implemented This bit is always 1 to indicate that word fixed point data types are implemented.	R	1
3D	19	Indicates that the MIPS-3D ASE is implemented: 0: MIPS-3D not implemented 1: MIPS-3D implemented This bit is always 0 to indicate that MIPS-3D is not implemented.	R	0
PS	18	Indicates that the paired-single (PS) floating-point data type and instructions are implemented: 0: PS floating-point not implemented 1: PS floating-point implemented This bit is always 0 to indicate that paired-single floating-point data types are not implemented.	R	0
D	17	Indicates that the double-precision (D) floating-point data type and instructions are implemented: 0: D floating-point not implemented 1: D floating-point implemented This bit is always 1 to indicate that double-precision floating-point data types are implemented.	R	1

Table 3.6 FIR Bit Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
S	16	Indicates that the single-precision (S) floating-point data type and instructions are implemented: 0: S floating-point not implemented 1: S floating-point implemented This bit is always 1 to indicate that single-precision floating-point data types are implemented.	R	1
Processor ID	15:8	This value matches the corresponding field of the CP0 PRId register.	R	0x99
Revision	7:0	Specifies the revision number of the FPU. This field allows software to distinguish between one revision and another of the same floating-point processor type.	R	0
0	31:25, 23	These bits must be written as zeros; they return zeros on reads.	0	0

3.5.2 Floating-Point Condition Codes Register (FCCR, CP1 Control Register 25)

The Floating-Point Condition Codes Register (*FCCR*) is an alternative way to read and write the floating-point condition code values that also appear in the *FCSR*. Unlike the *FCSR*, all eight FCC bits are contiguous in the *FCCR*. Figure 3.12 shows the format of the *FCCR*; Table 3.7 describes the *FCCR* bit fields.

Figure 3.12 FCCR Format

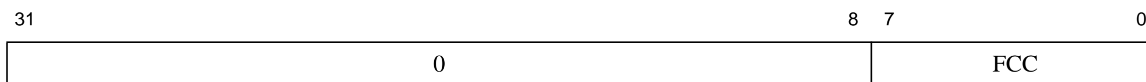


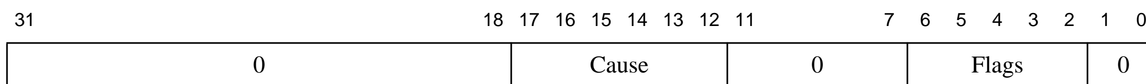
Table 3.7 FCCR Bit Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
FCC	7:0	Floating-point condition code. Refer to the description of this field in Section 3.5.5 "Floating-Point Control and Status Register (FCSR, CP1 Control Register 31)".	R/W	Undefined
0	31:8	These bits must be written as zeros; they return zeros on reads.	0	0

3.5.3 Floating-Point Exceptions Register (FEXR, CP1 Control Register 26)

The Floating-Point Exceptions Register (*FEXR*) is an alternative way to read and write the Cause and Flags fields that also appear in the *FCSR*. Figure 3.13 shows the format of the *FEXR*; Table 3.8 describes the *FEXR* bit fields.

Figure 3.13 FEXR Format



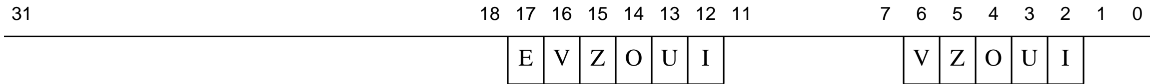


Table 3.8 FEXR Bit Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
Cause	17:12	Cause bits. Refer to the description of this field in Section 3.5.5, "Floating-Point Control and Status Register (FCSR, CP1 Control Register 31)".	R/W	Undefined
Flags	6:2	Flag bits. Refer to the description of this field in Section 3.5.5 "Floating-Point Control and Status Register (FCSR, CP1 Control Register 31)".	R/W	Undefined
0	31:18, 11:7, 1:0	These bits must be written as zeros; they return zeros on reads.	0	0

3.5.4 Floating-Point Enables Register (FENR, CP1 Control Register 28)

The Floating-Point Enables Register (*FENR*) is an alternative way to read and write the Enables, FS, and RM fields that also appear in the *FCSR*. Figure 3.14 shows the format of the *FENR*; Table 3.9 describes the *FENR* bit fields.

Figure 3.14 FENR Format

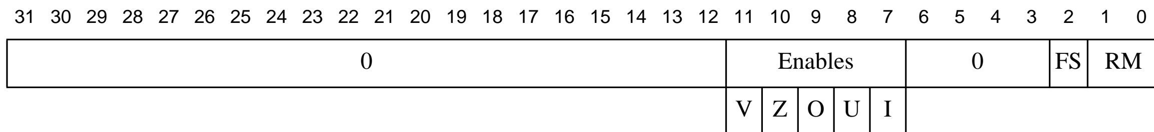


Table 3.9 FENR Bit Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
Enables	11:7	Enable bits. Refer to the description of this field in Section 3.5.5 "Floating-Point Control and Status Register (FCSR, CP1 Control Register 31)".	R/W	Undefined
FS	2	Flush to Zero bit. Refer to the description of this field in Section 3.5.5, "Floating-Point Control and Status Register (FCSR, CP1 Control Register 31)".	R/W	Undefined
RM	1:0	Rounding mode. Refer to the description of this field in Section 3.5.5, "Floating-Point Control and Status Register (FCSR, CP1 Control Register 31)".	R/W	Undefined
0	31:12, 6:3	These bits must be written as zeros; they return zeros on reads.	0	0

3.5.5 Floating-Point Control and Status Register (FCSR, CP1 Control Register 31)

The 32-bit Floating-Point Control and Status Register (*FCSR*) controls the operation of the FPU and shows the following status information:

- selects the default rounding mode for FPU arithmetic operations
- selectively enables traps of FPU exception conditions
- controls some denormalized number handling options
- reports any IEEE exceptions that arose during the most recently executed instruction
- reports any IEEE exceptions that cumulatively arose in completed instructions
- indicates the condition code result of FP compare instructions

Access to the *FCSR* is not privileged; it can be read or written by any program that has access to the FPU (via the coprocessor enables in the *Status* register). Figure 3.15 shows the format of the *FCSR*; Table 3.10 describes the *FCSR* bit fields.

Figure 3.15 FCSR Format

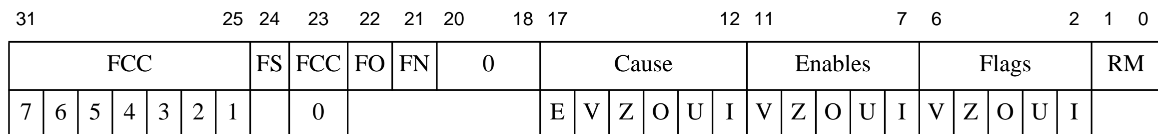


Table 3.10 FCSR Bit Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit			
FCC	31:25, 23	Floating-point condition codes. These bits record the result of floating-point compares and are tested for floating-point conditional branches and conditional moves. The FCC bit to use is specified in the compare, branch, or conditional move instruction. For backward compatibility with previous MIPS ISAs, the FCC bits are separated into two non-contiguous fields.	R/W	Undefined
FS	24	Flush to Zero (FS). Refer to Section 3.5.6 "Operation of the FS/FO/FN Bits" for more details on this bit.	R/W	Undefined
FO	22	Flush Override (FO). Refer to Section 3.5.6 "Operation of the FS/FO/FN Bits" for more details on this bit.	R/W	Undefined
FN	21	Flush to Nearest (FN). Refer to Section 3.5.6 "Operation of the FS/FO/FN Bits" for more details on this bit.	R/W	Undefined

Table 3.10 FCSR Bit Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit			
Cause	17:12	Cause bits. These bits indicate the exception conditions that arise during execution of an FPU arithmetic instruction. A bit is set to 1 when the corresponding exception condition arises during the execution of an instruction; otherwise, it is cleared to 0. By reading the registers, the exception condition caused by the preceding FPU arithmetic instruction can be determined. Refer to Table 3.11 for the meaning of each cause bit.	R/W	Undefined
Enables	11:7	Enable bits. These bits control whether or not a trap is taken when an IEEE exception condition occurs for any of the five conditions. The trap occurs when both an enable bit and its corresponding cause bit are set either during an FPU arithmetic operation or by moving a value to the *FCSR* or one of its alternative representations. Note that Cause bit E (CauseE) has no corresponding enable bit; the MIPS architecture defines non-IEEE Unimplemented Operation exceptions as always enabled. Refer to Table 3.11 for the meaning of each enable bit.	R/W	Undefined
Flags	6:2	Flag bits. This field shows any exception conditions that have occurred for completed instructions since the flag was last reset by software. When an FPU arithmetic operation raises an IEEE exception condition that does not result in a Floating-Point Exception (the enable bit was off), the corresponding bit(s) in the Flags field are set, while the others remain unchanged. Arithmetic operations that result in a Floating-Point Exception (the enable bit was on) do not update the Flags field. Hardware never resets this field; software must explicitly reset this field. Refer to Table 3.11 for the meaning of each flag bit.	R/W	Undefined
RM	1:0	Rounding mode. This field indicates the rounding mode used for most floating-point operations (some operations use a specific rounding mode). Refer to Table 3.12 for the encoding of this field.	R/W	Undefined
0	20:18	These bits must be written as zeros; they return zeros on reads.	0	0

Table 3.11 Cause, Enables, and Flags Definitions

Bit Name	Bit Meaning
E	Unimplemented Operation (this bit exists only in the Cause field).
V	Invalid Operations
Z	Divide by Zero
O	Overflow
U	Underflow

Table 3.11 Cause, Enables, and Flags Definitions (Continued)

Bit Name	Bit Meaning
I	Inexact

Table 3.12 Rounding Mode Definitions

RM Field Encoding	Meaning
0	RN - Round to Nearest Rounds the result to the nearest representable value. When two representable values are equally near, the result is rounded to the value whose least significant bit is zero (even).
1	RZ - Round Toward Zero Rounds the result to the value closest to but not greater in magnitude than the result.
2	RP - Round Towards Plus Infinity Rounds the result to the value closest to but not less than the result.
3	RM - Round Towards Minus Infinity Rounds the result to the value closest to but not greater than the result.

3.5.6 Operation of the FS/FO/FN Bits

The FS, FO, and FN bits in the CP1 *FCSR* register control handling of denormalized operands and *tiny* results (i.e. nonzero result between $\pm 2^{E_min}$), whereby the FPU can handle these cases right away instead of relying on the much slower software handler. The trade-off is a loss of IEEE compliance and accuracy (except for use of the FO bit), because a minimal normalized or zero result is provided by the FPU instead of the more accurate denormalized result that a software handler would give. The benefit is a significantly improved performance and precision.

Use of the FS, FO, and FN bits affects handling of denormalized floating-point numbers and tiny results for the instructions listed below:

FS and FN bit: ADD, CEIL, CVT, DIV, FLOOR, MADD, MSUB, MUL, NMADD, NMSUB, RECIP, ROUND, RSQRT, SQRT, TRUNC, SUB, ABS, C.cond, and NEG[1]

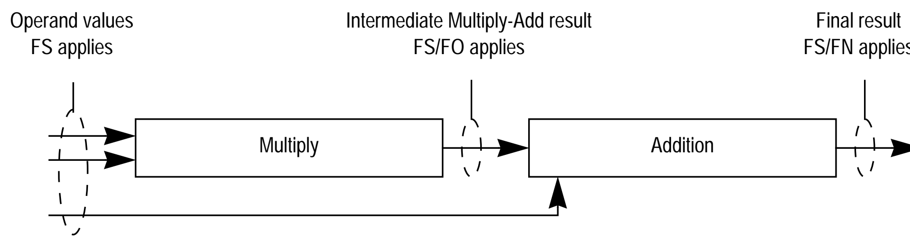
FO bit: MADD, MSUB, NMADD, and NMSUB

1. For ABS, C.cond, and NEG, denormal input operands or tiny results doe not result in Unimplemented exceptions when FS = 0. Flushing to zero nonetheless is implemented when FS = 1 such that these operations return the same result as an equivalent sequence of arithmetic FPU operations.

Instructions not listed above do not cause Unimplemented Operation exceptions on denormalized numbers in operands or results.

Figure 3.16 depicts how the FS, FO, and FN bits control handling of denormalized numbers. For instructions that are not multiply or add types (such as DIV), only the FS and FN bits apply.

Figure 3.16 FS/FO/FN Bits Influence on Multiply and Addition Results



3.5.6.1 Flush To Zero Bit

When the Flush To Zero (FS) bit is set, denormal input operands are flushed to zero. Tiny results are flushed to either zero or the applied format's smallest normalized number (MinNorm) depending on the rounding mode settings. Table 3.13 lists the flushing behavior for tiny results..

Table 3.13 Zero Flushing for Tiny Results

Rounding Mode	Negative Tiny Result	Positive Tiny Result
RN (RM=0)	-0	+0
RZ(RM=1)	-0	+0
RP (RM=2)	-0	+MinNorm
RM (RM=3)	-MinNorm	+0

The flushing of results is based on an intermediate result computed by rounding the mantissa using an unbounded exponent range; that is, tiny numbers are not *normalized* into the supported exponent range by shifting in leading zeros prior to rounding.

Handling of denormalized operand values and tiny results depends on the FS bit setting as shown in Table 3.14.

Table 3.14 Handling of Denormalized Operand Values and Tiny Results Based on FS Bit Setting

FS Bit	Handling of Denormalized Operand Values
0	An Unimplemented Operation exception is taken.
1	Instead of causing an Unimplemented Operation exception, operands are flushed to zero, and tiny results are forced to zero or MinNorm.

3.5.6.2 Flush Override Bit

When the Flush Override (FO) bit is set, a tiny intermediate result of any multiply-add type instruction is not flushed according to the FS bit. The intermediate result is maintained in an internal normalized format to improve accuracy. FO only applies to the intermediate result of a multiply-add type instruction.

Handling of tiny intermediate results depends on the FO and FS bits as shown in Table 3.15.

Table 3.15 Handling of Tiny Intermediate Result Based on the FO and FS Bit Settings

FO Bit	FS Bit	Handling of Tiny Result Values
0	0	An Unimplemented Operation exception is taken.

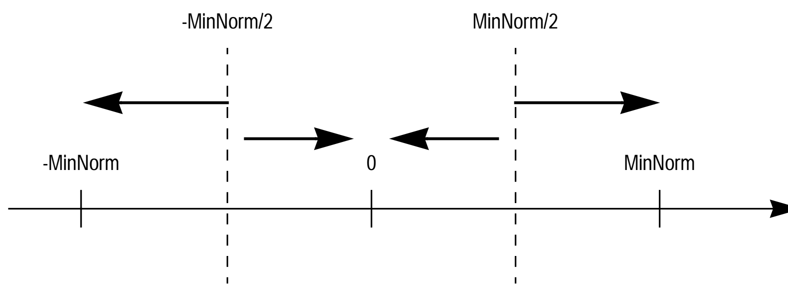
Table 3.15 Handling of Tiny Intermediate Result Based on the FO and FS Bit Settings

FO Bit	FS Bit	Handling of Tiny Result Values
0	1	The intermediate result is forced to the value that would have been delivered for an untrapped underflow (see Table 3.32) instead of causing an Unimplemented Operation exception.
1	Don't care	The intermediate result is kept in an internal format, which can be perceived as having the usual mantissa precision but with unlimited exponent precision and without forcing to a specific value or taking an exception.

3.5.6.3 Flush to Nearest

When the Flush to Nearest (FN) bit is set and the rounding mode is Round to Nearest (RN), a tiny final result is flushed to zero or MinNorm. If a tiny number is strictly below MinNorm/2, the result is flushed to zero; otherwise, it is flushed to MinNorm (see Figure 3.17). The flushed result has the same sign as the result prior to flushing. Note that the FN bit takes precedence over the FS bit.

Figure 3.17 Flushing to Nearest when Rounding Mode is Round to Nearest



For all rounding modes other than Round to Nearest (RN), setting the FN bit causes final results to be flushed to zero or MinNorm as if the FS bit was set.

Handling of tiny final results depends on the FN and FS bits as shown in Table 3.16.

Table 3.16 Handling of Tiny Final Result Based on FN and FS Bit Settings

FN Bit	FS Bit	Handling of Tiny Result Values
0	0	An Unimplemented Operation exception is taken.
0	1	Final result is forced to the value that would have been delivered for an untrapped underflow (see Table 3.32) rather than causing an Unimplemented Operation exception.
1	Don't care	Final result is rounded to either zero or 2^{E_min} (MinNorm), whichever is closest when in Round to Nearest (RN) rounding mode. For other rounding modes, a final result is given as if FS was set to 1.

3.5.6.4 Recommended FS/FO/FN Settings

Table 3.17 summarizes the recommended FS/FO/FN settings.

Table 3.17 Recommended FS/FO/FN Settings

FS Bit	FO Bit	FN Bit	Remarks
0	0	0	IEEE-compliant mode. Low performance on denormal operands and tiny results.

Table 3.17 Recommended FS/FO/FN Settings

FS Bit	FO Bit	FN Bit	Remarks
1	0	0	Regular embedded applications. High performance on denormal operands and tiny results.
1	1	1	Highest accuracy and performance configuration.[1]

1. Note that in this mode, MADD might return a different result other than the equivalent MUL and ADD operation sequence.

3.5.7 FCSR Cause Bit Update Flow

3.5.7.1 Exceptions Triggered by CTC1

Regardless of the targeted control register, the CTC1 instruction causes the Enables and Cause fields of the *FCSR* to be inspected in order to determine if an exception is to be thrown.

3.5.7.2 Generic Flow

Computations are performed in two steps:

1. Compute rounded mantissa with unbound exponent range.

2. Flush to default result if the result from Step #1 above is overflow or tiny (no flushing happens on denorms for instructions supporting denorm results, such as MOV).

The Cause field is updated after each of these two steps. Any enabled exceptions detected in these two steps cause a trap, and no further updates to the Cause field are done by subsequent steps.

Step #1 can set cause bits I, U, O, Z, V, and E. E has priority over V; V has priority over Z; and Z has priority over U and O. Thus when E, V, or Z is set in Step #1, no other cause bits can be set. However, note that I and V both can be set if a denormal operand was flushed (FS = 1). I, U, and O can be set alone or in pairs (IU or IO). U and O never can be set simultaneously in Step #1. U and O are set if the computed unbounded exponent is outside the exponent range supported by the normalized IEEE format.

Step #2 can set I if a default result is generated.

3.5.7.3 Multiply-Add Flow

For multiply-add type instructions, the computation is extended with two more steps:

1. Compute rounded mantissa with unbound exponent range for the multiply.

2. Flush to default result if the result from Step #1 is overflow or tiny (no flushing happens on tiny results if FO = 1).

3. Compute rounded mantissa with unbounded exponent range for the add.

4. Flush to default result if the result from Step #3 is overflow or tiny.

The Cause field is updated after each of these four steps. Any enabled exceptions detected in these four steps cause a trap, and no further updates to the Cause field are done by subsequent steps.

Step #1 and Step #3 can set a cause bit as described for Step #1 in Section 3.5.7.2 "Generic Flow".

Step #2 and Step #4 can set I if a default result is generated.

Although U and O can never both be set in Step #1 or Step #3, both U and O might be set after the multiply-add has executed in Step #3 because U might be set in Step #1 and O might be set in Step #3.

3.5.7.4 Cause Update Flow for Input Operands

Denormal input operands to Step #1 or Step #3 always set Cause bit I when FS = 1. For example, SNaN+DeNorm set I (and V) provided that Step #3 was reached (in case of a multiply-add type instruction).

Conditions directly related to the input operand (for example, I/E set due to DeNorm, V set due to SNaN and QNaN propagation) are detected in the step where the operand is logically used. For example, for multiply-add type instructions, exceptional conditions caused by the input operand fr are detected in Step #3.

3.5.7.5 Cause Update Flow for Unimplemented Operations

Note that Cause bit E is special; it clears any Cause updates done in previous steps. For example, if Step #3 caused E to be set, any I, U, or O Cause update done in Step #1 or Step #2 is cleared. Only E is set in the Cause field when an Unimplemented Operation trap is taken.

3.6 Instruction Overview

The functional groups into which the FPU instructions are divided are described in the following subsections:

- Section 3.6.1 "Data Transfer Instructions"
- Section 3.6.2 "Arithmetic Instructions"
- Section 3.6.3 "Conversion Instructions"
- Section 3.6.4 "Formatted Operand-Value Move Instructions"
- Section 3.6.5 "Conditional Branch Instructions"
- Section 3.6.6 "Miscellaneous Instructions"

The instructions are described in detail in Chapter 15, "1004K™ Processor CPU Instructions" on page 395, including descriptions of supported formats (fmt).

3.6.1 Data Transfer Instructions

The FPU has two separate register sets: coprocessor general registers (FPRs) and coprocessor control registers (FCRs). The FPU has a load/store architecture; all computations are done on data held in coprocessor general registers. The control registers are used to control FPU operation. Data is transferred between registers and the rest of the system with dedicated load, store, and move instructions. The transferred data is treated as unformatted binary data; no format conversions are performed, and therefore no IEEE floating-point exceptions can occur.

Table 3.18 lists the supported transfer operations.

Table 3.18 FPU Data Transfer Instructions

Transfer Direction			Data Transferred
FPU general register	↔	Memory	Word/doubleword load/store
FPU general register	↔	CPU general register	Word move
FPU control register	↔	CPU general register	Word move

3.6.1.1 Data Alignment in Loads, Stores, and Moves

All coprocessor loads and stores operate on naturally aligned data items. An attempt to load or store to an address that is not naturally aligned for the data item causes an Address Error exception. Regardless of byte ordering (the endianness), the address of a word or doubleword is the smallest byte address in the object. For a big-endian machine, this is the most-significant byte; for a little-endian machine, this is the least-significant byte.

3.6.1.2 Addressing Used in Data Transfer Instructions

The FPU has loads and stores using the same register+offset addressing as that used by the CPU. Moreover, for the FPU only, there are load and store instructions using *register+register* addressing.

Tables 3.19 through 3.20 list the FPU data transfer instructions.

Table 3.19 FPU Loads and Stores

Mnemonic	Instruction	Addressing Mode
LDC1	Load Doubleword to Floating Point	Register+offset
LWC1	Load Word to Floating Point	Register+offset
SDC1	Store Doubleword from Floating Point	Register+offset
SWC1	Store Word from Floating Point	Register+offset
LDXC1	Load Doubleword Indexed to Floating Point	Register+Register
LUXC1	Load Doubleword Indexed Unaligned to Floating Point	Register+Register
LWXC1	Load Word Indexed to Floating Point	Register+Register
SDXC1	Store Doubleword Indexed from Floating Point	Register+Register
SUXC1	Store Doubleword Indexed Unaligned from Floating Point	Register+Register
SWXC1	Store Word Indexed from Floating Point	Register+Register

Table 3.20 FPU Move To and From Instructions

Mnemonic	Instruction
CFC1	Move Control Word From Floating Point
CTC1	Move Control Word To Floating Point
MFC1	Move Word From Floating Point
MFHC1	Move Word From High Half of Floating Point
MTC1	Move Word To Floating Point

Table 3.20 FPU Move To and From Instructions

Mnemonic	Instruction
MTHC1	Move Word to High Half of Floating Point

3.6.2 Arithmetic Instructions

Arithmetic instructions operate on formatted data values. The results of most floating-point arithmetic operations meet IEEE Standard 754 for accuracy—a result is identical to an infinite-precision result that has been rounded to the specified format using the current rounding mode. The rounded result differs from the exact result by less than one Unit in the Least-significant Place (ULP).

In general, the arithmetic instructions take an Umimplemented Operation exception for denormalized numbers, except for the ABS, C, and NEG instructions, which can handle denormalized numbers. The FS, FO, and FN bits in the CP1 *FCSR* register can override this behavior as described in Section 3.5.6 "Operation of the FS/FO/FN Bits".

Table 3.21 lists the FPU IEEE compliant arithmetic operations.

Table 3.21 FPU IEEE Arithmetic Operations

Mnemonic	Instruction
ABS.fmt	Floating-Point Absolute Value
ADD.fmt	Floating-Point Add
C.cond.fmt	Floating-Point Compare
DIV fmt	Floating-Point Divide
MUL fmt	Floating-Point Multiply
NEG fmt	Floating-Point Negate
SQRT fmt	Floating-Point Square Root
SUB.fmt	Floating-Point Subtract

The two low latency operations, Reciprocal Approximation (RECIP) and Reciprocal Square Root Approximation (RSQRT), might be less accurate than the IEEE specification:

- The result of RECIP differs from the exact reciprocal by no more than one ULP.
- The result of RSQRT differs from the exact reciprocal square root by no more than two ULPs.

Table 3.22 lists the FPU-approximate arithmetic operations.

Table 3.22 FPU-Approximate Arithmetic Operations

Mnemonic	Instruction
RECIP fmt	Floating-Point Reciprocal Approximation
RSQRT fmt	Floating-Point Reciprocal Square Root Approximation

Four compound-operation instructions perform variations of multiply-accumulate operations; that is, multiply two operands, accumulate the result to a third operand, and produce a result. These instructions are listed in Table 3.23. The product is rounded according to the current rounding mode prior to the accumulation. This model meets the IEEE

accuracy specification; the result is numerically identical to an equivalent computation using multiply, add, subtract, or negate instructions.

Table 3.23 FPU Multiply-Accumulate Arithmetic Operations

Mnemonic	Instruction
MADD.fmt	Floating-Point Multiply Add
MSUB.fmt	Floating-Point Multiply Subtract
NMADD fmt	Floating-Point Negative Multiply Add
NMSUB fmt	Floating-Point Negative Multiply Subtract

3.6.3 Conversion Instructions

These instructions perform conversions between floating-point and fixed-point data types. Each instruction converts values from a number of operand formats to a particular result format. Some conversion instructions use the rounding mode specified in the Floating Control/Status register (*FCSR*), while others specify the rounding mode directly.

In general, the conversion instructions only take an Umimplemented Operation exception for denormalized numbers. The FS and FN bits in the CP1 *FCSR* register can override this behavior as described in Section 3.5.6 “Operation of the FS/FO/FN Bits”.

Table 3.24 and Table 3.25 list the FPU conversion instructions according to their rounding mode.

Table 3.24 FPU Conversion Operations Using the FCSR Rounding Mode

Mnemonic	Instruction
CVT.D fmt	Floating-Point Convert to Double Floating Point
CVT.L fmt	Floating-Point Convert to Long Fixed Point
CVT.S fmt	Floating-Point Convert to Single Floating Point
CVT.W.fmt	Floating-Point Convert to Word Fixed Point

Table 3.25 FPU Conversion Operations Using a Directed Rounding Mode

Mnemonic	Instruction
CEIL.L fmt	Floating-Point Ceiling to Long Fixed Point
CEIL.W fmt	Floating-Point Ceiling to Word Fixed Point
FLOOR.L.fmt	Floating-Point Floor to Long Fixed Point
FLOOR.W.fmt	Floating-Point Floor to Word Fixed Point
ROUND.L.fmt	Floating-Point Round to Long Fixed Point
ROUND.W fmt	Floating-Point Round to Word Fixed Point
TRUNC.L fmt	Floating-Point Truncate to Long Fixed Point
TRUNC.W fmt	Floating-Point Truncate to Word Fixed Point

3.6.4 Formatted Operand-Value Move Instructions

These instructions move formatted operand values among FPU general registers. A particular operand type must be moved by the instruction that handles that type. There are three kinds of move instructions:

- Unconditional move
- Conditional move that tests an FPU true/false condition code
- Conditional move that tests a CPU general-purpose register against zero

Conditional move instructions operate in a way that might be unexpected. They always force the value in the destination register to become a value of the format specified in the instruction. If the destination register does not contain an operand of the specified format before the conditional move is executed, the contents become undefined. (For more information, see the individual descriptions of the conditional move instructions in the *MIPS32 Architecture Reference Manual, Volume II* [2].)

Table 3.26 through Table 3.28 list the formatted operand-value move instructions.

Table 3.26 FPU Formatted Operand Move Instruction

Mnemonic	Instruction
MOV.fmt	Floating-Point Move

Table 3.27 FPU Conditional Move on True/False Instructions

Mnemonic	Instruction
MOVF fmt	Floating-Point Move Conditional on FP False
MOVT.fmt	Floating-Point Move Conditional on FP True

Table 3.28 FPU Conditional Move on Zero/Non-Zero Instructions

Mnemonic	Instruction
MOVN fmt	Floating-Point Move Conditional on Nonzero
MOVZ fmt	Floating-Point Move Conditional on Zero

3.6.5 Conditional Branch Instructions

The FPU has PC-relative conditional branch instructions that test condition codes set by FPU compare instructions (C.cond fmt).

All branches have an architectural delay of one instruction. When a branch is taken, the instruction immediately following the branch instruction is said to be in the branch delay slot; it is executed before the branch to the target instruction takes place. Conditional branches come in two versions, depending upon how they handle an instruction in the delay slot when the branch is not taken and execution falls through:

- Branch instructions execute the instruction in the delay slot.

- Branch likely instructions do not execute the instruction in the delay slot if the branch is not taken (they are said to nullify the instruction in the delay slot).

  Although the Branch Likely instructions are included, software is strongly encouraged to avoid the use of the Branch Likely instructions, as they will be removed from a future revision of the MIPS Architecture.

The MIPS64 architecture defines eight condition codes for use in compare and branch instructions. For backward compatibility with previous revisions of the ISA, condition code bit 0 and condition code bits 1 through 7 are in discontinuous fields in the *FCSR*.

Table 3.29 lists the conditional branch (branch and branch likely) FPU instructions; Table 3.30 lists the deprecated conditional branch likely instructions.

Table 3.29 FPU Conditional Branch Instructions

Mnemonic	Instruction
BC1F	Branch on FP False
BC1T	Branch on FP True

Table 3.30 Deprecated FPU Conditional Branch Likely Instructions

Mnemonic	Instruction
BC1FL	Branch on FP False Likely
BC1TL	Branch on FP True Likely

3.6.6 Miscellaneous Instructions

The MIPS32 architecture defines various miscellaneous instructions that conditionally move one CPU general register to another, based on an FPU condition code.

Table 3.31 lists these conditional move instructions.

Table 3.31 CPU Conditional Move on FPU True/False Instructions

Mnemonic	Instruction
MOVN	Move Conditional on FP False
MOVZ	Move Conditional on FP True

3.7 Exceptions

FPU exceptions are implemented in the MIPS FPU architecture with the Cause, Enables, and Flags fields of the *FCSR*. The flag bits implement IEEE exception status flags, and the cause and enable bits control exception trapping. Each field has a bit for each of the five IEEE exception conditions. The Cause field has an additional exception bit, Unimplemented Operation, used to trap for software emulation assistance. If an exception type is enabled through the Enables field of the *FCSR*, then the FPU is operating in precise exception mode for this type of exception.

3.7.1 Precise Exception Mode

In precise exception mode, a trap occurs before the instruction that causes the trap or any following instruction can complete and write its results. If desired, the software trap handler can resume execution of the interrupted instruction stream after handling the exception.

The Cause field reports per-bit instruction exception conditions. The cause bits are written during each floating-point arithmetic operation to show any exception conditions that arise during the operation. A cause bit is set to 1 if its corresponding exception condition arises; otherwise, it is cleared to 0.

A floating-point trap is generated any time both a cause bit and its corresponding enable bit are set. This case occurs either during the execution of a floating-point operation or when moving a value into the *FCSR*. There is no enable bit for Unimplemented Operations; this exception always generates a trap.

In a trap handler, exception conditions that arise during any trapped floating-point operations are reported in the Cause field. Before returning from a floating-point interrupt or exception, or before setting cause bits with a move to the *FCSR*, software first must clear the enabled cause bits by executing a move to the *FCSR* to prevent the trap from being erroneously retaken.

If a floating-point operation sets only non-enabled cause bits, no trap occurs and the default result defined by IEEE Standard 754 is stored (see Table 3.32). When a floating-point operation does not trap, the program can monitor the exception conditions by reading the Cause field.

The Flags field is a cumulative report of IEEE exception conditions that arise as instructions complete; instructions that trap do not update the flag bits. The flag bits are set to 1 if the corresponding IEEE exception is raised, otherwise the bits are unchanged. There is no flag bit for the MIPS Unimplemented Operation exception. The flag bits are never cleared as a side effect of floating-point operations, but they can be set or cleared by moving a new value into the *FCSR*.

3.7.2 Exception Conditions

The subsections below describe the following five exception conditions defined by IEEE Standard 754:

- Section 3.7.2.1 “Invalid Operation Exception”
- Section 3.7.2.2 “Division By Zero Exception”
- Section 3.7.2.3 “Underflow Exception”
- Section 3.7.2.4 “Overflow Exception”
- Section 3.7.2.5 “Inexact Exception”

Section 3.7.2.6 “Unimplemented Operation Exception” also describes a MIPS-specific exception condition, Unimplemented Operation Exception, that is used to signal a need for software emulation of an instruction. Normally an IEEE arithmetic operation can cause only one exception condition; the only case in which two exceptions can occur at the same time are Inexact With Overflow and Inexact With Underflow.

At the program’s direction, an IEEE exception condition can either cause a trap or not cause a trap. IEEE Standard 754 specifies the result to be delivered in case no trap is taken. The FPU supplies these results whenever the excep-

tion condition does not result in a trap. The default action taken depends on the type of exception condition and, in the case of the Overflow and Underflow, the current rounding mode. Table 3.32 summarizes the default results.

Table 3.32 Result for Exceptions Not Trapped

Bit	Description	Default Action
V	Invalid Operation	Supplies a quiet NaN.
Z	Divide by zero	Supplies a properly signed infinity.
U	Underflow	Depends on the rounding mode as shown below: 0 (RN) and 1 (RZ): Supplies a zero with the sign of the exact result. 2 (RP): For positive underflow values, supplies 2^{E_min} (MinNorm). For negative underflow values, supplies a positive zero. 3 (RM): For positive underflow values, supplies a negative zero. For negative underflow values, supplies a negative 2^{E_min} (MinNorm). Note that this behavior is only valid if the *FCSR* $_{FN}$ bit is cleared.
I	Inexact	Supplies a rounded result. If caused by an overflow without the overflow trap enabled, supplies the overflowed result. If caused by an underflow without the underflow trap enabled, supplies the underflowed result.
O	Overflow	Depends on the rounding mode, as shown below: 0 (RN): Supplies an infinity with the sign of the exact result. 1 (RZ): Supplies the format's largest finite number with the sign of the exact result. 2 (RP): For positive overflow values, supplies positive infinity. For negative overflow values, supplies the format's most negative finite number. 3 (RM): For positive overflow values, supplies the format's largest finite number. For negative overflow values, supplies minus infinity.

3.7.2.1 Invalid Operation Exception

An Invalid Operation exception is signaled when one or both of the operands are invalid for the operation to be performed. When the exception condition occurs without a precise trap, the result is a quiet NaN.

The following operations are invalid:

- One or both operands are a signaling NaN (except for the non-arithmetic MOV fmt, MOVT fmt, MOVF.fmt, MOVN.fmt, and MOVZ.fmt instructions).
- Addition or subtraction: magnitude subtraction of infinities, such as $(+\infty) + (-\infty)$ or $(-\infty) - (-\infty)$.
- Multiplication: $0 \times \infty$, with any signs.
- Division: 0/0 or ∞/∞, with any signs.
- Square root: An operand of less than 0 (-0 is a valid operand value).
- Conversion of a floating-point number to a fixed-point format when either an overflow or an operand value of infinity or NaN precludes a faithful representation in that format.
- Some comparison operations in which one or both of the operands is a QNaN value.

3.7.2.2 Division By Zero Exception

The divide operation signals a Division By Zero exception if the divisor is zero and the dividend is a finite nonzero number. When no precise trap occurs, the result is a correctly signed infinity. Divisions (0/0 and ∞/0) do not cause the Division By Zero exception. The result of (0/0) is an Invalid Operation exception. The result of (∞/0) is a correctly signed infinity.

3.7.2.3 Underflow Exception

Two related events contribute to underflow:

- Tininess: The creation of a tiny, nonzero result between $\pm 2^{E_min}$ which, because it is tiny, might cause some other exception later such as overflow on division. IEEE Standard 754 allows choices in detecting tininess events. The MIPS architecture specifies that tininess be detected after rounding, when a nonzero result computed as though the exponent range were unbounded would lie strictly between $\pm 2^{E_min}$.

- Loss of accuracy: The extraordinary loss of accuracy occurs during the approximation of such tiny numbers by denormalized numbers. IEEE Standard 754 allows choices in detecting loss of accuracy events. The MIPS architecture specifies that loss of accuracy be detected as inexact result, when the delivered result differs from what would have been computed if both the exponent range and precision were unbounded.

The way that an underflow is signaled depends on whether or not underflow traps are enabled:

- When an underflow trap is not enabled, underflow is signaled only when both tininess and loss of accuracy have been detected. The delivered result might be zero, denormalized, or $\pm 2^{\mathrm{E_min}}$.

- When an underflow trap is enabled (through the *FCSR* Enables field), underflow is signaled when tininess is detected regardless of loss of accuracy.

3.7.2.4 Overflow Exception

An Overflow exception is signaled when the magnitude of a rounded floating-point result (if the exponent range is unbounded) is larger than the destination format’s largest finite number.

When no precise trap occurs, the result is determined by the rounding mode and the sign of the intermediate result.

3.7.2.5 Inexact Exception

An Inexact exception is signaled when one of the following occurs:

- The rounded result of an operation is not exact.

- The rounded result of an operation overflows without an overflow trap.

- When a denormal operand is flushed to zero.

3.7.2.6 Unimplemented Operation Exception

The Unimplemented Operation exception is a MIPS-defined exception that provides software emulation support. This exception is not IEEE-compliant.

The MIPS architecture is designed so that a combination of hardware and software can implement the architecture. Operations not fully supported in hardware cause an Unimplemented Operation exception, allowing software to perform the operation.

There is no enable bit for this condition; it always causes a trap (but the condition is effectively masked for all operations when FS=1). After the appropriate emulation or other operation is done in a software exception handler, the original instruction stream can be continued.

An Unimplemented Operation exception is taken in the following situations:

- when denormalized operands or tiny results are encountered for instructions not supporting denormal numbers and where such are not handed by the FS/FO/FN bits.

3.8 Pipeline and Performance

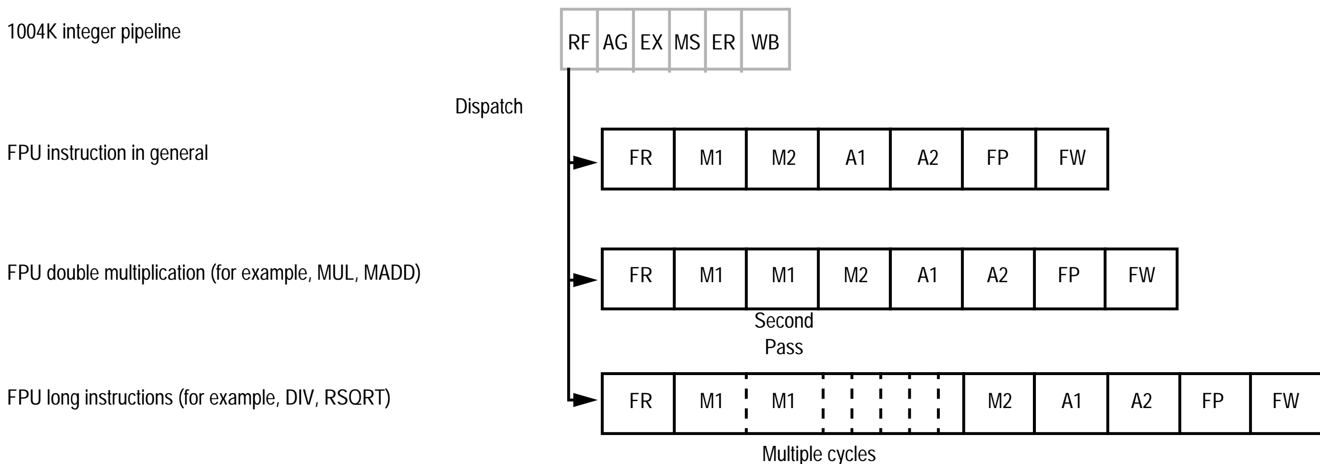
This section describes the structure and operation of the FPU pipeline.

3.8.1 Pipeline Overview

The FPU has a seven stage pipeline to which the integer pipeline dispatches instructions. The FPU pipeline runs in parallel with the 1004K integer pipeline. The FPU can be built to run at either the same frequency as the integer core or at one-half the frequency of the integer core.

The FPU pipe is optimized for single-precision instructions, such that the basic multiply, ADD/SUB, and MADD/MSUB instructions can be performed with single-cycle throughput and low latency. Executing double-precision multiply and MADD/MSUB instructions requires a second pass through the M1 stage to generate all 64 bits of the product. Executing long latency instructions, such as DIV and RSQRT, extends the M1 stage. Figure 3.18 shows the FPU pipeline.

Figure 3.18 FPU Pipeline



3.8.1.1 FR Stage - Decode, Register Read, and Unpack

The FR stage has the following functionality:

- The dispatched instruction is decoded for register accesses.

- Data is read from the register file.
- The operands are unpacked into an internal format.

3.8.1.2 M1 Stage - Multiply Tree

The M1 stage has the following functionality:

- A single-cycle multiply array is provided for single-precision data format multiplication, and two cycles are provided for double-precision data format multiplication.
- The long instructions, such as divide and square root, iterate for several cycles in this stage.
- Sum of exponents is calculated.

3.8.1.3 M2 Stage - Multiply Complete

The M2 stage has the following functionality:

- Multiplication is complete when the carry-save encoded product is compressed into binary.
- Rounding is performed.
- Exponent difference for addition path is calculated.

3.8.1.4 A1 Stage - Addition First Step

This stage performs the first step of the addition.

3.8.1.5 A2 Stage - Addition Second and Final Step

This stage performs the second and final step of the addition.

3.8.1.6 FP Stage - Result Pack

The FP stage has the following functionality:

- The result coming from the datapath is packed into IEEE 754 Standard format for the FPR register file.
- Overflow and underflow exceptional conditions are resolved.

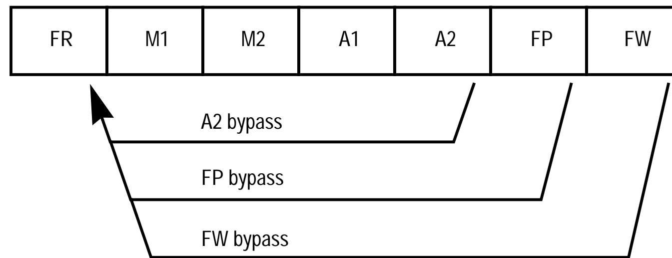
3.8.1.7 FW Stage - Register Write

The result is written to the FPR register file.

3.8.2 Bypassing

The FPU pipeline implements extensive bypassing, as shown in Figure 3.19. Results do not need to be written into the register file and read back before they can be used, but can be forwarded directly to an instruction already in the pipe. Some bypassing is disabled when operating in 32-bit register file mode, the FP bit in the CP0 *Status* register is 0, due to the paired even-odd 32-bit registers that provide 64-bit registers.

Figure 3.19 Arithmetic Pipeline Bypass Paths



3.8.3 Repeat Rate and Latency

Table 3.33 shows the repeat rate and latency for the FPU instructions. Note that cycles related to floating point operations are listed in terms of FPU clocks.

Table 3.33 1004Kf CPU FPU Latency and Repeat Rate

Opcode[1]	Latency (cycles)	Repeat Rate (cycles)
ABS.[S,D], NEG.[S,D], ADD.[S,D], SUB.[S,D], MUL.S, MADD.S, MSUB.S, NMADD.S, NMSUB.S	4	1
MUL.D, MADD.D, MSUB.D, NMADD.D, NMSUB.D	5	2
RECIP.S	13	10
RECIP.D	25	21
RSQRT.S	17	14
RSQRT.D	35	31
DIV.S, SQRT.S	17	14
DIV.D, SQRT.D	32	29
C.cond.[S,D] to MOVF fmt and MOVT fmt instruction / MOVT, MOVN, BC1 instruction	1 / 2	1
CVT.D.S, CVT.[S,D].[W,L]	4	1
CVT.S.D	6	1
CVT.[W,L].[S,D], CEIL.[W,L].[S,D], FLOOR.[W,L].[S,D], ROUND.[W,L].[S,D], TRUNC.[W,L].[S,D]	5	1
MOV.[S,D], MOVF.[S,D], MOVN.[S,D], MOVT.[S,D], MOVZ.[S,D]	4	1
LWC1, LDC1, LDXC1, LUXC1, LWXC1	3	1
MTC1, MFC1	2	1

1. Format: S = Single, D = Double, W = Word, L = Longword.

Chapter 4

The MIPS® DSP Application-Specific Extension

The CPU may include support for the DSP ASE to accelerate a wide range of signal processing applications. Refer to Volume IV-e of the *MIPS32® Architecture Reference Manual* [5] for a general description of the DSP ASE as well as detailed instruction descriptions. More detailed programming information is contained in the DSP chapter of *the Programmers Guide.*

4.1 Additional Register State for the DSP ASE

The DSP ASE adds four additional registers, three accumulator registers and a control register, per TC in the 1004K line of processors. These registers require the operating system to recognize the presence of the DSP ASE and to include these additional registers in the context save and restore operation.

4.1.1 Additional HI-LO Registers

Three additional *HI-LO* registers, which together with the existing one would comprise a total of four accumulator registers. Many common DSP computations are accumulate functions, for example, the filter operation, convolution, etc. The *HI-LO* accumulator in the MIPS architecture would be the destination for such instructions. The instructions that target the accumulators use 2 bits to specify the destination accumulator, with the zero value referring to the original accumulator.

4.1.2 DSP Control Register

A control register *DSPControl* used to hold extra state bits needed for efficient support of the DSP instructions. Figure 4.1 illustrates the bits in this register. Table 4.1 describes the use of the various bits and the instructions that refer the fields. Table 4.2 lists the instructions that affect the *ouflag* field.

Figure 4.1 MIPS32® DSP ASE Control Register (*DSPControl*) Format

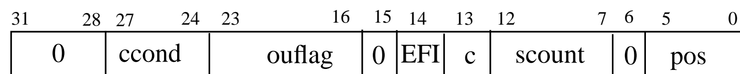


Table 4.1 MIPS® DSP ASE Control Register (*DSPControl*) Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State	Compliance
Name	Bits				
0	31:28	Not used in the MIPS32 architecture, but these are reserved bits since they are used in the MIPS64 architecture. Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	0	0	Required

Table 4.1 MIPS® DSP ASE Control Register (*DSPControl*) Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State	Compliance
Name	Bits				
ccond	27:24	Condition code bits set after a compare instruction. This instruction will set the right-most bits as required by the number of elements in the vector compare. The bits not set by the instruction remain unchanged.	R/W	0	Required
ouflag	23:16	This field is written by hardware when certain instructions overflow or underflow and may have been saturated if the saturate flag was turned on. See Table 4.2 for a full list of which bits are set by what instructions.	R/W	0	Required
EFI	14	Extract Fail Indicator. This bit is set to 1 when an EXTP, EXTPV, EXTPDP, or EXTPDP fails. These instructions fail when there are insufficient bits to extract, that is, the value of pos in DSPControl is less than the value of size specified in the instruction. This bit is not sticky, that is, each invocation of one of those four instructions will reset the bit depending on whether or not the instruction failed.	R/W	0	Required
c	13	Carry bit set and used by a special add instruction used to implement a 64-bit add across two GPRs. Instruction ADDSC sets the bit and instruction ADDWC uses this bit.	R/W	0	Required
scount	12:7	This field is for use by the INSV instruction. The value of this field is used to specify the size of the bit field to be inserted.	R/W	0	Required
pos	5:0	This field is used by the variable insert instructions INSV to specify the insert position. It is also used to indicate the extract position for the EXTP, EXTPV, EXTPDP, and EXTPDPV instructions. The decrement pos (DP) variants of these instructions on completion will have decremented the value of pos (by the size amount). The MTHLIP instruction will increment the pos value by 32 after copying the value of *LO* to *HI*.	R/W	0	Required
0	15:13	Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	0	0	Reserved

The bits of the overflow flag ouflag field in the *DSPControl* register are set by a number of instructions. These bits are sticky and can be reset only by an explicit write to these bits in the register (using the WRDSP instruction). The table shows which bits can be set by which instructions and under what conditions.

Table 4.2 The Instructions that Set the ouflag bits in *DSPControl*

Bit Number	Which Instruction Sets This Bit
16	When the destination is accumulator (*HI-LO* pair) zero, and an operation overflow or underflow occurs, then this bit is set. Such instructions are: DPAQ_S, DPSQ_S, MULSAQ_S, MAQ_S.
17	Instructions as above, when the destination is accumulator (*HI-LO* pair) one.

Table 4.2 The Instructions that Set the ouflag bits in *DSPControl*

Bit Number	Which Instruction Sets This Bit
18	Instructions as above, when the destination is accumulator (*HI-LO* pair) two.
19	Instructions as above, when the destination is accumulator (*HI-LO* pair) three.
20	Instructions that on a overflow/underflow will set this bit are: ADDQ, ADDQ_S, SUBQ, SUBQ_S, ADDU, ADDU_S, SUBU, SUBU_S, ABSQ, ABSQ_S, and ADDWC.
21	Instructions that on a overflow/underflow will set this bit are: MULQ_RS, MULEQ_S, and MULEU_S.
22	Instructions that on a overflow/underflow will set this bit are: SHLL, SHLLV, SHLL_S, SHLLV_S, PRECRQU_S. PRECRQ_RS.
23	Instructions that on a overflow/underflow will set this bit are: EXTR, EXTL, and variants.

4.2 Software Detection of the DSP ASE

In the *Config3* CP0 register, bit 10 (DSPP), “DSP Present” is a static bit used to indicate the presence of the MIPS DSP ASE in the 1004K CPU, as shown in Section 7.2.45 “Config3 Register (CP0 Register 16, Select 3)”. Software may query the DSPP bit to check whether this processor has implemented the MIPS DSP ASE. The DSPP bit is a 1 on the 1004K CPU, since the DSP logic is always present.

Another bit, “DSP ASE Enable” bit 24 (MX) in the CP0 *Status* register, is a read/write bit used to enable access to the extra instructions defined by the DSP ASE as well as the MTLO/HI, MFLO/HI that access accumulators ac1, ac2, and ac3. The *Status* register is described in Section 7.2.32 “Status Register (CP0 Register 12, Select 0)”. Executing a DSP ASE instruction or the flavor of Move instruction described above with this bit set to zero causes a DSP State Disabled Exception. This uses exception code 26 in the CP0 *Cause* register. This allows the OS to do lazy context-switching. Table 7.38 shows the *Cause* Register exception code fields.

Chapter 5

Memory Management of the 1004K™ CPU

The 1004K CPU includes a Memory Management Unit (MMU) that interfaces between the execution unit and the cache controller. The CPU contains either a Translation Lookaside Buffer (TLB) or a simpler Fixed Mapping (FM) style MMU, specified as a build-time option when the CPU is implemented.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Section 5.1 "Introduction"
- Section 5.2 "Modes of Operation"
- Section 5.3 "Translation Lookaside Buffer"
- Section 5.4 "Virtual-to-Physical Address Translation"
- Section 5.5 "Fixed Mapping MMU"
- Section 5.6 "System Control Coprocessor"

5.1 Introduction

The MMU in a 1004K CPU will translate any virtual address to a physical address before a request is sent to the cache controllers for tag comparison or to the bus interface unit for an external memory reference. This translation is a very useful feature for operating systems when trying to manage physical memory to accommodate multiple tasks active in the same memory, possibly on the same virtual address but of course in different locations in physical memory. Other features handled by the MMU are protection of memory areas and defining the cache protocol.

Each VPE in the CPU features its own MMU. By default, the MMU is TLB based and each VPE will have a 16/32/64 dual-entry fully associative Joint TLB (JTLB). Optionally one or both of the VPEs can have a simple MMU that translates addresses through a Fixed Mapping (FM) mechanism. When at least one of the VPEs uses a TLB based MMU, two micro TLB arrays will also be instantiated to cache the latest translations in a smaller and faster array. The instruction micro TLB (ITLB) has 3 shared entries, plus one private entry per TC. The data micro TLB (DTLB) always contains 8 entries. When an address is translated, the appropriate micro TLB (ITLB or DTLB) is accessed first. If the translation is not found in the micro TLB, the JTLB is accessed. If there is a miss in the JTLB, an exception is taken.

Figure 5.1 shows how the memory management unit interacts with cache accesses with a TLB, while Figure 5.2 shows the equivalent for the FM MMU.

Figure 5.1 Address Translation During a Cache Access with TLB MMU

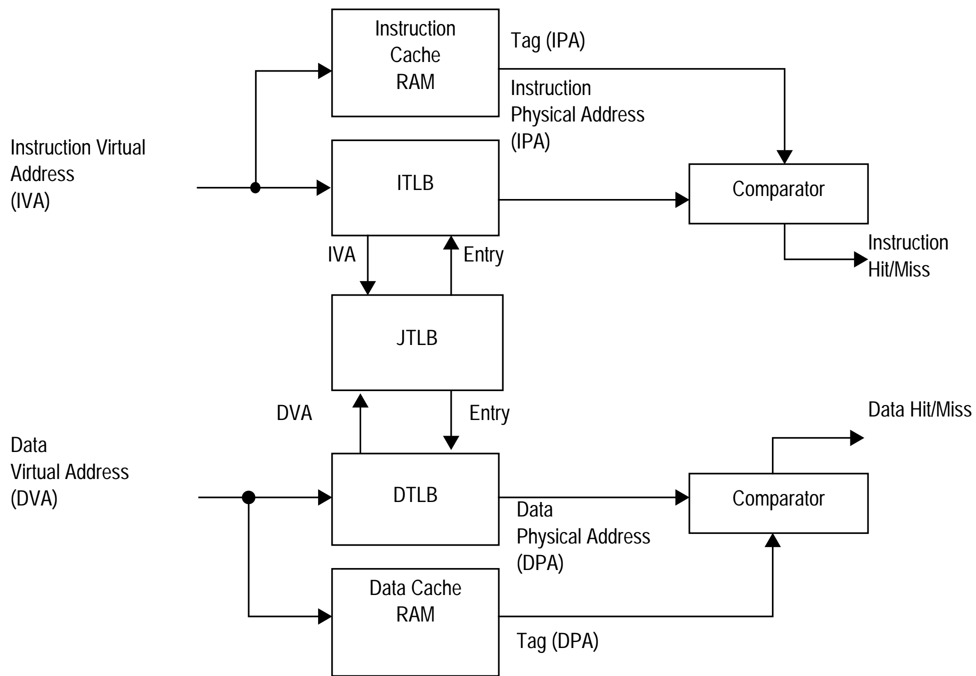
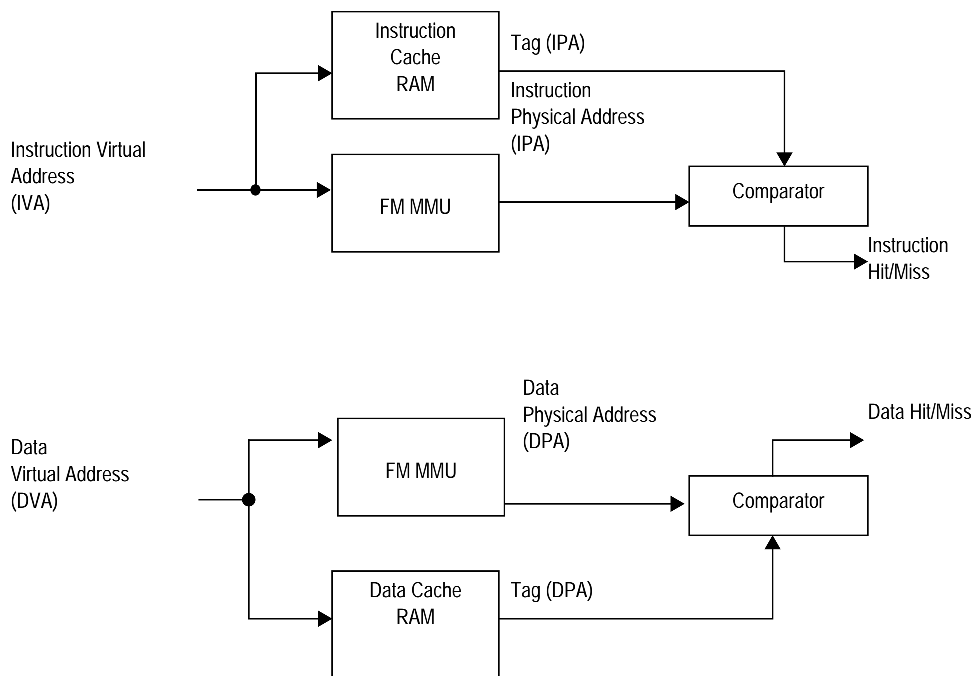


Figure 5.2 Address Translation During a Cache Access with FM MMU



5.2 Modes of Operation

A 1004K CPU supports four modes of operation:

- User mode
- Supervisor mode (only w/ TLB)
- Kernel mode
- Debug mode

User mode is most often used for application programs. Supervisor mode has an intermediate privilege level with access to an additional region of memory and is only supported with the TLB-based MMU. Kernel mode is typically used for handling exceptions and privileged operating system functions, including CP0 management and I/O device accesses. Debug mode is used for software debugging and most likely occurs within a software development tool.

The address translation performed by the MMU depends on the mode in which the processor is operating.

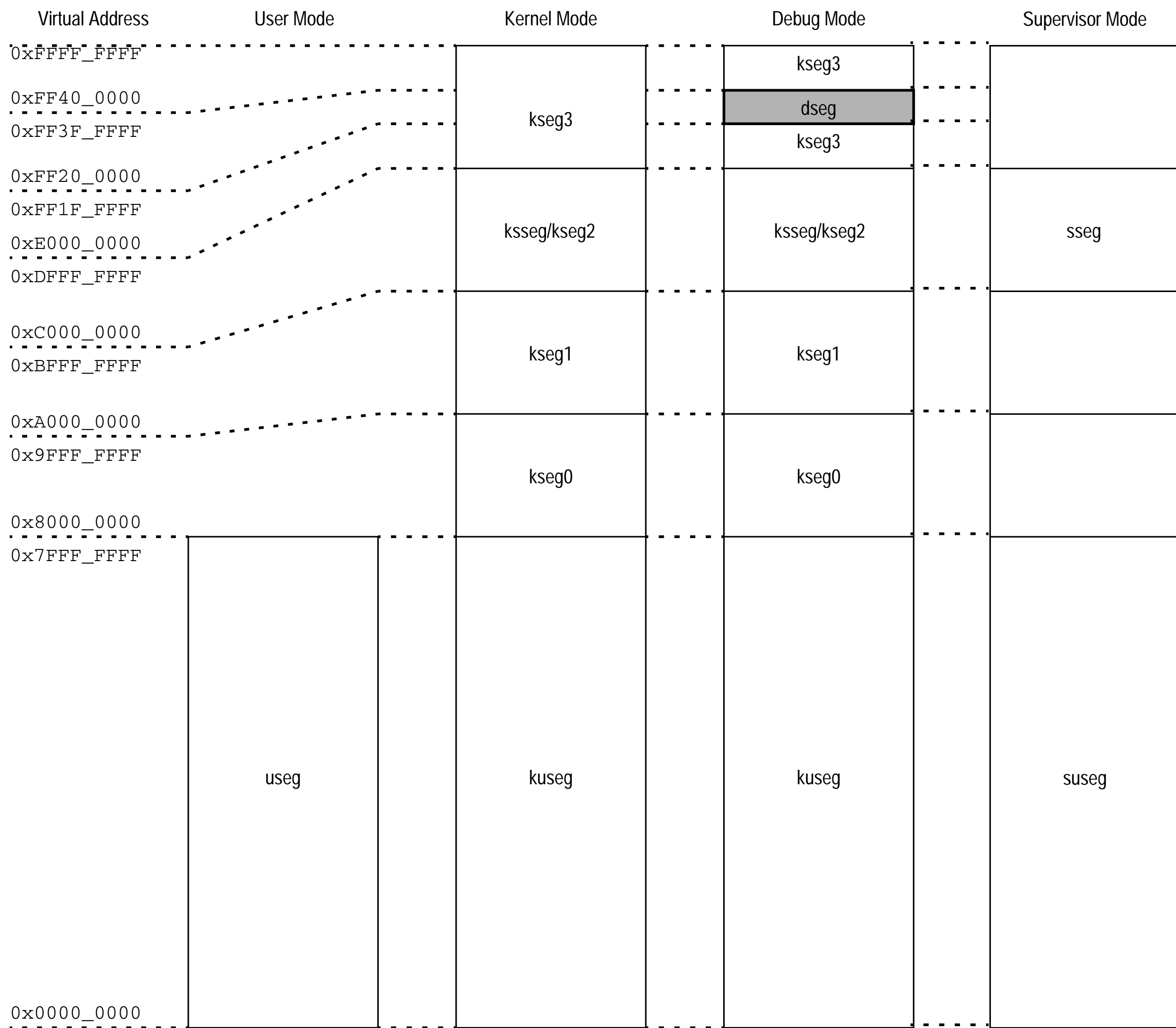
5.2.1 Virtual Memory Segments

The Virtual memory segments are different depending on the mode of operation. Figure 5.3 shows the segmentation for the 4 GByte (2^{32} bytes) virtual memory space addressed by a 32-bit virtual address, for the four modes of operation.

The CPU enters Kernel mode both at reset and when an exception is recognized. While in Kernel mode, software has access to the entire address space, as well as all CP0 registers. User mode accesses are limited to a subset of the virtual address space (0x0000_0000 to 0x7FFF_FFFF) and can be inhibited from accessing CP0 functions. In User mode, virtual addresses 0x8000_0000 to 0xFFFF_FFFF are invalid and cause an exception if accessed. Supervisor mode adds access to sseg (0xC000_0000 to 0xDFFF_FFFF). kseg0, kseg1, and kseg3 will still cause exceptions if they are accessed.

Debug mode is entered on a debug exception. While in Debug mode, the debug software has access to the same address space and CP0 registers as for Kernel mode. In addition, while in Debug mode the CPU has access to the debug segment dseg. This area overlays part of the kernel segment kseg3. dseg access in Debug mode can be turned on or off, allowing full access to the entire kseg3 in Debug mode, if so desired.

Figure 5.3 1004K™ CPU Virtual Memory Map



Each of the segments shown in Figure 5.3 are either mapped or unmapped. The following two sub-sections explain the distinction. Then sections Section 5.2.2 "User Mode", Section 5.2.4 "Kernel Mode", and Section 5.2.5 "Debug Mode" specify which segments are actually mapped and unmapped.

5.2.1.1 Unmapped Segments

An unmapped segment does not use the TLB or the FM to translate from virtual-to-physical addresses. Especially after reset, it is important to have unmapped memory segments, because the TLB is not yet programmed to perform the translation.

Unmapped segments have a fixed simple translation from virtual to physical address. This is much like the translations the FM provides for the CPU, but we will still make the distinction.

Except for kseg0, unmapped segments are always uncached. The cacheability of kseg0 is set in the *K0* field of the CP0 register *Config* (see Section 7.2.42 "Config Register (CP0 Register 16, Select 0)").

5.2.1.2 Mapped Segments

A mapped segment does use the TLB or the FM to translate from virtual-to-physical addresses.

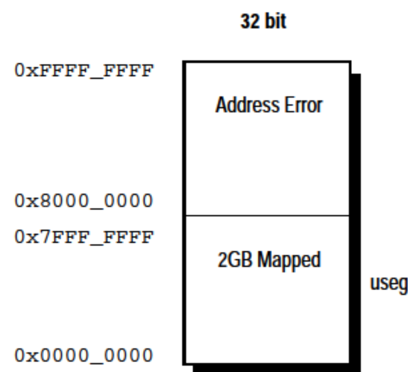
For the CPU with TLB, the translation of mapped segments is handled on a per-page basis. Included in this translation is information defining whether the page is cacheable or not, and the protection attributes that apply to the page.

For the core with the FM MMU, the mapped segments have a fixed translation from virtual to physical address. The cacheability of the segment is defined in the CP0 register *Config*, fields *K23* and *KU* (see Section 7.2.42 "Config Register (CP0 Register 16, Select 0)"). Write protection of segments is not possible during FM translation.

5.2.2 User Mode

In user mode, a single 2 GByte (2^{31} bytes) uniform virtual address space called the user segment (useg) is available. Figure 5.4 shows the location of user mode virtual address space.

Figure 5.4 User Mode Virtual Address Space



The user segment starts at address 0x0000_0000 and ends at address 0x7FFF_FFFF. Accesses to all other addresses cause an address error exception.

The processor operates in User mode when the *Status* register contains the following bit values:

- *KSU* = 2#10
- *EXL* = 0
- *ERL* = 0

In addition to the above values, the *DM* bit in the *Debug* register must be 0.

Table 5.1 lists the characteristics of the User mode segment.

Table 5.1 User Mode Segments

Address Bit Value	Status Register Bit Value			Segment Name	Address Range	Segment Size
	EXL	ERL	KSU			
32-bit A(31) = 0	0	0	2#10	useg	0x0000_0000 --> 0x7FFF_FFFF	2 GByte (2^{31} bytes)

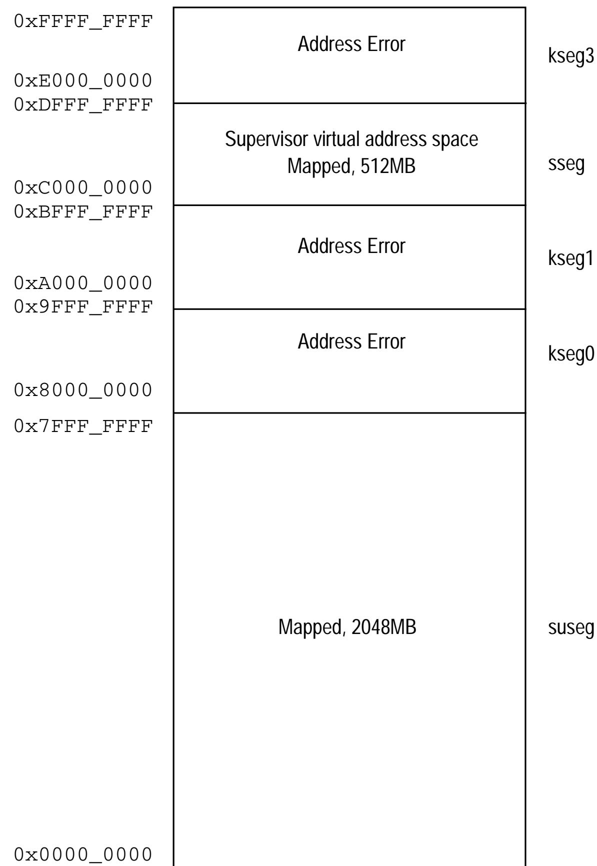
All valid user mode virtual addresses have their most significant bit cleared to 0, indicating that user mode can only access the lower half of the virtual memory map. Any attempt to reference an address with the most significant bit set while in user mode causes an address error exception.

The system maps all references to useg through the TLB or FM. For cores with a TLB, the virtual address is extended with the contents of the 8-bit *ASID* field to form a unique virtual address before translation. Also bit settings within the TLB entry for the page determine the cacheability of a reference. For FM MMU cores, the cacheability is set via the *KU* field of the CP0 *Config* register.

5.2.3 Supervisor Mode

In supervisor mode, two virtual address spaces are available. A 2 GByte (2^{31} bytes) uniform virtual address space called the user segment (useg) as well as the 512MB (ksseg) are available. Figure 5.5 shows the location of supervisor mode virtual address space.

Figure 5.5 Supervisor Mode Virtual Address Space



The user segment starts at address 0x0000_0000 and ends at address 0x7FFF_FFFF. The supervisor segment begins at 0xC000_0000 and ends at 0xDFFF_FFFF. Accesses to all other addresses cause an address error exception.

The processor operates in Supervisor mode when the *Status* register contains the following bit values:

- *KSU* = 2#01
- *EXL* = 0
- *ERL* = 0

In addition to the above values, the *DM* bit in the *Debug* register must be 0.

Table 5.1 lists the characteristics of the Supervisor mode segments.

Table 5.2 Supervisor Mode Segments

Address Bit Value	Status Register Bit Value EXL	ERL	KSU	Segment Name	Address Range	Segment Size
32-bit A(31) = 0	0	0	2#01	suseg	0x0000_0000 --> 0x7FFF_FFFF	2 GByte (2^{31} bytes)
32-bit A(31:29) = 110_2	0	0	2#01	sseg	0xC000_0000 -> 0xDFFF_FFFF	512MB (2^{29} bytes)

The system maps all references to useg and ksseg through the TLB or FM. For cores with a TLB, the virtual address is extended with the contents of the 8-bit *ASID* field to form a unique virtual address before translation. Also bit settings within the TLB entry for the page determine the cacheability of a reference. For FM MMU cores, the cacheability of useg and ksseg is set via the *KU* and *K23* fields of the CP0 *Config* register respectively.

5.2.4 Kernel Mode

The processor operates in Kernel mode when the *DM* bit in the *Debug* register is 0 and the *Status* register contains one or more of the following values:

- *KSU* = 2#00
- *ERL* = 1
- *EXL* = 1

When a non-debug exception is detected, *EXL* or *ERL* will be set and the processor will enter Kernel mode. At the end of the exception handler routine, an Exception Return (ERET) instruction is generally executed. The ERET instruction jumps to the Exception PC, clears *ERL*, and clears *EXL* if *ERL*=0. This may return the processor to User mode.

Kernel mode virtual address space is divided into regions differentiated by the high-order bits of the virtual address, as shown in Figure 5.6. Also, Table 5.3 lists the characteristics of the Kernel mode segments.

Figure 5.6 Kernel Mode Virtual Address Space

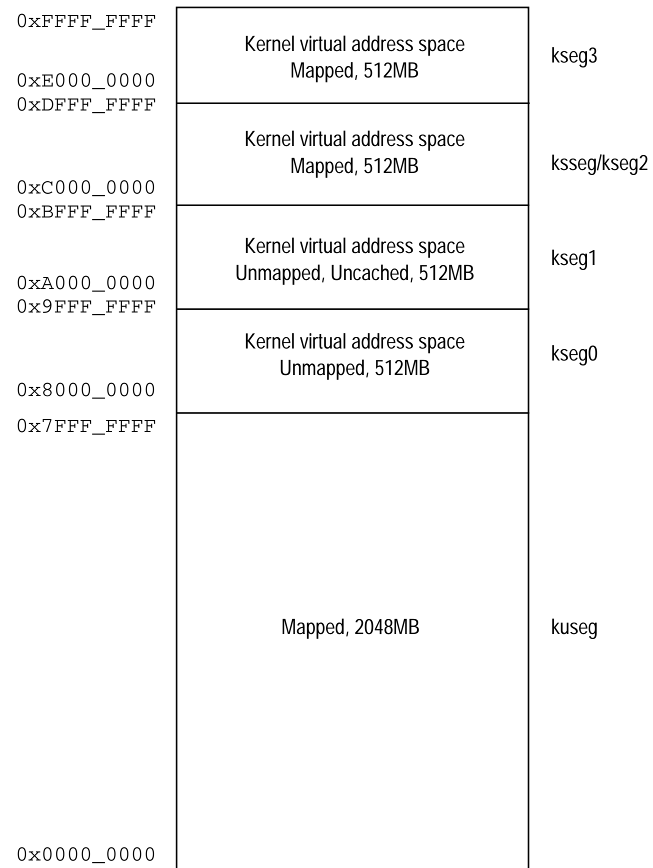


Table 5.3 Kernel Mode Segments

Address Bit Values	Status Register Is One of These Values: KSU	EXL	ERL	Segment Name	Address Range	Segment Size
A(31) = 0	(KSU = 00_2 or EXL = 1 or ERL = 1) and DM = 0			kuseg	0x0000_0000 through 0x7FFF_FFFF	2 GBytes (2^{31} bytes)
A(31:29) = 100_2				kseg0	0x8000_0000 through 0x9FFF_FFFF	512 MBytes (2^{29} bytes)
A(31:29) = 101_2				kseg1	0xA000_0000 through 0xBFFF_FFFF	512 MBytes (2^{29} bytes)
A(31:29) = 110_2				ksseg/kseg2	0xC000_0000 through 0xDFFF_FFFF	512 MBytes (2^{29} bytes)
A(31:29) = 111_2				kseg3	0xE000_0000 through 0xFFFF_FFFF	512 MBytes (2^{29} bytes)

5.2.4.1 Kernel Mode, User Space (kuseg)

In Kernel mode, when the most-significant bit of the virtual address (A31) is cleared, the 32-bit kuseg virtual address space is selected and covers the full 2^{31} bytes (2 GBytes) of the current user address space mapped to addresses 0x0000_0000 - 0x7FFF_FFFF. For cores with TLBs, the virtual address is extended with the contents of the 8-bit ASID field to form a unique virtual address.

When *ERL* = 1 in the *Status* register, the user address region becomes a 2^{31}-byte unmapped and uncached address space. While in this setting, the kuseg virtual address maps directly to the same physical address, and does not include the *ASID* field.

5.2.4.2 Kernel Mode, Kernel Space 0 (kseg0)

In Kernel mode, when the most-significant three bits of the virtual address are 100_2, 32-bit kseg0 virtual address space is selected; it is the 2^{29}-byte (512-MByte) kernel virtual space located at addresses 0x8000_0000 - 0x9FFF_FFFF. References to kseg0 are unmapped; the physical address selected is defined by subtracting 0x8000_0000 from the virtual address. The *K0* field of the *Config* register controls cacheability.

5.2.4.3 Kernel Mode, Kernel Space 1 (kseg1)

In Kernel mode, when the most-significant three bits of the 32-bit virtual address are 101_2, 32-bit kseg1 virtual address space is selected. kseg1 is the 2^{29}-byte (512-MByte) kernel virtual space located at addresses 0xA000_0000 - 0xBFFF_FFFF. References to kseg1 are unmapped; the physical address selected is defined by subtracting 0xA000_0000 from the virtual address. Caches are disabled for accesses to these addresses, and physical memory (or memory-mapped I/O device registers) are accessed directly.

5.2.4.4 Kernel Mode, Kernel/Supervisor Space 2 (ksseg/kseg2)

In Kernel mode, when *KSU*= 00_2, *ERL* = 1, or *EXL* = 1 in the *Status* register, and *DM* = 0 in the *Debug* register, and the most-significant three bits of the 32-bit virtual address are 110_2, 32-bit kseg2 virtual address space is selected. With the FM MMU, this 2^{29}-byte (512-MByte) kernel virtual space is located at physical addresses 0xC000_0000 - 0xDFFF_FFFF. Otherwise, this space is mapped through the TLB.

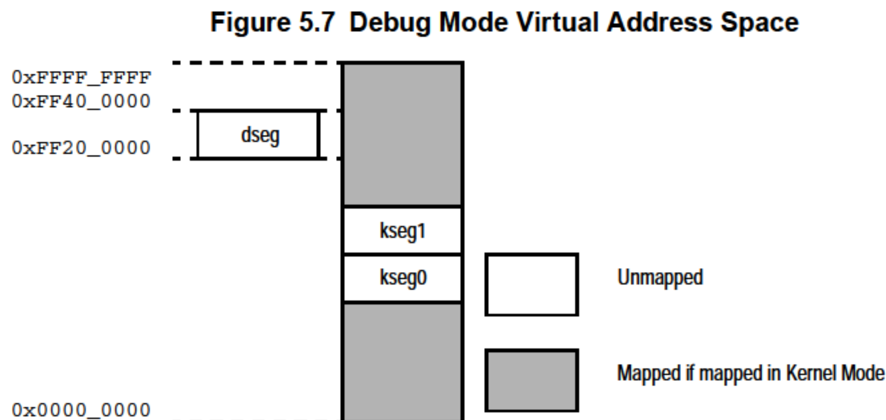
5.2.4.5 Kernel Mode, Kernel Space 3 (kseg3)

In Kernel mode, when the most-significant three bits of the 32-bit virtual address are 111_2, the kseg3 virtual address space is selected. With the FM MMU, this 2^{29}-byte (512-MByte) kernel virtual space is located at physical addresses 0xE000_0000 - 0xFFFF_FFFF. Otherwise, this space is mapped through the TLB.

5.2.5 Debug Mode

Debug mode address space is identical to Kernel mode address space with respect to mapped and unmapped areas, except for kseg3. In kseg3, a debug segment, dseg, co-exists in the virtual address range 0xFF20_0000 to 0xFF3F_FFFF. The layout is shown in Figure 5.7.

Figure 5.7 Debug Mode Virtual Address Space



The dseg is subdivided into the dmseg segment at 0xFF20_0000 to 0xFF2F_FFFF, which is used when the probe services the memory segment, and the drseg segment at 0xFF30_0000 to 0xFF3F_FFFF which is used when memory-mapped debug registers are accessed. The subdivision and attributes for the segments are shown in Table 5.4.

Accesses to memory that would normally cause an exception if tried from kernel mode cause the CPU to re-enter debug mode via a debug mode exception. This includes accesses usually causing a TLB exception, with the result that such accesses are not handled by the usual memory management routines.

The unmapped kseg0 and kseg1 segments from kernel mode address space are available from debug mode, which allows the debug handler to be executed from uncached and unmapped memory.

Table 5.4 Physical Address and Cache Attributes for dseg, dmseg, and drseg Address Spaces

Segment Name	Sub-Segment Name	Virtual Address	Generates Physical Address	Cache Attribute
dseg	dmseg	0xFF20_0000 through 0xFF2F_FFFF	dmseg maps to addresses 0x0_0000 - 0xF_FFFF in EJTAG probe memory space.	Uncached
	drseg	0xFF30_0000 through 0xFF3F_FFFF	drseg maps to the breakpoint registers 0x0_0000 - 0xF_FFFF	

5.2.5.1 Conditions and Behavior for Access to drseg, EJTAG Registers

The behavior of access to the drseg address range at 0xFF30_0000 to 0xFF3F_FFFF is determined as shown in Table 5.5

Table 5.5 Accesses to drseg Address Range

Transaction	LSNM bit in Debug Register	Access
Load / Store	1	Kernel mode address space (kseg3)
Fetch	Don't care	drseg, see comments below
Load / Store	0	

Debug software is expected to read the debug control register (*DCR*) to determine which other memory mapped registers exist in drseg. The value returned in response to a read of any unimplemented memory mapped register is unpredictable, and writes are ignored to any unimplemented register in the drseg. Refer to Chapter 11, "EJTAG Debug Support in the 1004K™ CPU" on page 285 for more information on the DCR.

The allowed access size is limited for the drseg. Only word size transactions are allowed. Operation of the processor is undefined for other transaction sizes.

5.2.5.2 Conditions and Behavior for Access to dmseg, EJTAG Memory

The behavior of access to the dmseg address range at 0xFF20_0000 to 0xFF2F_FFFF is determined by the table shown in Table 5.6.

Table 5.6 Accesses to dmseg Address Range

Transaction	ProbEn bit in DCR Register	LSNM bit in Debug Register	Access
Load / Store	Don't care	1	Kernel mode address space (kseg3)
Fetch	1	Don't care	dmseg
Load / Store	1	0	
Fetch	0	Don't care	See comments below
Load / Store	0	0	

The case with access to the dmseg when the *ProbEn* bit in the *DCR* register is 0 is not expected to happen. Debug software is expected to check the state of the *ProbEn* bit in *DCR* register before attempting to reference dmseg. If such a reference does happen, the reference hangs until it is satisfied by the probe. The probe can not assume that there will never be a reference to dmseg if the *ProbEn* bit in the *DCR* register is 0 because there is an inherent race between the debug software sampling the *ProbEn* bit as 1 and the probe clearing it to 0.

5.3 Translation Lookaside Buffer

The following subsections discuss the TLB memory management scheme used in the 1004Kc CPU. The TLB consists of the joint and micro address translation buffers:

- 16-64 dual-entry fully associative Joint TLB (JTLB) per VPE
- Fully associative Instruction micro TLB (ITLB) with 3 shared entries and 1 private entry per TC
- 8-entry fully associative Data micro TLB (DTLB)

5.3.1 Joint TLB

The 16-64 dual-entry, fully associative Joint TLB maps 32-128 virtual pages to their corresponding physical addresses. The purpose of the TLB is to translate virtual addresses and their corresponding ASID into a physical memory address. The translation is performed by comparing the upper bits of the virtual address (along with the ASID bits) against each of the entries in the *tag* portion of the JTLB structure. Because this structure is used to translate both instruction and data virtual addresses, it is referred to as a “joint” TLB.

The JTLB is organized as 16-64 pairs of even and odd entries containing descriptions of pages that range in size from 4-KBytes to 256MBytes into the 4-GByte physical address space.

The JTLB is organized in pairs of page entries to minimize its overall size. Each virtual *tag* entry corresponds to two physical data entries, an even page entry and an odd page entry. The highest order virtual address bit not participating in the tag comparison is used to determine which of the two data entries is used. Since page size can vary on a page-pair basis, the determination of which address bits participate in the comparison and which bit is used to make the even-odd selection must be done dynamically during the TLB lookup.

Figure 5.8 shows the contents of one of the dual-entries in the JTLB. The bit range indication in the figure serves to clarify which address bits are (or may be) affected during the translation process.

Figure 5.8 JTLB Entry (Tag and Data)

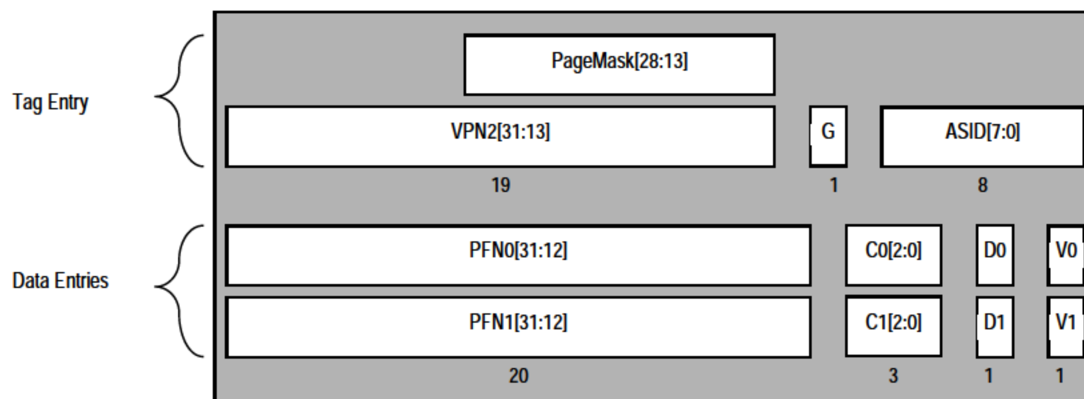


Table 5.7 and Table 5.8 explain each of the fields in a JTLB entry.

Table 5.7 TLB Tag Entry Fields

<table>
<tr><th>Field Name</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>PageMask[28:13]</td><td>Page Mask Value. The Page Mask defines the page size by masking the appropriate VPN2 bits from being involved in a comparison. It is also used to determine which address bit is used to make the even-odd page (PFN0-PFN1) determination. See the table below.
<table>
<tr><th>PageMask</th><th>Page Size</th><th>Even/Odd Bank Select Bit</th></tr>
<tr><td>00_0000_0000_0000_00</td><td>4KB</td><td>VAddr[12]</td></tr>
<tr><td>00_0000_0000_0000_11</td><td>16KB</td><td>VAddr[14]</td></tr>
<tr><td>00_0000_0000_0011_11</td><td>64KB</td><td>VAddr[16]</td></tr>
<tr><td>00_0000_0000_1111_11</td><td>256KB</td><td>VAddr[18]</td></tr>
<tr><td>00_0000_0011_1111_11</td><td>1MB</td><td>VAddr[20]</td></tr>
<tr><td>00_0000_1111_1111_11</td><td>4MB</td><td>VAddr[22]</td></tr>
<tr><td>00_0011_1111_1111_11</td><td>16MB</td><td>VAddr[24]</td></tr>
<tr><td>00_1111_1111_1111_11</td><td>64MB</td><td>VAddr[26]</td></tr>
<tr><td>11_1111_1111_1111_11</td><td>256MB</td><td>VAddr[28]</td></tr>
</table>
The PageMask column above shows all the legal values for PageMask. Because each pair of bits can only have the same value, the physical entry in the JTLB will only save a compressed version of the PageMask using only 8 bits. This is however transparent to software, which will always work with a 16 bit field</td></tr>
<tr><td>VPN2[31:13]</td><td>Virtual Page Number divided by 2. This field contains the upper bits of the virtual page number. Because it represents a pair of TLB pages, it is divided by 2. Bits 31:29 are always included in the TLB lookup comparison. Bits 28:13 are included depending on the page size, defined by PageMask</td></tr>
<tr><td>G</td><td>Global Bit. When set, indicates that this entry is global to all processes and/or threads and thus disables inclusion of the ASID in the comparison.</td></tr>
<tr><td>ASID[7:0]</td><td>Address Space Identifier. Identifies which process or thread this TLB entry is associated with.</td></tr>
</table>

Table 5.8 TLB Data Entry Fields

Field Name	Description
PFN0[31:12], PFN1[31:12]	Physical Frame Number. Defines the upper bits of the physical address.

Table 5.8 TLB Data Entry Fields (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th>Field Name</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>C0[2:0],
C1[2:0]</td><td>Cacheability. Contains an encoded value of the cacheability attributes and determines whether the page should be placed in the cache or not. The field is encoded as follows:
<table>
<tr><th>C[2:0]</th><th>Name</th><th>Coherency Attribute</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>WT</td><td>Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>-</td><td>Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>UC</td><td>Uncached</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>WB</td><td>Cacheable, noncoherent, write-back, write allocate</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>CWBE</td><td>Cacheable, write-back, write-allocate, coherent, read misses request Exclusive</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>CWB</td><td>Cacheable, write-back, write-allocate, coherent, read misses request Shared</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>-</td><td>Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td>UCA</td><td>Uncached Accelerated</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>D0,
D1</td><td>"Dirty" or Write-enable Bit. Indicates that the page has been written and/or is writable. If this bit is set, stores to the page are permitted. If the bit is cleared, stores to the page cause a TLB Modified exception.</td></tr>
<tr><td>V0,
V1</td><td>Valid Bit. Indicates that the TLB entry and, thus, the virtual page mapping are valid. If this bit is set, accesses to the page are permitted. If the bit is cleared, accesses to the page cause a TLB Invalid exception.</td></tr>
</table>

In order to fill an entry in the JTLB, software executes a TLBWI or TLBWR instruction (See Section 5.4.3 "TLB Instructions"). Prior to invoking one of these instructions, several CP0 registers must be updated with the information to be written to a TLB entry:

- PageMask is set in the CP0 *PageMask* register.
- *VPN2*, and *ASID* are set in the CP0 *EntryHi* register.
- *PFN0*, *C0*, *D0*, *V0*, and *G* bits are set in the CP0 *EntryLo0* register.
- *PFN1*, *C1*, *D1*, *V1*, and G bits are set in the CP0 *EntryLo1* register.

Note that the global bit "G" is part of both *EntryLo0* and *EntryLo1*. The resulting "G" bit in the JTLB entry is the logical AND between the two fields in *EntryLo0* and *EntryLo1*. Please refer to Chapter 7, "CP0 Registers of the 1004K™ CPU" on page 167 for further details.

The address space identifier (ASID) helps to reduce the frequency of TLB flushing on a context switch. The existence of the ASID allows multiple processes to exist in both the TLB and instruction caches. The ASID value is stored in the *EntryHi* register and is compared to the ASID value of each entry.

5.3.2 Instruction TLB

The ITLB is a small fully associative TLB dedicated to perform translations for the instruction stream. The ITLB only maps 4-Kbyte pages/sub-pages or 1-Mbyte pages/sub-pages.

The ITLB is managed by hardware and is transparent to software. If a fetch address cannot be translated by the ITLB, the JTLB is accessed trying to translate it in the following clock cycles. If successful, the translation information is copied into the ITLB and bypassed to the tag comparators. This results in an ITLB miss penalty of at least 2 cycles. Depending on the JTLB implementation or if it is busy with other operations, it may take additional cycles.

The ITLB array consists of 3 shared entries and 1 private entry per TC. On an ITLB miss, the new translation will be loaded into the least recently used of the 3 shared ITLB entries. For each TC, if the displaced translation was more recently used than its private entry, the displaced translation will be written into the private entry.

5.3.3 Data TLB

The DTLB is a small 8-entry, fully associative TLB which provides a faster translation for Load/Store addresses than is possible with the JTLB. The DTLB only maps 4-Kbyte pages/sub-pages or 1-Mbyte pages/sub-pages.

Like the ITLB, the DTLB is managed by hardware and is transparent to software. For simultaneous ITLB and DTLB misses, the DTLB has priority and will access the JTLB first.

5.4 Virtual-to-Physical Address Translation

Converting a virtual address to a physical address begins by comparing the virtual address from the processor with the virtual addresses in the TLB. There is a match when the VPN of the address is the same as the VPN field of the entry, and either:

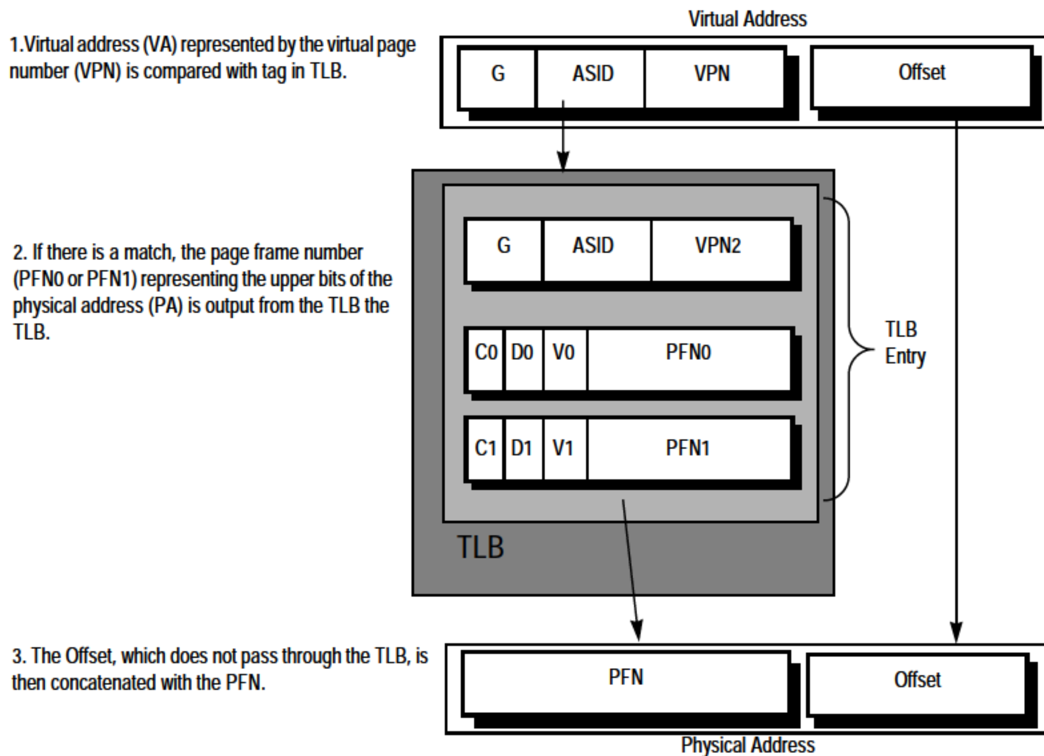
- The Global (G) bit of both the even and odd pages of the TLB entry are set, or
- The ASID field of the virtual address is the same as the ASID field of the TLB entry

This match is referred to as a TLB *hit*. If there is no match, a TLB *miss* exception is taken by the processor and software is allowed to refill the TLB from a page table of virtual/physical addresses in memory.

Figure 5.9 shows the logical translation of a virtual address into a physical address.

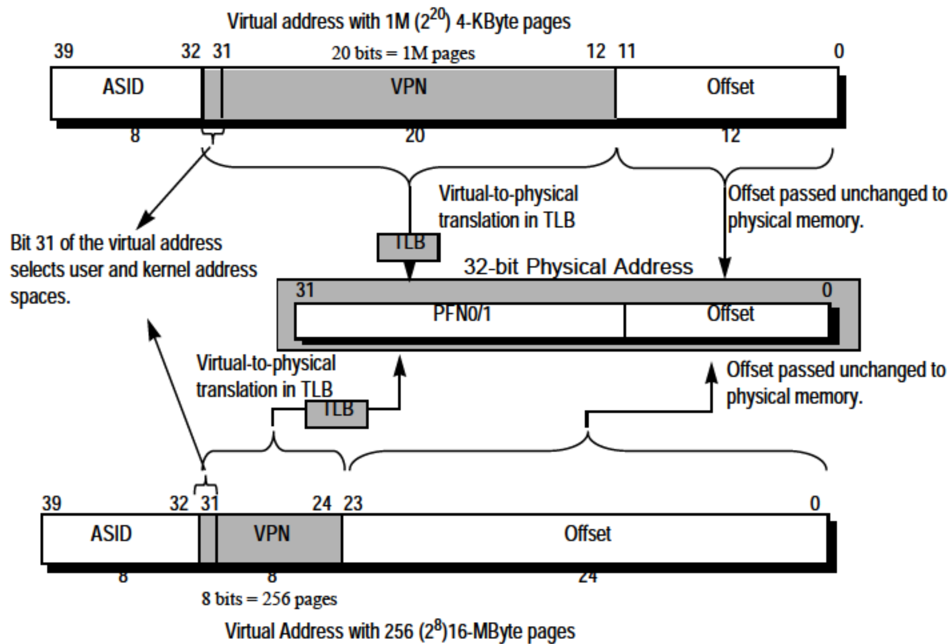
In this figure the virtual address is extended with an 8-bit ASID, which reduces the frequency of TLB flushing during a context switch. This 8-bit ASID contains the number assigned to that process and is stored in the CP0 *EntryHi* register.

Figure 5.9 Overview of a Virtual-to-Physical Address Translation



If there is a virtual address match in the TLB, the Physical Frame Number (PFN) is output from the TLB and concatenated with the *Offset*, to form the physical address. The *Offset* represents an address within the page frame space. As shown in Figure 5.9, the *Offset* does not pass through the TLB. Figure 5.10 shows a flow diagram of the address translation process for two page sizes. The top portion of the figure shows a virtual address for a 4 KByte page size. The width of the *Offset* is defined by the page size. The remaining 20 bits of the address represent the virtual page number (VPN). The bottom portion of Figure 5.10 shows the virtual address for a 16 MByte page size. The remaining 8 bits of the address represent the VPN.

Figure 5.10 32-bit Virtual Address Translation



5.4.1 Hits, Misses, and Multiple Matches

Each JTLB entry contains a tag and two data fields. If a match is found, the upper bits of the virtual address are replaced with the page frame number (PFN) stored in the corresponding entry in the data array of the JTLB. The granularity of JTLB mappings is defined in terms of TLB pages. The JTLB supports pages of different sizes ranging from 4KB to 256 MB in powers of 4. If a match is found, but the entry is invalid (i.e., the V bit in the data field is 0), a TLB Invalid exception is taken.

If no match occurs (TLB miss), an exception is taken and software refills the TLB from the page table resident in memory. Figure 5.11 shows the translation and exception flow of the TLB.

Software can write over a selected TLB entry or use a hardware mechanism to write into a random entry. The *Random* register selects which TLB entry to use on a TLBWR. This register decrements almost every cycle, wrapping to the maximum once its value is equal to the *Wired* register. Thus, TLB entries below the *Wired* value cannot be replaced by a TLBWR allowing important mappings to be preserved. In order to reduce the possibility for a livelock situation, the *Random* register includes a 10-bit LFSR that introduces a pseudo-random perturbation into the decrement.

The CPU implements a TLB write-compare mechanism to ensure that multiple TLB matches do not occur. On the TLB write operation, the mapping to be written is compared with all other entries in the TLB. If one or more matching entries are found and either the existing entry or new entry does not have either valid bit set, the existing entry will be disabled to prevent future matches. On single-threaded cores, a match where both the existing entry and the entry being written have a valid bit set is indicative of a software error and the write may result in a machine check exception. With multi-threading this situation can arise without software error when two TCs get the same TLB miss at about the same time. Thus, if such a match occurs, the write will simply be dropped and no machine check exceptions will be generated.

5.4.2 Memory Space

To assist in controlling both the amount of mapped space and the replacement characteristics of various memory regions, the 1004K CPU provides two mechanisms.

5.4.2.1 Page Sizes

First, the page size can be configured, on a per entry basis, to map different page sizes ranging from 4 KByte to 256 MByte, in multiples of 4. The CP0 *PageMask* register is loaded with the desired page size, which is then entered into the TLB when a new entry is written. Thus, operating systems can provide special-purpose maps. For example, a typical frame buffer can be memory mapped with only one TLB entry.

The 1004K CPU implements the following page sizes:

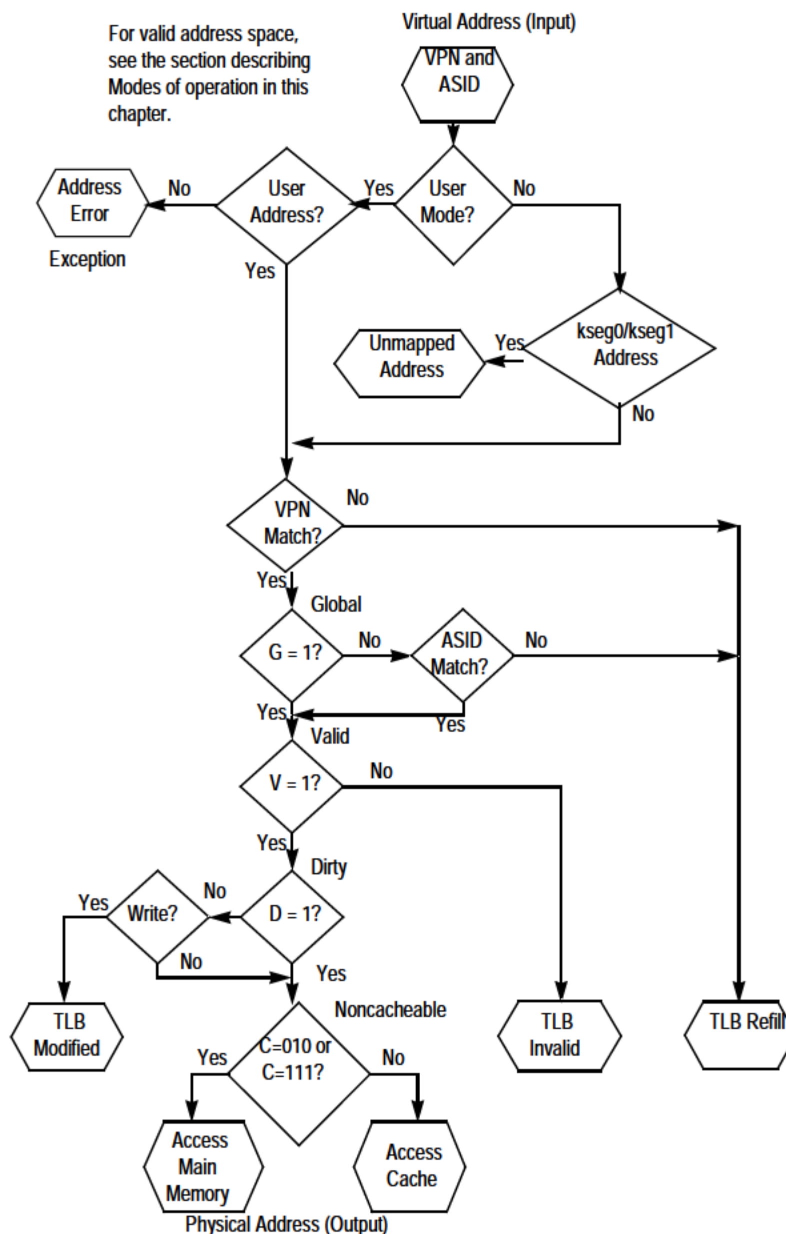
4K, 16K, 64K, 256K, 1M, 4M, 16M, 64M, 256M.

Software may determine which page sizes are supported by writing all ones to the CP0 *PageMask* register, then reading the value back. For additional information, see Section 7.2.23 “PageMask Register (CP0 Register 5, Select 0)”.

5.4.2.2 Replacement Algorithm

The second mechanism controls the replacement algorithm when a TLB miss occurs. To select a TLB entry to be written with a new mapping, the 1004K CPU provides a random replacement algorithm. However, the processor also provides a mechanism whereby a programmable number of mappings can be locked into the TLB via the CP0 *Wired* register, thus avoiding random replacement. Please refer to Section 7.2.24 “Wired Register (CP0 Register 6, Select 0)” for further details.

Figure 5.11 TLB Address Translation Flow in the 1004K™ CPU



5.4.3 TLB Instructions

Table 5.9 lists the TLB-related instructions. Refer to Chapter 15, "1004K™ Processor CPU Instructions" on page 395 for more information on these instructions.

Table 5.9 TLB Instructions

Op Code	Description of Instruction
TLBP	Translation Lookaside Buffer Probe
TLBR	Translation Lookaside Buffer Read

Table 5.9 TLB Instructions (Continued)

Op Code	Description of Instruction
TLBWI	Translation Lookaside Buffer Write Index
TLBWR	Translation Lookaside Buffer Write Random

5.4.4 Shared TLB mode

When a TLB-based MMU is implemented on both VPEs, it is possible to combine the two arrays into a single array that will be used by both VPEs. This is done by setting $MVPControl_{STLB}$ to 1 - this bit should only be changed by code executing in an unmapped address region and only when there are no valid TLB entries.

- Both VPEs share the same address space (including ASID and VA - VPE # is not part of the TLB tag)
- Software is expected to keep the *Wired* register the same for the two VPEs and the value should allow at least 2 entries for random selection if TLBWR is going to be used.
- Hardware constrains TLBWR from overwriting the entry pointed at by the *Index* register of the opposite VPE (if the *P* bit is cleared).
  - This is needed to avoid interfering TLB maintenance code running on opposite VPE.
  - The is done by stalling the TLBWR until *Random* does not match *Index*
- *IndexP* is writable to allow software to “park” the *Index* register when it is done operating on the TLB, allowing all TLB entries to be used by a TLBWR
- Note that the maximum TLB size allowed by the architecture is 64 dual entries. Sharing 2x64 entry JTLBs would result in half of the entries being ignored.
- Multiple TCs could potentially miss on the same address at nearly the same time and process the miss. The hardware will squash the second TLB write to avoid multiple matches. TLBWx to VA/ASID already in JTLB will be dropped. (Note that this can also happen to two TCs in one VPE even without sharing)

5.5 Fixed Mapping MMU

The 1004K CPU optionally implements a simple Fixed Mapping (FM) memory management unit that is smaller than the a full translation lookaside buffer (TLB) and more easily synthesized. Like a TLB, the FM performs virtual-to-physical address translation and provides attributes for the different memory segments. Those memory segments which are unmapped in a TLB implementation (kseg0 and kseg1) are translated identically by the FM MMU.

The FM also determines the cacheability of each segment. These attributes are controlled via bits in the *Config* register. Table 5.10 shows the encoding for the *K23* (bits 30:28), *KU* (bits 27:25) and *K0* (bits 2:0) of the *Config* register.

Table 5.10 Cache Coherency Attributes

Config Register Fields K23, KU, and K0	Name	Cache Coherency Attribute
0	-	Reserved
1	-	Reserved

Table 5.10 Cache Coherency Attributes (Continued)

Config Register Fields K23, KU, and K0	Name	Cache Coherency Attribute
2	UC	Uncached
3	WB	Cacheable, noncoherent, write-back, write allocate
4	CWBE	Cacheable, write-back, write-allocate, coherent, read misses request Exclusive
5	CWB	Cacheable, write-back, write-allocate, coherent, read misses request Shared
6	-	Reserved
7	UCA	Uncached Accelerated

With the FM MMU, no translation exceptions can be taken, although address errors are still possible.

Table 5.11 Cacheability of Segments with Fixed Mapping Translation

Segment	Virtual Address Range	Cacheability
useg/kuseg	0x0000_0000- 0x7FFF_FFFF	Controlled by the *KU* field (bits 27:25) of the *Config* register. Refer to Table 5.10 for the encoding.
kseg0	0x8000_0000- 0x9FFF_FFFF	Controlled by the *K0* field (bits 2:0) of the *Config* register. See Table 5.10 for the encoding.
kseg1	0xA000_0000- 0xBFFF_FFFF	Always uncacheable
kseg2	0xC000_0000- 0xDFFF_FFFF	Controlled by the *K23* field (bits 30:28) of the *Config* register. Refer to Table 5.10 for the encoding.
kseg3	0xE000_0000- 0xFFFF_FFFF	Controlled by *K23* field (bits 30:28) of the *Config* register. Refer to Table 5.10 for the encoding.

The FM performs a simple translation to map from virtual addresses to physical addresses. This mapping is shown in Figure 5.12. When *ERL*=1, useg and kuseg become unmapped and uncached just like they do if there is a TLB. The *ERL* mapping is shown in Figure 5.13.

The *ERL* bit is usually never asserted by software. It is asserted by hardware after a Reset, NMI, or Cache Error. See Section 6.8 “Exceptions” for further information on exceptions.

Figure 5.12 FM Memory Map (ERL=0) in the 1004K™ CPU

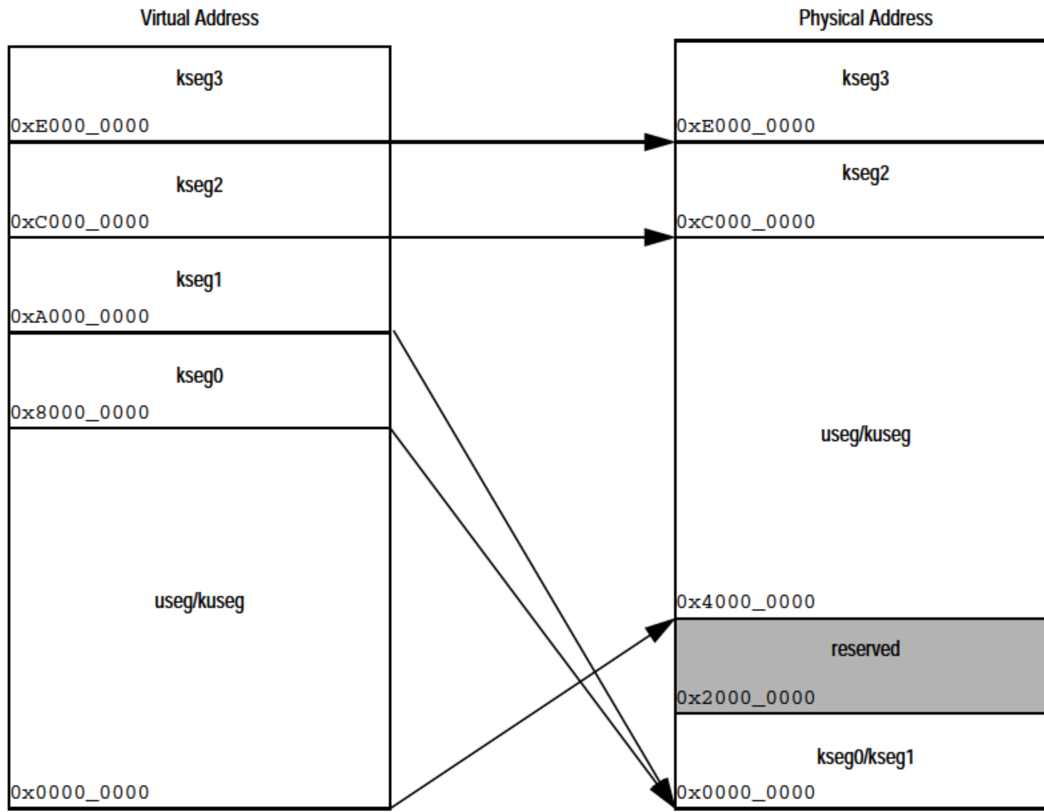
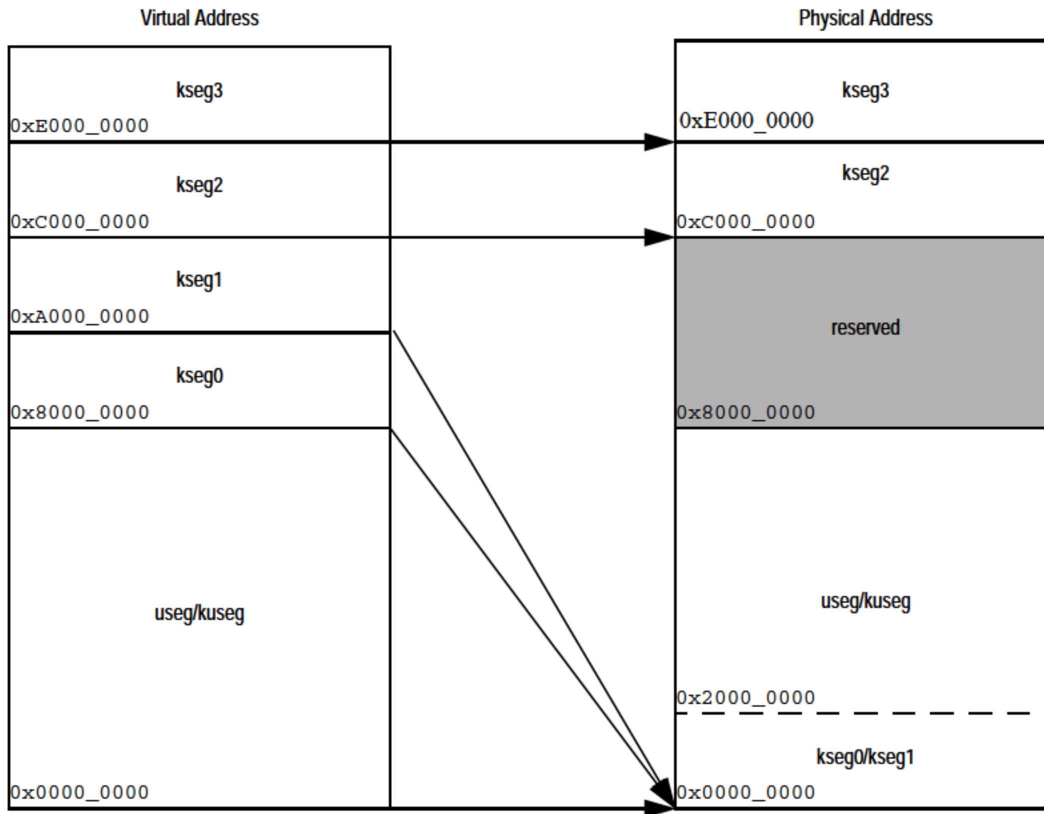


Figure 5.13 FM Memory Map (ERL=1) in the 1004K™ CPU



5.6 System Control Coprocessor

The System Control Coprocessor (CP0) is implemented as an integral part of the 1004K CPU and supports memory management, address translation, exception handling, and other privileged operations. Certain CP0 registers are used to support memory management. Refer to Chapter 7, “CP0 Registers of the 1004K™ CPU” on page 167 for more information on the CP0 register set.

Chapter 6

Exceptions and Interrupts in the 1004K™ CPU

Programs executing on the 1004K CPU receive exceptions from a number of sources, including translation lookaside buffer (TLB) misses, arithmetic overflows, I/O interrupts, and system calls. When one of these exceptions is detected, the normal sequence of instruction execution is suspended and the TC enters kernel mode.

In kernel mode interrupts are disabled and a software exception processor (also called a handler), located at a specifici address, is executed. The handler saves the context of the TC, including the contents of the program counter, the current operating mode, and the status of the interrupts (enabled or disabled). This context is saved so it can be restored when the exception has been serviced.

When an exception occurs, the *Exception Program Counter* (*EPC*) register is loaded with a location where execution can restart after the exception has been serviced. Most exceptions are *precise,* which mean that *EPC* can be used to identify the instruction that caused the exception. For precise exceptions the restart location in the *EPC* register is the address of the instruction that caused the exception or, if the instruction was executing in a branch delay slot, the address of the branch instruction immediately preceding the delay slot. To distinguish between the two, software must read the BD bit in the CP0 *Cause* register. Bus error exceptions and CP2 exceptions may be imprecise. For imprecise exceptions the instruction that caused the exception can not be identified.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Section 6.1 "Exception Conditions"
- Section 6.2 "Exception Priority"
- Section 6.3 "Interrupts"
- Section 6.4 "GPR Shadow Registers"
- Section 6.5 "Exception Vector Locations"
- Section 6.6 "General Exception Processing"
- Section 6.7 "Debug Exception Processing"
- Section 6.8 "Exceptions"
- Section 6.9 "Exception Handling and Servicing Flowcharts"

6.1 Exception Conditions

When an exception condition occurs, the relevant instruction and all those that follow it in the pipeline are cancelled. Accordingly, any stall conditions and any later exception conditions that may have referenced this instruction are inhibited; there is no benefit in servicing stalls for a cancelled instruction.

When an exception condition is detected on an instruction fetch, the CPU aborts that instruction and all instructions that follow. When this instruction reaches the WB stage, the exception flag causes it to write various CP0 registers with the exception state, change the current program counter (PC) to the appropriate exception vector address, and clear the exception bits of earlier pipeline stages.

For most exception types this implementation allows all preceding instructions to complete execution and prevents all subsequent instructions from completing. Thus, the value in the *EPC* (*ErrorEPC* for errors, or *DEPC* for debug exceptions) is sufficient to restart execution. It also ensures that exceptions are taken in the order of execution; an instruction taking an exception may itself be killed by an instruction further down the pipeline that takes an exception in a later cycle.

A number of exceptions can be taken imprecisely - that is, they are taken after the instruction that caused them has completed and potentially after following instructions have completed.

6.2 Exception Priority

Table 6.1 lists all possible exceptions, and the relative priority of each, highest to lowest. Several of these exceptions can happen simultaneously, in that event the exception with the highest priority is the one taken.

Table 6.1 Priority of Exceptions

Exception	Description
Reset	Assertion of SI_Reset signal.
DSS	EJTAG Debug Single Step.
DINT	EJTAG Debug Interrupt. Caused by the assertion of the external *EJ_DINT* input, or by setting the EjtagBrk bit in the *ECR* register.
DDBLImpr/DDBSImpr	Debug Data Break Load/Store Imprecise
NMI	Asserting edge of *SI_NMI* signal.
Interrupt	Assertion of unmasked hardware or software interrupt signal.
Deferred Watch	Deferred Watch (unmasked by K|DM->!(K|DM) transition).
DIB	EJTAG debug hardware instruction break matched.
WATCH	A reference to an address in one of the watch registers (fetch).
AdEL	Fetch address alignment error. Fetch reference to protected address.
TLBL	Fetch TLB miss Fetch TLB hit to page with V=0
ICache Error	Parity error on ICache access
IBE	Instruction fetch bus error.
DBp	EJTAG Breakpoint (execution of SDBBP instruction).
Sys	Execution of SYSCALL instruction.
Bp	Execution of BREAK instruction.
CpU	Execution of a coprocessor instruction for a coprocessor that is not enabled.
CEU	Execution of a CorExtend instruction modifying local state when CorExtend is not enabled.
DSPDis	DSP ASE State Disabled
RI	Execution of a Reserved Instruction.

Table 6.1 Priority of Exceptions (Continued)

Exception	Description
FPE	Floating Point exception
C2E	Coprocessor2 Exception
IS1	Implementation specific Coprocessor2 exception
Ov	Execution of an arithmetic instruction that overflowed.
Tr	Execution of a trap (when trap condition is true).
MT_ov	A Thread Overflow condition, where a TC allocation request cannot be satisfied.
MT_under	A Thread Underflow condition, where the termination and deallocation of a thread leaves no dynamically allocatable TCs activated on a VPE.
MT_invalid	An Invalid Qualifier condition, where a YIELD instruction specifies an invalid condition for resuming execution.
MT_yield_sched	A YIELD Scheduler exception condition, where a valid YIELD instruction could have caused a rescheduling of a TC, and the YIELD intercept bit is set.
DDBL / DDBS	EJTAG Data Address Break (address only)
WATCH	A reference to an address in one of the watch registers (data).
AdEL	Load address alignment error. Load reference to protected address.
AdES	Store address alignment error. Store to protected address.
TLBL	Load TLB miss. Load TLB hit to page with V=0
TLBS	Store TLB miss. Store TLB hit to page with V=0
TLB Mod	Store to TLB page with D=0.
DCache Error	Cache parity error - imprecise
L2 Cache Error	L2 Cache ECC error - imprecise
DBE	Load or store bus error - imprecise
MT_GSS	A Gating Storage Scheduler exception, where a Gating Storage load or store would have blocked and caused a rescheduling of a TC, and the GS intercept bit is set.
MT_GS	A Gating Storage exception condition, where implementation-dependent logic associated with gating or inter-thread communication (ITC) storage requires software intervention.

6.3 Interrupts

Older 32-bit cores available from MIPS that implemented Release 1 of the Architecture included support for two software interrupts, six hardware interrupts, and a special-purpose timer interrupt. The timer interrupt was provided external to the CPU and typically combined with hardware interrupt 5 in an system-dependent manner. Interrupts were handled either through the general exception vector (offset 16#180) or the special interrupt vector (16#200), based on the value of $Cause_{IV}$. Software was required to prioritize interrupts as a function of the $Cause_{IP}$ bits in the interrupt handler prologue.

Release 2 of the Architecture, implemented by the 1004K CPU, adds an upward-compatible extension to the Release 1 interrupt architecture that supports vectored interrupts. In addition, Release 2 adds a new interrupt mode that supports the use of an external interrupt controller by changing the interrupt architecture.

Additionally, internal performance counters were added to the 1004K CPU. These counters can be set up to count various events within the CPU. When the MSB of the counter gets set, it can trigger a performance counter interrupt. This is handled like the timer interrupt - it is an output of the CPU and can be brought back into the CPU's interrupt pins in a system dependent manner.

The Fast Debug Channel feature in EJTAG provides a low overhead means for sending data between CPU software and the EJTAG probe. It includes a pair of FIFOs for transmit and receive data. Software can define FIFO thresholds for generating an interrupt. The fast debug channel interrupt is also routed similarly to the timer and performance counter interrupts. The interrupt status is made available on an output pin and can be brought back into the CPU's interrupt pins.

6.3.1 Interrupt Modes

The 1004K CPU includes support for three interrupt modes, as defined by Release 2 of the Architecture:

- Interrupt compatibility mode, which acts identically to that in an implementation of Release 1 of the Architecture.

- Vectored Interrupt (VI) mode, which adds the ability to prioritize and vector interrupts to a handler dedicated to that interrupt, and to assign a GPR shadow set for use during interrupt processing. The presence of this mode is denoted by the VInt bit in the *Config3* register. This mode is architecturally optional; but it is always present on the 1004K CPU, so the VInt bit will always read as a 1 for the 1004K CPU.

- External Interrupt Controller (EIC) mode, which redefines the way in which interrupts are handled to provide full support for an external interrupt controller handling prioritization and vectoring of interrupts. This presence of this mode denoted by the VEIC bit in the *Config3* register. Again, this mode is architecturally optional. On the 1004K CPU, the VEIC bit is set externally by the static input, *SI_EICPresent*, to allow system logic to indicate the presence of an external interrupt controller.

The reset state of the processor is to interrupt compatibility mode such that a processor supporting Release 2 of the Architecture, like the 1004K CPU, is fully compatible with implementations of Release 1 of the Architecture.

Table 6.2 shows the current interrupt mode of the processor as a function of the coprocessor 0 register fields that can affect the mode.

Table 6.2 Interrupt Modes

$Status_{BEV}$	$Cause_{IV}$	$IntCtl_{VS}$	$Config3_{VINT}$	$Config3_{VEIC}$	Interrupt Mode
1	x	x	x	x	Compatibility
x	0	x	x	x	Compatibility
x	x	=0	x	x	Compatibility
0	1	≠0	1	0	Vectored Interrupt
0	1	≠0	x	1	External Interrupt Controller

Table 6.2 Interrupt Modes

$Status_{BEV}$	$Cause_{IV}$	$IntCtl_{VS}$	$Config3_{VINT}$	$Config3_{VEIC}$	Interrupt Mode
0	1	≠0	0	0	Can't happen - $IntCtl_{VS}$ can not be non-zero if neither Vectored Interrupt nor External Interrupt Controller mode is implemented.
"x" denotes don't care					

6.3.1.1 Interrupt Compatibility Mode

This is the default interrupt mode for the processor and is entered when a Reset exception occurs. In this mode, interrupts are non-vectored and dispatched though exception vector offset 16#180 (if $Cause_{IV}$ = 0) or vector offset 16#200 (if $Cause_{IV}$ = 1). This mode is in effect if any of the following conditions are true:

- $Cause_{IV}$ = 0
- $Status_{BEV}$ = 1
- $IntCtl_{VS}$ = 0, which would be the case if vectored interrupts are not implemented, or have been disabled.

A typical software handler for interrupt compatibility mode might look as follows:

```
/*
 * Assumptions:
 *   - CauseIV = 1 (if it were zero, the interrupt exception would have to
 *                 be isolated from the general exception vector before getting
 *                 here)
 *   - GPRs k0 and k1 are available (no shadow register switches invoked in
 *                                  compatibility mode)
 *   - The software priority is IP7..IP0 (HW5..HW0, SW1..SW0)
 *
 * Location: Offset 0x200 from exception base
 */

IVexception:
   mfc0   k0, C0_Cause        /* Read Cause register for IP bits */
   mfc0   k1, C0_Status       /* and Status register for IM bits */
   andi   k0, k0, M_CauseIM   /* Keep only IP bits from Cause */
   and    k0, k0, k1          /* and mask with IM bits */
   beq    k0, zero, Dismiss   /* no bits set - spurious interrupt */
   clz    k0, k0              /* Find first bit set, IP7..IP0; k0 = 16..23 */
   xori   k0, k0, 0x17        /* 16..23 => 7..0 */
   sll    k0, k0, VS          /* Shift to emulate software IntCtlVS */
   la     k1, VectorBase      /* Get base of 8 interrupt vectors */
   addu   k0, k0, k1          /* Compute target from base and offset */
   jr     k0                  /* Jump to specific exception routine */
   nop

/*
 * Each interrupt processing routine processes a specific interrupt, analogous
 * to those reached in VI or EIC interrupt mode. Since each processing routine
```

```
 * is dedicated to a particular interrupt line, it has the context to know
 * which line was asserted.  Each processing routine may need to look further
 * to determine the actual source of the interrupt if multiple interrupt requests
 * are ORed together on a single IP line. Once that task is performed, the
 * interrupt may be processed in one of two ways:
 *
 * - Completely at interrupt level (e.g., a simply UART interrupt). The
 *   SimpleInterrupt routine below is an example of this type.
 * - By saving sufficient state and re-enabling other interrupts. In this
 *   case the software model determines which interrupts are disabled during
 *   the processing of this interrupt. Typically, this is either the single
 *   StatusIM bit that corresponds to the interrupt being processed, or some
 *   collection of other Status_IM bits so that "lower" priority interrupts are
 *   also disabled. The NestedInterrupt routine below is an example of this type.
 */

SimpleInterrupt:
/*
 * Process the device interrupt here and clear the interupt request
 * at the device. In order to do this, some registers may need to be
 * saved and restored. The coprocessor 0 state is such that an ERET
 * will simple return to the interrupted code.
 */
   eret                      /* Return to interrupted code */

NestedException:
/*
 * Nested exceptions typically require saving the EPC and Status registers,
 * any GPRs that may be modified by the nested exception routine, disabling
 * the appropriate IM bits in Status to prevent an interrupt loop, putting
 * the processor in kernel mode, and re-enabling interrupts. The sample code
 * below can not cover all nuances of this processing and is intended only
 * to demonstrate the concepts.
 */

   /* Save GPRs here, and setup software context */
   mfc0   k0, C0_EPC         /* Get restart address */
   sw     k0, EPCSave        /* Save in memory */
   mfc0   k0, C0_Status      /* Get Status value */
   sw     k0, StatusSave     /* Save in memory */
   li     k1, ~IMbitsToClear /* Get Im bits to clear for this interrupt */
                             /*   this must include at least the IM bit */
                             /*   for the current interrupt, and may include */
                             /*   others */
   and    k0, k0, k1            /* Clear bits in copy of Status */
   ins    k0, zero, S_StatusEXL, (W_StatusKSU+W_StatusERL+W_StatusEXL)
                                /* Clear KSU, ERL, EXL bits in k0 */
   mtc0   k0, C0_Status         /* Modify mask, switch to kernel mode, */
                                /*   re-enable interrupts */

   /*
    * Process interrupt here, including clearing device interrupt.
    * In some environments this may be done with a thread running in
    * kernel or user mode. Such an environment is well beyond the scope of
    * this example.
    */

/*
```

```
* To complete interrupt processing, the saved values must be restored
* and the original interrupted code restarted.
*/

  di                          /* Disable interrupts - may not be required */
  lw     k0, StatusSave       /* Get saved Status (including EXL set) */
  lw     k1, EPCSave          /*   and EPC */
  mtc0   k0, C0_Status        /* Restore the original value */
  mtc0   k1, C0_EPC           /*  and EPC */
  /* Restore GPRs and software state */
  eret                        /* Dismiss the interrupt */
```

6.3.1.2 Vectored Interrupt Mode

Vectored Interrupt mode builds on the interrupt compatibility mode by adding a priority encoder to prioritize pending interrupts and to generate a vector with which each interrupt can be directed to a dedicated handler routine. This mode also allows each interrupt to be mapped to a GPR shadow set for use by the interrupt handler. Vectored Interrupt mode is in effect if all of the following conditions are true:

- $Config3_{VInt} = 1$
- $Config3_{VEIC} = 0$
- $IntCtl_{VS} \neq 0$
- $Cause_{IV} = 1$
- $Status_{BEV} = 0$

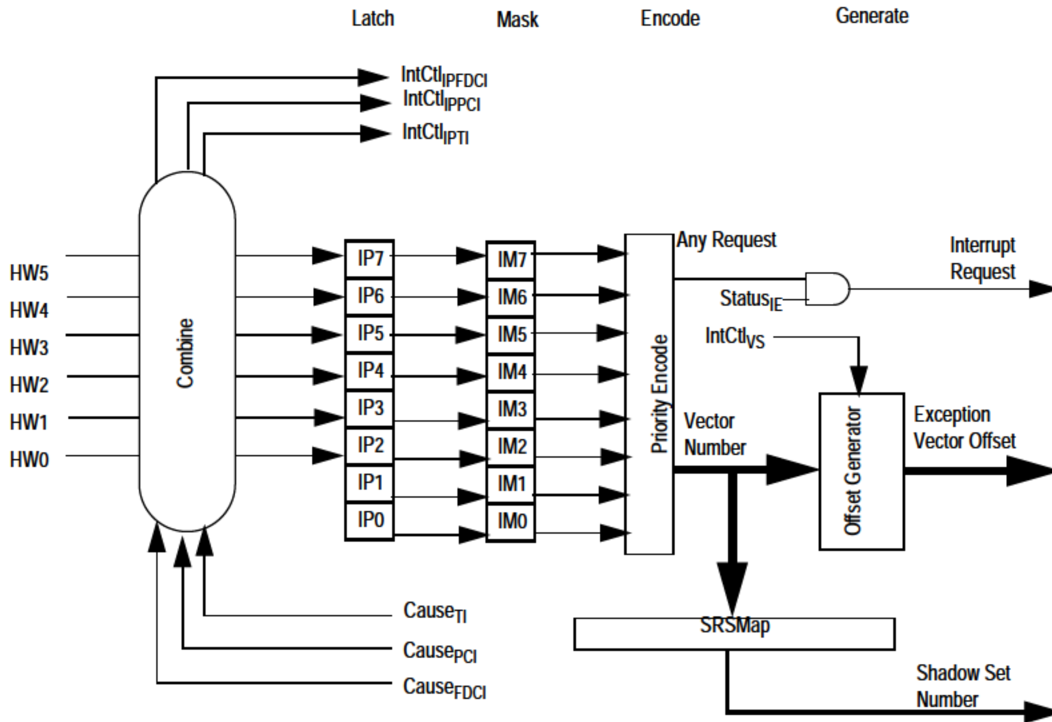
In VI interrupt mode, the six hardware interrupts are interpreted as individual hardware interrupt requests. The timer, performance counter, and fast debug channel interrupts are combined in a system-dependent way (external to the CPU) with the hardware interrupts (the interrupt with which they are combined is indicated by the $IntCtl_{IPTI/IPCI/IPFDCI}$ fields) to provide the appropriate relative priority of the those interrupts with that of the hardware interrupts. The processor interrupt logic ANDs each of the $Cause_{IP}$ bits with the corresponding $Status_{IM}$ bits. If any of these values is 1, and if interrupts are enabled ($Status_{IE} = 1$, $Status_{EXL} = 0$, and $Status_{ERL} = 0$), an interrupt is signaled and a priority encoder scans the values in the order shown in Table 6.3.

Table 6.3 Relative Interrupt Priority for Vectored Interrupt Mode

Relative Priority	Interrupt Type	Interrupt Source	Interrupt Request Calculated From	Vector Number Generated by Priority Encoder
Highest Priority	Hardware	HW5	IP7 and IM7	7
		HW4	IP6 and IM6	6
		HW3	IP5 and IM5	5
		HW2	IP4 and IM4	4
		HW1	IP3 and IM3	3
		HW0	IP2 and IM2	2
	Software	SW1	IP1 and IM1	1
Lowest Priority		SW0	IP0 and IM0	0

The priority order places a relative priority on each hardware interrupt and places the software interrupts at a priority lower than all hardware interrupts. When the priority encoder finds the highest priority pending interrupt, it outputs an encoded vector number that is used in the calculation of the handler for that interrupt, as described below. This is shown pictorially in Figure 6.1.

Figure 6.1 Interrupt Generation for Vectored Interrupt Mode



A typical software handler for vectored interrupt mode bypasses the entire sequence of code following the IVexception label shown for the compatibility mode handler above. Instead, the hardware performs the prioritization, dispatching directly to the interrupt processing routine. Unlike the compatibility mode examples, a vectored interrupt handler may take advantage of a dedicated GPR shadow set to avoid saving any registers. As such, the SimpleInterrupt code shown above need not save the GPRs.

A nested interrupt is similar to that shown for compatibility mode, but may also take advantage of running the nested exception routine in the GPR shadow set dedicated to the interrupt or in another shadow set. Such a routine might look as follows:

```
NestedException:
/*
 * Nested exceptions typically require saving the EPC, Status and SRSCtl registers,
 * setting up the appropriate GPR shadow set for the routine, disabling
 * the appropriate IM bits in Status to prevent an interrupt loop, putting
 * the processor in kernel mode, and re-enabling interrupts. The sample code
 * below can not cover all nuances of this processing and is intended only
 * to demonstrate the concepts.
 */

    /* Use the current GPR shadow set, and setup software context */
    mfc0   k0, C0_EPC          /* Get restart address */
    sw     k0, EPCSave         /* Save in memory */
```

```
    mfc0   k0, C0_Status       /* Get Status value */
    sw     k0, StatusSave      /* Save in memory */
    mfc0   k0, C0_SRSCtl       /* Save SRSCtl if changing shadow sets */
    sw     k0, SRSCtlSave
    li     k1, ~IMbitsToClear  /* Get Im bits to clear for this interrupt */
                               /*   this must include at least the IM bit */
                               /*   for the current interrupt, and may include */
                               /*   others */
    and    k0, k0, k1             /* Clear bits in copy of Status */
    /* If switching shadow sets, write new value to SRSCtlPSS here */
    ins    k0, zero, S_StatusEXL, (W_StatusKSU+W_StatusERL+W_StatusEXL)
                                  /* Clear KSU, ERL, EXL bits in k0 */
    mtc0   k0, C0_Status          /* Modify mask, switch to kernel mode, */
                                  /*   re-enable interrupts */
    /*
     * If switching shadow sets, clear only KSU above, write target
     * address to EPC, and do execute an eret to clear EXL, switch
     * shadow sets, and jump to routine
     */

    /* Process interrupt here, including clearing device interrupt */

/*
 * To complete interrupt processing, the saved values must be restored
 * and the original interrupted code restarted.
 */

    di                         /* Disable interrupts - may not be required */
    lw     k0, StatusSave      /* Get saved Status (including EXL set) */
    lw     k1, EPCSave         /*   and EPC */
    mtc0   k0, C0_Status       /* Restore the original value */
    lw     k0, SRSCtlSave      /* Get saved SRSCtl */
    mtc0   k1, C0_EPC          /*  and EPC */
    mtc0   k0, C0_SRSCtl       /* Restore shadow sets */
    ehb                        /* Clear hazard */
    eret                       /* Dismiss the interrupt */
```

6.3.1.3 External Interrupt Controller Mode

External Interrupt Controller Mode redefines the way that the processor interrupt logic is configured to provide support for an external interrupt controller. The interrupt controller is responsible for prioritizing all interrupts, including hardware, software, timer, fast debug channel, and performance counter interrupts, and directly supplying to the processor the vector number of the highest priority interrupt. EIC interrupt mode is in effect if all of the following conditions are true:

- $Config3_{VEIC} = 1$
- $IntCtl_{VS} \neq 0$
- $Cause_{IV} = 1$
- $Status_{BEV} = 0$

In EIC interrupt mode, the processor sends the state of the software interrupt requests ($Cause_{IP1..IP0}$) and the timer, performance counter, and fast debug channel interrupt requests ($Cause_{TI/PCI/FDCI}$) to the external interrupt controller,

where it prioritizes these interrupts in a system-dependent way with other hardware interrupts. The interrupt controller can be a hard-wired logic block, or it can be configurable based on control and status registers. This allows the interrupt controller to be more specific or more general as a function of the system environment and needs.

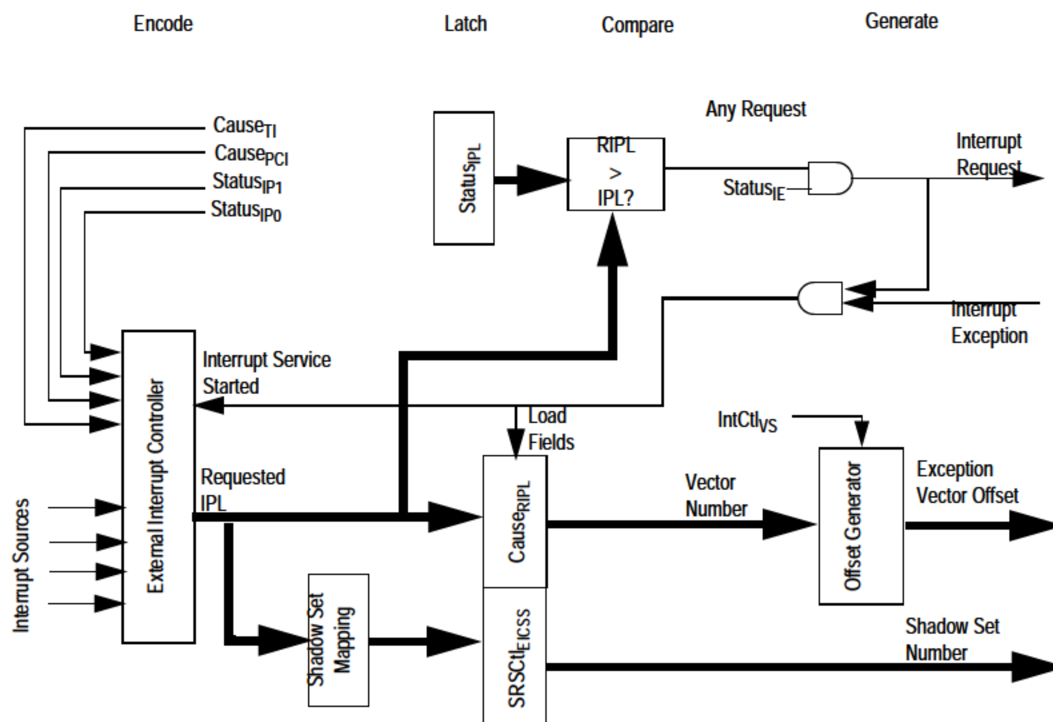
The external interrupt controller prioritizes its interrupt requests and produces the vector number of the highest priority interrupt to be serviced. The vector number, called the Requested Interrupt Priority Level (RIPL), is a 6-bit encoded value in the range 0..63, inclusive. A value of 0 indicates that no interrupt requests are pending. The values 1..63 represent the lowest (1) to highest (63) RIPL for the interrupt to be serviced. The interrupt controller passes this value on the 6 hardware interrupt line, which are treated as an encoded value in EIC interrupt mode.

$\mathit{Status}_{\mathrm{IPL}}$ (which overlays $\mathit{Status}_{\mathrm{IM7..IM2}}$) is interpreted as the Interrupt Priority Level (IPL) at which the processor is currently operating (with a value of zero indicating that no interrupt is currently being serviced). When the interrupt controller requests service for an interrupt, the processor compares RIPL with $\mathit{Status}_{\mathrm{IPL}}$ to determine if the requested interrupt has higher priority than the current IPL. If RIPL is strictly greater than $\mathit{Status}_{\mathrm{IPL}}$, and interrupts are enabled ($\mathit{Status}_{\mathrm{IE}} = 1$, $\mathit{Status}_{\mathrm{EXL}} = 0$, and $\mathit{Status}_{\mathrm{ERL}} = 0$) an interrupt request is signaled to the pipeline. When the processor starts the interrupt exception, it loads RIPL into $\mathit{Cause}_{\mathrm{RIPL}}$ (which overlays $\mathit{Cause}_{\mathrm{IP7..IP2}}$) and signals the external interrupt controller to notify it that the request is being serviced. The interrupt exception uses the value of $\mathit{Cause}_{\mathrm{RIPL}}$ as the vector number. Because $\mathit{Cause}_{\mathrm{RIPL}}$ is only loaded by the processor when an interrupt exception is signaled, it is available to software during interrupt processing.

In EIC interrupt mode, the external interrupt controller is also responsible for supplying the GPR shadow set number to use when servicing the interrupt. As such, the *SRSMap* register is not used in this mode, and the mapping of the vectored interrupt to a GPR shadow set is done by programming (or designing) the interrupt controller to provide the correct GPR shadow set number when an interrupt is requested. When the processor loads an interrupt request into $\mathrm{Cause}_{\mathrm{RIPL}}$, it also loads the GPR shadow set number into $\mathit{SRSCtl}_{\mathrm{EICSS}}$, which is copied to $\mathit{SRSCtl}_{\mathrm{CSS}}$ when the interrupt is serviced.

The operation of EIC interrupt mode is shown pictorially in Figure 6.2.

Figure 6.2 Interrupt Generation for External Interrupt Controller Interrupt Mode



A typical software handler for EIC interrupt mode bypasses the entire sequence of code following the IVexception label shown for the compatibility mode handler above. Instead, the hardware performs the prioritization, dispatching directly to the interrupt processing routine. Unlike the compatibility mode examples, an EIC interrupt handler may take advantage of a dedicated GPR shadow set to avoid saving any registers. As such, the SimpleInterrupt code shown above need not save the GPRs.

A nested interrupt is similar to that shown for compatibility mode, but may also take advantage of running the nested exception routine in the GPR shadow set dedicated to the interrupt or in another shadow set. It also need only copy $Cause_{RIPL}$ to $Status_{IPL}$ to prevent lower priority interrupts from interrupting the handler. Such a routine might look as follows:

```
NestedException:
/*
 * Nested exceptions typically require saving the EPC, Status,and SRSCtl registers,
 * setting up the appropriate GPR shadow set for the routine, disabling
 * the appropriate IM bits in Status to prevent an interrupt loop, putting
 * the processor in kernel mode, and re-enabling interrupts. The sample code
 * below can not cover all nuances of this processing and is intended only
 * to demonstrate the concepts.
 */

   /* Use the current GPR shadow set, and setup software context */
   mfc0   k1, C0_Cause        /* Read Cause to get RIPL value */
   mfc0   k0, C0_EPC          /* Get restart address */
   srl    k1, k1, S_CauseRIPL /* Right justify RIPL field */
   sw     k0, EPCSave         /* Save in memory */
   mfc0   k0, C0_Status       /* Get Status value */
   sw     k0, StatusSave      /* Save in memory */
   ins    k0, k1, S_StatusIPL, 6 /* Set IPL to RIPL in copy of Status */
```

```
    mfc0   k1, C0_SRSCtl       /* Save SRSCtl if changing shadow sets */
    sw     k1, SRSCtlSave
    /* If switching shadow sets, write new value to SRSCtlPSS here */
    ins    k0, zero, S_StatusEXL, (W_StatusKSU+W_StatusERL+W_StatusEXL)
                               /* Clear KSU, ERL, EXL bits in k0 */
    mtc0   k0, C0_Status       /* Modify IPL, switch to kernel mode, */
                               /*   re-enable interrupts */
    /*
     * If switching shadow sets, clear only KSU above, write target
     * address to EPC, and do execute an eret to clear EXL, switch
     * shadow sets, and jump to routine
     */

    /* Process interrupt here, including clearing device interrupt */

/*
 * The interrupt completion code is identical to that shown for VI mode above.
 */
```

6.3.2 Generation of Exception Vector Offsets for Vectored Interrupts

For vectored interrupts (in either VI or EIC interrupt mode), a vector number is produced by the interrupt control logic. This number is combined with *IntCtl*$_{VS}$ to create the interrupt offset, which is added to 16#200 to create the exception vector offset. For VI interrupt mode, the vector number is in the range 0..7, inclusive. For EIC interrupt mode, the vector number is in the range 1..63, inclusive (0 being the encoding for "no interrupt"). The *IntCtl*$_{VS}$ field specifies the spacing between vector locations. If this value is zero (the default reset state), the vector spacing is zero and the processor reverts to Interrupt Compatibility Mode. A non-zero value enables vectored interrupts, and Table 6.4 shows the exception vector offset for a representative subset of the vector numbers and values of the *IntCtl*$_{VS}$ field.

Table 6.4 Exception Vector Offsets for Vectored Interrupts

Vector Number	Value of IntCtl$_{VS}$ Field				
	2#00001	**2#00010**	**2#00100**	**2#01000**	**2#10000**
0	16#0200	16#0200	16#0200	16#0200	16#0200
1	16#0220	16#0240	16#0280	16#0300	16#0400
2	16#0240	16#0280	16#0300	16#0400	16#0600
3	16#0260	16#02C0	16#0380	16#0500	16#0800
4	16#0280	16#0300	16#0400	16#0600	16#0A00
5	16#02A0	16#0340	16#0480	16#0700	16#0C00
6	16#02C0	16#0380	16#0500	16#0800	16#0E00
7	16#02E0	16#03C0	16#0580	16#0900	16#1000
• • •					
61	16#09A0	16#1140	16#2080	16#3F00	16#7C00
62	16#09C0	16#1180	16#2100	16#4000	16#7E00
63	16#09E0	16#11C0	16#2180	16#4100	16#8000

The general equation for the exception vector offset for a vectored interrupt is:

```
vectorOffset ← 16#200 + (vectorNumber × (IntCtlVS || 2#00000))
```

6.3.3 Global Interrupt Controller

An optional feature of the 1004K Coherent Processing System is a global interrupt controller (GIC). This block handles the routing and masking of VPE-local interrupts, such as the timer, performance counter, and fast debug channel interrupts, Inter-processor interrupts, and external interrupts. This block can be configured to support various numbers of external interrupts and to support any of the CPU interrupt modes.

An interactive GIC programming GUI is available to simplify the setup of desired event routing through the GIC. The tool outputs a C-language function covering all required programming registers of the GIC.

More details about the GIC can be found in the MIPS32 1004K Coherent Processing System User's Manual (MD00597)

6.4 GPR Shadow Registers

Release 2 of the Architecture optionally removes the need to save and restore GPRs on entry to high priority interrupts or exceptions, and to provide specified processor modes with the same capability. This is done by introducing multiple copies of the GPRs, called *shadow sets*, and allowing privileged software to associate a shadow set with entry to kernel mode via an interrupt vector or exception. The normal GPRs are logically considered shadow set zero.

The 1004K CPU does not provide any dedicated shadow sets. However, it is possible to use the register file of an unused Thread Context as a shadow set. This is controlled by the *SRSConf0* register (refer to Section 7.2.25 "SRSConf0 (CP0 Register 6, Select 1)").

Shadow sets are new copies of the GPRs that can be substituted for the normal GPRs on entry to kernel mode via an interrupt or exception. Once a shadow set is bound to a kernel mode entry condition, reference to GPRs work exactly as one would expect, but they are redirected to registers that are dedicated to that condition. Privileged software may need to reference all GPRs in the register file, even specific shadow registers that are not visible in the current mode. The RDPGPR and WRPGPR instructions are used for this purpose. The CSS field of the *SRSCtl* register provides the number of the current shadow register set, and the PSS field of the *SRSCtl* register provides the number of the previous shadow register set (that which was current before the last exception or interrupt occurred).

If the processor is operating in VI interrupt mode, binding of a vectored interrupt to a shadow set is done by writing to the *SRSMap* register. If the processor is operating in EIC interrupt mode, the binding of the interrupt to a specific shadow set is provided by the external interrupt controller, and is configured in an implementation-dependent way. Binding of an exception or non-vectored interrupt to a shadow set is done by writing to the ESS field of the *SRSCtl* register. When an exception or interrupt occurs, the value of $SRSCtl_{CSS}$ is copied to $SRSCtl_{PSS}$, and $SRSCtl_{CSS}$ is set to the value taken from the appropriate source. On an ERET, the value of $SRSCtl_{PSS}$ is copied back into $SRSCtl_{CSS}$ to restore the shadow set of the mode to which control returns. More precisely, the rules for updating the fields in the *SRSCtl* register on an interrupt or exception are as follows:

1. No field in the *SRSCtl* register is updated if any of the following conditions is true. In this case, steps 2 and 3 are skipped.

   - The exception is one that sets $Status_{ERL}$: Reset or NMI.

   - The exception causes entry into EJTAG Debug Mode

- *Status*$_{BEV}$ = 1
- *Status*$_{EXL}$ = 1

2. *SRSCtl*$_{CSS}$ is copied to *SRSCtl*$_{PSS}$
3. *SRSCtl*$_{CSS}$ is updated from one of the following sources:
   - The appropriate field of the *SRSMap* register, based on IPL, if the exception is an interrupt, *Cause*$_{IV}$ = 1, *Config3*$_{VEIC}$ = 0, and *Config3*$_{VInt}$ = 1. These are the conditions for a vectored interrupt.
   - The EICSS field of the *SRSCtl* register if the exception is an interrupt, *Cause*$_{IV}$ = 1, and *Config3*$_{VEIC}$ = 1. These are the conditions for a vectored EIC interrupt.
   - The ESS field of the *SRSCtl* register in any other case. This is the condition for a non-interrupt exception, or a non-vectored interrupt.

Similarly, the rules for updating the fields in the *SRSCtl* register at the end of an exception or interrupt are as follows:

1. No field in the *SRSCtl* register is updated if any of the following conditions is true. In this case, step 2 is skipped.
   - A DERET is executed
   - An ERET is executed with *Status*$_{ERL}$ = 1
2. *SRSCtl*$_{PSS}$ is copied to *SRSCtl*$_{CSS}$

These rules have the effect of preserving the *SRSCtl* register in any case of a nested exception or one which occurs before the processor has been fully initialized (*Status*$_{BEV}$ = 1).

Privileged software may switch the current shadow set by writing a new value into *SRSCtl*$_{PSS}$, loading EPC with a target address, and doing an ERET.

6.5 Exception Vector Locations

The Reset, Soft Reset, NMI and EJTAG Debug exceptions are vectored to a specific location as shown in Table 6.5 and Table 6.6. Addresses for all other exceptions are a combination of a vector offset and a vector base address. In Release 1 of the architecture, the vector base address was fixed. In Release 2 of the architecture, software is allowed to specify the vector base address via the *EBase* register for exceptions that occur when *StatusBEV* equals 0. Another degree of flexibility in the selection of the vector base address, for use when *StatusBEV* equals 1, is provided via a set of input pins, *SI_UseExceptionBase* and *SI_ExceptionBase[29:12]*. Table 6.5 gives the vector base address when *SI_UseExceptionBase* equals 0, as a function of the exception and whether the *BEV* bit is set in the *Status* register. Table 6.6 gives the vector base addresses when *SI_UseExceptionBase* equals 1. As can be seen in Table 6.6, when *SI_UseExceptionBase* equals 1, the exception vectors for cases where *StatusBEV* equals 0 are not affected.

In the 1004K Coherent Processing System, *SI_UseExceptionBase* is tied to 1 and the *SI_ExceptionBase* input is programmable via Global Configuration Register settings. The default value of the control register matches the CPU behavior if *SI_UseExceptionBase* had been set to 0. Refer to the 1004K Coherent Processing System User’s Manual [8] for more details.

Table 6.7 gives the offsets from the vector base address as a function of the exception. Note that the IV bit in the *Cause* register causes Interrupts to use a dedicated exception vector offset, rather than the general exception vector. Table 6.4 gives the offset from the base address in the case where *StatusBEV* = 0 and *CauseIV* = 1. Table 6.8 combines these two tables into one that contains all possible vector addresses as a function of the state that can affect the vector selection. To avoid complexity in the table, it is assumed that *IntCtlVS* is 0.

Table 6.5 Exception Vector Base Addresses when *SI_UseExceptionBase* equals 0

Exception	$Status_{BEV}$	
	0	**1**
Reset, NMI	16#BFC0.0000	
EJTAG Debug with ECR_{ProbEn} = 1	16#FF20.0200	
EJTAG Debug with ECR_{ProbEn} = 0 and DCR_{RdVec}= 1	DebugVectorAddr[31:0]	
EJTAG Debug with ECR_{ProbEn} = 0 and DCR_{RdVec} = 0	16#BFC0.0480	
Cache Error	$EBase_{31\ 30}$ || 1 || $EBase_{28\ 12}$ || 16#000 Note that $EBase_{31\ 30}$ have the fixed value 2#10	16#BFC0.0300
Other	$EBase_{31\ 12}$ || 16#000 Note that $EBase_{31\ 30}$ have the fixed value 2#10	16#BFC0.0200
'||' denotes bit string concatenation		

Table 6.6 Exception Vector Base Addresses when *SI_UseExceptionBase* equals 1

Exception	$Status_{BEV}$	
	0	**1**
Reset, NMI	2#10 || SI_ExceptionBase[29:12] || 16#000	
EJTAG Debug with ECR_{ProbEn} = 1	16#FF20.0200	
EJTAG Debug with ECR_{ProbEn} = 0 and DCR_{RdVec}=1	DebugVectorAddr[31:0] Note that DebugVectorAddr[31:30] have the fixed value 2#10 Bit [29] is forced to 2#1 for a cache error in debug mode	
EJTAG Debug with ECR_{ProbEn} = 0 and DCR_{RdVec} = 0	2#10 ||SI_ExceptionBase[29:12] || 16#480 Bit [29] is forced to 2#1 for a cache error in debug mode	

Exception	$Status_{BEV}$	
	0	1
Cache Error	$EBase_{31\ 30}$ || 1 || $EBase_{28\ 12}$ || `16#000` Note that $EBase_{31\ 30}$ have the fixed value `2#10`	`2#101 || SI_ExceptionBase[28:12] || 16#300`
Other	$EBase_{31\ 12}$ || `16#000` Note that $EBase_{31\ 30}$ have the fixed value `2#10`	`2#10 || SI_ExceptionBase[29:12] || 16#200`
‘||’ denotes bit string concatenation		

Table 6.7 Exception Vector Offsets

Exception	Vector Offset
TLB Refill, EXL = 0	`16#000`
General Exception	`16#180`
Interrupt, $Cause_{IV}$ = 1	`16#200` (this is the base of the vectored interrupt table when $Status_{BEV}$ = 0)
Reset, NMI	None (Uses Reset Base Address)

Table 6.8 Exception Vectors

Exception	SI_UseExceptionBase	$Status_{BEV}$	$Status_{EXL}$	$Cause_{IV}$	EJTAG ProbEn	DCR RdVec	Vector Assumes that $IntCtl_{VS}$ = 0
Reset, NMI	0	x	x	x	x	x	`16#BFC0.0000`
Reset, NMI	1	x	x	x	x	x	`2#10 || SI_ExceptionBase[29:12] || 16#000`
EJTAG Debug (Cache Error in Debug Mode)	0	x	x	x	0	1	`2#101 || DebugVectorAddr[28:7] || 16#00`
EJTAG Debug (other)	0	x	x	x	0	1	`2#10 || DebugVectorAddr[29:7] || 16#00`
EJTAG Debug (all)	0	x	x	x	0	0	`16#BFC0.0480`
EJTAG Debug (Cache Error in Debug Mode))	1	x	x	x	0	0	`2#101 || SI_ExceptionBase[28:12] || 16#480`
EJTAG Debug (other)	1	x	x	x	0	0	`2#10 || SI_ExceptionBase[29:12] || 16#480`

Table 6.8 Exception Vectors (Continued)

Exception	SI_UseExceptionBase	$Status_{BEV}$	$Status_{EXL}$	$Cause_{IV}$	EJTAG ProbEn	DCR RdVec	Vector Assumes that $IntCtl_{VS}$ = 0
EJTAG Debug (all)	x	x	x	x	1	x	16#FF20.0200
TLB Refill	x	0	1	x	x	x	16#EBase[31:12] || 16#180
TLB Refill	0	1	0	x	x	x	16#BFC0.0200
TLB Refill	1	1	0	x	x	x	2#10 || SI_ExceptionBase[29:12] || 16#200
TLB Refill	0	1	1	x	x	x	16#BFC0.0380
TLB Refill	1	1	1	x	x	x	2#10 || SI_ExceptionBase[29:12] || 16#380
Cache Error	x	0	x	x	x	x	16#EBase[31:30] || 2#1 || EBase[28:12] || 16#100
Cache Error	0	1	x	x	x	x	16#BFC0.0300
Cache Error	1	1	x	x	x	x	2#101 || SI_ExceptionBase[28:12] || 16#300
Interrupt	x	0	0	0	x	x	16#EBase[31:12] || 16#180
Interrupt	x	0	0	1	x	x	16#EBase[31:12] || 16#200
Interrupt	0	1	0	0	x	x	16#BFC0.0380
Interrupt	1	1	0	0	x	x	2#10 || SI_ExceptionBase[29:12] || 16#380
Interrupt	0	1	0	1	x	x	16#BFC0.0400
Interrupt	1	1	0	1	x	x	2#10 || SI_ExceptionBase[29:12] || 16#400
All others	x	0	x	x	x	x	16#EBase[31:12] || 16#180
All others	0	1	x	x	x	x	16#BFC0.0380
All others	1	1	x	x	x	x	2#10 || SI_ExceptionBase[29:12] || 16#380
'x' denotes don't care, '||' denotes bit string concatenation							

6.6 General Exception Processing

With the exception of Reset, NMI, cache error, and EJTAG Debug exceptions, which have their own special processing as described below, exceptions have the same basic processing flow:

- If the *EXL* bit in the *Status* register is zero, the *EPC* register is loaded with the PC at which execution will be restarted and the *BD* bit is set appropriately in the *Cause* register (see Table 7.38). The value loaded into the *EPC* register is dependent on whether the processor implements the MIPS16 ASE, and whether the instruction is in the delay slot of a branch or jump which has delay slots. Table 6.9 shows the value stored in each of the CP0 PC registers, including *EPC*. For implementations of Release 2 of the Architecture if $Status_{BEV}$ = 0, the CSS field in the *SRSCtl* register is copied to the *PSS* field, and the CSS value is loaded from the appropriate source.

If the *EXL* bit in the *Status* register is set, the *EPC* register is not loaded and the *BD* bit is not changed in the *Cause* register. For implementations of Release 2 of the Architecture, the *SRSCtl* register is not changed.

Table 6.9 Value Stored in EPC, ErrorEPC, or DEPC on an Exception

MIPS16 Implemented?	In Branch/Jump Delay Slot?	Value stored in EPC/ErrorEPC/DEPC
No	No	Address of the instruction
No	Yes	Address of the branch or jump instruction (PC-4)
Yes	No	Upper 31 bits of the address of the instruction, combined with the *ISA Mode* bit
Yes	Yes	Upper 31 bits of the branch or jump instruction (PC-2 in the MIPS16 ISA Mode and PC-4 in the 32-bit ISA Mode), combined with the *ISA Mode* bit

- The *CE*, and *ExcCode* fields of the *Cause* registers are loaded with the values appropriate to the exception. The *CE* field is loaded, but not defined, for any exception type other than a coprocessor unusable exception.
- The *EXL* bit is set in the *Status* register.
- The processor is started at the exception vector.

The value loaded into *EPC* represents the restart address for the exception and need not be modified by exception handler software in the normal case. Software need not look at the BD bit in the *Cause* register unless it wishes to identify the address of the instruction that actually caused the exception.

Note that individual exception types may load additional information into other registers. This is noted in the description of each exception type below.

Operation:

```
/* If StatusEXL is 1, all exceptions go through the general exception vector */
/* and neither EPC nor CauseBD nor SRSCtl are modified */
if StatusEXL = 1 then
   vectorOffset ← 16#180
else
   /* For implementations that include the MIPS16e ASE, calculate potential */
   /* PC adjustment for exceptions in the delay slot */
   if Config1CA = 0 then
      restartPC ← PC
      branchAdjust ← 4       /* Possible adjustment for delay slot */
   else
      restartPC ← PC31..1 || ISAMode
      if (ISAMode = 0) or ExtendedMIPS16Instruction
         branchAdjust ← 4    /* Possible adjustment for 32-bit MIPS delay slot */
      else
         branchAdjust ← 2    /* Possible adjustment for MIPS16 delay slot */
      endif
   endif
   if InstructionInBranchDelaySlot then
      EPC ← restartPC - branchAdjust/* PC of branch/jump */
      CauseBD ← 1
   else
      EPC ← restartPC                /* PC of instruction */
      CauseBD ← 0
```

```
    endif

    /* Compute vector offsets as a function of the type of exception */
    NewShadowSet ← SRSCtl_ESS          /* Assume exception, Release 2 only */
    if ExceptionType = TLBRefill then
        vectorOffset ← 16#000
    elseif (ExceptionType = Interrupt) then
        if (Cause_IV = 0) then
            vectorOffset ← 16#180
        else
            if (Status_BEV = 1) or (IntCtl_VS = 0) then
                vectorOffset ← 16#200
            else
                if Config3_VEIC = 1 then
                    VecNum ← Cause_RIPL
                    NewShadowSet ← SRSCtl_EICSS
                else
                    VecNum ← VIntPriorityEncoder()
                    NewShadowSet ← SRSMap_IPL×4+3..IPL×4
                endif
                vectorOffset ← 16#200 + (VecNum × (IntCtl_VS ‖ 2#00000))
            endif /* if (Status_BEV = 1) or (IntCtl_VS = 0) then */
        endif /* if (Cause_IV = 0) then */
    endif /* elseif (ExceptionType = Interrupt) then */

    /* Update the shadow set information for an implementation of */
    /* Release 2 of the architecture */
    if ((ArchitectureRevision ≥ 2) and (SRSCtl_HSS > 0) and (Status_BEV = 0) and
        (Status_ERL = 0)) then
        SRSCtl_PSS ← SRSCtl_CSS
        SRSCtl_CSS ← NewShadowSet
    endif
endif /* if Status_EXL = 1 then */

Cause_CE ← FaultingCoprocessorNumber
Cause_ExcCode ← ExceptionType
Status_EXL ← 1

if Config1_CA = 1 then
    ISAMode ← 0
endif

/* Calculate the vector base address */
if Status_BEV = 1 then
    vectorBase ← 16#BFC0.0200
else
    if ArchitectureRevision ≥ 2 then
        /* The fixed value of EBase_31..30 forces the base to be in kseg0 or kseg1 */
        vectorBase ← EBase_31..12 ‖ 16#000
    else
        vectorBase ← 16#8000.0000
    endif
endif

/* Exception PC is the sum of vectorBase and vectorOffset */
PC ← vectorBase_31..30 ‖ (vectorBase_29..0 + vectorOffset_29..0)
                                /* No carry between bits 29 and 30 */
```

6.7 Debug Exception Processing

All debug exceptions have the same basic processing flow:

- The *DEPC* register is loaded with the program counter (PC) value at which execution will be restarted and the DBD bit is set appropriately in the *Debug* register. The value loaded into the *DEPC* register is the current PC if the instruction is not in the delay slot of a branch, or the PC-4 of the branch if the instruction is in the delay slot of a branch.
- The DSS, DBp, DDBL, DDBS, DIB and DINT bits (D* bits at [5:0]) in the *Debug* register are updated appropriately depending on the debug exception type.
- Halt and Doze bits in the *Debug* register are updated appropriately.
- DM bit in the *Debug* register is set to 1.
- The processor is started at the debug exception vector.

The value loaded into *DEPC* represents the restart address for the debug exception and need not be modified by the debug exception handler software in the usual case. Debug software need not look at the DBD bit in the *Debug* register unless it wishes to identify the address of the instruction that actually caused the debug exception.

A unique debug exception is indicated through the DSS, DBp, DDBL, DDBS, DIB and DINT bits (D* bits at [5:0]) in the *Debug* register.

No other CP0 registers or fields are changed due to the debug exception, thus no additional state is saved.

Operation:

```
if InstructionInBranchDelaySlot then
    DEPC ← PC-4
    Debug_DBD ← 1
else
    DEPC ← PC
    Debug_DBD ← 0
endif
Debug_D* bits at at [5:0] ← DebugExceptionType
Debug_Halt ← HaltStatusAtDebugException
Debug_Doze ← DozeStatusAtDebugException
Debug_DM ← 1
if EJTAGControlRegister_ProbTrap = 1 then
    PC ← 0xFF20_0200
else
    if DebugControlRegister_RDVec = 1 then
        if CacheErr then
            PC ← 2#101 || DebugVectorAddr_28..7 || 2#0000000
        else
            PC ← 2#10 || DebugVectorAddr_29..7 || 2#0000000
    else
        PC ← 0xBFC0_0480
endif
```

The same debug exception vector location is used for all debug exceptions. The location is determined by the ProbTrap bit in the EJTAG Control register (ECR) and the RDVec bit in the Debug Control Register (DCR), as shown in Table 6.10.

Table 6.10 Debug Exception Vector Addresses

ProbTrap bit in ECR Register	RDVec bit in DCR Register	Debug Exception Vector Address
0	0	0xBFC0_0480
0	1	2#00 || DebugVectorAddr$_{29\ 7}$ || 2#0000000 or 2#101 || DebugVectorAddr$_{28\ 7}$ || 2#0000000 (Cache Error)
1	x	0xFF20_0200 in dmseg

6.8 Exceptions

The following subsections describe each of the exceptions listed in the same sequence as shown in Table 6.1.

6.8.1 Reset Exception

A reset exception occurs when the *SI_Reset* signal is asserted to the processor. This exception is not maskable. When a Reset exception occurs, the processor performs a full reset initialization, including aborting state machines, establishing critical state, and generally placing the processor in a state in which it can execute instructions from uncached, unmapped address space. On a Reset exception, the state of the processor is not defined, with the following exceptions:

- The *Random* register is initialized to the number of TLB entries - 1.
- The *Wired* register is initialized to zero.
- The *Config* register is initialized with its boot state.
- The RP, BEV, TS, SR, NMI, and ERL fields of the *Status* register are initialized to a specified state.
- The I, R, and W fields of the *WatchLo* register are initialized to 0.
- The *ErrorEPC* register is loaded with PC-4 if the state of the processor indicates that it was executing an instruction in the delay slot of a branch. Otherwise, the *ErrorEPC* register is loaded with PC. Note that this value may or may not be predictable.
- PC is loaded with 0xBFC0_0000.

Cause **Register ExcCode Value:**

None

Additional State Saved:

None

Entry Vector Used:

Reset (0xBFC0_0000)

Operation:

```
Random ← TLBEntries - 1
Wired ← 0
Config ← ConfigurationState
StatusRP ← 0
StatusBEV ← 1
StatusTS ← 0
StatusSR ← 0
StatusNMI ← 0
StatusERL ← 1
WatchLoI ← 0
WatchLoR ← 0
WatchLoW ← 0
if InstructionInBranchDelaySlot then
   ErrorEPC ← PC - 4
else
   ErrorEPC ← PC
endif
PC ← 0xBFC0_0000
```

6.8.2 Debug Single Step Exception

A debug single step exception occurs after the TC has executed one/two instructions in non-debug mode, when returning to non-debug mode after debug mode. One instruction is allowed to execute when returning to an instruction without a delay slot, otherwise two instructions are allowed to execute since the jump/branch and the instruction in the delay slot are executed as one step. Debug single step exceptions are enabled by the SSt bit in the *Debug* register, and are always disabled for the first one/two instructions after a DERET.

The *DEPC* register points to the instruction on which the debug single step exception occurred, which is also the next instruction to single step or execute when returning from debug mode. So the *DEPC* will not point to the instruction which has just been single stepped, but rather the following instruction. The DBD bit in the *Debug* register is never set for a debug single step exception, since the jump/branch and the instruction in the delay slot is executed in one step.

Exceptions occurring on the instruction(s) executed with debug single step exception enabled are taken even though debug single step was enabled. For a normal exception (other than reset), a debug single step exception is then taken on the first instruction in the normal exception handler. Debug exceptions are unaffected by single step mode, e.g. returning to a SDBBP instruction with debug single step exceptions enabled causes a debug software breakpoint exception, and the *DEPC* will point to the SDBBP instruction. However, returning to an instruction (not jump/branch) just before the SDBBP instruction, causes a debug single step exception with the *DEPC* pointing to the SDBBP instruction.

To ensure proper functionality of single step, the debug single step exception has priority over all other exceptions, except reset and soft reset.

Debug Register Debug Status Bit Set

DSS

Additional State Saved

None

Entry Vector Used

Debug exception vector

6.8.3 Debug Interrupt Exception

A debug interrupt exception is either caused by the EjtagBrk bit in the *EJTAG Control* register (controlled through the TAP), or caused by the debug interrupt request signal to the VPE.

The debug interrupt exception is an asynchronous debug exception which is taken as soon as possible, but with no specific relation to the executed instructions. The *DEPC* register is set to the instruction where execution should continue after the debug handler is through. The DBD bit is set based on whether the interrupted instruction was executing in the delay slot of a branch.

***Debug* Register Debug Status Bit Set**

DINT

Additional State Saved

None

Entry Vector Used

Debug exception vector

6.8.4 Non-Maskable Interrupt (NMI) Exception

A non maskable interrupt exception occurs when the *SI_NMI* signal is asserted to the processor. *SI_NMI* is an edge sensitive signal - only one NMI exception will be taken each time it is asserted. An NMI exception occurs only at instruction boundaries, so it does not cause any reset or other hardware initialization. The state of the cache, memory, and other processor states are consistent and all registers are preserved, with the following exceptions:

- The BEV, TS, SR, NMI, and ERL fields of the *Status* register are initialized to a specified state.
- The *ErrorEPC* register is loaded with PC-4 if the state of the processor indicates that it was executing an instruction in the delay slot of a branch. Otherwise, the *ErrorEPC* register is loaded with PC.
- PC is loaded with 0xBFC0_0000.

***Cause* Register ExcCode Value:**

None

Additional State Saved:

None

Entry Vector Used:

Reset (0xBFC0_0000)

Operation:

```
Status_BEV ← 1
Status_TS ← 0
Status_SR ← 0
Status_NMI ← 1
Status_ERL ← 1
if InstructionInBranchDelaySlot then
    ErrorEPC ← PC - 4
else
```

```
    ErrorEPC ← PC
endif
PC ← 0xBFC0_0000
```

6.8.5 Interrupt Exception

The interrupt exception occurs when one or more of the six hardware or two software interrupt requests is enabled by the *Status* register and the interrupt input is asserted. See Section 6.3 "Interrupts" for more details about the processing of interrupts.

Register ExcCode Value:

Int

Additional State Saved:

Table 6.11 Register States an Interrupt Exception

Register State	Value
$Cause_{IP}$	indicates the interrupts that are pending.

Entry Vector Used:

See Section 6.3.2 "Generation of Exception Vector Offsets for Vectored Interrupts" for the entry vector used, depending on the interrupt mode the processor is operating in.

6.8.6 Debug Instruction Break Exception

A debug instruction break exception occurs when an instruction hardware breakpoint matches an executed instruction. The *DEPC* register and DBD bit in the *Debug* register indicate the instruction that caused the instruction hardware breakpoint to match. This exception can only occur if instruction hardware breakpoints are implemented.

Debug **Register Debug Status Bit Set:**

DIB

Additional State Saved:

None

Entry Vector Used:

Debug exception vector

6.8.7 Watch Exception — Instruction Fetch or Data Access

The Watch facility provides a software debugging vehicle by initiating a watch exception when an instruction or data reference matches the address information stored in the *WatchHi* and *WatchLo* registers. A Watch exception is taken immediately if the *EXL* and *ERL* bits of the *Status* register are both zero and the *DM* bit of the *Debug* is also zero. If any of those bits is a one at the time that a watch exception would normally be taken, then the *WP* bit in the *Cause* register is set, and the exception is deferred until all three bits are zero. Software may use the *WP* bit in the *Cause* register to determine if the *EPC* register points at the instruction that caused the watch exception, or if the exception actually occurred while in kernel mode.

The Watch exception can occur on either an instruction fetch or a data access. Watch exceptions that occur on an instruction fetch have a higher priority than watch exceptions that occur on a data access.

Register ExcCode Value:

WATCH

Additional State Saved:

Table 6.12 Register States on a Watch Exception

Register State	Value
Cause$_{WP}$	Indicates that the watch exception was deferred until after *Status*$_{EXL}$, *Status*$_{ERL}$, and *Debug*$_{DM}$ were zero. This bit directly causes a watch exception, so software must clear this bit as part of the exception handler to prevent a watch exception loop at the end of the current handler execution.
WatchHi$_{I,R,W}$	Set for the watch channel that matched, and indicates which type of match there was.

Entry Vector Used:

General exception vector (offset 0x180)

6.8.8 Address Error Exception — Instruction Fetch/Data Access

An address error exception occurs on an instruction or data access when an attempt is made to execute one of the following:

- Fetch an instruction, load a word, or store a word that is not aligned on a word boundary
- Load or store a halfword that is not aligned on a halfword boundary
- Reference the kernel address space from user mode

Note that in the case of an instruction fetch that is not aligned on a word boundary, PC is updated before the condition is detected. Therefore, both *EPC* and *BadVAddr* point to the unaligned instruction address. In the case of a data access the exception is taken if either an unaligned address or an address that was inaccessible in the current processor mode was referenced by a load or store instruction.

Cause **Register ExcCode Value:**

ADEL: Reference was a load or an instruction fetch

ADES: Reference was a store

Additional State Saved:

Table 6.13 CP0 Register States on an Address Exception Error

Register State	Value
BadVAddr	failing address
$Context_{VPN2}$	UNPREDICTABLE
$EntryHi_{VPN2}$	UNPREDICTABLE
EntryLo0	UNPREDICTABLE
EntryLo1	UNPREDICTABLE

Entry Vector Used:

General exception vector (offset 0x180)

6.8.9 TLB Refill Exception — Instruction Fetch or Data Access

During an instruction fetch or data access, a TLB refill exception occurs when no TLB entry matches a reference to a mapped address space and the *EXL* bit is 0 in the *Status* register. Note that this is distinct from the case in which an entry matches but has the valid bit off. In that case, a TLB Invalid exception occurs.

Cause **Register ExcCode Value:**

TLBL: Reference was a load or an instruction fetch

TLBS: Reference was a store

Additional State Saved:

Table 6.14 CP0 Register States on a TLB Refill Exception

Register State	Value
BadVAddr	failing address.
Context	The BadVPN2 field contains $VA_{31:13}$ of the failing address.
EntryHi	The VPN2 field contains $VA_{31:13}$ of the failing address; the ASID field contains the ASID of the reference that missed.
EntryLo0	UNPREDICTABLE
EntryLo1	UNPREDICTABLE

Entry Vector Used:

TLB refill vector (offset 0x000) if $Status_{EXL} = 0$ at the time of exception;

general exception vector (offset 0x180) if $Status_{EXL} = 1$ at the time of exception

6.8.10 TLB Invalid Exception — Instruction Fetch or Data Access

During an instruction fetch or data access, a TLB invalid exception occurs in one of the following cases:

- No TLB entry matches a reference to a mapped address space; and the *EXL* bit is 1 in the *Status* register.

- A TLB entry matches a reference to a mapped address space, but the matched entry has the valid bit off.

Cause **Register ExcCode Value:**

TLBL: Reference was a load or an instruction fetch

TLBS: Reference was a store

Additional State Saved:

Table 6.15 CP0 Register States on a TLB Invalid Exception

Register State	Value
BadVAddr	failing address
Context	The BadVPN2 field contains $VA_{31:13}$ of the failing address.
EntryHi	The VPN2 field contains $VA_{31:13}$ of the failing address; the ASID field contains the ASID of the reference that missed.
EntryLo0	UNPREDICTABLE
EntryLo1	UNPREDICTABLE

Entry Vector Used:

General exception vector (offset 0x180)

6.8.11 Cache Error Exception

A cache error exception occurs when an instruction or data reference detects a cache tag or data error. This exception is not maskable. To avoid disturbing the error in the cache array the exception vector is to an unmapped, uncached address.

Instruction cache parity errors are precise and will only be taken if the core is going to execute the instruction that saw the parity error on a read of the instruction cache. If multiple instruction cache errors are detected prior to the exception being taken, the CacheErr register contents will capture the information for the most recent error, which may not correlate to the instruction indicated by ErrorEPC. Error handling code should use the CacheErr contents to process the exception. Upon returning to the instruction indicated by ErrorEPC, that error would be seen again.

For data cache parity errors, this exception can be imprecise and the ErrorEPC may not point to the instruction that saw the error

In the 1004K, the cache memory may be shared between multiple VPEs on a virtual multiprocessor. In the event of a cache parity or other data integrity error, all VPEs sharing the cache may be affected, and all must take a Cache Error exception. It is the responsibility of software to coordinate any diagnostics or re-initialization of the shared cache, communicating by means other than cached storage. (Note: because instruction cache parity errors are precise they can be isolated to a single affected VPE)

Additionally, because the caches on the cores within the 1004K Coherent Processing System are coherent, cache errors detected on other cores could indicate data corruption for a process on this CPU. An error on another CPU will still cause a Cache Error exception with the *CacheErrEE* indicating that the error occured on another processor.

L2 cache errors are considered to be imprecise. An L2 cache error on a data load operation can potentially corrupt the target GPR.

Cause **Register ExcCode Value**

N/A

Additional State Saved

Table 6.16 CP0 Register States on a Cache Error Exception

Register State	Value
CacheErr	Error state
ErrorEPC	Restart PC

Entry Vector Used

Cache error vector (offset 16#100)

6.8.12 Bus Error Exception — Instruction Fetch or Data Access

A bus error exception occurs when an instruction or data access makes a bus request (due to a cache miss or an uncacheable reference) and that request terminates in an error. The bus error exception can occur on either an instruction fetch or a data read. Bus error exceptions cannot be generated on data writes. Bus error exceptions that occur on an instruction fetch have a higher priority than bus error exceptions that occur on a data access.

Bus Error exceptions on instruction fetch (IBE) are precise. Bus errors on data load operations (DBE) are considered to be imprecise. These errors are taken when the ERR code is returned on the *OC_SResp* input. Bus errors on data load operations can potentially corrupt the target GPR.

In the 1004K, a DBE is delivered to the VPE where the operation was issued. A DBE exception may thus be taken by a TC other than the one which issued the failing operation. A per-TC TBE bit is defined to allow exception handlers to determine which TC(s) were associated with the failed bus transaction. If a DBE results from an operation that was combined across VPEs, a DBE exception must be delivered to all VPEs affected. Where the origin of the failure cannot be determined, all VPEs in a processor must take a DBE exception.

Cause **Register ExcCode Value:**

IBE: Error on an instruction reference

DBE: Error on a data reference

Additional State Saved:

None

Entry Vector Used:

General exception vector (offset 0x180)

6.8.13 Debug Software Breakpoint Exception

A debug software breakpoint exception occurs when an SDBBP instruction is executed. The *DEPC* register and DBD bit in the *Debug* register will indicate the SDBBP instruction that caused the debug exception.

Debug Register Debug Status Bit Set:

DBp

Additional State Saved:

None

Entry Vector Used:

Debug exception vector

6.8.14 Execution Exception — System Call

The system call exception is one of the execution exceptions. All of these exceptions have the same priority. A system call exception occurs when a SYSCALL instruction is executed.

Cause **Register ExcCode Value:**

Sys

Additional State Saved:

None

Entry Vector Used:

General exception vector (offset 0x180)

6.8.15 Execution Exception — Breakpoint

The breakpoint exception is one of the execution exceptions. All of these exceptions have the same priority. A breakpoint exception occurs when a BREAK instruction is executed.

Cause **Register ExcCode Value:**

Bp

Additional State Saved:

None

Entry Vector Used:

General exception vector (offset 0x180)

6.8.16 Execution Exception — Reserved Instruction

The reserved instruction exception is one of the execution exceptions. All of these exceptions have the same priority. A reserved instruction exception occurs when a reserved or undefined major opcode or function field is executed. This includes Coprocessor 2 instructions which are decoded reserved in the Coprocessor 2.

Cause **Register ExcCode Value:**

RI

Additional State Saved:

None

Entry Vector Used:

General exception vector (offset 0x180)

6.8.17 Execution Exception — Coprocessor Unusable

The coprocessor unusable exception is one of the execution exceptions. All of these exceptions have the same priority. A coprocessor unusable exception occurs when an attempt is made to execute a coprocessor instruction for one of the following:

- a corresponding coprocessor unit that has not been marked usable by setting its CU bit in the *Status* register
- CP0 instructions, when the unit has not been marked usable, and the processor is executing in user mode

Cause **Register ExcCode Value:**

CpU

Additional State Saved:

Table 6.17 Register States on a Coprocessor Unusable Exception

Register State	Value
$Cause_{CE}$	unit number of the coprocessor being referenced

Entry Vector Used:

General exception vector (offset 0x180)

6.8.18 Execution Exception — CorExtend block Unusable

The CorExtend block unusable exception is one of the execution exceptions. All of these exceptions have the same priority. A CEU exception occurs when an attempt is made to execute a CorExtend instruction when the CEE bit in the *Status* register is not set. It is dependent on the implementation of the CorExtend block, but this exception should be taken on any CorExtend instruction that modifies local state within the CorExtend block and can optionally be taken on other CorExtend instructions.

Cause **Register ExcCode Value:**

CEU

Additional State Saved:

None

Entry Vector Used:

General exception vector (offset 0x180)

6.8.19 Execution Exception — DSP ASE State Disabled

The DSP ASE State Disabled exception an execution exception. It occurs when an attempt is made to execute a DSP ASE instruction when the MX bit in the *Status* register is not set. This allows an OS to do “lazy” context switching.

Cause **Register ExcCode Value:**

DSPDis

Additional State Saved:

None

Entry Vector Used:

General exception vector (offset 0x180)

6.8.20 Execution Exception — Floating Point Exception

A floating point exception is initiated by the floating point coprocessor.

Cause **Register ExcCode Value:**

FPE

Additional State Saved:

Table 6.18 Register States on a Floating Point Exception

Register State	Value
FCSR	Indicates the cause of the floating point exception

Entry Vector Used:

General exception vector (offset 0x180)

6.8.21 Execution Exception — Integer Overflow

The integer overflow exception is one of the execution exceptions. All of these exceptions have the same priority. An integer overflow exception occurs when selected integer instructions result in a 2's complement overflow.

Cause **Register ExcCode Value:**

Ov

Additional State Saved:

None

Entry Vector Used:

General exception vector (offset 0x180)

6.8.22 Execution Exception — Trap

The trap exception is one of the execution exceptions. All of these exceptions have the same priority. A trap exception occurs when a trap instruction results in a TRUE value.

Cause **Register ExcCode Value:**

Tr

Additional State Saved:

None

Entry Vector Used:

General exception vector (offset 0x180)

6.8.23 Execution Exception — C2E

A C2E exception is signalled from the optional coprocessor2 block on a coprocessor instruction.

Cause **Register ExcCode Value:**

C2E

Additional State Saved:

None

Entry Vector Used:

General exception vector (offset 0x180)

6.8.24 Execution Exception — IS1

An IS1 exception is signalled from the optional coprocessor2 block on a coprocessor instruction.

Cause **Register ExcCode Value:**

IS1

Additional State Saved:

None

Entry Vector Used:

General exception vector (offset 0x180)

6.8.25 Execution Exceptions — MT_ov, MT_under, MT_invalid, MT_yield_sched

- **MT_ov** - A Thread Overflow condition on a FORK, where a TC allocation request cannot be satisfied.
- **MT_under** - A Thread Underflow condition on a YIELD, where the termination and deallocation of a thread leaves no dynamically allocatable TCs activated on a VPE.
- **MT_invalid** - An Invalid qualifier condition, where a YIELD instruction specifies an invalid condition for resuming execution.
- **MT_yield_sched** - A YIELD scheduler exception, where a valid YIELD instruction could have caused a rescheduling of a TC, and the YIELD Intercept bit is set. This happens when a YIELD is executed with a yield qualifier of -1, 0, or any positive value when *VPEControlYSI*=1 and *TCStatusDT*=1. Lower priority than MT_under or MT_Invalid - if one of those conditions is met by YIELD, that exception will be taken instead.

Cause **Register ExcCode Value:**

Thread.

Additional State Saved:

There is a sub-cause filed in *VPEControl*[EXCPT], which indicates the type of Thread exception. Table 6.19 shows

the different Thread Exception Codes.

Table 6.19 Thread exception codes in VPEControl[EXCPT]

Value	Exception
0	MT_ov
1	MT_under
2	MT_invalid
3	MT_gs
4	MT_yield_sched
5	MT_gss

Entry Vector Used:

General exception vector (offset 0x180)

6.8.26 Thread Exceptions — MT_gs, MT_gss

- **MT_gs** - A Gating Storage exception condition, where implementation dependent logic associated with gating or inter-thread communication (ITC) storage requires software intervention.
- **MT_gss** - A Gating Storage Scheduler exception, where a Gating Storage load or store would have blocked and caused a rescheduling of a TC, and the GS Intercept bit is set.

***Cause* Register ExcCode Value:**

Thread.

Additional State Saved:

There is a sub-cause filed in *VPEControl*[EXCPT], which indicates the type of Thread exception. Table 6.19 shows the different Thread Exception Codes.

Entry Vector Used:

General exception vector (offset 0x180)

6.8.27 Debug Data Break Exception

A debug data break exception occurs when a data hardware breakpoint matches the load/store transaction of an executed load/store instruction. The *DEPC* register and DBD bit in the *Debug* register will indicate the load/store instruction that caused the data hardware breakpoint to match. The load/store instruction that caused the debug exception has not completed e.g. not updated the register file, and the instruction can be re-executed after returning from the debug handler.

***Debug* Register Debug Status Bit Set:**

DDBL for a load instruction or DDBS for a store instruction

Additional State Saved:

None

Entry Vector Used:

Debug exception vector

6.8.28 TLB Modified Exception — Data Access

During a data access, a TLB modified exception occurs on a store reference to a mapped address if the following condition is true:

- The matching TLB entry is valid, but not dirty.

***Cause* Register ExcCode Value:**

Mod

Additional State Saved:

Table 6.20 Register States on a TLB Modified Exception

Register State	Value
BadVAddr	failing address
Context	The BadVPN2 field contains $VA_{31:13}$ of the failing address.
EntryHi	The VPN2 field contains $VA_{31:13}$ of the failing address; the ASID field contains the ASID of the reference that missed.
EntryLo0	UNPREDICTABLE
EntryLo1	UNPREDICTABLE

Entry Vector Used:

General exception vector (offset 0x180)

6.9 Exception Handling and Servicing Flowcharts

The remainder of this chapter contains flowcharts for the following exceptions and guidelines for their handlers:

- General exceptions and their exception handler
- TLB miss exception and their exception handler
- Reset and NMI exceptions, and a guideline to their handler.
- Debug exceptions

Generally speaking, the exceptions are handled by hardware; the exceptions are then serviced by software. Note that unexpected debug exceptions to the debug exception vector at 0xBFC0_0200 may be viewed as a reserved instruction since uncontrolled execution of an SDBBP instruction caused the exception. The DERET instruction must be used at return from the debug exception handler, in order to leave debug mode and return to non-debug mode. The DERET instruction returns to the address in the *DEPC* register.

Figure 6.3 General Exception Handler (HW)

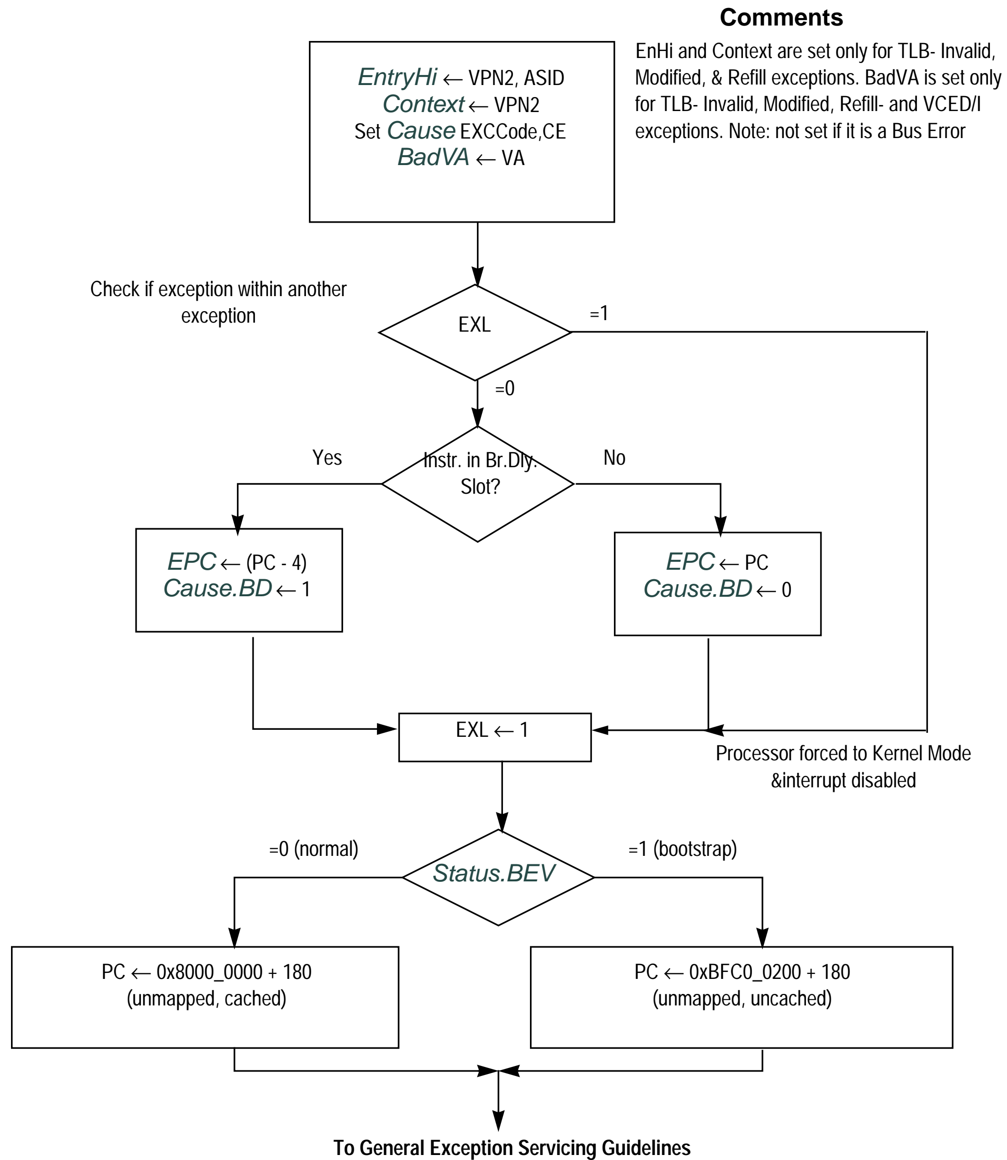


Figure 6.4 General Exception Servicing Guidelines (SW)

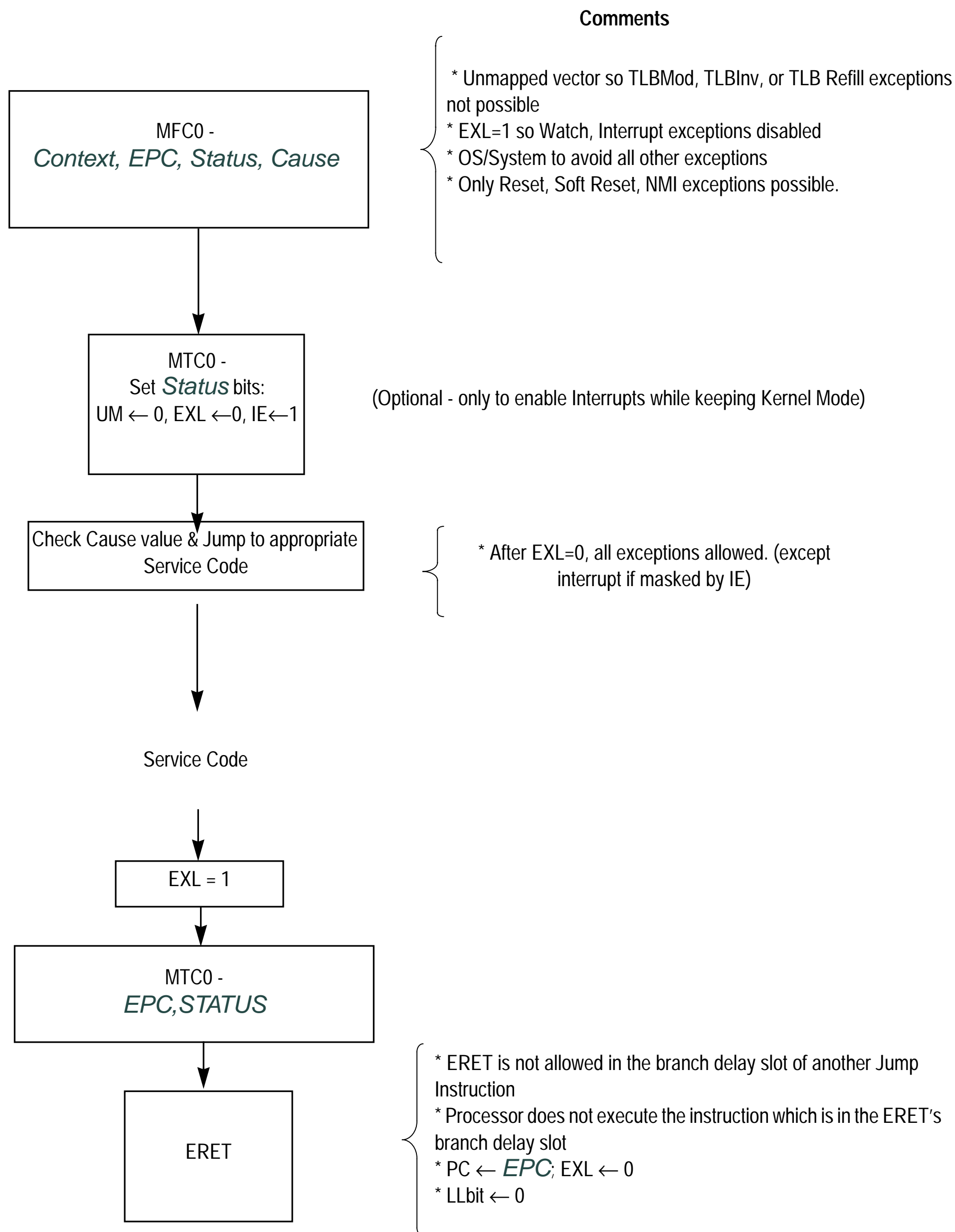


Figure 6.5 TLB Miss Exception Handler (HW)

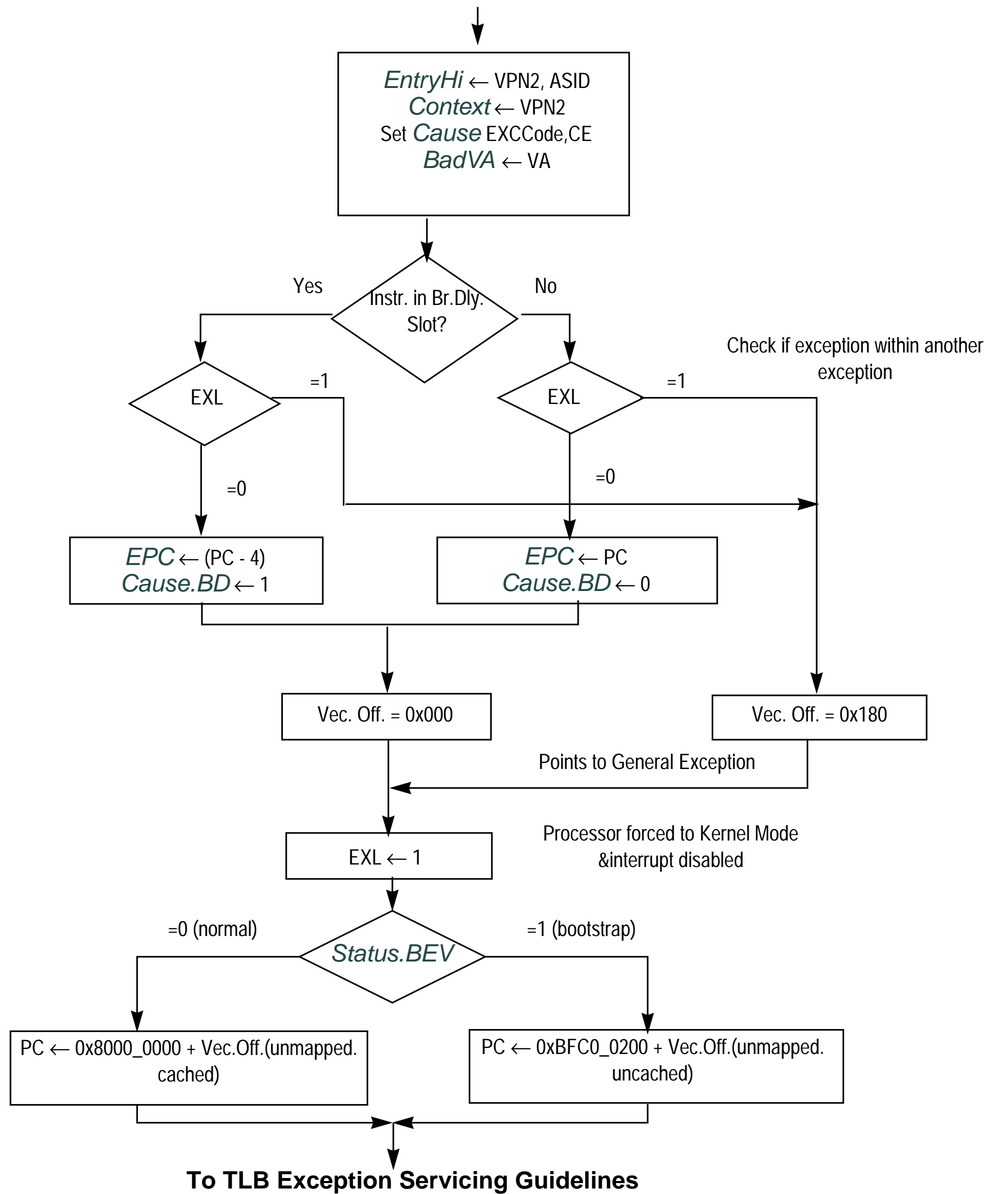


Figure 6.6 TLB Exception Servicing Guidelines (SW)

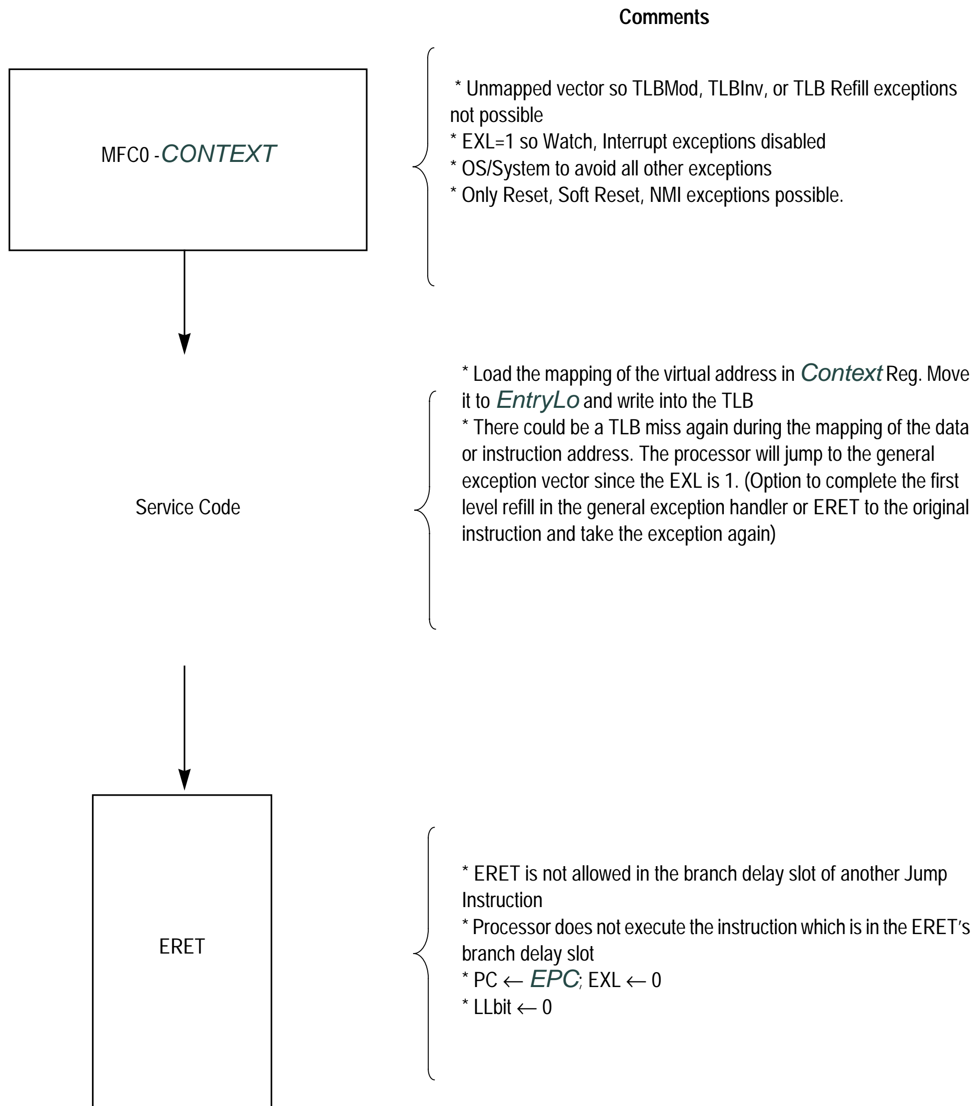
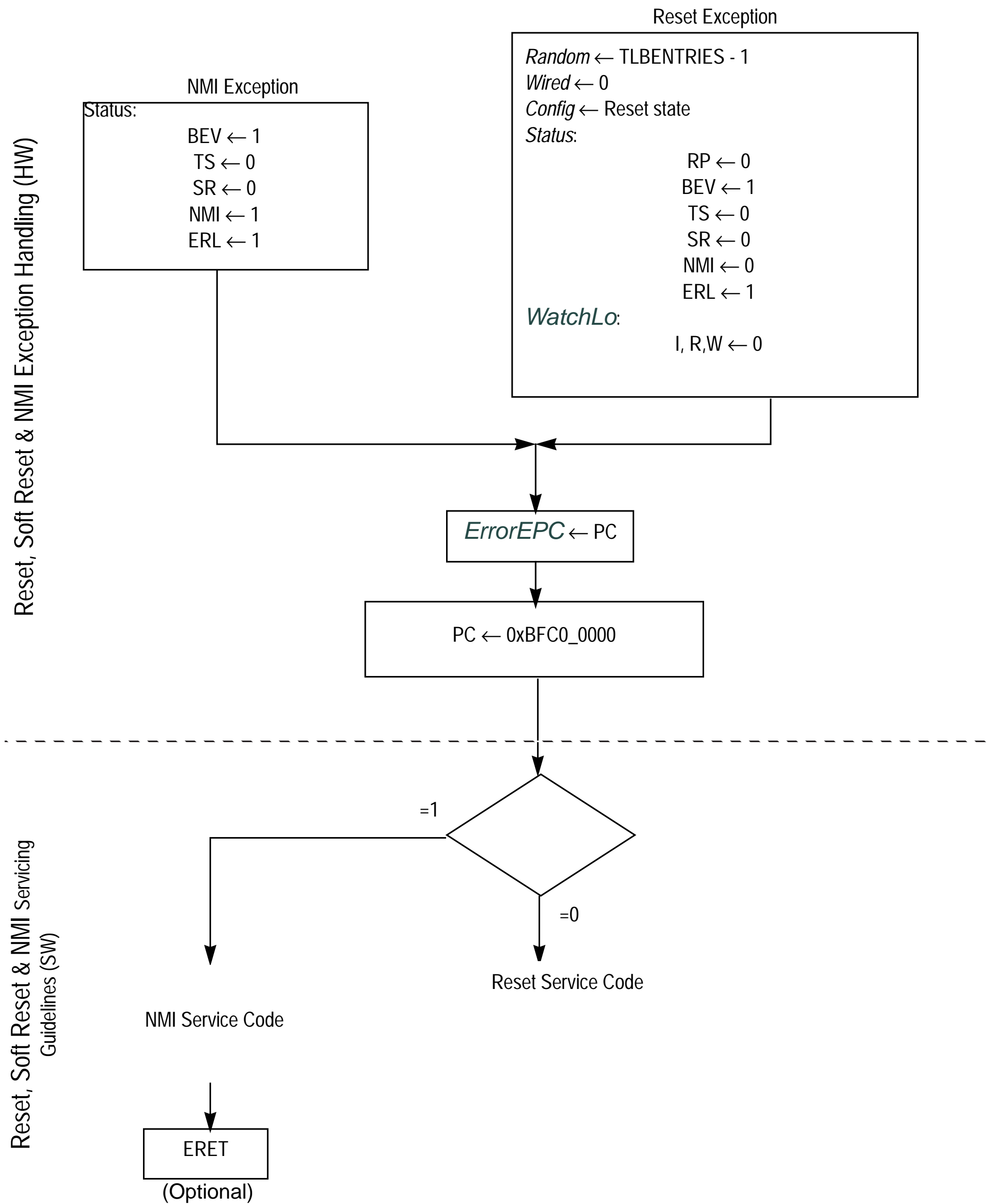


Figure 6.7 Reset and NMI Exception Handling and Servicing Guidelines



Chapter 7

CP0 Registers of the 1004K™ CPU

The System Control Coprocessor (CP0) provides the register interface to the 1004K CPU and supports memory management, address translation, exception handling, and other privileged operations. Each CP0 register has a unique number that identifies it; this number is referred to as the *register number*. For instance, the *PageMask* register is register number 5. All registers also have a select number from 0-7, if none is specified, it is 0. After updating a CP0 register there is a hazard period of zero or more instructions from the update instruction (MTC0) and until the effect of the update has taken place in the CPU.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Section 7.1 "CP0 Register Summary"
- Section 7.2 "CP0 Register Descriptions"

7.1 CP0 Register Summary

Table 7.1 lists the CP0 registers in numerical order and gives a brief description. Additionally, the table shows whether the register is implemented once per processor, once per VPE, or once per TC. The individual registers are described throughout this chapter.

Table 7.1 CP0 Registers

Register			Function	Per		
Number	Select	Name		VPE	TC	Proc
0	0	Index[1]	Index into the TLB array. This register is reserved if the TLB is not implemented.	X		
0	1	MVPControl	Processor-wide multithreading control.			X
0	2-3	MVPConf0-1	Processor's multithreading resources			X
1	0	Random[1]	Randomly generated index into the TLB array. This register is reserved if the TLB is not implemented.	X		
1	1	VPEControl	VPE control and status	X		
1	2-3	VPEConf0-1	Initializable per-VPE resource lists	X		
1	4	YQMask	Defines valid inputs for yield instruction	X		
1	5	VPESchedule	Per-VPE thread policy hints	X		
1	6	VPEScheFBack	Per-VPE information from policy manager	X		
1	7	VPEOpt	Per-VPE cache-way inhibition	X		
2	0	EntryLo0[1]	Low-order portion of the TLB entry for even-numbered virtual pages. This register is reserved if the TLB is not implemented.			
2	1	TCStatus	Status and control for each TC		X	
2	2	TCBind	VPE affiliation and own TC number of this TC		X	

Table 7.1 CP0 Registers (Continued)

Register			Function	Per		
Number	Select	Name		VPE	TC	Proc
2	3	TCRestart	Where this TC will next fetch code from		X	
2	4	TCHalt	Set 1 to freeze the TC for inspection/modification		X	
2	5	TCContext	Read/write scratch register for OS to maintain thread ID		X	
2	6	TCSchedule	Per-TC thread scheduling hints		X	
2	7	TCScheFBack	Per-TC information from policy manager		X	
3	0	EntryLo1[1]	Low-order portion of the TLB entry for odd-numbered virtual pages. This register is reserved if the TLB is not implemented.	X		
3	7	TCOpt	Per-TC cache-way inhibition		X	
4	0	Context[2]	Pointer to page table entry in memory. This register is reserved if the TLB is not implemented.	X		
4	2	UserLocal	User information that can be written by privileged software and read via RDHWR register 29		X	
5	0	PageMask	PageMask controls the variable page sizes in TLB entries. This register is reserved if the TLB is not implemented.	X		
6	0	Wired[1]	Controls the number of fixed (“wired”) TLB entries. This register is reserved if the TLB is not implemented.	X		
6	1-5	SRSConf0-4	Write these to use TCs as shadow registers	X		
7	0	HWREna	Enables access via the RDHWR instruction to selected hardware registers in non-privileged mode.	X		
8	0	BadVAddr[2]	Reports the address for the most recent address-related exception.	X		
9	0	Count[2]	Processor cycle count.	X		
10	0	EntryHi[1]	High-order portion of the TLB entry. This register is reserved if the TLB is not implemented.	X	X[3]	
11	0	Compare[2]	Timer interrupt control.	X		
12	0	Status[2]	Processor status and control.	X	X[4]	
12	1	IntCtl[2]	Setup for interrupt vector and interrupt priority features.	X		
12	2	SRSCtl[2]	Shadow register set selectors	X		
12	3	SRSMap[2]	In vectored interrupt mode, determines which shadow set is used for each interrupt source.	X		
13	0	Cause[2]	Cause of last exception.	X		
14	0	EPC[2]	Program counter at last exception.	X		
15	0	PRId	Processor identification and revision.	X		
15	1	EBase	Exception base address.	X		
15	2	CDMMBase	Common Device Memory Map Base Address			X
15	3	CMGCRBase	Global Configuration Register Base Address			X
16	0	Config	Configuration register.	X		
16	1-2	Config1-2	Configuration for MMU, caches etc.	X		

Table 7.1 CP0 Registers (Continued)

Register			Function	Per		
Number	Select	Name		VPE	TC	Proc
16	3	Config3	Interrupt and ASE capabilities	X		
16	7	Config7	1004K family-specific configuration register.	X		
17	0	LLAddr	Address associated with last LL instruction of a “load-linked/store-conditional” instruction pair.	X		
18	0-1	WatchLo0-1[2]	Low-order watchpoint address associated with instruction watch-points.	X		
18	2-3	WatchLo2-3[2]	Low-order watchpoint address associated with data watchpoints.	X		
19	0-1	WatchHi0-1[2]	High-order watchpoint address used for instruction watchpoints.	X		
19	2-3	WatchHi2-3[2]	High-order watchpoint address used for data watchpoints.	X		
23	0	Debug[5]	EJTAG Debug register.	X		
23	1	TraceControl[5]	EJTAG Trace Control register	X		
23	2	TraceControl2[5]	EJTAG Trace Control2 register	X		
23	3	UserTraceData1[5]	EJTAG User Trace Data1 register	X		
23	4	TraceIBPC[5]	EJTAG Trace Instruction breakpoint control register	X		
23	5	TraceDBPC[5]	EJTAG Trace Debug breakpoint control register	X		
24	0	DEPC[5]	Restart address from last EJTAG debug exception.	X		
24	2	TraceControl3[5]	EJTAG Trace Control3 register	X		
24	3	UserTraceData2[5]	EJTAG User Trace Data2 register	X		
25	0	PerfCtl0	Performance counter 0 control.		X	
25	1	PerfCnt0	Performance counter 0.		X	
25	2	PerfCtl1	Performance counter 1 control.		X	
25	3	PerfCnt1	Performance counter 1.		X	
26	0	ErrCtl	Software test enable of way-select and Data RAM arrays for I-Cache and D-Cache.	X		
27	0	CacheErr	Records information about cache parity errors	X		
28	0	ITagLo	Cache tag read/write interface for I-cache.	X		
28	1	IDataLo	Low-order data read/write interface for I-cache.	X		
28	2	DTagLo	Cache tag read/write interface for D-cache.	X		
28	3	DDataLo	Low-order data read/write interface for D-cache.	X		
28	4	L23TagLo	Cache tag read/write interface for L2-cache.	X		
28	5	L23DataLo	Low-order data read/write interface for L2-cache.	X		
29	1	IDataHi	High-order data read/write interface for I-cache.	X		
29	5	L23DataHi	High-order data read/write interface for L2-cache.	X		
30	0	ErrorEPC[2]	Program counter at last error.	X		
31	0	DeSAVE[5]	Debug handler scratchpad register.	X		

1. Registers used in memory management.
2. Registers used in exception processing.
3. *ASID* per-TC. See Section 7.2.30 “EntryHi Register (CP0 Register 10, Select 0)”.
4. *KSU,FR,* and *CU0-3* per-TC. See Section 7.2.32 “Status Register (CP0 Register 12, Select 0)”.
5. Registers used in debug.

7.2 CP0 Register Descriptions

The CP0 registers provide the interface between the ISA and the architecture. Each register is discussed below, with the registers presented in numerical order, first by register number, then by select field number.

For each register described below, field descriptions include the read/write properties of the field, and the reset state of the field. For single bit fields, the name is truncated to a single character which is then shown outside brackets in the Fields|Name column; for example, *(TLB)S* for the TLB Sharable bit in the *MVPConf0* register. For the read/write properties of the field, the following notation is used:

Table 7.2 CP0 Register Field Types

<table>
<tr><th>Notation</th><th>Hardware Interpretation</th><th>Software Interpretation</th></tr>
<tr><td>R/W</td><td colspan="2">A field in which all bits are readable and writable by software and, potentially, by hardware.
Hardware updates of this field are visible by software reads. Software updates of this field are visible by hardware reads.
If the reset state of this field is “Undefined,” either software or hardware must initialize the value before the first read will return a predictable value. This should not be confused with the formal definition of UNDEFINED behavior.</td></tr>
<tr><td>R</td><td>A field that is either static or is updated only by hardware.
If the Reset State of this field is either “0” or “Preset”, hardware initializes this field to zero or to the appropriate state, respectively, on powerup.
If the Reset State of this field is “Undefined”, hardware updates this field only under those conditions specified in the description of the field.</td><td>A field to which the value written by software is ignored by hardware. Software may write any value to this field without affecting hardware behavior. Software reads of this field return the last value updated by hardware.
If the Reset State of this field is “Undefined,” software reads of this field result in an UNPREDICTABLE value except after a hardware update done under the conditions specified in the description of the field.</td></tr>
<tr><td>W</td><td colspan="2">A field that can be written by software but which can not be read by software.
Software reads of this field will return an UNDEFINED value.</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>A field that hardware does not update, and for which hardware can assume a zero value.</td><td>A field to which the value written by software must be zero. Software writes of non-zero values to this field may result in UNDEFINED behavior of the hardware. Software reads of this field return zero as long as all previous software writes are zero.
If the Reset State of this field is “Undefined,” software must write this field with zero before it is guaranteed to read as zero.</td></tr>
</table>

7.2.1 Index Register (CP0 Register 0, Select 0)

The *Index* register is a 32-bit read/write register that contains the index used to access the TLB for TLBP, TLBR, and TLBWI instructions. The width of the index field is implementation-dependent as a function of the number of TLB entries that are implemented. The minimum value for TLB-based MMUs is *Ceiling*(Log_2*(TLBEntries))*.

The operation of the processor is **UNDEFINED** if a value greater than or equal to the number of TLB entries is written to the *Index* register.

This register is only valid with the TLB. It is reserved if the FM is implemented.

Figure 7.1 Index Register Format

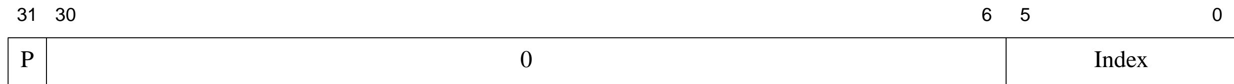


Table 7.3 Index Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
P	31	Probe Failure. Set to 1by hardware when the previous TLBProbe (TLBP) instruction failed to find a match in the TLB. Software can set to 1 to avoid locking up an entry when the TLB is shared. If 0, TLBWR on the other VPE will skip the selected Index value to allow refills on the other VPE to occur at the same time as TLB maintenance on this one.	R/W	Undefined
0	30:6	Must be written as zeros; returns zeros on reads.	0	0
Index	5:0	Index to the TLB entry affected by the TLBRead and TLBWrite instructions. For 16 or 32 entry TLBs, behavior is undefined if index points to a non-existent entry.	R/W	Undefined

7.2.2 MVPControl Register (CP0 Register 0, Select 1)

The *MVPControl* register is instantiated per-processor, and provides an interface for global control and configuration of a multi-VPE MIPS MT 1004k.

Figure 7.2 shows the format of the *MVPControl* register; Table 7.4 describes the *MVPControl* register fields.

Figure 7.2 MVPControl Register Format

Table 7.4 MVPControl Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read/Write		Reset State
Name	Bits		MVP=0	MVP=1	
CPA	3	Cache Partitioning Active. If set, the *IWX* and *DWX* fields of the *VPEOpt* register control the allocation of cache lines as described in section 7.2.11. If clear, *IWX* and *DWX* are ignored.	R	R/W	0

Table 7.4 MVPControl Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read/Write		Reset State
Name	Bits		MVP=0	MVP=1	
STLB	2	Share TLBs. Modifiable only if the VPC bit was set prior to the write to the register of a new value. When set, the full complement of TLBs of a processor is shared by all VPEs on the processor having access to the TLB, regardless of the programming of the $Config1_{MMU_Size}$ register fields. When STLB is set: • The virtual address and ASID spaces are unified across all VPEs sharing the TLB. • The TLB logic must ensure that a TLBWR instruction can never write to a TLB entry which corresponds to the valid Index register value of any VPE sharing the TLB. • TLBWRs may have UNPREDICTABLE results if there are fewer total unwired TLB entries than there are operational VPEs sharing the TLB. • TLBWRs may have UNPREDICTABLE results if the Wired register values are not identical across all VPEs sharing the TLB. When not in use for TLB maintenance, software should leave the *Index* register set to an invalid value, with the *P* bit set, for all VPEs having TLB access.	R if VPC = 0, R/W if VPC = 1		0
VPC	1	Indicates that Processor is in a VPE Configuration State. When *VPC* is set, some normally “Preset” configuration register fields become writable, to allow for dynamic configuration of processor resources . Writable by software only if the $VPEConf0_{MVP}$ bit is set for the VPE issuing the modifying instruction. Processor behavior is UNDEFINED if *VPC* and *EVP* are both in a set state at the same time.	R	R/W	0
EVP	0	Enable Virtual Processors. Modifiable only if the $VPEConf0_{MVP}$ bit is set for the VPE issuing the modifying instruction. Set by EVPE instruction and cleared by DVPE instruction. If set, all activated (see section 7.2.6) VPEs on a processor fetch and execute independently. If cleared, only a single instruction stream on a single VPE can run.	R	R/W	0
0	31:4	Must be written as zero; return zero on read.	0		0

So long as the *EVP* bit is zero, no thread scheduling will be performed by the processor. On a processor reset, only the reset thread, TC 0, will execute. If *EVP* is cleared by software, only the thread which issued the DVPE or MTC0 instruction which cleared the bit will issue further instructions. All other TCs of the processor are suspended.

The effect of clearing *EVP* in software may not be instantaneous. An instruction hazard barrier, e.g. JR.HB, is required to guarantee that all other VPEs have been quiesced.

The *STLB* bit affects only VPEs using a TLB MMU. The operation of VPEs using FMT MMUs is unaffected.

For MIPS32-compatible software operation, all *MMU_Size* fields must indicate the size of the shared TLB when *STLB* is set. This may either be done automatically by hardware, or, on processors implementing configurable

MMU_Size, by software rewriting the *MMU_Size* fields of the *Config1* registers of the affected VPEs to the correct value while the processor has the VPC bit set. When *STLB* is set, the restriction that the sum of *Config1 MMU_Size* fields not exceed the total number of configurable TLB entry pairs as indicated by the *PTLBE* field of the *MVPConf0* register no longer applies. If TLB entries are not otherwise dynamically configurable, i.e. *PTLBE* is zero, hardware must automatically maintain the correct *MMU_Size* values according to the value of *STLB*.

Programming Notes

The TLB should always be flushed of valid entries between any setting or clearing of *STLB* and the first subsequent TLB-mapped memory reference.

7.2.3 MVPConf0-1 Registers (CP0 Register 0, Select 2-3)

The *MVPConf0-1* registers provide read-only multithreading-specific configuration information.

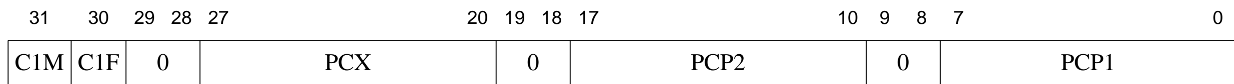
Figure 7.3 MVPConf0 Register Format

31	30	29	28	27	26	25 - 16	15	14	13 - 10	9 - 8	7 - 0
M	0	TLBS	GS	PCP	0	PTLBE	TCA	0	PVPE	0	PTC

Table 7.5 MVPConf0 Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
M	31	This bit reads 1 if the *MVPConf1* register is present, otherwise it reads 0.	R	1
TLBS	29	TLB Sharable: Indicates that TLB sharing amongst all VPEs is possible. TLB sharing is enabled by the *STLB* bit of the *MVPControl* register.	R	1 if both VPEs have TLB
GS	28	Gating Storage Present. Indicates that the processor is configured to support gating storage operations. Externally set on reset based on the state of the *IT_num_entries* InterThread input. If *IT_num_entries* is greater than zero, this bit is set to 1.	R	Preset
PCP	27	Programmable Cache Partitioning: If set, indicates that the allocation behavior of the “ways” of the primary instruction and data caches can be controlled via the *VPEOpt* register’s *IWX* and *DWX* fields.	R	1 if multiple VPEs
PTLBE	25:16	Total processor complement of allocatable TLB entry pairs. TLB configuration is fixed, so PTLBE is zero.	R	0
TCA	15	TCs Allocatable: If set, TCs may be assigned to VPEs by writing the *CurVPE* field of the *TCBind* register of each TC while the *VPC* bit of *MVPControl* is set.	R	1
PVPE	13:10	Total processor complement of VPE contexts - 1. This field reflects the number of VPEs present after subtracting the value of the static input *SI_DisableVPE*.	R	Preset: 0 or 1
PTC	7:0	Total processor complement of TCs - 1. This field reflects the number of TCs present after subtracting the value of the static input *SI_DisableTCs*.	R	Preset: 0 to 8
0	30, 26, 14, 9:8	Must be written as zeros; returns zeros on reads.	0	0

Figure 7.4 MVPConf1 Register Format



31	30	29 28	27 20	19 18	17 10	9 8	7 0
C1M	C1F	0	PCX	0	PCP2	0	PCP1

Table 7.6 MVPConf1 Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
C1M	31	If set, floating point unit (co-processor 1) implements the MDMX™ extension to the instruction set.	R	Preset
C1F	30	If set, floating point unit (co-processor 1) implements 64-bit instructions	R	Preset
PCX	27:20	Number of register set contexts available for CorExtend. This field is Preset to 0 for any of the following cases: • In non-Pro-series CPUs • In Pro-series CPUs configured without UDI support • Whenever the *UDI_present* input is deasserted • Whenever the *UDI_context_present* input is deasserted, indicating that the CorExtend module has no state associated with it. If none of the above are true, then if *UDI_mt_context_per_tc* is asserted, this field will be set to the number of TCs available in the CPU, otherwise it will be set to 1.	R	Preset
PCP2	17:10	Number of register set contexts available for co-processor 2. This field represents the value on the *CP2_maxtc[3:0]* input.	R	Preset
PCP1	7:0	Number of integrated and allocatable FPU contexts. • If no FPU is present, this will be 0. • If a single-threaded FPU is present, this will be 1 • If the multi-threaded FPU is present, then this will be 0 because the FPU contexts are not allocatable.	R	Preset
0	29:28, 19:18, 9:8	Must be written as zeros; returns zeros on reads.	0	0

7.2.4 Random Register (CP0 Register 1, Select 0)

The *Random* register is a read-only register whose value is used to index the TLB during a TLBWR instruction. The width of the Random field is calculated in the same manner as that described for the *Index* register above.

The value of the register varies between an upper and lower bound as follow:

- A lower bound is set by the number of TLB entries reserved for exclusive use by the operating system (the contents of the *Wired* register). The entry indexed by the *Wired* register is the first entry available to be written by a TLB Write Random operation.
- An upper bound is set by the total number of TLB entries minus 1.

The *Random* register is decremented by one almost every clock, wrapping after the value in the *Wired* register is reached. To enhance the level of randomness and reduce the possibility of a live lock condition, an LFSR register is used which prevents the decrement pseudo-randomly.

The processor initializes the *Random* register to the upper bound on a Reset exception and when the *Wired* register is written.

This register is only valid with the TLB. It is reserved if the FM is implemented.

Figure 7.5 Random Register Format

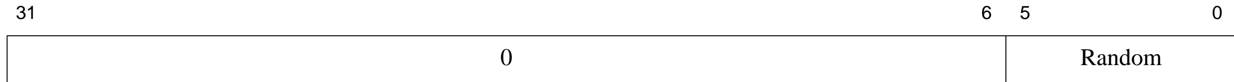


Table 7.7 Random Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
0	31:6	Must be written as zero; returns zero on reads.	0	0
Random	5:0	TLB Random Index	R	TLB Entries - 1

7.2.5 VPEControl Register (CP0 Register 1, Select 1)

The *VPEControl* register is instantiated per VPE as part of the system coprocessor.

Figure 7.6 shows the format of the *VPEControl* register; Table 7.8 describes the *VPEControl* register fields.

Figure 7.6 VPEControl Register Format

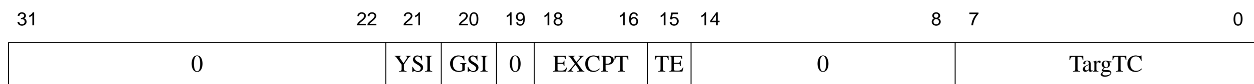


Table 7.8 VPEControl Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
YSI	21	YIELD Scheduler Intercept. If set, and the *TCStatus DT* bit is also set, valid YIELD instructions that could otherwise cause a rescheduling cause a Thread exception with a YIELD Scheduler Exception sub-code (see below).	R/W	0
GSI	20	Gating Storage Scheduler Intercept. If set, and the *TCStatus DT* bit is also set, Gating Storage load and store operations that would otherwise block the issuing TC cause a Thread exception with a GS Scheduler Exception sub-code (see below).	R/W	0

Table 7.8 VPEControl Register Field Descriptions

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2" colspan="3">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">EXCPT</td><td rowspan="8">18:16</td><td rowspan="8">Exception sub-code of most recently dispatched Thread exception</td><th>Value</th><th>Meaning</th><td rowspan="8">R</td><td rowspan="8">Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>Thread Underflow</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Thread Overflow</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>Invalid YIELD Qualifier</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>Gating Storage Exception</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>YIELD Scheduler Exception</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>GS Scheduler Exception</td></tr>
<tr><td>6-7</td><td>Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>TE</td><td>15</td><td colspan="3">Threads Enabled. Set by EMT instruction, cleared by DMT instruction. If set, multiple TCs may be simultaneously active. If cleared, only one thread may execute on the VPE.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>TargTC</td><td>7:0</td><td colspan="3">TC number to be used on MTTR and MFTR instructions.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>31:22, 19,14:8</td><td colspan="3">Must be written as zero; return zero on read.</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>

So long as the *TE* bit is zero, no thread scheduling will be performed by the VPE. On a processor reset, only the reset thread, TC 0, will execute. If *TE* is cleared by software, only the thread which issued the DMT or MTC0 instruction which cleared the bit will issue further instructions. All other TCs of the VPE are suspended.

The effect of clearing *TE* in software may not be instantaneous. An instruction hazard barrier, e.g. JR.HB, is required to guarantee that all other threads have been quiesced.

7.2.6 VPEConf0 Register(CP0 Register 1, Select 2)

The *VPEConf0* register is instantiated per VPE. It indicates the activation state and privilege level of the VPE. All fields in the *VPEConf0* register are read-only in normal execution, but the *MVP* and *VPA* fields are writable while the *MVP* bit is set for the VPE performing the modification.

Figure 7.7 shows the format of the *VPEConf0* register; Table 7.9 describes the *VPEConf0* register fields.

Figure 7.7 VPEConf0 Register Format

31	30 29	28 ... 21	20	19	18	17	16	15 ... 2	1	0
M	0	XTC	0	TCS	SCS	DCS	ICS	0	MVP	VPA

Table 7.9 VPEConf0 Register Field Descriptions

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th colspan="2">Read/Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th><th>MVP=0</th><th>MVP=1</th></tr>
<tr><td>M</td><td>31</td><td>This bit is reserved to indicate that a VPEConf1 register is present. If the VPEConf1 register is not implemented, this bit should read as a 0. If the VPEConf1 register is implemented, this bit should read as a 1.</td><td colspan="2">R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>XTC</td><td>28:21</td><td>Exclusive TC. Set by hardware when execution is restricted within a VPE to a single TC, due to EXL/ERL being set in the Status register, or TE being cleared in the VPEControl register, this field contains the TC number of the TC eligible to run. Read by hardware when the VPA bit is written set by software. For cross-VPE initialization, XTC is writable by MTTR if the issuing VPE has MVP set and the target VPE has VPA clear.</td><td>R</td><td>R/W (if VPA not set for target)</td><td>0 for VPE 0, Undefined for all others</td></tr>
<tr><td>TCS</td><td>19</td><td>Tertiary Cache Shared. Indicates that the tertiary cache described in the Config2 register is shared with at least one other VPE.</td><td colspan="2">R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>SCS</td><td>18</td><td>Secondary Cache Shared. Indicates that the secondary cache described in the Config2 register is shared with at least one other VPE.</td><td colspan="2">R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>DCS</td><td>17</td><td>Data Cache Shared. Indicates that the primary data cache described in the Config1 register is shared with at least one other VPE.</td><td colspan="2">R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>ICS</td><td>16</td><td>Instruction Cache Shared. Indicates that the primary instruction cache described in the Config1 register is shared with at least one other VPE.</td><td colspan="2">R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>MVP</td><td>1</td><td>Master Virtual Processor. If set, the VPE can access the registers of other VPEs of the same processor, using MTTR/MFTR, and can modify the contents of the MVPControl and VPEConf0 registers, thus acquiring the capability to manipulate and configure other VPEs sharing the same processor.</td><td>R</td><td>R/W</td><td>1 for VPE 0, 0 for all others</td></tr>
<tr><td>VPA</td><td>0</td><td>Virtual Processor Activated. If set, the VPE will schedule threads and execute instructions so long as the EVP bit of the MVPControl register enables multi-VPE execution.</td><td>R</td><td>R/W</td><td>1 for VPE 0, 0 for all others</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>30:29, 20, 15:2</td><td>Reserved. Reads as zero, must be written as zero.</td><td colspan="2">R</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>

The *XTC* field is set by hardware on an exception setting *EXL* or *ERL* of the *Status* register, or on an MTC0 or DMT instruction clearing the *TE* bit of *VPEControl*. It may be set by software if and only if both *MVP* of the writing VPE is set and *VPA* of the written VPE is clear, which implies a cross-VPE MTTR operation. It is read by hardware when *VPA* is set, and if the initial state of the VPE is such that only one activated TC may issue, i.e. if *EXL* or *ERL* are set, or *TE* is clear, the TC designated by the *XTC* field will be the TC selected for exclusive execution on the VPE. This allows initialization of one VPE by another, such that the initialized VPE can begin execution in an exception or single-threaded state, and the full context save/restore of one VPE by another, even if the target VPE is in an exception or single-threaded state.

7.2.7 VPEConf1 Register(CP0 Register 1, Select 3)

The *VPEConf1* register is instantiated per VPE. It indicates the coprocessor and UDI resources available to the VPE. All fields in the *VPEConf1* register are read-only in normal operation, but is writable while the *MVPControl VPC* bit is set. See section 7.2.2.

If software sets $MVPControl_{VPC}$ and intends to unbind an FPU, CP2, or CorExtend context from a VPE, care must be taken to ensure that enable field ($Status_{CU1}$, $Status_{CU2}$, and $Status_{CEE}$, respectively) are properly cleared before changing VPEConf1.

$VPEConf1_{NCP1}$ can only be set if $MVPControl_{PCP1}$ is non-zero. Furthermore, in a dual-VPE configuration, when software sets $VPEConf1_{NCP1}$ on one VPE, hardware will automatically clear it on the other VPE, thus preventing the same context from being bound to both VPEs. Hardware does not do this for $VPEConf1_{NCP2}$ or $VPEConf1_{NCX}$, so software must take care to set these fields properly on the other VPE.

Figure 7.8 shows the format of the *VPEConf1* register; Table 7.10 describes the *VPEConf1* register fields.

Figure 7.8 VPEConf1 Register Format

Table 7.10 VPEConf1 Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read/Write		Reset State
Name	Bits		VPC=0	VPC=1	
NCX	27:20	Number of CorExtend UDI state instantiations available, for UDI blocks with persistent state. The reset value of this field is controlled via the *SI_VpeCX* input.	R	R/W	Preset
NCP2	17:10	Number of Coprocessor 2 contexts available. The reset value of this field is controlled via the *SI_VpeCP2* input.	R	R/W	Preset
NCP1	7:0	Number of Coprocessor 1 contexts available. • If no FPU is present, this will be 0. • It the multithreaded FPU is present, this will match the number of TCs bound to the VPE. It is not writable even when VPC is enabled. • If the single-threaded FPU is present, it is writable when VPC is enabled. In dual-VPE systems, when software sets this field for one VPE, hardware will clear NCP1 for the other VPE. The reset value of this field is controlled via the *SI_VpeCP1* input.	R	R/W	Preset
0	31:28, 19:18, 9:8	Reserved. Reads as zero, must be written as zero.	R		0

7.2.8 YQMask Register (CP0 Register 1, Select 4)

The *YQMask* register is instantiated per-VPE. The 1004K 1004k only supports 16 mask bits.

Figure 7.9 YQMask Register Format

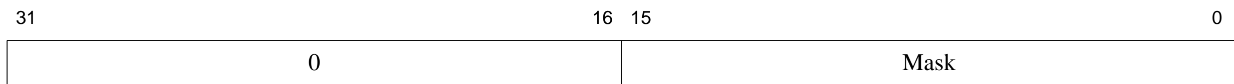


Table 7.11 YQMask Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
0	31:16	Must be written as zero; return zero on read.	0	0
Mask	15:0	Bit vector which determines which values may be used as external state qualifiers by YIELD instructions.	R/W	0

7.2.9 VPESchedule Register (CP0 Register 1, Select 5)

The *VPESchedule* is a per-VPE value whose interpretation is scheduler implementation-dependent. For example, it could encode a description of the overall requested issue bandwidth for the associated VPE, or it could encode a priority level.

A *VPESchedule* register value of zero is the default, and should result in a well-behaved default scheduling of the associated VPE.

7.2.10 VPEScheFBack Register (CP0 Register 1, Select 6)

The Scheduler Feedback is a per-VPE feedback value from scheduler hardware to software. The interpretation is scheduler implementation-dependent. For example, it might encode the total number of instructions retired in the instruction streams on the associated VPE since the last time the value was cleared by software.

7.2.11 VPEOpt Register (CP0 Register 1, Select 7)

The optional *VPEOpt* register is instantiated per-VPE. If way exclusion is enabled via the $MVPControl_{CPA}$ bit, the fields in this register will control which ways should be excluded from the replacement scheme for this VPE.

The Prefetch instruction with a hint of “Streamed” will always allocate in way0 regardless of *VPEOpt*. Similarly, PREF/Retained will never allocate in way0 even if *VPEOpt* restricts all other ways.

NOTE: As described in Section 2.3.2 “Data Cache Access”, if a way is scheduled for eviction and a store hits to it, that way will be reallocated. This re-allocation will always be to the original way the line was in even if this way is restricted by VPEOpt.

Figure 7.10 VPEOpt Register Format

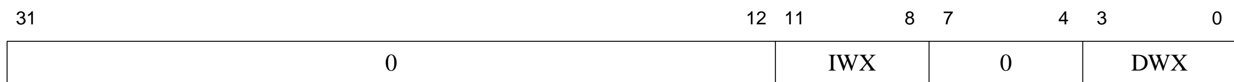


Table 7.12 VPEOpt Register Field Descriptions

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>31:12, 7:4</td><td>Must be written as zero; return zero on read.</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>IWX3
..
IWX0</td><td>11:8</td><td>Instruction cache way exclusion mask. If programmable cache allocation is enabled via the CPA bit in the MVPControl register, a VPE can exclude an arbitrary subset of the ways of the primary instruction cache from allocation by the cache controller on behalf of the VPE
<table>
<tr><th>Bit</th><th>Name</th><th>Meaning</th></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td>IWX3</td><td>If set, I-cache way 3 will not be allocated for the VPE</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td>IWX2</td><td>If set, I-cache way 2 will not be allocated for the VPE</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td>IWX1</td><td>If set, I-cache way 1 will not be allocated for the VPE</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td>IWX0</td><td>If set, I-cache way 0 will not be allocated for the VPE</td></tr>
</table>
NOTE: Software is required to make at least one way available for replacement at all times. See Chapter 9, “Line Locking” on page 276 for a detailed description of this restriction.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>DWX3
..
DWX0</td><td>3:0</td><td>Data cache way exclusion mask. If programmable cache allocation is enabled via the CPA bit in the MVPControl register, a VPE can exclude an arbitrary subset of the ways of the primary data cache from allocation by the cache controller on behalf of the VPE
<table>
<tr><th>Bit</th><th>Name</th><th>Meaning</th></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>DWX3</td><td>If set, D-cache way 3 will not be allocated for the VPE</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>DWX2</td><td>If set, D-cache way 2 will not be allocated for the VPE</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>DWX1</td><td>If set, D-cache way 1 will not be allocated for the VPE</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>DWX0</td><td>If set, D-cache way 0 will not be allocated for the VPE</td></tr>
</table>
NOTE: Software is required to make at least one way available for replacement at all times. See Section 9.4.4 “Line Locking” for a detailed description of this restriction.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>

7.2.12 EntryLo0 and EntryLo1 Registers (CP0 Registers 2 and 3, Select 0)

The pair of *EntryLo* registers act as the interface between the TLB and the TLBR, TLBWI, and TLBWR instructions. For a TLB-based MMU, *EntryLo0* holds the entries for even pages and *EntryLo1* holds the entries for odd pages. The contents of the *EntryLo0* and *EntryLo1* registers are undefined after an address error, TLB invalid, TLB modified, or TLB refill exception. These registers are only valid when the TLB-based memory management unit is present. They are reserved if the FM-style MMU is present.

Figure 7.11 EntryLo0, EntryLo1 Register Format

31	30 29 26	25 6	5 3	2	1	0
R	0	PFN	C	D	V	G

Table 7.13 EntryLo0, EntryLo1 Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
R	31:30	Reserved. Should be ignored on writes; returns zero on reads.	R	0
0	29:26	These 4 bits are normally part of the PFN, however, since the 1004k supports only 32 bits of physical address, the PFN is only 20 bits wide; therefore, bits 29:26 of this register must be written with zeros.	R	0
PFN	25:6	Page Frame Number: Contributes to the definition of the high-order bits of the physical address. The PFN field corresponds to bits 31..12 of the physical address.	R/W	Undefined
C	5:3	Coherency attribute of the page. See Table 7.14.	R/W	Undefined
D	2	"Dirty" or write-enable bit: Indicates that the page has been written, and/or is writable. If this bit is a one, then stores to the page are permitted. If this bit is a zero, then stores to the page cause a TLB Modified exception.	R/W	Undefined
V	1	Valid bit: Indicates that the TLB entry, and thus the virtual page mapping are valid. If this bit is a one, then accesses to the page are permitted. If this bit is a zero, then accesses to the page cause a *TLB Invalid* exception	R/W	Undefined
G	0	Global bit: On a TLB write, the logical AND of the G bits in both the *EntryLo0* and *EntryLo1* registers become the G bit in the TLB entry. If the TLB entry G bit is a one, then the ASID comparisons are ignored during TLB matches. On a read from a TLB entry, the G bits of both *EntryLo0* and *EntryLo1* reflect the state of the TLB G bit.	R/W	Undefined

Table 7.14 lists the encoding of the *C* field of the *EntryLo0* and *EntryLo1* registers and the *K0* field of the *Config* register.

Table 7.14 Cache Coherency Attributes

C[5:3] Value	Name	Cache Coherency Attribute
0	-	Reserved
1	-	Reserved
2	UC	Uncached
3	WB	Cacheable, noncoherent, write-back, write allocate
4	CWBE	Cacheable, write-back, write-allocate, coherent, read misses request Exclusive
5	CWB	Cacheable, write-back, write-allocate, coherent, read misses request Shared
6	-	Reserved
7	UCA	Uncached Accelerated

7.2.13 TCStatus Register (CP0 Register 2, Select 1)

The *TCStatus* register is instantiated per TC as part of the system coprocessor.

Figure 7.12 shows the format of the *TCStatus* register; Table 7.15 describes the *TCStatus* register fields.

Figure 7.12 TCStatus Register Format

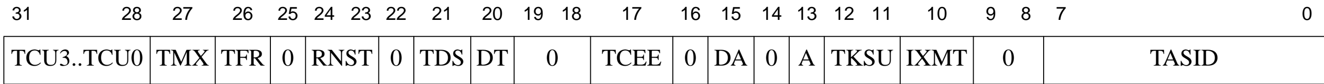


Table 7.15 TCStatus Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State	Fork State
Name	Bits				
TCU (TCU3.. TCU0)	31:28	Controls access of a TC to coprocessors 3,2,1, and 0 respectively. *Status* bits *CU3..CU0* are identical to *TCStatus* bits *TCU3..TCU0* of the thread referencing that *Status* with an MFC0 operation. The modification of either must be visible in both. • When no FPU is present, TCU1 is read-only and hardwired to 0 • When a single-threaded FPU is present, hardware enforced the rule that only 1 TC can have TCU1 set at a time. Attempts to set TCU1 on a second TC will be ignored. • When a multi-threaded FPU is present, there are no restrictions - TCU1 can be set or cleared by software for any TC.	R/W	Undefined	Unchanged by FORK
TMX	27	DSP ASE Enable. If DSP ASE hardware is present, this field is read/write. If DSP ASE hardware is not present, this field is read-only. Controls access of a TC to extended media processing state, such as MDMX and DSP ASE accumulators. *Status* bit *MX* is identical to *TCStatus* bit *TMX* of the thread referencing that *Status* with an MFC0 operation. The modification of either must be visible in both.	Config Option	0	Unchanged by FORK
TFR	26	This bit is used to control the floating point register mode for 64-bit floating point units. *Status* bit *FR* is identical to *TCStatus* bit *TFR* of the thread referencing that *Status* with an MFC0 operation. The modification of either must be visible in both.	R/W	0	Unchanged by FORK
RNST	24:23	Run State of TC. Indicates the Running vs. Blocked state of the TC and the reason for blockage. Value is stable only if TC is Halted and examined by another TC using an MFTR operation. **Value** / **Meaning**: 0 — Running 1 — Blocked on WAIT 2 — Blocked on YIELD 3 — Blocked on Gating Storage	R	0	0

Table 7.15 TCStatus Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State	Fork State
Name	Bits				
TDS	21	Thread stopped in branch Delay Slot. If a TC is Halted such that the next instruction to issue would be an instruction in a branch delay slot, the *TCRestart* register will contain the address of the branch instruction, and the *TDS* bit will be set. Otherwise *TDS* is cleared on a Halt, or on a software write to the *TCRestart* register.	R	0	0
DT	20	Dirty TC. This bit is set by hardware whenever an instruction is retired using the associated TC, and on successful dispatch of the TC via a FORK instruction. The setting of *DT* by the retirement of instructions is inhibited if the instructions are issued with the *EXL* or *ERL* bits of *Status* set, or with the processor in Debug mode.	R/W	0	1
TCEE	17	Defined as per the *Status* register *CEE* field. This is the per-TC Core Extend Enable value. The *Status CEE* is identical to the *TCStatus TCEE* of the thread referencing *Status* with an MFC0 operation. The modification of either must be visible in both.	R/W	0	Unchanged by FORK
DA	15	Dynamic Allocation enable. If set, TC may be allocated/deallocated/scheduled by the FORK and YIELD instructions.	R/W	0	FORK allocate only possible if DA = 1
A	13	Thread Activated. Set automatically when a FORK instruction allocates the TC, and cleared automatically when a YIELD $0 instruction deallocates it.	R/W	1 for TC 0, 0 for all others.	1
TKSU	12:11	Defined as per the *Status* register *KSU* field. This is the per-TC Kernel/Supervisor/User state. The *Status KSU* field is identical to the *TCStatus TKSU* field of the thread referencing *Status*. The modification of either must be visible in both.	R/W	Undefined	Copied from forking thread
IXMT	10	Interrupt Exempt. If set, the associated TC will not be used to handle Interrupt exceptions. Debug Interrupt exceptions are not affected.	R/W	0	Unchanged by FORK
TASID	7:0	Defined as per the *EntryHi* register *ASID* field. This is the per-TC *ASID* value. The *EntryHi ASID* is identical to the *TCStatus TASID* of the thread referencing *EntryHi* with an MFC0 operation. The modification of either must be visible in both. This field is only relevant for the TLB based MMU and will be readonly 0 with a Fixed Mapping MMU.	R/W	Undefined	Copied from forking thread
0	26:25, 22, 14, 9:8	Must be written as zero; return zero on read.	0	0	0

The *(T)CUx*, *(T)MX*, and *(T)KSU* fields of the *TCStatus* and *Status* registers always display the correct state. That is, if the field is written via *TCStatus*, the new value may be read via *Status*, and vice-versa. Similarly, the *(T)ASID* field of the *TCStatus* and *EntryHi* always display the same current value for the TC.

7.2.14 TCBind Register (CP0 Register 2, Select 2)

The *TCBind* register is instantiated per-TC as part of the system co-processor. It defines the VPE affiliation and identification number of this TC.

Figure 7.13 TCBind Register Format

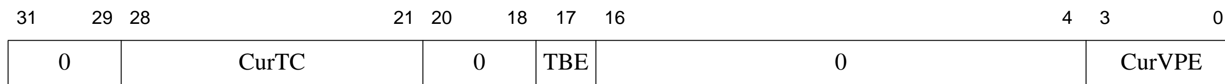


Table 7.16 TCBind Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
0	31:29, 20:18, 16:4	Must be written as zeros; returns zeros on reads.	0	0
CurTC	28:21	Returns the ID number of this TC.	R	Preset
TBE	17	Thread Bus Error: A load instruction from this TC caused an error.	R/W	0
CurVPE	3:0	The ID number of the VPE affiliation of this TC. Externally set on reset based on *SI_Vpe0MaxTC*. In a two VPE system, all TCs between 0 and *SI_Vpe0MaxTC* inclusive are bound to VPE0 on reset and remaining ones are bound to VPE1. Writable when $MVPControl_{VPC}$ is set	R	External

7.2.15 TCRestart Register (CP0 Register 2, Select 3)

When a TC is in a Halted state, a read of the *TCRestart* register returns the instruction address at which the TC will start execution when it is restarted. The *TCRestart* register can be written while the associated TC is in a Halted state to change the address at which the TC will restart.

Reading the *TCRestart* register of a non-Halted TC will return the **UNSTABLE** address of some instruction that the TC was executing in the past, but which may no longer be valid. Writing the *TCRestart* register of a non-Halted TC will result in an **UNDEFINED** TC state.

In the case of branch and jump instructions with architectural delay slots, the restart address will advance beyond the address of the branch or jump instruction only after the instruction in the delay slot has been retired. If halted between the execution of a branch and the associated delay slot instruction, the branch delay slot is indicated by the *TDS* bit of the *TCStatus* register (see Section 7.2.13 "TCStatus Register (CP0 Register 2, Select 1)").

Software writes to the *TCRestart* register cause the *TDS* bit of the *TCStatus* register to be cleared. If a software write of the *TCRestart* register of a TC intervenes between the execution of an LL instruction and an SC instruction on the target TC, the SC operation must fail.

Figure 7.14 shows the format of the *TCRestart* register. Table 7.17 describes the *TCRestart* register fields.

Figure 7.14 TCRestart Register Format

Table 7.17 TCRestart Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State	Compliance
Name	Bits				
Restart Address	31..0	Address at which execution of the TC is restarted.	R/W	Undefined	Required

7.2.15.1 Special Handling of TCRestart Register in Processors Implementing MIPS16e™ ASE

In processors that implement the MIPS16e™ ASE, the *TCRestart* register requires special handling.

When the processor writes the *TCRestart* register, it combines the address at which the TC will resume execution with the value of the *ISAMode* register:

$$\text{TCRestart} \leftarrow \text{resumePC}_{31..1} \parallel \text{ISAMode}_0$$

“resumePC” is the address at which the TC will resume execution, as described above.

When the processor reads the *TCRestart* register, it distributes the bits to the *PC* and *ISAMode* registers:

$$\text{PC} \leftarrow \text{TCRestart}_{31..1} \parallel 0$$
$$\text{ISAMode} \leftarrow \text{TCRestart}_0$$

Software reads of the *TCRestart* register simply return to a GPR the last value written with no interpretation. Software writes to the *TCRestart* register store a new value which is interpreted by the processor as described above.

7.2.16 TCHalt Register (CP0 Register 2, Select 4)

The *TCHalt* register is instantiated per TC as part of the system coprocessor.

Figure 7.15 shows the format of the *TCHalt* register; Table 7.18 describes the *TCHalt* register fields.

Figure 7.15 TCHalt Register Format

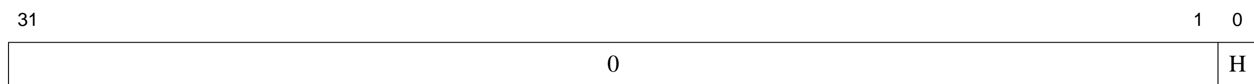


Table 7.18 TCHalt Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State	Compliance
Name	Bits				
H	0	Thread Halted. When set, the associated thread has been halted and cannot be allocated, activated, or scheduled.	R/W	0 for TC 0, 1 for all others	Required
0	31:1	Must be written as zero; return zero on read.	0	0	Reserved

Writing a one to the *Halted* bit of an activated TC causes the associated thread to cease fetching instructions and to set its Restart Address in the *TCRestart* register (see section 7.2.15) to the address of the next instruction to be issued. If the instruction stream associated with the TC is blocked waiting on a response from Gating Storage (see Chapter 12, “Inter-Thread Communication Unit of the 1004K™ CPU” on page 375), the load or store is aborted, and the TC resolves to a state where the *TCRestart* register and *TDS* field of the *TCStatus* register (see section 7.2.13)

reflect a restart at the blocked load or store. Similarly, if the TC is blocked on a WAIT or YIELD instruction, that instruction is cancelled and the state will reflect a restart at the WAIT or YIELD. If the TC was blocked at the time it is Halted, the *RNST* field of *TCStatus* indicates the blocked state, and the reason for blocking, even if that reason was an operation aborted by the Halt. Writing a zero to the *Halted* bit of an activated TC allows the associated thread of execution to be scheduled, fetching and executing as indicated by *TCRestart*. A one in the *Halted* bit ($TCHalt_H$) of a TC prevents that TC from being allocated and activated by a FORK instruction.

The effect of writing a one to the *Halted* bit of a TC may not be instantaneous. An instruction hazard barrier, e.g. JR.HB, is required to guarantee that the target thread has been fully halted.

7.2.17 TCContext Register (CP0 Register 2, Select 5)

TCContext is purely a software read/write register, usable by the operating system as a pointer to thread-specific storage, e.g. a thread context save area.

Figure 7.16 shows the format of the *TCContext* register.

Figure 7.16 TCContext Register Format

7.2.18 TCSchedule Register (CP0 Register 2, Select 6)

The *Scheduler Hint* is a per-TC value whose interpretation is scheduler implementation-dependent. For example, it could encode a description of the requested issue bandwidth for the associated thread, as in the *VPESchedule* register, or it could encode a priority level.

A *TCSchedule* register value of zero is the default, and should result in a well-behaved default scheduling of the associated thread.

The *VPESchedule* register and the *TCSchedule* register create a hierarchy of issue bandwidth allocation. The set of *VPESchedule* registers assigns bandwidth to VPEs as a proportion of the total available on a processor or 1004k, while the *TCSchedule* register can only assign bandwidth to threads as a function of that which is available to the VPE containing the thread.

7.2.19 TCScheFBack Register (CP0 Register 2, Select 7)

The *Scheduler Feedback* is a per-TC feedback value from scheduler hardware to software, whose interpretation is scheduler implementation-dependent. For example, it might encode the number of instructions retired in the instruction stream corresponding to the TC since the last time the value was cleared by software.

7.2.20 TCOpt Register (CP0 Register 3, Select 7)

The *TCOpt* register is instantiated per-TC. If way exclusion is enabled via the $MVPControl_{CPA}$ bit, the fields in this register will control which ways should be excluded from the replacement scheme for this TC. See also Section 7.2.11, "VPEOpt Register (CP0 Register 1, Select 7)."

The Prefetch instruction with a hint of “Streamed” will always allocate in way0 regardless of *TCOpt*. Similarly, PREF/Retained will never allocate in way0 even if *TCOpt* restricts all other ways.

NOTE: As described in Section 2.3.2 "Data Cache Access", if a way is scheduled for eviction and a store hits to it, that way will be reallocated. This re-allocation will always be to the original way the line was in even if this way is restricted by TCOpt.

Figure 7.17 TCOpt Register Format

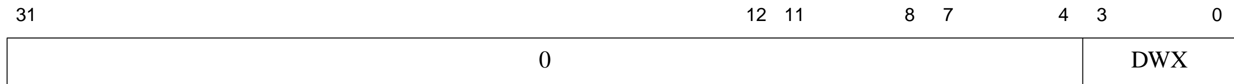


Table 7.19 TCOpt Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
0	31:4	Must be written as zero; return zero on read.	R	0
DWX3 .. DWX0	3:0	Data cache way exclusion mask. If programmable cache allocation is enabled via the CPA bit in the *MVPControl* register, this field excludes ways of the primary data cache from allocation by the cache controller for any given TC. **Bit** / **Name** / **Meaning**: 3 / DWX3 / If set, D-cache way 3 will not be allocated for the TC 2 / DWX2 / If set, D-cache way 2 will not be allocated for the TC 1 / DWX1 / If set, D-cache way 1 will not be allocated for the TC 0 / DWX0 / If set, D-cache way 0 will not be allocated for the TC NOTE: Software is required to make at least one way available for replacement at all times. See Section 9.4.4 "Line Locking" for a detailed description of this restriction.	R/W	0

7.2.21 Context Register (CP0 Register 4, Select 0)

The *Context* register is a read/write register containing a pointer to an entry in the page table entry (PTE) array. This array is an operating system data structure that stores virtual-to-physical translations. During a TLB miss, the operating system loads the TLB with the missing translation from the PTE array. The *Context* register duplicates some of the information provided in the *BadVAddr* register but is organized in such a way that the operating system can directly reference an 8-byte page table entry (PTE) in memory.

A TLB exception (TLB Refill, TLB Invalid, or TLB Modified) causes bits $VA_{31:13}$ of the virtual address to be written into the *BadVPN2* field of the *Context* register. The *PTEBase* field is written and used by the operating system.

The *BadVPN2* field of the *Context* register is not defined after an address error exception.

Figure 7.18 Context Register Format

Table 7.20 Context Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
PTEBase	31:23	This field is for use by the operating system and is normally written with a value that allows the operating system to use the Context Register as a pointer into the current PTE array in memory.	R/W	Undefined
BadVPN2	22:4	This field is written by hardware on a TLB miss. It contains bits $VA_{31:13}$ of the virtual address that missed.	R	Undefined
0	3:0	Must be written as zero; returns zero on reads.	0	0

7.2.22 UserLocal Register (CP0 Register 4, Select 2)

The *UserLocal* register is a read-write register that is not interpreted by the hardware and conditionally readable via the RDHWR instruction.

The presence of the UserLocal register is indicated by *Config3ULRI*=1

In the 1004K 1004k, the *UserLocal* register is instantiated per-TC. On a successful FORK instruction, the *UserLocal* value of the FORKing TC is automatically copied to the newly activated TC.

Figure 7.19 shows the format of the *UserLocal* register; Table 7.21 describes the *UserLocal* register fields.

Figure 7.19 UserLocal Register Format

Table 7.21 UserLocal Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
UserLocal	31:0	This field contains software information that is not interpreted by hardware.	R/W	Undefined

Programming Notes

Privileged software may write this register with arbitrary information and make it accessible to unprivileged software via register 29 (ULR) of the RDHWR instruction. To do so, bit 29 of the *HWREna* register must be set to a 1 to enable unprivileged access to the register. In some operating environments, the *UserLocal* register contains a pointer to a thread-specific storage block that is obtained via the *RDHWR* register.

7.2.23 PageMask Register (CP0 Register 5, Select 0)

The *PageMask* register is a read/write register used for reading from and writing to the TLB. It holds a comparison mask that sets the variable page size for each TLB entry, as shown in Table 7.23.

This register is only valid with the TLB. It is reserved if the FM is implemented.

Figure 7.20 PageMask Register Format

31 29	28 13	12 0
0	Mask	0

Table 7.22 PageMask Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
0	31:29, 12:0	Ignored on write; returns zero on read.	R	0
Mask	28:13	The *Mask* field is a bit mask in which a “1” bit indicates that the corresponding bit of the virtual address should not participate in the TLB match.	R/W	Undefined

Table 7.23 Values for the Mask Field of the PageMask Register

Page Size	Bit															
	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13
4 KBytes	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
16 KBytes	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
64 KBytes	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1
256 KBytes	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1
1 MByte	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
4 MByte	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
16 MByte	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
64 MByte	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
256 MByte	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

Software may determine which page sizes are supported by writing all ones to the *PageMask* register, then reading the value back. If a pair of bits reads back as ones, the processor implements that page size. The operation of the processor is **UNDEFINED** if software loads the *Mask* field with a value other than one of those listed in Table 7.23, even if the hardware returns a different value on read. Hardware may depend on this requirement in implementing hardware structures.

7.2.24 Wired Register (CP0 Register 6, Select 0)

The *Wired* register is a read/write register that specifies the boundary between the wired and random entries in the TLB as shown in Figure 7.21. The width of the *Wired* field is calculated in the same manner as that described for the *Index* register above. Wired entries are fixed, non-replaceable entries that are not overwritten by a TLBWR instruction. Wired entries can be overwritten by a TLBWI instruction.

The *Wired* register is reset to zero by a Reset exception. Writing the *Wired* register causes the *Random* register to reset to its upper bound.

The operation of the processor is undefined if a value greater than or equal to the number of TLB entries is written to the *Wired* register.

This register is only valid with a TLB. It is reserved when the FM is implemented.

Figure 7.21 Wired and Random Entries in the TLB

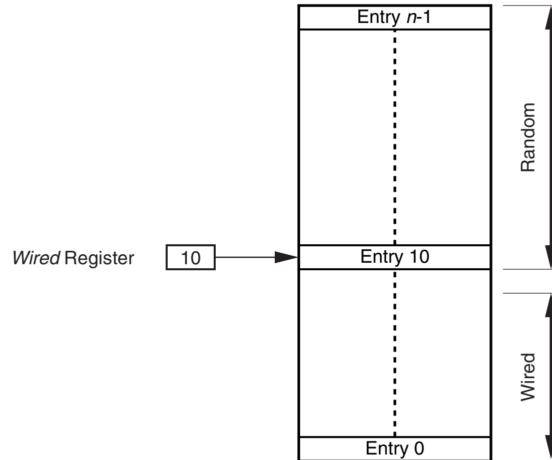


Figure 7.22 Wired Register Format

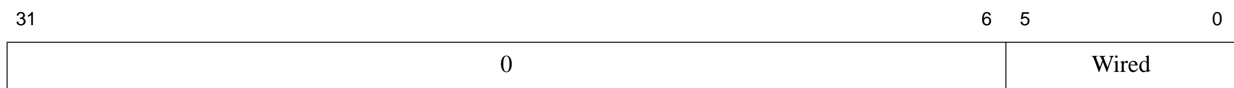


Table 7.24 Wired Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
0	31:6	Must be written as zero; returns zero on reads.	0	0
Wired	5:0	TLB wired boundary. For 16 and 32 entry TLBs, behavior is undefined if value is set to a value larger than last TLB entry.	R/W	0

7.2.25 SRSConf0 (CP0 Register 6, Select 1)

The *SRSConf0* register is instantiated per-VPE. It indicates the binding of TCs or other GPR resources to Shadow Register Sets 1 through 3.

When *SRSConf0* is written, $SRSCtl_{HSS}$ is automatically updated by hardware to indicate the highest numbered valid SRS. Software should ensure that the new *HSS* value is not less than the current value of the $SRSCtl_{CSS}$ or $SRSCtl_{PSS}$

Figure 7.23 SRSConf0 Register Format

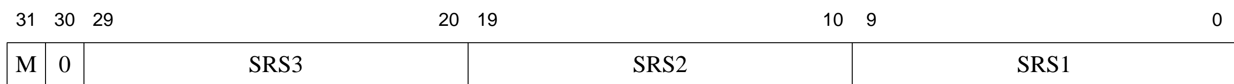


Table 7.25 SRSConf0 Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
M	31	Continuation indication. Since there is no *SRSConf1* in the 1004K 1004k, it will read zero.	R/W	0
0	30	Must be written with zero; returns zero on read	0	0
SRS3-1	29:20, 19:10, 9:0	Indicates the GPR set to be used for corresponding shadow set number (1-3). Shadow set 0 refers to the register set normally associated with the current TC. Note if a particular SRS is instantiated, all other lower order SRSs must also be instantiated. If set to 0x3ff indicates this SRS is not supported. If set to 0x3fe indicates this SRS is not assigned (invalid).	R/W	0x3fe or 0x3ff

7.2.26 SRSConf1-4 (CP0 Register 6, Select 2-5)

Not implemented on the 1004K 1004k.

7.2.27 HWREna Register (CP0 Register 7, Select 0)

The *HWREna* register contains a bit mask that determines which hardware registers are accessible via the RDHWR instruction when that instruction is executed in a mode in which coprocessor 0 is not enabled.

Figure 7.24 shows the format of the *HWREna* Register; Table 7.26 describes the *HWREna* register fields.

Figure 7.24 HWREna Register Format

Table 7.26 HWREna Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
0	31..30	Reserved	0	0
Mask	29..0	Each bit in this field enables access by the RDHWR instruction to a particular hardware register (which may not be an actual register). If bit ‘n’ in this field is a 1, access is enabled to hardware register ‘n’. If bit ‘n’ of this field is a 0, access is disabled. Table 7.27 lists the RDHWR registers, and register number ‘n’ corresponds to bit ‘n’ in this field.	R/W	0

Table 7.27 RDHWR Register Numbers

<table>
<tr><th>Register Number</th><th>Mnemonic</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>CPUNum</td><td>This register provides read access to the coprocessor 0 $EBase_{CPUNum}$ field.</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>SYNCI_Step</td><td>Address step size to be used with the SYNCI instruction. See that instruction’s description for the use of this value. In the typical implementation, this value should be zero if there are no caches in the system which must be synchronized (either because there are no caches, or because the instruction cache tracks writes to the data cache). In other cases, the return value should be the smallest line size of the caches that must be synchronized.
For the 1004K 1004k, the SYNCI_Step value is 32 since the line size is 32 bytes.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>CC</td><td>High-resolution cycle counter. This register provides read access to the coprocessor 0 Count Register.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>CCRes</td><td>Resolution of the CC register. This value denotes the number of cycles between update of the register. For example:
<table>
<tr><th>CCRes Value</th><th>Meaning</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>CC register increments every cycle</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>CC register increments every second cycle</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>CC register increments every third cycle</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">etc.</td></tr>
</table>
In the 1004K 1004k, the CCRes value is 2 to indicate that the CC register increments every second core cycle.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4-28</td><td></td><td>These registers numbers are reserved for future architecture use. Access results in a Reserved Instruction Exception.</td></tr>
<tr><td>29</td><td>ULR</td><td>User Local Register. This register provides read access to the coprocessor 0 UserLocal register. In some operating environments, the UserLocal register is a pointer to a thread-specific storage block.</td></tr>
<tr><td>30-31</td><td></td><td>These register numbers are reserved for future implementation-dependent use. Access results in a Reserved Instruction Exception.</td></tr>
</table>

Using the *HWREna* register, privileged software may select which of the hardware registers are accessible via the RDHWR instruction. In doing so, a register may be virtualized at the cost of handling a Reserved Instruction Exception, interpreting the instruction, and returning the virtualized value. For example, if it is not desirable to provide direct access to the *Count* register, access to that register may be individually disabled and the return value can be virtualized by the operating system.

Software may determine which registers are implemented by writing all ones to the *HWREna* register, then reading the value back. If a bit reads back as a one, the processor implements that hardware register.

7.2.28 BadVAddr Register (CP0 Register 8, Select 0)

The *BadVAddr* register is a read-only register that captures the most recent virtual address that caused one of the following exceptions:

- Address error (AdEL or AdES)

- TLB Refill
- TLB Invalid
- TLB Modified

The *BadVAddr* register does not capture address information for cache or bus errors, since they are not addressing errors.

Figure 7.25 BadVAddr Register Format

Table 7.28 BadVAddr Register Field Description

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
Bad-VAddr	31:0	Bad virtual address.	R	Undefined

7.2.29 Count Register (CP0 Register 9, Select 0)

The *Count* register acts as a timer, incrementing at a constant rate, whether or not an instruction is executed, retired, or any forward progress is made through the pipeline. If enabled, the counter increments every other clock. Setting the DC bit in the *Cause* register to 0 enables counting.

The *Count* register can be written for functional or diagnostic purposes, including at reset or to synchronize processors.

By writing the $Count_{DM}$ bit in the *Debug* register, it is possible to control whether the *Count* register continues incrementing while the processor is in debug mode.

Figure 7.26 Count Register Format

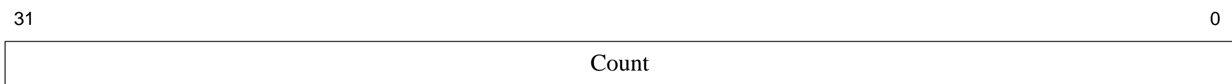


Table 7.29 Count Register Field Description

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
Count	31:0	Interval counter.	R/W	Undefined

7.2.30 EntryHi Register (CP0 Register 10, Select 0)

The *EntryHi* register contains the virtual address match information used for TLB read, write, and access operations.

A TLB exception (TLB Refill, TLB Invalid, or TLB Modified) causes bits $VA_{31..13}$ of the virtual address to be written into the *VPN2* field of the *EntryHi* register. A TLBR instruction writes the *EntryHi* register with the corresponding fields from the selected TLB entry. The *ASID* field is written by software with the current address space identifier value and is used during the TLB comparison process to determine TLB match.

Because the *ASID* field is overwritten by a TLBR instruction, software must save and restore the value of *ASID* around use of the TLBR. This is especially important in TLB Invalid and TLB Modified exceptions, and in other memory management software.

The *VPN2* field of the *EntryHi* register is not defined after an address error exception and this field may be modified by hardware during the address error exception sequence. Software writes of the *EntryHi* register (via MTC0) do not cause the implicit write of address-related fields in the *BadVAddr*, *Context* registers.

This register is only valid with the TLB. It is reserved if the FM is implemented.

Figure 7.27 EntryHi Register Format

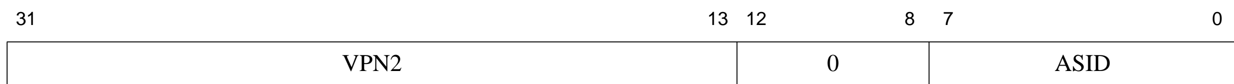


Table 7.30 EntryHi Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
VPN2	31..13	$VA_{31..13}$ of the virtual address (virtual page number / 2). This field is written by hardware on a TLB exception or on a TLB read, and is written by software before a TLB write.	R/W	Undefined
0	12..8	Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	0	0
ASID	7..0	Address space identifier. This field is written by hardware on a TLB read and by software to establish the current ASID value for TLB write and against which TLB references match each entry's TLB ASID field. This field is per-TC field visible in $TCStatus_{TASID}$.	R/W	Undefined

7.2.31 Compare Register (CP0 Register 11, Select 0)

The *Compare* register acts in conjunction with the *Count* register to implement a timer and timer interrupt function. The timer interrupt is an output of the CPUs. The *Compare* register maintains a stable value and does not change on its own.

When the value of the *Count* register equals the value of the *Compare* register, the *SI_TimerInt* pin is asserted. This pin will remain asserted until the *Compare* register is written. The *SI_TimerInt* pin can be fed back into the CPU on one of the interrupt pins to generate an interrupt. Traditionally, this has been done by multiplexing it with hardware interrupt 5 to set interrupt bit *IP*(7) in the *Cause* register.

For diagnostic purposes, the *Compare* register is a read/write register. In normal use, however, the *Compare* register is write-only. Writing a value to the *Compare* register, as a side effect, clears the timer interrupt.

Figure 7.28 Compare Register Format

Table 7.31 Compare Register Field Description

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
Compare	31:0	Interval count compare value.	R/W	Undefined

7.2.32 Status Register (CP0 Register 12, Select 0)

The *Status* register is a read/write register that contains the operating mode, interrupt enabling, and the diagnostic states of the processor. Fields of this register combine to create operating modes for the processor. Refer to Section 5.2 “Modes of Operation” for a discussion of operating modes, and Section 6.3 “Interrupts” for a discussion of interrupt modes.

Interrupt Enable: Interrupts are enabled when all of the following conditions are true:

- *IE* = 1
- *EXL* = 0
- *ERL* = 0
- *DM* = 0

If these conditions are met, then the settings of the *IM* and *IE* bits enable the interrupts.

7.2.32.1 Operating Modes

Debug Mode

The processor is operating in Debug Mode if the *DM* bit in the CP0 *Debug* register is a one. If the processor is running in Debug Mode, it has full access to all resources that are available to Kernel Mode operation.

Kernel Mode

The processor is operating in Kernel Mode when the *DM* bit in the *Debug* register is a zero and any of the following three conditions is true:

- The *KSU* field in the CP0 *Status* register contains 2#00
- The *EXL* bit in the *Status* register is one
- The *ERL* bit in the *Status* register is one

The processor enters Kernel Mode at power-up, or as the result of an interrupt, exception, or error. The processor leaves Kernel Mode and enters User Mode or Supervisor Mode when all of the previous three conditions are false, usually as the result of an ERET instruction.

Supervisor Mode

The processor is operating in Supervisor Mode when all of the following conditions are true:

- The *DM* bit in the *Debug* register is a zero
- The *KSU* field in the *Status* register contains 2#01
- The *EXL* and *ERL* bits in the *Status* register are both zero

Supervisor mode is not supported with the Fixed Mapping MMU.

User Mode

The processor is operating in User Mode when all of the following conditions are true:

- The *DM* bit in the *Debug* register is a zero
- The *KSU* field in the *Status* register contains 2#10
- The *EXL* and *ERL* bits in the *Status* register are both zero

7.2.32.2 Coprocessor Accessibility

The *Status* register CU bits control coprocessor accessibility. If any coprocessor is unusable, then an instruction that accesses it generates an exception.

Figure 7.29 Status Register Format

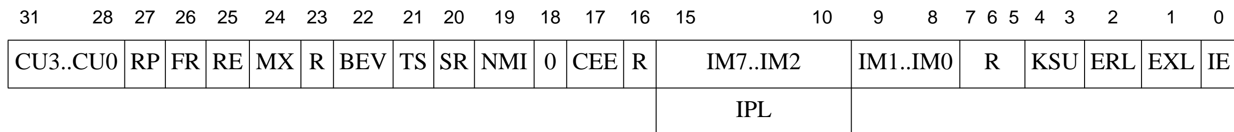


Table 7.32 Status Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	**Bits**			
CU3	31	Reserved. This is a per-VPE view of the $TCStatus_{TCU3}$ per-TC field.	R	0
CU2	30	Controls access to Coprocessor 2 **Encoding** / **Meaning** 0: Access not allowed 1: Access allowed This bit can only be written when a coprocessor 2 unit is present. This bit cannot be written and will read as 0 if coprocessor 2 unit is not present. This is a per-VPE view of the $TCStatus_{TCU2}$ per-TC field.	R/W	Undefined

Table 7.32 Status Register Field Descriptions

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>CU1</td><td>29</td><td>Controls access to Coprocessor 1
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Access not allowed</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Access allowed</td></tr></table>
This bit can only be written when the Floating Point Unit is present. If no FPU is present, this bit cannot be written and will read as 0.
This is a per-VPE view of the $TCStatus_{TCU1}$ per-TC field.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>CU0</td><td>28</td><td>Controls access to coprocessor 0
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Access not allowed</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Access allowed</td></tr></table>
Coprocessor 0 is always usable when the processor is running in kernel mode, independent of the state of the CU0 bit.
This is a per-VPE view of the $TCStatus_{TCU0}$ per-TC field.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>RP</td><td>27</td><td>Enables reduced power mode. The state of the RP bit is available on the external 1004k interface as the SI_RP signal.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>FR</td><td>26</td><td>This bit is used to control the floating point register mode for 64-bit floating point units:
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Floating point registers can contain any 32-bit datatype. 64-bit datatypes are stored in even-odd pairs of registers</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Floating point registers can contain any datatype</td></tr></table>
This bit must be ignored on write and read as zero under the following conditions
• No floating point unit is implemented
• 64-bit floating point unit is not implemented
This is a per-VPE view of the $TCStatus_{TFR}$ per-TC field.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>RE</td><td>25</td><td>Used to enable reverse-endian memory references while the processor is running in user mode
Not supported</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>MX</td><td>24</td><td>DSP ASE Enable. If DSP ASE hardware is present, this field is read/write. If DSP ASE hardware is not present, this field is read-only. Enables access to DSP ASE resources. An attempt to execute any DSP ASE instruction before when this bit is 0 will cause a DSP State Disabled exceptionThis is a per-VPE view of the $TCStatus_{TMX}$ per-TC field.</td><td>Config Option</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>R</td><td>23</td><td>Reserved. This field is ignored on write and read as 0.</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>

Table 7.32 Status Register Field Descriptions

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>BEV</td><td>22</td><td>Controls the location of exception vectors:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Normal</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Bootstrap</td></tr></table></td><td>R/W</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>TS</td><td>21</td><td>TLB shutdown. With the MIPS MT ASE, multiple writes are not an error condition and the conflicting TLB write instruction is silently dropped without a machine check exception. This bit will always be 0</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>SR</td><td>20</td><td>Indicates that the entry through the reset exception vector was due to a Soft Reset. Soft Reset is not supported on this processor and this bit is not writeable and will always read as 0</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>NMI</td><td>19</td><td>Indicates that the entry through the reset exception vector was due to an NMI:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Not NMI (Reset)</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>NMI</td></tr></table>Software can only write a 0 to this bit to clear it and cannot force a 0-1 transition.</td><td>R/W0</td><td>1 for NMI; 0 otherwise</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>18</td><td>Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>CEE</td><td>17</td><td>CorExtend Enable: This bit is sent to the CorExtend block to be used to enable the CorExtend block. The usage of this signal by a CorExtend block is implementation dependent.
This bit is reserved if CorExtend is not present.
This is a per-VPE view of the $TCStatus_{TCEE}$ per-TC field.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>R</td><td>16</td><td>Reserved. Ignored on write and read as zero.</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>IM7..IM2</td><td>15..10</td><td>Interrupt Mask: Controls the enabling of each of the hardware interrupts. Refer to Section 6.3 “Interrupts” for a complete discussion of enabled interrupts.
An interrupt is taken if interrupts are enabled and the corresponding bits are set in both the Interrupt Mask field of the *Status* register and the Interrupt Pending field of the *Cause* register and the *IE* bit is set in the *Status* register.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Interrupt request disabled</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Interrupt request enabled</td></tr></table>In implementations of Release 2 of the Architecture in which EIC interrupt mode is enabled ($Config3_{VEIC}$ = 1), these bits take on a different meaning and are interpreted as the *IPL* field, described below.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
</table>

Table 7.32 Status Register Field Descriptions

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>IPL</td><td>15..10</td><td>Interrupt Priority Level: In implementations of Release 2 of the Architecture in which EIC interrupt mode is enabled ($Config3_{VEIC}$ = 1), this field is the encoded (0..63) value of the current IPL. An interrupt will be signaled only if the requested IPL is higher than this value.
If EIC interrupt mode is not enabled ($Config3_{VEIC}$ = 0), these bits take on a different meaning and are interpreted as the *IM7..IM2* bits, described above.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>IM1..IM0</td><td>9..8</td><td>Interrupt Mask: Controls the enabling of each of the software interrupts. Refer to Section 6.3 “Interrupts” for a complete discussion of enabled interrupts.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Interrupt request disabled</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Interrupt request enabled</td></tr></table>In implementations of Release 2 of the Architecture in which EIC interrupt mode is enabled ($Config3_{VEIC}$ = 1), these bits are writable, but have no effect on the interrupt system.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>R</td><td>7..5</td><td>Reserved. This field is ignored on write and read as 0.</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>KSU</td><td>4..3</td><td>This field denotes the base operating mode of the processor. See Section 5.2 “Modes of Operation” for a full discussion of operating modes. The encoding of this field is:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>00</td><td>Base mode is Kernel Mode</td></tr><tr><td>01</td><td>Base mode is Supervisor Mode</td></tr><tr><td>10</td><td>Base mode is User Mode</td></tr><tr><td>11</td><td>Reserved</td></tr></table>Note that the processor can also be in kernel mode if *ERL* or *EXL* is set, regardless of the state of the *KSU* field.
This is a per-VPE view of the $TCStatus_{TKSU}$ per-TC field.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
</table>

Table 7.32 Status Register Field Descriptions

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>ERL</td><td>2</td><td>Error Level; Set by the processor when a Reset, Soft Reset, NMI or Cache Error exception are taken.
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Normal level</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Error level</td></tr></table>When ERL is set:
• The processor is running in kernel mode
• Interrupts are disabled
• The ERET instruction will use the return address held in ErrorEPC instead of EPC
• The lower 2^{29} bytes of kuseg are treated as an unmapped and uncached region. See Chapter 5, “Memory Management of the 1004K™ CPU” on page 103. This allows main memory to be accessed in the presence of cache errors. The operation of the processor is UNDEFINED if the ERL bit is set while the processor is executing instructions from kuseg.</td><td>R/W</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>EXL</td><td>1</td><td>Exception Level; Set by the processor when any exception other than Reset, Soft Reset, or NMI exceptions is taken.
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Normal level</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Exception level</td></tr></table>When EXL is set:
• The processor is running in Kernel Mode
• Interrupts are disabled.
• TLB Refill exceptions use the general exception vector instead of the TLB Refill vector.
• EPC, CauseBD and SRSCtl (implementations of Release 2 of the Architecture only) will not be updated if another exception is taken</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>IE</td><td>0</td><td>Interrupt Enable: Acts as the master enable for software and hardware interrupts:
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Interrupts are disabled</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Interrupts are enabled</td></tr></table>In Release 2 of the Architecture, this bit may be modified separately via the DI and EI instructions.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
</table>

7.2.33 IntCtl Register (CP0 Register 12, Select 1)

The *IntCtl* register controls the expanded interrupt capability added in Release 2 of the Architecture, including vectored interrupts and support for an external interrupt controller. This register does not exist in implementations of Release 1 of the Architecture.

Figure 7.30 IntCtl Register Format

31 29	28 26	25 23	22 10	9 5	4 0
IPTI	IPPCI	IPFDCI	0	VS	0

Table 7.33 IntCtl Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
IPTI	31:29	For Interrupt Compatibility and Vectored Interrupt modes, this field specifies the IP number to which the Timer Interrupt request is merged, and allows software to determine whether to consider $Cause_{TI}$ for a potential interrupt. Encoding / IP bit / Hardware Interrupt Source: 2 / 2 / HW0 3 / 3 / HW1 4 / 4 / HW2 5 / 5 / HW3 6 / 6 / HW4 7 / 7 / HW5 The value of this bit is set by the static input, *SI_IPTI[2:0]*. This allows external logic to communicate the specific *SI_Int* hardware interrupt pin to which the *SI_TimerInt* signal is attached. The value of this field is not meaningful if External Interrupt Controller Mode is enabled. The external interrupt controller is expected to provide this information for that interrupt mode.	R	Externally Set
IPPCI	28:26	For Interrupt Compatibility and Vectored Interrupt modes, this field specifies the IP number to which the Performance Counter Interrupt request is merged, and allows software to determine whether to consider $Cause_{PCI}$ for a potential interrupt. Encoding / IP bit / Hardware Interrupt Source: 2 / 2 / HW0 3 / 3 / HW1 4 / 4 / HW2 5 / 5 / HW3 6 / 6 / HW4 7 / 7 / HW5 The value of this bit is set by the static input, *SI_IPPCI[2:0]*. This allows external logic to communicate the specific *SI_Int* hardware interrupt pin to which the *SI_PCInt* signal is attached. The value of this field is not meaningful if External Interrupt Controller Mode is enabled. The external interrupt controller is expected to provide this information for that interrupt mode.	R	Externally Set

Table 7.33 IntCtl Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>IPFDCI</td><td>25:23</td><td>For Interrupt Compatibility and Vectored Interrupt modes, this field specifies the IP number to which the Fast Debug Channel Interrupt request is merged, and allows software to determine whether to consider $Cause_{FDCI}$ for a potential interrupt.
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>IP bit</th><th>Hardware Interrupt Source</th></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>2</td><td>HW0</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>3</td><td>HW1</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>4</td><td>HW2</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>5</td><td>HW3</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>6</td><td>HW4</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td>7</td><td>HW5</td></tr>
</table>
The value of this bit is set by the static input, *SI_IPFDCI[2:0]*. This allows external logic to communicate the specific *SI_Int* hardware interrupt pin to which the *SI_FDCInt* signal is attached.
The value of this field is not meaningful if External Interrupt Controller Mode is enabled. The external interrupt controller is expected to provide this information for that interrupt mode.</td><td>R</td><td>Externally Set</td></tr>
<tr><td>VS</td><td>9:5</td><td>Vector Spacing. If vectored interrupts are implemented (as denoted by $Config3_{VInt}$ or $Config3_{VEIC}$), this field specifies the spacing between vectored interrupts.
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Spacing Between Vectors (hex)</th><th>Spacing Between Vectors (decimal)</th></tr>
<tr><td>16#00</td><td>16#000</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>16#01</td><td>16#020</td><td>32</td></tr>
<tr><td>16#02</td><td>16#040</td><td>64</td></tr>
<tr><td>16#04</td><td>16#080</td><td>128</td></tr>
<tr><td>16#08</td><td>16#100</td><td>256</td></tr>
<tr><td>16#10</td><td>16#200</td><td>512</td></tr>
</table>
All other values are reserved. The operation of the processor is **UNDEFINED** if a reserved value is written to this field.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>22:10, 4:0</td><td>Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>

7.2.34 SRSCtl Register (CP0 Register 12, Select 2)

The *SRSCtl* register controls the operation of GPR shadow sets in the processor.

Figure 7.31 SRSCtl Register Format

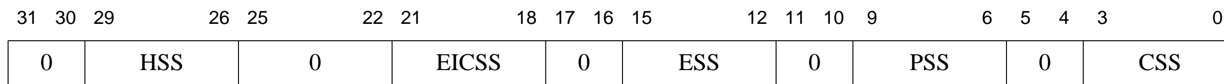


Table 7.34 SRSCtl Register Field Descriptions

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>HSS</td><td>29:26</td><td>Highest Shadow Set. This field contains the highest shadow set number that is implemented by this processor. A value of zero in this field indicates that only the normal GPRs are implemented.
Possible values of this field for the 1004K processor are:
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>One shadow set (normal GPR set) is present.</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Two shadow sets are present.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>Three shadow sets are present.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>Four shadow sets are present.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3-15</td><td>Reserved</td></tr>
</table>
The value in this field also represents the highest value that can be written to the ESS, EICSS, PSS, and CSS fields of this register, or to any of the fields of the SRSMap register. The operation of the processor is UNDEFINED if a value larger than the one in this field is written to any of these other fields. This field is automatically updated when SRSConf0 is written.</td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>EICSS</td><td>21:18</td><td>EIC interrupt mode shadow set. If $Config3_{VEIC}$ is 1 (EIC interrupt mode is enabled), this field is loaded from the external interrupt controller for each interrupt request and is used in place of the SRSMap register to select the current shadow set for the interrupt.
See Section 6.3.1.3 “External Interrupt Controller Mode” for a discussion of EIC interrupt mode. If $Config3_{VEIC}$ is 0, this field returns zero on read.</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>ESS</td><td>15:12</td><td>Exception Shadow Set. This field specifies the shadow set to use on entry to Kernel Mode caused by any exception other than a vectored interrupt.
The operation of the processor is UNDEFINED if software writes a value into this field that is greater than the value in the HSS field.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>PSS</td><td>9:6</td><td>Previous Shadow Set. If GPR shadow registers are implemented, and with the exclusions noted in the next paragraph, this field is copied from the CSS field when an exception or interrupt occurs. An ERET instruction copies this value back into the CSS field if $Status_{BEV} = 0$.
This field is not updated on any exception which sets $Status_{ERL}$ to 1 (i.e., Reset, Soft Reset, NMI, cache error), an entry into EJTAG Debug mode, or any exception or interrupt that occurs with $Status_{EXL} = 1$, or $Status_{BEV} = 1$. This field is not updated on an exception that occurs while $Status_{ERL} = 1$.
The operation of the processor is UNDEFINED if software writes a value into this field that is greater than the value in the HSS field.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>

Table 7.34 SRSCtl Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
CSS	3:0	Current Shadow Set. If GPR shadow registers are implemented, this field is the number of the current GPR set. With the exclusions noted in the next paragraph, this field is updated with a new value on any interrupt or exception, and restored from the PSS field on an ERET. Table 7.35 describes the various sources from which the CSS field is updated on an exception or interrupt. This field is not updated on any exception which sets *StatusERL* to 1 (i.e., Reset, Soft Reset, NMI, cache error), an entry into EJTAG Debug mode, or any exception or interrupt that occurs with $Status_{EXL}$ = 1, or $Status_{BEV}$ = 1. Neither is it updated on an ERET with $Status_{ERL}$ = 1 or $Status_{BEV}$ = 1. This field is not updated on an exception that occurs while $Status_{ERL}$ = 1. The value of CSS can be changed directly by software only by writing the PSS field and executing an ERET instruction.	R	0
0	31:30, 25:22, 17:16, 11:10, 5:4	Must be written as zeros; returns zero on read.	0	0

Table 7.35 Sources for new $SRSCtl_{CSS}$ on an Exception or Interrupt

Exception Type	Condition	$SRSCtl_{CSS}$ Source	Comment
Exception	All	$SRSCtl_{ESS}$	
Non-Vectored Interrupt	$Cause_{IV}$ = 0	$SRSCtl_{ESS}$	Treat as exception
Vectored Interrupt	$Cause_{IV}$ = 1 and $Config3_{VEIC}$ = 0 and *Config3VInt* = 1	$SRSMap_{VECTNUM}$	Source is internal map register. (for VECTNUM see Table 6.4)
Vectored EIC Interrupt	$Cause_{IV}$ = 1 and $Config3_{VEIC}$ = 1	$SRSCtl_{EICSS}$	Source is external interrupt controller.

7.2.35 SRSMap Register (CP0 Register 12, Select 3)

The *SRSMap* register contains 8 4-bit fields that provide the mapping from an vector number to the shadow set number to use when servicing such an interrupt. The values from this register are not used for a non-interrupt exception, or a non-vectored interrupt ($Cause_{IV}$ = 0 or $IntCtl_{VS}$ = 0). In such cases, the shadow set number comes from $SRSCtl_{ESS}$.

If $SRSCtl_{HSS}$ is zero, the results of a software read or write of this register are **UNPREDICTABLE**.

The operation of the processor is **UNDEFINED** if a value is written to any field in this register that is greater than the value of $SRSCtl_{HSS}$.

The *SRSMap* register contains the shadow register set numbers for vector numbers 7..0. The same shadow set number can be established for multiple interrupt vectors, creating a many-to-one mapping from a vector to a single shadow register set number.

Figure 7.32 SRSMap Register Format

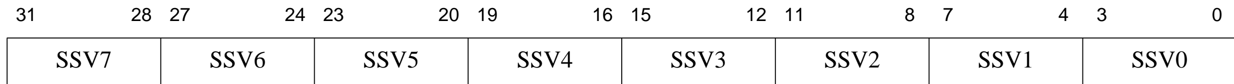


Table 7.36 SRSMap Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
SSV7	31..28	Shadow register set number for Vector Number 7	R/W	0
SSV6	27..24	Shadow register set number for Vector Number 6	R/W	0
SSV5	23..20	Shadow register set number for Vector Number 5	R/W	0
SSV4	19..16	Shadow register set number for Vector Number 4	R/W	0
SSV3	15..12	Shadow register set number for Vector Number 3	R/W	0
SSV2	11..8	Shadow register set number for Vector Number 2	R/W	0
SSV1	7..4	Shadow register set number for Vector Number 1	R/W	0
SSV0	3..0	Shadow register set number for Vector Number 0	R/W	0

7.2.36 Cause Register (CP0 Register 13, Select 0)

The *Cause* register primarily describes the cause of the most recent exception. In addition, fields also control software interrupt requests and the vector through which interrupts are dispatched. With the exception of the *IP1..0*, *DC*, *IV*, and *WP* fields, all fields in the *Cause* register are read-only. Release 2 of the Architecture added optional support for an External Interrupt Controller (EIC) interrupt mode, in which *IP7..2* are interpreted as the Requested Interrupt Priority Level (RIPL).

Figure 7.33 Cause Register Format

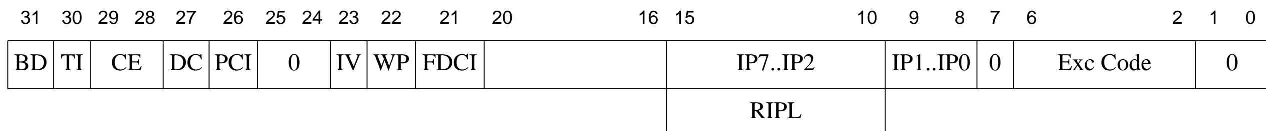


Table 7.37 Cause Register Field Descriptions

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>BD</td><td>31</td><td>Indicates whether the last exception taken occurred in a branch delay slot:
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Not in delay slot</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>In delay slot</td></tr></table>
The processor updates BD only if $Status_{EXL}$ was zero when the exception occurred.</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>TI</td><td>30</td><td>Timer Interrupt. This bit denotes whether a timer interrupt is pending (analogous to the IP bits for other interrupt types):
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No timer interrupt is pending</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Timer interrupt is pending</td></tr></table>
The state of the TI bit is available on the external CPU interface as the SI_TimerInt signal.</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>CE</td><td>29:28</td><td>Coprocessor unit number referenced when a Coprocessor Unusable exception is taken. This field is loaded by hardware on every exception, but is UNPREDICTABLE for all exceptions except for Coprocessor Unusable.</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>DC</td><td>27</td><td>Disable Count register. In some power-sensitive applications, the Count register is not used and is the source of meaningful power dissipation. This bit allows the Count register to be stopped in such situations.
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Enable counting of Count register</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Disable counting of Count register</td></tr></table></td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>PCI</td><td>26</td><td>Performance Counter Interrupt: This bit denotes whether a performance counter interrupt is pending (analogous to the IP bits for other interrupt types):
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No performance counter interrupt is pending</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Performance counter interrupt is pending</td></tr></table>
The state of the PCI bit is available on the external CPU interface as the SI_PCInt signal.</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>IV</td><td>23</td><td>Indicates whether an interrupt exception uses the general exception vector or a special interrupt vector:
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Use the general exception vector (16#180)</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Use the special interrupt vector (16#200)</td></tr></table>
If the $Cause_{IV}$ is 1 and $Status_{BEV}$ is 0, the special interrupt vector represents the base of the vectored interrupt table.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
</table>

Table 7.37 Cause Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>WP</td><td>22</td><td>Indicates that a watch exception was deferred because $Status_{EXL}$ or $Status_{ERL}$ were a one at the time the watch exception was detected. This bit both indicates that the watch exception was deferred, and causes the exception to be initiated once $Status_{EXL}$ and $Status_{ERL}$ are both zero. As such, software must clear this bit as part of the watch exception handler to prevent a watch exception loop.
Software should not write a 1 to this bit when its value is a 0, thereby causing a 0-to-1 transition. If such a transition is caused by software, it is UNPREDICTABLE whether hardware ignores the write, accepts the write with no side effects, or accepts the write and initiates a watch exception once $Status_{EXL}$ and $Status_{ERL}$ are both zero.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>FDCI</td><td>21</td><td>Fast Debug Channel Interrupt: This bit denotes whether an FDC interrupt is pending (analogous to the IP bits for other interrupt types):<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No FDC interrupt is pending</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>FDC interrupt is pending</td></tr></table>The state of the FDCI bit is available on the external CPU interface as the SI_FDCInt signal.</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>IP7..IP2</td><td>15:10</td><td>Indicates an interrupt is pending:<table><tr><th>Bit</th><th>Name</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>15</td><td>IP7</td><td>Hardware interrupt 5</td></tr><tr><td>14</td><td>IP6</td><td>Hardware interrupt 4</td></tr><tr><td>13</td><td>IP5</td><td>Hardware interrupt 3</td></tr><tr><td>12</td><td>IP4</td><td>Hardware interrupt 2</td></tr><tr><td>11</td><td>IP3</td><td>Hardware interrupt 1</td></tr><tr><td>10</td><td>IP2</td><td>Hardware interrupt 0</td></tr></table>If EIC interrupt mode is not enabled ($Config3_{VEIC}$ = 0), timer interrupts are combined in a system-dependent way with any hardware interrupt. If EIC interrupt mode is enabled ($Config3_{VEIC}$ = 1), these bits take on a different meaning and are interpreted as the RIPL field, described below.
See Section 6.3 “Interrupts” for a general description of interrupt processing.</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>RIPL</td><td>15:10</td><td>Requested Interrupt Priority Level: If EIC interrupt mode is enabled ($Config3_{VEIC}$ = 1), this field is the encoded (0..63) value of the requested interrupt. A value of zero indicates that no interrupt is requested.
If EIC interrupt mode is not enabled ($Config3_{VEIC}$ = 0), these bits take on a different meaning and are interpreted as the IP7..IP2 bits, described above.</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
</table>

Table 7.37 Cause Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>IP1..IP0</td><td>9:8</td><td>Controls the request for software interrupts:
<table>
<tr><th>Bit</th><th>Name</th><th>Meaning</th></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td>IP1</td><td>Request software interrupt 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td>IP0</td><td>Request software interrupt 0</td></tr>
</table>
These bits are exported to an external interrupt controller for prioritization in EIC interrupt mode with other interrupt sources. The state of these bits is available on the external CPU interface as the SI_SWInt[1:0] bus.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>ExcCode</td><td>6:2</td><td>Exception code - see Table 7.38</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>25:24, 20:16, 7, 1:0</td><td>Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>

Table 7.38 Cause Register ExcCode Field

Exception Code Value		Mnemonic	Description
Decimal	Hexadecimal		
0	16#00	Int	Interrupt
1	16#01	Mod	TLB modification exception
2	16#02	TLBL	TLB exception (load or instruction fetch)
3	16#03	TLBS	TLB exception (store)
4	16#04	AdEL	Address error exception (load or instruction fetch)
5	16#05	AdES	Address error exception (store)
6	16#06	IBE	Bus error exception (instruction fetch)
7	16#07	DBE	Bus error exception (data reference: load or store)
8	16#08	Sys	Syscall exception
9	16#09	Bp	Breakpoint exception. If an SDBBP instruction is executed while the processor is running in EJTAG Debug Mode, this value is written to the $Debug_{DExcCode}$ field to denote an SDBBP in Debug Mode.
10	16#0a	RI	Reserved instruction exception
11	16#0b	CpU	Coprocessor Unusable exception
12	16#0c	Ov	Arithmetic Overflow exception
13	16#0d	Tr	Trap exception
14	16#0e	-	Reserved
15	16#0f	FPE	Floating point exception
16	16#10	IS1	Coprocessor 2 implementation specific exception
17	16#11	CEU	CorExtend Unusable

Table 7.38 Cause Register ExcCode Field (Continued)

Exception Code Value			
Decimal	Hexadecimal	Mnemonic	Description
18	16#12	C2E	Precise Coprocessor 2 exception
19-22	16#13-16#16	-	Reserved
23	16#17	WATCH	Reference to *WatchHi*/*WatchLo* address
24	16#18	MCheck	Machine check - will not happen on 1004K CPU
25	16#19	Thread	Thread exception. $VPEControl_{EXCPT}$ specifies the type of the thread exception.
26	16#1a	DSPDis	DSP ASE State Disabled exception
27-29	16#1b-16#1d	-	Reserved
30	16#1e	CacheErr	Cache error. In normal mode, a cache error exception has a dedicated vector and the Cause register is not updated. If a cache error occurs while in Debug Mode, this code is written to the $Debug_{DExcCode}$ field to indicate that re-entry to Debug Mode was caused by a cache error.
31	16#1f	-	Reserved

7.2.37 Exception Program Counter (CP0 Register 14, Select 0)

The Exception Program Counter (*EPC*) is a read/write register that contains the address at which processing resumes after an exception has been serviced. All bits of the *EPC* register are significant and must be writable.

For synchronous (precise) exceptions, the *EPC* contains one of the following:

- The virtual address of the instruction that was the direct cause of the exception
- The virtual address of the immediately preceding branch or jump instruction, when the exception causing instruction is in a branch delay slot and the *Branch Delay* bit in the *Cause* register is set.

On new exceptions, the processor does not write to the *EPC* register when the *EXL* bit in the *Status* register is set, however, the register can still be written via the MTC0 instruction.

In processors that implement the MIPS16 ASE, a read of the *EPC* register (via MFC0) returns the following value in the destination GPR:

$$GPR[rt] \leftarrow ExceptionPC_{31..1} \mid\mid ISAMode_0$$

That is, the upper 31 bits of the exception PC are combined with the lower bit of the *ISAMode* field of *DEPC7* and written to the GPR.

Similarly, a write to the *EPC* register (via MTC0) takes the value from the GPR and distributes that value to the exception PC and the *ISAMode* field, as follows

$$ExceptionPC \leftarrow GPR[rt]_{31..1} \mid\mid 0$$
$$ISAMode \leftarrow 2\#0 \mid\mid GPR[rt]_0$$

That is, the upper 31 bits of the GPR are written to the upper 31 bits of the exception PC, and the lower bit of the exception PC is cleared. The upper bit of the *ISAMode* field is cleared and the lower bit is loaded from the lower bit of the GPR.

Figure 7.34 EPC Register Format

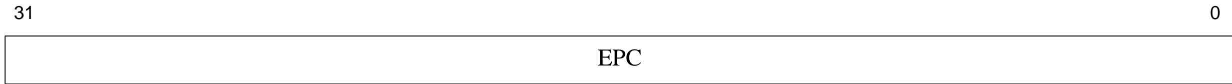


Table 7.39 EPC Register Field Description

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
EPC	31:0	Exception Program Counter.	R/W	Undefined

7.2.38 Processor Identification (CP0 Register 15, Select 0)

The Processor Identification (*PRId*) register is a 32 bit read-only register that contains information identifying the manufacturer, manufacturer options, processor identification, and revision level of the processor.

Figure 7.35 PRId Register Format

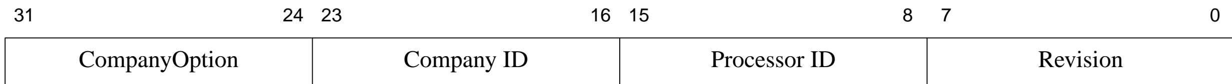


Table 7.40 PRId Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
Company Option	31:24	Implementation specific values	R	Preset
Company ID	23:16	Identifies the company that designed or manufactured the processor. In the 1004K this field contains a value of 1 to indicate MIPS Technologies, Inc.	R	1
Processor ID	15:8	Identifies the type of processor. This field allows software to distinguish between the various types of MIPS Technologies processors.	R	0x99

Table 7.40 PRId Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bit(s)</th></tr>
<tr><td>Revision</td><td>7:0</td><td>Specifies the revision number of the processor. This field allows software to distinguish between one revision and another of the same processor type.
This field is broken up into the following three subfields:
<table>
<tr><th>Bit(s)</th><th>Name</th><th>Meaning</th></tr>
<tr><td>7:5</td><td>Major Revision</td><td>This number is increased on major revisions of the processor 1004k</td></tr>
<tr><td>4:2</td><td>Minor Revision</td><td>This number is increased on each incremental revision of the processor and reset on each new major revision</td></tr>
<tr><td>1:0</td><td>Patch Level</td><td>If a patch is made to modify an older revision of the processor, this field will be incremented</td></tr>
</table></td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
</table>

7.2.39 EBase Register (CP0 Register 15, Select 1)

The *EBase* register is a read/write register containing the base address of the exception vectors used when *StatusBEV* equals 0, and a read-only CPU number value that may be used by software to distinguish different virtual or physical processors in a multi-processor system.

The *EBase* register provides the ability for software to identify the specific processor within a multi-processor system, and allows the exception vectors for each processor to be different, especially in systems composed of heterogeneous processors. Bits 31:12 of the *EBase* register are concatenated with zeros to form the base of the exception vectors when $Status_{BEV}$ is 0. The exception vector base address comes from the fixed defaults (see Section 6.5 "Exception Vector Locations") when $Status_{BEV}$ is 1, or for any EJTAG Debug exception. The reset state of bits 31:12 of the *EBase* register initialize the exception base register to `16#8000.0000`, providing backward compatibility with Release 1 implementations.

Bits 31:30 of the *EBase* Register are fixed with the value `2#10` to force the exception base address to be in the kseg0 or kseg1 unmapped virtual address segments. Bit 29 of exception base address will be forced to 1 on Cache Error exceptions so the exception handler will be executed from the uncached kseg1 segment.

If the value of the exception base register is to be changed, this must be done with *StatusBEV* equal 1. The operation of the processor is **UNDEFINED** if the Exception Base field is written with a different value when *StatusBEV* is 0.

Combining bits 31:12 with the *Exception Base* field allows the base address of the exception vectors to be placed at any 4KBbyte page boundary.

Figure 7.36 EBase Register Format

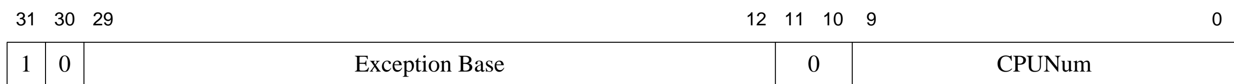


Table 7.41 EBase Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
1	31	This bit is ignored on write and returns one on read.	R	1
Exception Base	29:12	In conjunction with bits 31..30, this field specifies the base address of the exception vectors when $Status_{BEV}$ is zero.	R/W	0
CPUNum	9:0	This field contains an identifier that will be unique among the VPEs and CPUs in a multi-processor system. This can be used by software to distinguish where it is running. The value in this field is set by the *SI_CPUNum[9:0]* static input pins to the CPU. In a two VPE system, the lowest bit of *SI_CPUNum* is ignored and *CPUNum*[0] is reset to 0 for VPE0 and to 1 for VPE1.	R	Externally Set
0	30, 11:10	Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	0	0

7.2.40 CDMMBase Register (CP0 Register 15, Select 2)

The physical base address for the Common Device Memory Map facility is defined by this register. This register only exists if $Config3_{CDMM}$ is set to one.

For devices that implement the MIPS MT ASE, access to this register is controlled by the $VPEConf0_{MVP}$ register field. If the MVP bit is cleared, a read to this register returns all zeros and a write to this register is ignored.

Figure 7.37 has the format of the *CDMMBase* register, and Table 7.42 describes the register fields.

Figure 7.37 CDMMBase Register

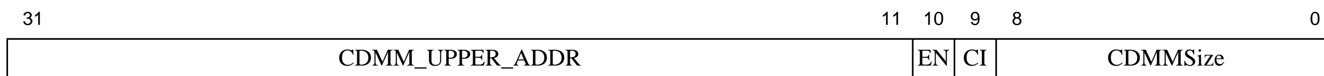


Table 7.42 CDMMBase Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
CDMM_UPPER_ADDR	31:29	These bits correspond to unimplemented physical address bits. Writes are ignored, returns 0 on read	R	0
CDMM_UPPER_ADDR	28:11	Bits 31:15 of the base physical address of the memory mapped registers.	R/W	Undefined
EN	10	Enables the CDMM region. If this bit is cleared, memory requests to this address region go to regular system memory. If this bit is set, memory requests to this region go to the CDMM logic **Encoding** / **Meaning** 0 — CDMM Region is disabled. 1 — CDMM Region is enabled.	R/W	0

Table 7.42 CDMMBase Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
CI	9	If set to 1, this indicates that the first 64-byte Device Register Block of the CDMM is reserved for additional registers which manage CDMM region behavior and are not IO device registers. This feature is not implemented and this field will read as 0	R	0
CDMMSize	8:0	This field represents the number of 64-byte Device Register Blocks are instantiated in the core. Encoding / Meaning: 0 — 1 DRB 1 — 2 DRBs 2 — 3 DRBs ... — ... 511 — 512 DRBs	R	0x2

7.2.41 CMGCR Base Register (CP0 Register 15, Select 3)

The 36-bit physical base address for the memory-mapped Coherency Manager Global Configuration Register space is defined by this register. This register only exists if $Config3_{CMGCR}$ is set to one.

Figure 7.38 has the format of the *CMGCRBase* register, and Table 7.43 describes the register fields.

Figure 7.38 CMGCRBase Register

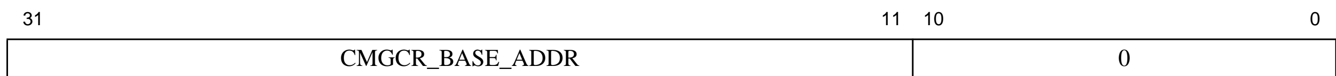


Table 7.43 CMGCRBase Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
CMGCR_ BASE_ADDR	31:11	Bits 35:15 of the base physical address of the memory-mapped Coherency Manager GCR registers. This register field reflects the value of the *GCR_BASE* field within the memory-mapped Coherency Manager GCR Base Register. The number of implemented physical address bits is implementation-specific. For the unimplemented address bits - writes are ignored, returns zero on read.	R	Preset

Table 7.43 CMGCRBase Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
0	10:0	Must be written as zero; returns zero on read	R	0

7.2.42 Config Register (CP0 Register 16, Select 0)

The *Config* register specifies various configuration and capabilities information. Most of the fields in the *Config* register are initialized by hardware during the Reset exception process, or are constant. The *K0*, *KU*, and *K23* fields must be initialized by software in the Reset exception handler, if the reset value is not desired.

Figure 7.39 Config Register Format — Select 0

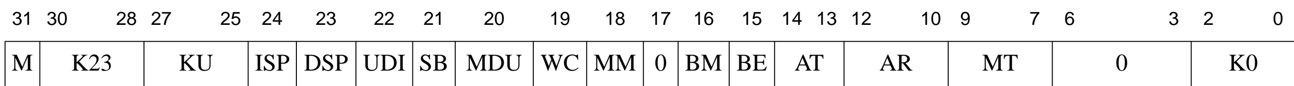


Table 7.44 Config Register Field Descriptions

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bit(s)</th></tr>
<tr><td>M</td><td>31</td><td>This bit is hardwired to ‘1’ to indicate the presence of the Config1 register.</td><td>R</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>K23</td><td>30:28</td><td>This field controls the cacheability of the kseg2 and kseg3 address segments in FM implementations.
Refer to Table 7.45 for the field encoding.</td><td>FM: R/W
TLB: R</td><td>FM: 010
TLB: 000</td></tr>
<tr><td>KU</td><td>27:25</td><td>This field controls the cacheability of the kuseg and useg address segments in FM implementations.
Refer to Table 7.45 for the field encoding.</td><td>FM: R/W
TLB: R</td><td>FM: 010
TLB: 000</td></tr>
<tr><td>ISP</td><td>24</td><td>I-side ScratchPad RAM present</td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>DSP</td><td>23</td><td>D-side ScratchPad RAM present</td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>UDI</td><td>22</td><td>This bit indicates that CorExtend User Defined Instructions have been implemented.
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No User Defined Instructions are implemented</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>User Defined Instructions are implemented</td></tr></table>This bit is automatically updated by hardware when VPEconf0$_{NCX}$ is written.</td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>SB</td><td>21</td><td>Indicates whether SimpleBE bus mode is enabled. Set via SI_SimpleBE input pin.
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No reserved byte enables on OCP interface</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Only simple byte enables allowed on OCP interface</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Externally Set</td></tr>
</table>

Table 7.44 Config Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bit(s)</th></tr>
<tr><td>MDU</td><td>20</td><td>MDU Implementation.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>High-performance MDU</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Low-cost MDU</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>WC</td><td>19</td><td>Reserved Diagnostic Bit.
Should normally be written as 0. Refer to Cache Configuration Application Note [16] for details on usage.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>MM</td><td>18</td><td>This bit indicates whether write-through merging is enabled in the 32-byte collapsing write buffer.
Write-through caching is not supported on 1004K CPU, so this bit is not relevant
This bit is implemented per-processor and not per-VPE as are other writable fields of this register.</td><td>R/W</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>BM</td><td>16</td><td>Burst order. Set via SI_SBlock input pin
The 1004K CPU only support Sequential burst order.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Sequential</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>SubBlock</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>BE</td><td>15</td><td>Indicates the endian mode in which the processor is running. Set via SI_Endian input pin.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Little endian</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Big endian</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Externally Set</td></tr>
<tr><td>AT</td><td>14:13</td><td>Architecture type implemented by the processor. This field is always 00 to indicate the MIPS32 architecture.</td><td>R</td><td>00</td></tr>
<tr><td>AR</td><td>12:10</td><td>Architecture revision level. This field is always 001 to indicate MIPS32 Release 2.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Release 1</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Release 2</td></tr><tr><td>2:7</td><td>Reserved</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>001</td></tr>
<tr><td>MT</td><td>9:7</td><td>MMU Type:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Standard TLB</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>Fixed Mapping</td></tr><tr><td>0, 2, 4:7</td><td>Reserved</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>K0</td><td>2:0</td><td>Kseg0 coherency algorithm. Refer to Table 7.45 for the field encoding.</td><td>R/W</td><td>010</td></tr>
</table>

Table 7.44 Config Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
0	17, 6:3	Must be written as zeros; returns zeros on reads.	0	0

Table 7.45 Cache Coherency Attributes

K0(2:0) Value	Name	Cache Coherency Attribute
0	-	Reserved
1	-	Reserved
2	UC	Uncached
3	WB	Cacheable, noncoherent, write-back, write allocate
4	CWBE	Cacheable, write-back, write-allocate, coherent, read misses request Exclusive
5	CWB	Cacheable, write-back, write-allocate, coherent, read misses request Shared
6	-	Reserved
7	UCA	Uncached Accelerated

7.2.43 Config1 Register (CP0 Register 16, Select 1)

The *Config1* register is an adjunct to the *Config* register and encodes additional information about capabilities present on the CPU. All fields in the *Config1* register are read-only.

The instruction and data cache configuration parameters include encodings for the number of sets per way, the line size, and the associativity. The total cache size for a cache is therefore:

```
Associativity * Line Size * Sets Per Way
```

If the line size is zero, no cache is implemented. This is only relevant for the Instruction Cache, as the Data Cache is required.

Figure 7.40 Config1 Register Format

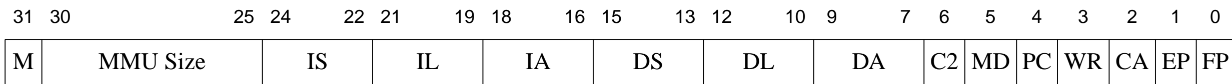


Table 7.46 Config1 Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
M	31	This bit is hardwired to ‘1’ to indicate the presence of the *Config2* register.	R	1
MMU Size	30:25	This field contains the number of entries in the TLB minus one. The field is read as 0 decimal if the TLB is not implemented	R	Preset

Table 7.46 Config1 Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bit(s)</th></tr>
<tr><td>IS</td><td>24:22</td><td>This field contains the number of instruction cache sets per way. The corresponding total instruction cache size is shown as well.
<table>
<tr><th>Value</th><th>Sets</th><th>Size Direct Mapped</th><th>Size 4-way</th></tr>
<tr><td>0x0</td><td>64</td><td>2KB</td><td>8KB</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x1</td><td>128</td><td>4KB</td><td>16KB</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x2</td><td>256</td><td>8KB</td><td>32KB</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x3</td><td>512</td><td>16KB</td><td>64KB</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x4:0x6</td><td colspan="3">Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x7</td><td>32</td><td>1KB</td><td>4KB</td></tr>
</table></td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>IL</td><td>21:19</td><td>This field contains the instruction cache line size The cache line size is fixed at 32 bytes when the I-Cache is present. A value of 0 indicates no ICache.
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>0x0</td><td>No ICache present</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x1:0x3</td><td>Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x4</td><td>32 bytes</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x5:0x7</td><td>Reserved</td></tr>
</table></td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>IA</td><td>18:16</td><td>This field contains the level of instruction cache associativity.
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>0x0</td><td>Direct-Mapped</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x3</td><td>4-way</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x1-0x2, 0x4:0x7</td><td>Reserved</td></tr>
</table></td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>DS</td><td>15:13</td><td>This field contains the number of data cache sets per way. The corresponding total data cache size is shown as well.
<table>
<tr><th>Value</th><th>Sets</th><th>Size Direct Mapped</th><th>Size 4-way</th></tr>
<tr><td>0x0</td><td>64</td><td>2KB</td><td>8KB</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x1</td><td>128</td><td>4KB</td><td>16KB</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x2</td><td>256</td><td>8KB</td><td>32KB</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x3</td><td>512</td><td>16KB</td><td>64KB</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x4:0x6</td><td colspan="3">Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x7</td><td>32</td><td>1KB</td><td>4KB</td></tr>
</table></td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
</table>

Table 7.46 Config1 Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bit(s)</th></tr>
<tr><td>DL</td><td>12:10</td><td>This field contains the data cache line size. The cache line size is fixed at 32 bytes when a D-cache is present. This field reads 0 when a D-cache is not present.
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>0x0</td><td>No DCache present</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x1:0x3</td><td>Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x4</td><td>32 bytes</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x5:0x7</td><td>Reserved</td></tr>
</table></td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>DA</td><td>9:7</td><td>This field contains the type of set associativity for the data cache The associativity is fixed at 4-way.
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>0x0</td><td>Direct-Mapped</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x3</td><td>4-way</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x1-0x2, 0x4:0x7</td><td>Reserved</td></tr>
</table></td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>C2</td><td>6</td><td>Coprocessor 2 present.
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>Coprocessor2 not present</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Coprocessor2 present</td></tr>
</table>
This bit is automatically updated by hardware when $VPEConf1_{NCP2}$ is written.</td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>MD</td><td>5</td><td>MDMX implemented.</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>PC</td><td>4</td><td>Performance Counter registers implemented.
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>No Performance counters are present</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>One or more performance counters are present</td></tr>
</table></td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>WR</td><td>3</td><td>Watch registers implemented.
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>No Watch registers are present</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>One or more Watch registers are present</td></tr>
</table></td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>CA</td><td>2</td><td>Code compression (MIPS16) implemented.
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>No MIPS16 present</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>MIPS16 is implemented</td></tr>
</table></td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>EP</td><td>1</td><td>EJTAG present: This bit is always set to indicate that the CPU implements EJTAG.</td><td>R</td><td>1</td></tr>
</table>

Table 7.46 Config1 Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
FP	0	FPU implemented. • When no FPU is present, this will be 0 • When the multithreaded FPU is present, this will be 1 • When the single-threaded FPU is present, hardware automatically updates this field when $VPEConf1_{NCP1}$ is written.	R	Preset

7.2.44 Config2 Register (CP0 Register 16, Select 2)

The *Config2* register is an adjunct to the *Config* register and is reserved to encode additional capabilities information. *Config2* is allocated for showing the configuration of level 2/3 caches. L2 values reflect the configuration information input from the L2 module. L3 fields are reset to 0 because L3 caches are not supported by the 1004K CPU. All fields in the *Config2* register are read-only.

Figure 7.41 Config2 Register Format

31	30 28	27 24	23 20	19 16	15 13	12	11 8	7 4	3 0
M	TU	TS	TL	TA	SU	L2B	SS	SL	SA

Table 7.47 Config2 Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
M	31	This bit is hardwired to ‘1’ to indicate the presence of the Config3 register.	R	1
TU	30:28	Implementation specific tertiary cache control. Tertiary cache not supported	R	0
TS	27:24	Tertiary cache sets per way. Tertiary cache not supported	R	0
TL	23:20	Tertiary cache line size. Tertiary cache not supported	R	0
TA	19:16	Tertiary cache associativity. Tertiary cache not supported	R	0
SU	15:13	Reserved	R	0
L2B	12	L2 Bypass/L2_Bypassed. In systems which include an L2 cache, writing a 1 to this bit, will set the *L2_Bypass* output. Setting the *L2_Bypass* output directs the L2 cache to go into bypass mode. L2 responds by asserting its *L2_Bypassed* output pin. The value of *L2_Bypassed* is returned when L2B is read. Since this involves a communication between CPU and L2, reading this bit will reflect the new value with some implementation- and clock ratio- dependent delay. In configurations without L2 support, writes to this bit are ignored and reads return 0.	R/W	0

Table 7.47 Config2 Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bit(s)</th></tr>
<tr><td>SS</td><td>11:8</td><td>Secondary cache sets per way
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>64</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>128</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>256</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>512</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>1024</td></tr><tr><td>5</td><td>2048</td></tr><tr><td>6</td><td>4096</td></tr><tr><td>7</td><td>8192</td></tr><tr><td>8-15</td><td>Reserved</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>SL</td><td>7:4</td><td>Secondary cache line size
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No cache present</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>4</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>8</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>16</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>32</td></tr><tr><td>5</td><td>64</td></tr><tr><td>6</td><td>128</td></tr><tr><td>7</td><td>256</td></tr><tr><td>8-15</td><td>Reserved</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>SA</td><td>3:0</td><td>Secondary cache associativity
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Direct mapped</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>3</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>4</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>5</td></tr><tr><td>5</td><td>6</td></tr><tr><td>6</td><td>7</td></tr><tr><td>7</td><td>8</td></tr><tr><td>8-15</td><td>Reserved</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
</table>

7.2.45 Config3 Register (CP0 Register 16, Select 3)

The *Config3* register encodes additional capabilities of the 1004K CPU. All fields in the *Config3* register are read-only.

Figure 7.42 Config3 Register Format

31	30	29	28 … 14	13	12 11	10	9 … 7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
M	0	CMGCR	0	ULRI	0	DSPP	0	VEIC	VInt	SP	CDMM	MT	SM	TL

Table 7.48 Config3 Register Field Descriptions

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>M</td><td>31</td><td>This bit is reserved to indicate if a Config4 register is present.</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>CMCGR</td><td>29</td><td>Reads 1 to indicate that the Coherence Manager has a Global Configuration Register Space and the CMGCRBase cop0 register is implemented.</td><td>R</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>ULRI</td><td>13</td><td>User Local Register Implemented: Indicates whether the Cop0 UserLocal register is present.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>UserLocal not implemented</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>UserLocal is implemented</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>DSPP</td><td>10</td><td>DSP Present. Indicates whether support for the DSP ASE is implemented.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>DSP ASE is not implemented</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>DSP ASE is implemented</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>VEIC</td><td>6</td><td>Support for an external interrupt controller is implemented.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Support for EIC interrupt mode is not implemented</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Support for EIC interrupt mode is implemented</td></tr></table>The value of this bit is set by the static input, SI_EICPresent. This allows external logic to communicate whether an external interrupt controller is attached to the processor or not.</td><td>R</td><td>Externally Set</td></tr>
<tr><td>VInt</td><td>5</td><td>Vectored interrupts implemented. This bit indicates whether vectored interrupts are implemented.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Vector interrupts are not implemented</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Vectored interrupts are implemented</td></tr></table>On the 1004K CPU, this bit is always a 1 since vectored interrupts are implemented.</td><td>R</td><td>1</td></tr>
</table>

Table 7.48 Config3 Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>SP</td><td>4</td><td>Small (1KByte) page support is implemented, and the PageGrain register exists. This bit will always be 0 since small pages are not supported.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Small page support is not implemented</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Small page support is implemented</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>CDMM</td><td>3</td><td>This bit indicates if the Common Device Memory Map feature is implemented and if the CDMMBase register is present. This bit will always read as 1<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>CDMM is not implemented</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>CDMM is implemented</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>MT</td><td>2</td><td>This bit indicates if the MIPS MT (multi-threading) ASE implemented.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>MIPS MT ASE is not implemented</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>MIPS MT ASE is implemented</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>SM</td><td>1</td><td>This bit indicates whether the SmartMIPS™ ASE is implemented. Since SmartMIPS is not present on the 1004K CPU, this bit will always be 0.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>SmartMIPS ASE is not implemented</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>SmartMIPS ASE is implemented</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>TL</td><td>0</td><td>Trace Logic implemented. This bit indicates whether MIPS trace support is implemented.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Trace logic is not implemented</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Trace logic is implemented</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>29:11, 9:7</td><td>Must be written as zeros; returns zeros on read</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>

7.2.46 Config7 Register (CP0 Register 16, Select 7)

The *Config7* register contains implementation specific configuration information. A number of these bits are writeable to disable certain performance enhancing features within the CPU.

Figure 7.43 Config7 Register Format

31	30–20	20	19	18	17	16	15–10	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
WII	0	NCWB	PCT	HCI	FPR	AR	0	IAR	IVA	ES	BTLM	CPOOO	NBLSU	ULB	BP	RPS	BHT	SL

Table 7.49 Config7 Register Field Descriptions

Fields: Name	Fields: Bits	Description	Read / Write	Reset State
WII	31	Wait IE/IXMT Ignore: Indicates that this processor will allow an interrupt to unblock a WAIT instruction even if *IE* or *IXMT* is preventing the interrupt from being taken. This avoids problems using the WAIT instruction for ‘bottom half’ interrupt servicing.	R	1
0	30:20, 15:11	These bits are unused and should be written as 0.	R	0
NCWB	20	Non-Coherent Writeback. When set, HitWB cacheops to a non-coherent address are written using a non-coherent CCA.	R/W	0
PCT	19	Performance Counters per TC: This bit indicates to software that the perfcounter registers are instantiated per TC rather than per processor. This bit is implemented per-processor.	R	1
HCI	18	Hardware Cache Initialization: Indicates that a cache does not require initialization by software. This bit is implemented per-processor. This bit will most likely only be set on simulation-only cache models and not on real hardware.	R	Based on HW present
FPR	17	Floating Point Ratio: Indicates clock ratio between integer CPU and floating point unit on 1004Kf CPUs. Reads as 0 on 1004Kc CPUs. Encoding 0: FP clock frequency is the same as the integer clock Encoding 1: FP clock frequency is one-half the integer clock This bit is implemented per-processor.	R	Based on HW present
AR	16	Alias removed: This bit indicates that the data cache is organized to avoid virtual aliasing problems. This bit is only set if the data cache config and MMU type would normally cause aliasing - i.e., only for the 32KB and larger data cache and TLB-based MMU. This bit is implemented per-processor.	R	Based on HW present
IAR	10	Instruction Alias Removed: Indicates that this processor has hardware support to remove instruction cache alias. This hardware is only present when the CPU is configured with a TLB and cache sizes 32KB and larger. The hardware is disabled via the *IVA* bit. This bit is implemented per-VPE	R	Based on HW present
IVA	9	Instruction Virtual Aliasing fix disable: Setting this bit will disable the HW alias removal on the I-Cache. If this bit is cleared, CACHE Hit Invalidate and SYNCI instructions will look up all possible aliased locations and invalidate the given cache line in all of them. This bit is Read-only if *IAR*=0 This bit is implemented per-VPE	R/W or R	0

Table 7.49 Config7 Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
ES	8	Externalize Sync: If this bit is set, and if the downstream device is capable of accepting SYNC's (indicated via the pin *SI_SyncTxEn*), the SYNC instruction will cause a SYNC specific transaction to go out on the external bus. If this bit is cleared or if *SI_SyncTxEn* is deasserted, no transaction will go out, but all SYNC handling internal to the CPU will still be performed. When this bit is read, the value returned depends on the state of the *SI_SyncTxEn pin*. If *SI_SyncTxEn* is 0, a value of 0 is returned. If *SI_SyncTxEn* is 1, the value returned is the last value that was written to this bit. Refer to SYNC instruction description for more information. This bit is implemented per-processor.	R	1
BTLM	7	Block TC on Load Miss: Setting this bit will cause a TC to be suspended once a load miss has been detected, rather than waiting for a dependent instruction to try to access the load data. This can increase pipeline utilization and provide fairer allocation of miss resources, but does limit the parallel servicing of cache misses from a single TC. This bit is implemented per-processor.	R/W	0
CPOOO	6	Out-of-order data return on the Coprocessor interfaces: Writing 1 to this bit disables the out-of-order data return for the FPU and COP2.	R/W	0
NBLSU	5	Non-Blocking LSU: Writing 1 to this field will lock the LSU and ALU pipelines together. This forces LSU pipeline stalls to also stall the ALU pipeline. This bit is implemented per-processor.	R/W	0
ULB	4	Uncached Loads Blocking: Writing 1 to this field will make all uncached loads blocking. This bit is implemented per-processor.	R/W	0
BP	3	Branch Prediction: Writing 1 to this field will disable all speculative branch prediction. The fetch unit will wait for a branch to be resolved before fetching the target or fall-through path. This bit is implemented per-VPE.	R/W	0
RPS	2	Return Prediction Stack: In configurations with dynamic branch prediction logic, writing 1 to this field will disable the use of the Return Prediction Stack. Returns (JR ra) will stall instruction fetch until the destination is calculated. In configurations without dynamic branch prediction logic, this field is read-only and preset to 1. This bit is implemented per-VPE.	Config Option	Preset
BHT	1	Branch History Table: In configurations with dynamic branch prediction logic, writing 1 to this field will disable the dynamic branch prediction. Branches will be statically predicted taken. In configurations without dynamic branch prediction logic, this field is read-only and preset to 1. This bit is implemented per-VPE.	Config Option	Preset
SL	0	Scheduled Loads: Writing 1 to this field will make load misses blocking. This bit is implemented per-processor.	R/W	0

7.2.47 LLAddr Register (CP0 Register 17, Select 0)

The *LLAddr* register is instantiated per-TC. It stores the physical address (to the enclosing 32-byte block) of the target location of any LL/SC sequence. This register is readable purely for diagnostic reasons.

This register is used by the hardware to properly handle LL/SC sequences by monitoring if the memory location has potentially been written between the LL and SC instructions. Stores on this CPU are checked against all the *LLAddr* of all TCs and the internal LL bit of a TC will be cleared if a match is found. Similarly, an external intervention indicating that another CPU is performing a coherent write to the line will be compared to the *LLAddr* registers and clear the LL bit.

Figure 7.44 LLAddr Register Format

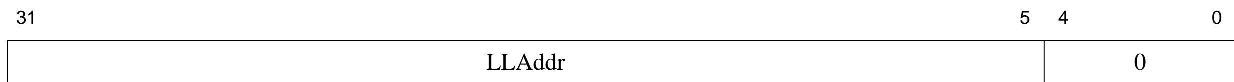


Table 7.50 LLAddr Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
LLAddr	31:5	Bits [31:5] of address used by last LL instruction	R	Undefined
0	4:0	Reads as 0	R	0

7.2.48 WatchLo Register (CP0 Register 18, Select 0-3)

The *WatchLo* and *WatchHi* registers together provide the interface to a watchpoint debug facility that initiates a watch exception if an instruction or data access matches the address specified in the registers. As such, they duplicate some functions of the EJTAG debug solution. Watch exceptions are taken only if the *EXL* and *ERL* bits are both zero in the *Status* register. If either bit is a one, the *WP* bit is set in the *Cause* register, and the watch exception is deferred until both the *EXL* and *ERL* bits are zero.

There are optionally 4 sets of Watch register pairs (*WatchLo*, *WatchHi*). Two of them (select 0, 1) are associated with instruction addresses only. Thus, only the *I* bit is writeable, and the *R* and *W* bits are tied to 0. The other two (select 2, 3) are associated with data addresses and can only be used for R or W watchpoints. Software can determine whether any watch registers are present by checking the *Config1WR* bit.

The *WatchLo* register specifies the base virtual address and the type of reference (instruction fetch, load, store) to match.

Figure 7.45 WatchLo Register Format

Table 7.51 WatchLo Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
VAddr	31:3	This field specifies the virtual address to match. Note that this is a doubleword address, since bits [2:0] are used to control the type of match.	R/W	Undefined
I	2	If this bit is set, watch exceptions are enabled for instruction fetches that match the address.	R/W	0
R	1	If this bit is set, watch exceptions are enabled for loads that match the address.	R/W	0
W	0	If this bit is set, watch exceptions are enabled for stores that match the address.	R/W	0

7.2.49 WatchHi Register (CP0 Register 19, Select 0-3)

The *WatchLo* and *WatchHi* registers together provide the interface to a watchpoint debug facility that initiates a watch exception if an instruction or data access matches the address specified in the registers. As such, they duplicate some functions of the EJTAG debug solution. Watch exceptions are taken only if the *EXL* and *ERL* bits are zero in the *Status* register. If either bit is a one, then the *WP* bit is set in the *Cause* register, and the watch exception is deferred until both the *EXL* and *ERL* bits are zero.

The *WatchHi* register contains information that qualifies the virtual address specified in the *WatchLo* register: an *ASID*, a *Global* (*G*) bit, and an optional address mask. If the *G* bit is 1, then any virtual address reference that matches the specified address will cause a watch exception. If the *G* bit is a 0, only those virtual address references for which the *ASID* value in the *WatchHi* register matches the *ASID* value in the *EntryHi* register cause a watch exception. The optional mask field provides address masking to qualify the address specified in *WatchLo*.

There are optionally 4 sets of Watch register pairs (*WatchLo*, *WatchHi*). Two of them (select 0, 1) are associated with instruction addresses only. Thus, only the *I* bit is meaningful, and the *R* and *W* bits are tied to 0. The other two (select 2, 3) are associated with data addresses and can only be used for R or W watchpoints. Software can determine whether any watch registers are present by checking the *Config1WR* bit.

Figure 7.46 WatchHi Register Format

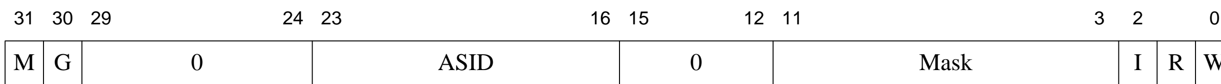


Table 7.52 WatchHi Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
M	31	Indicates the presence of additional Watch registers.	R	Preset
G	30	If this bit is one, any address that matches that specified in the *WatchLo* register causes a watch exception. If this bit is zero, the *ASID* field of the *WatchHi* register must match the *ASID* field of the *EntryHi* register to cause a watch exception.	R/W	Undefined
ASID	23:16	*ASID* value which is required to match that in the *EntryHi* register if the *G* bit is zero in the *WatchHi* register.	R/W	Undefined

Table 7.52 WatchHi Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
Mask	11:3	Bit mask that qualifies the address in the *WatchLo* register. Any bit in this field that is a set inhibits the corresponding address bit from participating in the address match.	R/W	Undefined
I	2	This bit is set by hardware when an instruction fetch condition matches the values in this watch register pair. When set, the bit remains set until cleared by software, which is accomplished by writing a 1 to the bit.	W1C	Undefined
R	1	This bit is set by hardware when a load condition matches the values in this watch register pair. When set, the bit remains set until cleared by software, which is accomplished by writing a 1 to the bit.	W1C	Undefined
W	0	This bit is set by hardware when a store condition matches the values in this watch register pair. When set, the bit remains set until cleared by software, which is accomplished by writing a 1 to the bit.	W1C	Undefined
0	29:24, 15:12	Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	0	0

7.2.50 Debug Register (CP0 Register 23, Select 0)

The *Debug* register is used to control the debug exception and provide information about the cause of the debug exception and when re-entering at the debug exception vector due to a normal exception in debug mode. The read only information bits are updated every time the debug exception is taken or when a normal exception is taken when already in debug mode.

Only the *DM* bit and the *EJTAGver* field are valid when read from non-debug mode; the values of all other bits and fields are **UNPREDICTABLE**. Operation of the processor is **UNDEFINED** if the *Debug* register is written from non-debug mode.

Some of the bits and fields are only updated on debug exceptions and/or exceptions in debug mode, as shown below:

- *DSS*, *DBp*, *DDBL*, *DDBS*, *DIB*, *DINT* are updated on both debug exceptions and on exceptions in debug modes
- *DExcCode* is updated on exceptions in debug mode, and is undefined after a debug exception
- *Halt* and *Doze* are updated on a debug exception, and are undefined after an exception in debug mode
- *DBD* is updated on both debug and on exceptions in debug modes

All bits and fields are undefined when read from normal mode, except those explicitly described to be defined, e.g. *EJTAGver* and *DM*.

Figure 7.47 Debug Register Format

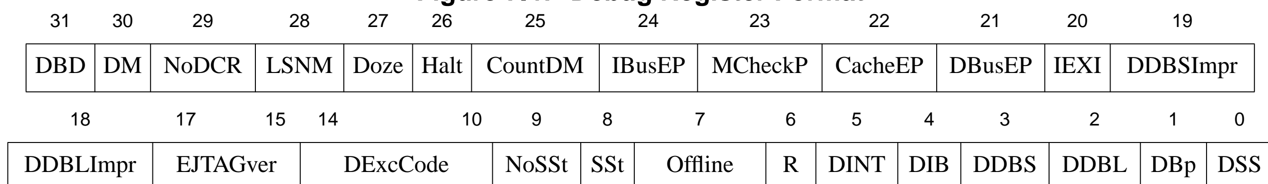


Table 7.53 Debug Register Field Descriptions

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bit(s)</th></tr>
<tr><td>DBD</td><td>31</td><td>Indicates whether the last debug exception or exception in debug mode, occurred in a branch delay slot:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Not in delay slot</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>In delay slot</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>DM</td><td>30</td><td>Indicates that the processor is operating in debug mode:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Processor is operating in non-debug mode</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Processor is operating in debug mode</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>NoDCR</td><td>29</td><td>Indicates whether the dseg memory segment is present:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>dseg is present</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>No dseg present</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>LSNM</td><td>28</td><td>Controls access of load/store between dseg and main memory:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Load/stores in dseg address range goes to dseg</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Load/stores in dseg address range goes to main memory</td></tr></table></td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Doze</td><td>27</td><td>Indicates that the processor was in any kind of low power mode when a debug exception occurred:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Processor not in low power mode when debug exception occurred</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Processor in low power mode when debug exception occurred</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>Halt</td><td>26</td><td>Indicates that the internal system bus clock was stopped when the debug exception occurred:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Internal system bus clock running</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Internal system bus clock stopped</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>CountDM</td><td>25</td><td>Indicates the Count register behavior in debug mode.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Count register stopped in debug mode</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Count register is running in debug mode</td></tr></table></td><td>R/W</td><td>1</td></tr>
</table>

Table 7.53 Debug Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
IBusEP	24	Imprecise instruction fetch Bus Error exception Pending: All instruction bus errors are precise on the 1004K CPU so this bit will always read as 0. Set when an instruction fetch bus error event occurs or if a 1 is written to the bit by software. Cleared when a Bus Error exception on instruction fetch is taken by the processor, and by reset. If *IBusEP* is set when *IEXI* is cleared, a Bus Error exception on instruction fetch is taken by the processor, and *IBusEP* is cleared.	R	0
MCheckP	23	Indicates that an imprecise Machine Check exception is pending. Machine check exceptions are not supported on 1004K CPU, so this bit is read only and tied to 0.	R	0
CacheEP	22	Indicates that an imprecise Cache Error is pending.	R/W1	0
DBusEP	21	Data access Bus Error exception Pending: Set when an data bus error event occurs or if a 1 is written to the bit by software. Cleared when a Data Bus Error exception is taken by the processor, and by reset. If *DBusEP* is set when *IEXI* is cleared, a Data Bus Error exception is taken by the processor, and *DBusEP* is cleared.	R/W1	0
IEXI	20	Imprecise Error eXception Inhibit: Controls exceptions taken due to imprecise error indications. Set when the processor takes a debug exception or exception in debug mode. Cleared by execution of the DERET instruction; otherwise modifiable by debug mode software. When *IEXI* is set, the imprecise error exception from a bus error on an instruction fetch or data access, cache error, or machine check is inhibited and deferred until the bit is cleared.	R/W	0
DDBSImpr	19	Indicates that an imprecise Debug Data Break Store exception was taken.	R	0
DDBLImpr	18	Indicates that an imprecise Debug Data Break Load exception was taken.	R	0
EJTAGver	17:15	EJTAG version. **Encoding** / **Description** 5 — Version 5.0	R	101
DExcCode	14:10	Indicates the cause of the latest exception in debug mode. See Table 7.38 for a list of values. Value is undefined after a debug exception.	R	Undefined
NoSST	9	Indicates whether the single-step feature controllable by the *SSt* bit is available in this implementation: **Encoding** / **Description** 0 — Single-step feature available 1 — No single-step feature available	R	0
SSt	8	Controls if debug single step exception is enabled: **Encoding** / **Description** 0 — No debug single-step exception enabled 1 — Debug single step exception enabled	R/W	0

Table 7.53 Debug Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bit(s)</th></tr>
<tr><td>Offline</td><td>7</td><td>Implemented per-TC. When this bit is 1, TC is allowed to execute only in Debug mode.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>R</td><td>6</td><td>Reserved. Must be written as zeros; returns zeros on reads.</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>DINT</td><td>5</td><td>Indicates that a debug interrupt exception occurred. Cleared on exception in debug mode.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No debug interrupt exception</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Debug interrupt exception</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>DIB</td><td>4</td><td>Indicates that a debug instruction break exception occurred. Cleared on exception in debug mode.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No debug interrupt exception</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Debug interrupt exception</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>DDBS</td><td>3</td><td>Indicates that a debug data break exception occurred on a store. Cleared on exception in debug mode.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No debug data exception on a store</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Debug instruction exception on a store</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>DDBL</td><td>2</td><td>Indicates that a debug data break exception occurred on a load. Cleared on exception in debug mode.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No debug data exception on a load</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Debug instruction exception on a load</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>DBp</td><td>1</td><td>Indicates that a debug software breakpoint exception occurred. Cleared on exception in debug mode.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No debug software breakpoint exception</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Debug software breakpoint exception</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>DSS</td><td>0</td><td>Indicates that a debug single-step exception occurred. Cleared on exception in debug mode.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No debug single-step exception</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Debug single-step exception</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
</table>

7.2.51 Trace Control Register (CP0 Register 23, Select 1)

The *TraceControl* register configuration is shown below.

Figure 7.48 TraceControl Register Format

Table 7.54 TraceControl Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
TS	31	The trace select bit is used to select between the hardware and the software trace control bits. A value of zero selects the external hardware trace block signals, and a value of one selects the trace control bits in the *TraceControl* register.	R/W	0
UT	30	This bit is used to indicate the type of user-triggered trace record. A value of zero implies a user type 1 and a value of one implies a user type 2. The actual triggering of a user trace record happens on a write to the *UserTraceData* register. This is a 32-bit register for 32-bit processors and a 64-bit register for 64-bit processors.	R/W	Undefined
0	29:28	Reserved for future use; Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	0	0
TB	27	Trace All Branch. When set to 1, this tells the processor to trace the PC value for all taken branches, not just the ones whose branch target address is statically unpredictable.	R/W	Undefined
IO	26	Inhibit Overflow. This signal is used to indicate to the CPU trace logic that slow but complete tracing is desired. Hence, the CPU tracing logic must not allow a FIFO overflow and discard trace data. This is achieved by stalling the pipeline when the FIFO is nearly full, so that no trace records are ever lost.	R/W	Undefined
D	25	When set to one, this enables tracing in Debug Mode. For trace to be enabled in Debug mode, the On bit must be one, and either the G bit must be one, or the current process ASID must match the ASID field in this register. When set to zero, trace is disabled in Debug Mode, irrespective of other bits.	R/W	Undefined
E	24	When set to one, this enables tracing in Exception Mode. For trace to be enabled in Exception mode, the On bit must be one, and either the *G* bit must be one, or the current process ASID must match the *ASID* field in this register. When set to zero, trace is disabled in Exception Mode, irrespective of other bits.	R/W	Undefined
K	23	When set to one, this enables tracing in Kernel Mode. For trace to be enabled in Kernel mode, the On bit must be one, and either the *G* bit must be one, or the current process ASID must match the *ASID* field in this register. When set to zero, trace is disabled in Kernel Mode, irrespective of other bits.	R/W	Undefined

Table 7.54 TraceControl Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
S	22	When set to one, this enables tracing in Supervisor Mode. For trace to be enabled in Supervisor mode, the On bit must be one, and either the *G* bit must be one, or the current process ASID must match the *ASID* field in this register. When set to zero, trace is disabled in Supervisor Mode, irrespective of other bits. If the processor does not implement Supervisor Mode, this bit is ignored on write and returns zero on read.	R/W	Undefined
U	21	When set to one, this enables tracing in User Mode. For trace to be enabled in User mode, the On bit must be one, and either the *G* bit must be one, or the current process ASID must match the *ASID* field in this register. When set to zero, trace is disabled in User Mode, irrespective of other bits.	R/W	Undefined
ASID_M	20:13	This is a mask value applied to the ASID comparison (done when the G bit is zero). A "1" in any bit in this field inhibits the corresponding *ASID* bit from participating in the match. As such, a value of zero in this field compares all bits of ASID. Note that the ability to mask the *ASID* value is not available in the hardware signal bit; it is only available via the software control register. If the processor does not implement the standard TLB-based MMU, this field is ignored on write and returns zero on read.	R/W	Undefined
ASID	12:5	The *ASID* field to match when the *G* bit is zero. When the *G* bit is one, this field is ignored. If the processor does not implement the standard TLB-based MMU, this field is ignored on write and returns zero on read.	R/W	Undefined
G	4	When set, this implies that tracing is to be enabled for all processes, provided that other enabling functions (like U, S, etc.,) are also true. If the processor does not implement the standard TLB-based MMU, this field is ignored on write and returns 1 on read. This causes all match equations to work correctly in the absence of an ASID.	R/W	Undefined
TFCR	3	When asserted, used to trace function call and return instructions with full PC values.	R/W	Undefined
TLSM	2	When asserted, used to trace data cache load and store misses with full PC values, and potentially the data address and value as well.	R/W	Undefined
TIM	1	When asserted, used to trace instruction miss with full PC values.	R/W	Undefined
On	0	This is the master trace enable switch in software control. When zero, tracing is always disabled. When set to one, tracing is enabled whenever the other enabling functions are also true.	R/W	0

7.2.52 Trace Control2 Register (CP0 Register 23, Select 2)

The *TraceControl2* register provides additional control and status information. Note that some fields in the *TraceControl2* register are read-only, but have a reset state of "Undefined". This is because these values are loaded from the Trace Control Block (TCB) (see Section 11.10 "Trace Control Block (TCB) Registers (Hardware Control)"). As such, these fields in the *TraceControl2* register will not have valid values until the TCB asserts these values.

This register is only implemented if the MIPS Trace capability is present.

Figure 7.49 TraceControl2 Register Format

31 30	29	28 21	20	19 12	11 7	6 5	4	3	2
0	CPUIdV	CPUId	TCV	TCNum	Mode	ValidModes	TBI	TBU	SyP

Table 7.55 TraceControl2 Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
0	31:30	Reserved for future use; Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	0	0
CPUIdV	29	When set, this bit specifies the VPE defined in *CPUId* must be traced. Otherwise, instructions from all VPEs are traced when other conditions for tracing are valid. This bit is ignored if *TCV* is asserted.	R/W	Undefined
CPUId	28:21	This field specifies the number of the VPE to trace when *CPUIdV* is set.	R/W	Undefined
TCV	20	When set, the *TCNum* field specifies the number of the TC that must be traced. Otherwise, instructions from all TCs are traced when other conditions for tracing are valid.	R/W	Undefined
TCNum	19:12	Specifies the TC to trace when *TCV* is set. The right-most bits only are used.	R/W	Undefined
Mode	11:7	These 5 bits provide the same trace mode functions as the *PDI_TraceMode[4:0]* signal, and is described here again. When tracing is turned on, this signal specifies what information is to be traced by the CPU. It uses 5 bits, where each bit turns on tracing of a specific tracing mode when that bit value is a 1. If the corresponding bit is 0, then the Trace Value shown in column two is not traced by the processor. The table shows what trace value is turned on: **Bit** — **Trace the Following** 7 — PC 8 — Load address 9 — Store address 10 — Load data 11 — Store data	R/W	Undefined
Valid-Modes	6:5	This field specifies the subset of tracing that is supported by the processor. **Encoding** — **Meaning** 00 — PC tracing only 01 — PC and load and store address tracing only 10 — PC, load and store address, and load and store data 11 — Reserved	R	Preset

Table 7.55 TraceControl2 Register Field Descriptions

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>TBI</td><td>4</td><td>This bit indicates how many trace buffers are implemented by the TCB, as follows:
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Only one trace buffer is implemented, and the TBU bit of this register indicates which trace buffer is implemented</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Both on-chip and off-chip trace buffers are implemented by the TCB and the TBU bit of this register indicates to which trace buffer the traces is currently written.</td></tr></table>This bit is loaded from the *PDI_TBImpl* signal when the *PDI_SyncOffEn* signal is asserted.</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>TBU</td><td>3</td><td>This bit denotes to which trace buffer the trace is currently being written and is used to select the appropriate interpretation of the $TraceControl2_{SyP}$ field.
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Trace data is being sent to an on-chip trace buffer</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Trace Data is being sent to an off-chip trace buffer</td></tr></table>This bit is loaded from the *PDI_OffChipTB* signal when the *PDI_SyncOffEn* signal is asserted.</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>SyP</td><td>2:0</td><td>The period (in cycles) to which the internal synchronization counter is reset when tracing is started, or when the synchronization counter has overflowed.
<table><tr><th>SyP</th><th>Sync Period</th></tr><tr><td>000</td><td>2^5</td></tr><tr><td>001</td><td>2^6</td></tr><tr><td>010</td><td>2^7</td></tr><tr><td>011</td><td>2^8</td></tr><tr><td>100</td><td>2^9</td></tr><tr><td>101</td><td>2^{10}</td></tr><tr><td>110</td><td>2^{11}</td></tr><tr><td>111</td><td>2^{12}</td></tr></table>This field is loaded from the *PDI_SyncPeriod* signal when the *PDI_SyncOffEn* signal is asserted.</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
</table>

7.2.53 User Trace Data1 Register (CP0 Register 23, Select 3) and User Trace Data2 Register (CP0 Register 24, Select 3)

A software write to any bits in the *UserTraceData1* or *UserTraceData2* registers will trigger a trace record to be written indicating a type 1 or type 2 user format respectively. The trace output data is **UNPREDICTABLE** if these registers are written in consecutive cycles.

This register is only implemented if the MIPS Trace capability is present.

Figure 7.50 User Trace Data1/User Trace Data2 Register Format

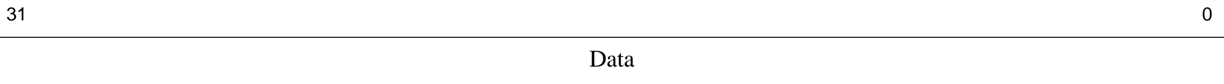


Table 7.56 UserTraceData1/UserTraceData2 Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
Data	31:0	Software readable/writable data. When written, this triggers a user format trace record out of the PDtrace interface that transmits the Data field to trace memory.	R/W	0

7.2.54 TraceIBPC Register (CP0 Register 23, Select 4)

The *TraceIBPC* register is used to control start and stop of tracing using an EJTAG Instruction Hardware breakpoint. The Instruction Hardware breakpoint would then be set as a trigger source and optionally also as a Debug exception breakpoint.

This register is only implemented if both Hardware breakpoints and the MIPS Trace capability are present.

Figure 7.51 TraceIBPC Register Format

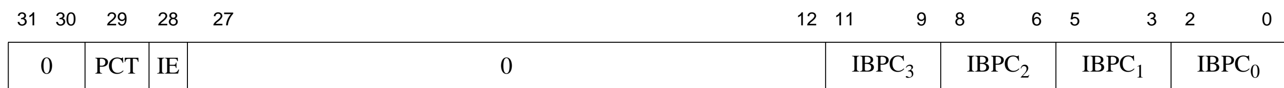


Table 7.57 TraceIBPC Register Field Descriptions

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>31:30, 27:12</td><td>Reserved for future implementation.</td><td>R</td><td>0/1</td></tr>
<tr><td>PCT</td><td>29</td><td>Used to specify whether a performance counter trigger signal is generated when an EJTAG instruction breakpoint match occurs:
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Disables performance counter trigger signal from instruction breakpoints</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Enables performance trigger signals from instruction breakpoints</td></tr></table></td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>IE</td><td>28</td><td>Used to specify whether the trigger signal from EJTAG instruction breakpoint should trigger tracing functions or not:
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Disables trigger signals from instruction breakpoints</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Enables trigger signals from instruction breakpoints</td></tr></table></td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>

Table 7.57 TraceIBPC Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
$IBPC_n$	3n+2:3n	The three bits are decoded to enable different tracing modes. Table 7.59 shows the possible interpretations. Each set of 3 bits represents the encoding for the instruction breakpoint *n* in the EJTAG implementation, if it exists. If the breakpoint does not exist, then the bits are reserved, read as zero, and writes are ignored.	R/W	0

7.2.55 TraceDBPC Register (CP0 Register 23, Select 5)

The *TraceDBPC* register is used to control start and stop of tracing using an EJTAG Data Hardware breakpoint. The Data Hardware breakpoint would then be set as a trigger source and optionally also as a Debug exception breakpoint.

This register is only implemented if both Hardware breakpoints and the MIPS Trace capability are present.

Figure 7.52 TraceDBPC Register Format

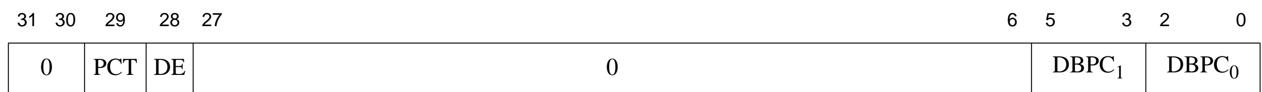


Table 7.58 TraceDBPC Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
0	31:30, 27:6	Reserved for future implementation	R	0/1
PCT	29	Used to specify whether a performance counter trigger signal is generated when an EJTAG data breakpoint match occurs: **Encoding** / **Meaning** 0 — Disables performance counter trigger signal from data breakpoints 1 — Enables performance trigger signals from data breakpoints	R/W	0
DE	28	Used to specify whether the trigger signal from EJTAG data breakpoint should trigger tracing functions or not: **Encoding** / **Meaning** 0 — Disables trigger signals from data breakpoints 1 — Enables trigger signals from data breakpoints	R/W	0
$DBPC_n$	3n+2:3n	The three bits are decoded to enable different tracing modes. Table 7.59 shows the possible interpretations. Each set of 3 bits represents the encoding for the data breakpoint *n* in the EJTAG implementation, if it exists. If the breakpoint does not exist then the bits are reserved, read as zero and writes are ignored.	R/W	0

Table 7.59 BreakPoint Control Modes: IBPC and DBPC

Value	Trigger Action	Description
000	Unconditional Trace Stop	Unconditionally stop tracing if tracing was turned on. If tracing is already off, then there is no effect.
001	Unconditional Trace Start	Unconditionally start tracing if tracing was turned off. If tracing is already turned on, then there is no effect.
010	Not used	Reserved for future implementations
011	Uncoditional Trace Start (CPU and CM)	Unconditionally start tracing in both CPU and coherence manager if tracing was turned off. If tracing is already turned on, then there is no effect.
100	Identical to trigger condition 000, and in addition, dump the full performance counter values into the trace stream	If tracing is currently on, dump the full values of all the implemented performance counters into the trace stream, and turn tracing off. If tracing is already off, then there is no effect.
101	Identical to trigger condition 001, and in addition, also dump the full performance counter values into the trace stream	Unconditionally start tracing if tracing was turned off. If tracing is already turned on, then there is no effect. In both cases, dump the full values of all the implemented performance counters into the trace stream.
110	Not used	Reserved for future implementations
111	Unconditional Trace Start (CPU and CM), and in addition, dump the full performance counter values into the trace stream	Unconditionally start tracing in both CPU and coherence manager if tracing was turned off. If tracing is already turned on, then there is no effect. Dump the full values of all the implemented performance counters into the trace stream.

7.2.56 Debug Exception Program Counter Register (CP0 Register 24, Select 0)

The Debug Exception Program Counter (*DEPC*) register is a read/write register that contains the address at which processing resumes after a debug exception or debug mode exception has been serviced.

For synchronous (precise) debug and debug mode exceptions, the *DEPC* contains either:

- The virtual address of the instruction that was the direct cause of the debug exception, or
- The virtual address of the immediately preceding branch or jump instruction, when the debug exception causing instruction is in a branch delay slot, and the Debug Branch Delay (*DBD*) bit in the *Debug* register is set.

For asynchronous debug exceptions (debug interrupt), the *DEPC* contains the virtual address of the instruction where execution should resume after the debug handler code is executed.

In processors that implement the MIPS16 ASE, a read of the *DEPC* register (via MFC0) returns the following value in the destination GPR:

$$\text{GPR[rt]} \leftarrow \text{DebugExceptionPC}_{31..1} \;||\; \text{ISAMode}_0$$

That is, the upper 31 bits of the debug exception PC are combined with the lower bit of the *ISAMode* field and written to the GPR.

Similarly, a write to the *DEPC* register (via MTC0) takes the value from the GPR and distributes that value to the debug exception PC and the ISA Mode field, as follows

```
DebugExceptionPC ← GPR[rt]31..1 || 0
ISAMode ← 2#0 || GPR[rt]0
```

That is, the upper 31 bits of the GPR are written to the upper 31 bits of the debug exception PC, and the lower bit of the debug exception PC is cleared. The upper bit of the *ISAMode* field is cleared and the lower bit is loaded from the lower bit of the GPR.

Figure 7.53 DEPC Register Format

Table 7.60 DEPC Register Formats

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset
Name	Bit(s)			
DEPC	31:0	The *DEPC* register is updated with the virtual address of the instruction that caused the debug exception. If the instruction is in the branch delay slot, then the virtual address of the immediately preceding branch or jump instruction is placed in this register. Execution of the DERET instruction causes a jump to the address in the *DEPC*.	R/W	Undefined

7.2.57 Trace Control3 Register (CP0 Register 24, Select 2)

The *TraceControl3* register provides additional control and status information. Note that some fields in the *TraceControl3* register are read-only, but have a reset state of “Undefined”. This is because these values are loaded from the Trace Control Block (TCB) (see Section 11.10 “Trace Control Block (TCB) Registers (Hardware Control)”). As such, these fields in the *TraceControl3* register will not have valid values until the TCB asserts these values.

This register is only implemented if the MIPS Trace capability is present.

Figure 7.54 TraceControl3 Register Format

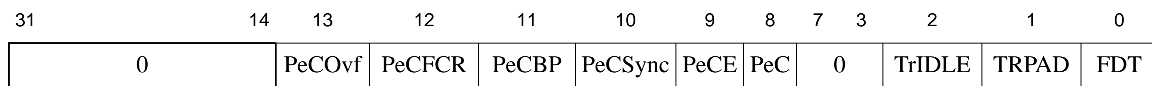


Table 7.61 TraceControl3 Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
0	31:14, 7:3	Reserved for future implementation.	R	0
PeCOvf	13	Trace performance counters when one of the performance counters overflows its count value. Enabled when set to 1.	R/W	0
PeCFCR	12	Trace performance counters on function call/return or on an exception handler entry. Enabled when set to 1.	R/W	0

Table 7.61 TraceControl3 Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
PeCBP	11	Trace performance counters on hardware breakpoint match trigger. Enabled when set to 1.	R/W	0
PeCSync	10	Trace performance counters on synchronization counter expiration. Enabled when set to 1.	R/W	0
PeCE	9	Performance counter tracing enable. If performance counter logic is present, this field is read/write. If not present, this field is read-only. When set to 0, the tracing out of performance counter values as specified is disabled. To enable, this bit must be set to 1. This bit is used under software control. When trace is controlled by an external probe, this enabling is done via $TraceControl3_{PeCE}$.	Config Option	0
PeC	8	Specifies whether or not Performance Control Tracing is implemented. This is an optional feature that may be omitted by implementation choice. Implemented when set to 1.	R	Preset
TrIDLE	2	Trace Unit Idle. This bit indicates if the trace hardware is currently idle (not processing any data). This can be useful when switching control of trace from hardware to software and vice versa. The bit is read-only and updated by the trace hardware.	R	0
TRPAD	1	Trace RAM Access Disable. Disables program software access to the on-chip trace RAM using load/store instructions. This bit is loaded from $TCBCONTROLB_{TRPAD}$.	R/W	0
FDT	0	Filtered Data Trace Mode Enable. When the bit is 0, this mode is disabled. When set to 1, this mode is enabled.	R/W	0

7.2.58 Performance Counter Register (CP0 Register 25, select 0-3)

If the processor is configured without performance counter logic, then reading these registers return -1 and writing them has no effect. If the processor is configured with performanc ecounters, then there are two performance counters and two associated control registers per TC, which are mapped to CP0 register 25. The select field of the MTC0/ MFC0 instructions are used to select the specific register accessed by the instruction, as shown in Table 7.62.

Table 7.62 Performance Counter Register Selects

Select[2:0]	Register
0	Register 0 Control
1	Register 0 Count
2	Register 1 Control
3	Register 1 Count

Each counter is a 32-bit read/write register and is incremented by one each time the countable event, specified in its associated control register, occurs. Each counter can independently count one type of event at a time.

Bit 31 of each of the counters are AND'ed with an interrupt enable bit, *IE*, of their respective control register to determine if a performance counter interrupt should be signalled. The performance counter interrupt is implemented per

VPE and signalled via the *SI_PCI* and *SI_PCI_1* outputs. The interrupt will be sent to the last VPE to write to the control register. This signal is combined with one of the *SI_Int* pins to signal an interrupt to the CPU. Counting is not affected by the interrupt indication. This interrupt is deasserted when the above conditions are no longer met - bit 31 of the counter is no longer zero because a value written by software or the count wrapped to zero, or if the IE bit of the control register was cleared.

NOTE: the performance counter registers are connected to a clock that is stopped when the processor is in sleep mode (if the top level clock gater is present). Most events would not be active during that time, but others would be, notably the cycle count. This behavior should be considered when analyzing measurements taken on a system. Further, note that FPGA implementations of the core would generally not have the clock gater present and thus would have different behavior than a typical ASIC implementation.

For a more detailed description of performance counter events, refer to Programming the 34K Core Family[11].

Figure 7.55 Performance Counter Control Register

31	30	29 ... 22	21 20	19 ... 16	15	14 ... 12	11 ... 5	4	3	2	1	0
M	0	TCID	MT_EN	VPEID	PCTD	0	Event	IE	U	S	K	EXL

Table 7.63 Performance Counter Control Register Field Descriptions

Fields: Name	Fields: Bits	Description	Read/ Write	Reset State
M	31	If this bit is one, another pair of *Performance Control* and *Counter* registers is implemented at a MTC0 or MFC0 select field value of ‘n+2’ and ‘n+3’.	R	Preset
TCID	29:22	Specifies which TC events should be counted for if per-TC counting is enabled.	R/W	Undefined
MT_EN	21:20	Specifies which events should be counted: **Encoding** / **Meaning** 00: Count events from all TCs & VPEs 01: Count events from all TCs of the VPE specified in *VPEID* 10: Count events from the TC specified in *TCID* 11: Reserved	R/W	Undefined
VPEID	19:16	Specifies which VPE events should be counter for if per-VPE counting is enabled.	R/W	Undefined
PCTD	15	Performance Counter Trace Disable. Setting this bit will prevent the tracing of data from this performance counter when performance count trace mode in PDtrace is enabled	R/W	0
Event	11:5	Counter event enabled for this counter. Possible events are listed in Table 7.64.	R/W	Undefined
IE	4	Counter Interrupt Enable. This bit masks bit 31 of the associated count register from the interrupt exception request output.	R/W	0
U	3	Count in User Mode. When this bit is set, the specified event is counted in User Mode.	R/W	Undefined
S	2	Count in Supervisor Mode. When this bit is set, the specified event is counted in Supervisor Mode.	R/W	Undefined

Table 7.63 Performance Counter Control Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read/ Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
K	1	Count in Kernel Mode. When this bit is set, count the event in Kernel Mode when *EXL* and *ERL* both are 0.	R/W	Undefined
EXL	0	Count when *EXL*. When this bit is set, count the event when *EXL* = 1 and *ERL* = 0.	R/W	Undefined
0	30, 14:12	Must be written as zeroes; returns zeroes when read.	0	0

Table 7.64 describes the events countable with the two performance counters. The mode column indicates whether the event counting is influenced by the mode bits (U,S,K,EXL) The type field indicates whether the event can be per-TC (T), per-VPE (V), or per-Processor (P). TC countable events can also be counted in VPE or Processor modes, and VPE countable events can also be counted in Processor mode. While the counters are implemented per-TC, they are not restricted to counting events for that TC - events from the other VPE or other TCs can be counted. The operation of a counter is **UNPREDICTABLE** for events which are specified as Reserved.

Table 7.64 Performance Counter Count Register Field Descriptions

Event Num	Counter 0	Mode	Type	Counter 1	Mode	Type
0	Cycles	No	P	Cycles	No	P
1	Instructions completed	Yes	T	Instructions completed	Yes	T
2	branch instructions	Yes	T	Branch mispredictions	Yes	T
3	JR r31 (return) instructions	Yes	T	JR r31 mispredictions	Yes	T
4	JR (not r31) instructions	Yes	T	JR r31 not predicted	Yes	T
5	ITLB accesses	Yes	T	ITLB misses	Yes	T
6	DTLB accesses	Yes	T	DTLB misses	Yes	T
7	JTLB instruction accesses	Yes	T	JTLB instruction misses	Yes	T
8	JTLB data accesses	Yes	T	JTLB data misses	Yes	T
9	Instruction Cache accesses	Yes	T	Instruction cache misses	Yes	T
10	Data cache accesses	Yes	T	Data cache writebacks	Yes	T
11	Data cache misses	Yes	T	Data cache misses	Yes	T
12	Reserved			Reserved		
13	Store Misses	Yes	T	Load Misses	Yes	T
14	integer instructions completed	Yes	T	FPU instructions completed	Yes	T
15	loads completed	Yes	T	stores completed	Yes	T
16	J/JAL completed	Yes	T	MIPS16 instructions completed	Yes	T
17	no-ops completed	Yes	T	integer multiply/divide completed	Yes	T

Table 7.64 Performance Counter Count Register Field Descriptions

Event Num	Counter 0	Mode	Type	Counter 1	Mode	Type
18	Stall cycles	No	P	replay traps (other than uTLB)	Yes	T
19	SC instructions completed	Yes	T	SC instructions failed	Yes	T
20	Prefetch instructions completed	Yes	T	Prefetch instructions completed with cache hit	Yes	T
21	L2 cache writebacks	No	P	L2 cache accesses	No	P
22	L2 cache misses	No	P	L2 cache single bit errors corrected	No	P
23	Exceptions taken	Yes	T	Single Threaded Mode	Yes	T
24	cache fixup	Yes	T	Refetches	Yes	T
25	IFU stall cycles	No	P	ALU stall cycles	No	P
26	DSP Instructions Completed	Yes	T	ALU-DSP Saturations Done	Yes	T
27	Reserved			MDU-DSP Saturations Done	Yes	T
28	Impl. specific PM event	Yes	T	Impl. specific Cp2 event	Yes	T
29	Impl. specific ISPRAM event	Yes	T	Impl. specific DSPRAM event	Yes	T
30	Impl. specific CorExtend event	Yes	T	Reserved		
31	Impl. specific XYM event	Yes	T	Impl. specific ITC event	Yes	T
32	ITC Loads	Yes	T	ITC Stores	Yes	T
33	Uncached Loads	Yes	T	Uncached Stores	Yes	T
34	FORK Instructions completed	Yes	T	YIELD instruction completed	Yes	T
35	CP2 Arithmetic Instns Completed	Yes	T	CP2 To/From Instns completed	Yes	T
36	Intervention stall main pipe	No	P	Intervention response stalled on miss	No	P
37	I$ Miss stall cycles	Yes	T	D$ miss stall cycles	Yes	T
38	Reserved					
39	D$ miss cycles	No	P	L2 miss cycles	No	P
40	Uncached stall cycles	Yes	T	ITC stall cycles	Yes	T
41	MDU stall cycles	Yes	T	FPU stall cycles	Yes	T
42	CP2 stall cycles	Yes	T	CorExtend stall cycles	Yes	T
43	ISPRAM stall cycles	Yes	T	DSPRAM stall cycles	Yes	T
44	CACHE Instn stall cycles	No	P	Long stall cycles	Yes	T
45	Load to Use stall cycles	Yes	T	ALU to AGEN stalls cycles	Yes	T
46	Other interlock stall cycles	Yes	T	Branch mispredict stall cycles	No	P
47	Relax bubbles	Yes	V	Reserved		
48	IFU FB full refetches	Yes	T	FB entry allocated	No	P

Table 7.64 Performance Counter Count Register Field Descriptions

Event Num	Counter 0	Mode	Type	Counter 1	Mode	Type
49	EJTAG Instruction Triggerpoints	Yes	T	EJTAG Data Triggerpoints	Yes	T
50	FSB < 1/4 full	No	P	FSB 1/4-1/2 full	No	P
51	FSB > 1/2 full	No	P	FSB full pipeline stall cycles	No	P
52	LDQ < 1/4 full	No	P	LDQ 1/4-1/2 full	No	P
53	LDQ > 1/2 full	No	P	LDQ full pipeline stall cycles	No	P
54	WBB < 1/4 full	No	P	WBB 1/4-1/2 full	No	P
55	WBB > 1/2 full	No	P	WBB full pipeline stall cycles	No	P
56	Intervention Hits	No	P	All Interventions	No	P
57	All Invalidates	No	P	Invalidate Hits	No	P
58	Evictions	No	P	Writebacks	No	P
59	ST_Inval	No	P	ST_Exclusive	No	P
60	ST_Store_to_S	Yes	T	ST_Downgrade	No	P
61	Request Latency to Self Intervention	Yes	P	Request Count for SI Latency	Yes	P
62	Request Latency to Read Response		P	Request Count for Resp. Latency		P
63	Reserved					
64	SI_PCEvent[0] - System specific event 0	No	P	SI_PCEvent[1] - System specific event 1	No	P
65	SI_PCEvent[2] - System specific event 2	No	P	SI_PCEvent[3] - System specific event 3	No	P
66	SI_PCEvent[4] - System specific event 4	No	P	SI_PCEvent[5] - System specific event 5	No	P
67	SI_PCEvent[6] - System specific event 6	No	P	SI_PCEvent[7] - System specific event 7	No	P
68-127	Reserved					

Table 7.65 Event Descriptions

Event Name	Counter	Event Number	Description
Cycles	0/1	0	Total number of cycles. The performance counters are clocked by the top-level gated clock. If the CPU is built with that clock gater present, none of the counters will increment while the clock is stopped - eg. due to a WAIT instruction.
Instruction Completion: The following events indicate completion of various types of instructions			
Instructions	0/1	1	Total number of instructions completed.
Branch instns	0	2	Counts all branch instructions that completed.

Table 7.65 Event Descriptions (Continued)

Event Name	Counter	Event Number	Description
JR R31 (return) instns	0	3	Counts all JR R31 instructions that completed.
JR (not R31)	0	4	Counts all JR $xx (not $31) and JALR instructions (indirect jumps).
Integer instns	0	14	Non-floating point, non-Coprocessor 2 instructions.
FPU instns	1	14	Floating point instructions.
Loads	0	15	Includes both integer and coprocessor loads.
Stores	1	15	Includes both integer and coprocessor stores.
J/JAL	0	16	Direct Jump (And Link) instruction.
MIPS16e	1	16	All MIPS16e instruction.
no-ops	0	17	This includes all instructions that normally write to a GPR, but where the destination register was set to r0.
Integer Multiply/Divide	1	17	Counts all Integer Multiply/Divide instructions (MULxx, DIVx, MADDx, MSUBx).
SC	0	19	Counts conditional stores regardless of whether they succeeded.
PREF	0	20	Note that this only counts PREFs that are actually attempted. PREFs to uncached addresses or ones with translation errors are not counted
DSP instns	0	26	Counts DSP ASE instructions.
ITC Loads	0	32	Counts loads issued to ITC. This includes loads that are rolled back due to the parent TC getting halted or taking an exception.
ITC Stores	1	32	Counts stores issued to ITC. This includes stores that are rolled back due to the parent TC getting halted or taking an exception.
Uncached Loads	0	33	Include both Uncached and Uncached Accelerated CCAs.
Uncached Stores	1	33	
FORK instns	0	34	MT ASE Fork instruction.
YIELD instns	1	34	MT ASE YIELD instruction.
Cp2 Arithmetic instns	0	35	Counts Coprocessor 2 register-to-register instructions.
Cp2 To/From instns	1	35	Includes move to/from, control to/from, and cop2 loads and stores.
Instruction execution events			
Branch mispredicts	1	2	Counts all branch instructions which completed, but were mispredicted.
JR r31 mispredicts	1	3	Counts all JR $31 instructions which completed, used the RPS for a prediction, but were mispredicted.
JR r31 not-predicted	1	4	RPS will be dynamically associated with only one TC,\; returns on other TCs will not be predicted.
ITLB accesses	0	5	Counts ITLB accesses that are due to fetches showing up in IF stage of the pipe and do not use fixed mapping or are not in unmapped space. If an address is fetched twice down the pipe (as in the case of a cache miss), that instruction will count 2 ITLB accesses. Also, since each fetch gets us 2 instructions, there is one access marked per double word.

Table 7.65 Event Descriptions (Continued)

Event Name	Counter	Event Number	Description
ITLB misses	1	5	Counts all misses in ITLB except ones that are on the back of another miss. We cannot process back to back misses and thus those are ignored for this purpose. Also ignored if there is some form of address error.
DTLB accesses	0	6	Counts DTLB access including those in unmapped address spaces.
DTLB misses	1	6	Counts DTLB misses. Back to back misses that result in only one DTLB entry getting refilled are counted as a single miss.
JTLB instruction accesses	0	7	Instruction JTLB accesses are counted exactly the same as ITLB misses.
JTLB instruction misses	1	7	Counts instruction JTLB accesses that result in no match or a match on an invalid translation.
JTLB data accesses	0	8	Data JTLB accesses.
JTLB data misses	1	8	Counts data JTLB accesses that result in no match or a match on an invalid translation.
I$ accesses	0	9	Counts every time the instruction cache is accessed. All replays, wasted fetches etc. are counted. For example, following a branch, even the prediction is taken, the fall through access is counted.
I$ misses	1	9	Counts all instruction cache misses that result in a bus request.
D$ accesses	0	10	Counts cached loads and stores.
D$ writebacks	1	10	Counts cache lines written back to memory due to replacement or cacheops.
D$ misses	0/1	11	Counts loads and stores that miss in the cache
Load Misses	0	13	Counts number of cacheable loads that miss in the cache.
Store Misses	1	13	Counts number of cacheable stores that miss in the cache. Includes stores that hit on a Shared line
SC instructons failed	1	19	SC instruction that did not update memory Note: While this event and the SC instruction count event can be configured to count in specific operating modes, the timing of the events is much different and the observed operating mode could change between them, causing some inaccuracy in the measured ratio.
PREF completed with cache hit	1	20	Counts PREF instructions that hit in the cache
L2 Cache Writebacks	0	21	Counts cache lines written back to memory due to replacement or cacheops
L2 Cache Accesses	1	21	Number of accesses to L2 Cache
L2 Cache Misses	0	22	Number of accesses that missed in the L2 cache
L2 Cache Single Bit Errors Corrected	1	22	Single bit errors in L2 Cache that were detected and corrected
Exceptions Taken	0	23	Any type of exception taken
ALU-DSP Saturations Done	1	26	Number of times a DSP instruction caused an ALU accumulator to saturate
MDU-DSP Saturations Done	1	27	Number of times a DSP instruction caused an MDU accumulator to saturate

Table 7.65 Event Descriptions (Continued)

Event Name	Counter	Event Number	Description
EJTAG instruction triggers	0	49	Number of times an EJTAG Instruction Trigger Point condition matched
EJTAG data triggers	1	49	Number of times an EJTAG Data Trigger Point condition matched
Pipeline Fun			
Replays	1	18	Counts all replayed instructions. When a long stall condition is detected, instructions are flushed back to the instruction buffer to allow other TCs to advance. The flushed instructions must then be replayed. Count includes instructions that have been replayed multiple times.
Single Threaded mode	1	23	Counts all cycles where one and only one TC is eligible for scheduling instructions. Other TCs can be ineligible based on architectural (cop0) state as well as dynamically detected conditions (long stall, blocked ITC access, WAIT executed, etc) When counted per-TC or per-VPE, it will count cycles when the specified TC(s) are the one and only TC eligible for scheduling.
Refetches	1	24	Counts the number of replayed instructions that are sent back to IFU to be refetched. If a replay condition is detected, but the instruction is no longer in the instruction buffer, the IFU will need to refetch it.
Cache fixup	0	24	Counts cycles where the LSU is in fixup and cannot accept a new instruction from the ALU. Fixups are replays within the LSU that occur when an instruction needs to re-access the cache or the DTLB. If this event is enabled per TC, the counter will increment if the replayed instruction belongs to the selected TC regardless of which TC caused the replay.
General Stalls			
IFU stall cycles	0	25	Counts the number of cycles where the fetch unit is not providing a valid instruction to the ALU.
ALU stall cycles	1	25	Counts the number of cycles where the ALU pipeline cannot advance.
Stall cycles	0	18	Counts the total number of cycles where no instructions are issued by IFU to ALU (the RF stage does not advance). This includes both of the previous two events. This is different than the sum of them though because cycles when both stalls are active will only be counted once.
Long stall cycles	1	44	This measures stall cycles due to 'long stall' conditions. These are stalls that would be flushed out of the execution pipeline if other TCs were runnable.
Specific stalls - these events will count the number of cycles lost due to this. This will include bubbles introduced by replays within the pipe. If multiple stall sources are active simultaneously, the counters for each of the active events will be incremented.			
Intervention processing stall cycles	0	36	Cycles where the main pipeline is stalled because of intervention processing for cache coherence
SYNC stall cycles	0	38	Cycles where the main pipeline is stalled waiting for a SYNC to complete
FSB index conflict stall cycles	1	38	Cycles where the main pipeline is stalled because of an index conflict in the Fill Store Buffer.
I$ miss stall cycles	0	37	Cycles when IFU stalls because an I$ miss caused a TC not to have any runnable instructions. Ignores the stalls due to ITLB misses as well as the 4 cycles following a redirect.

Table 7.65 Event Descriptions (Continued)

Event Name	Counter	Event Number	Description
D$ miss stall cycles	1	37	Counts all cycles where integer pipeline waits on Load return data due to a D-cache miss. The LSU can signal a “long stall” on D-cache misses, in which case the waiting TC might be rescheduled so other TCs can execute instructions till the data returns.
D$ miss cycles	0	39	D$ miss is outstanding, but not necessarily stalling the pipeline. The difference between this and D$ miss stall cycles can show the gain from non-blocking cache misses.
L2 miss cycles	1	39	L2 miss is outstanding, but not necessarily stalling the pipeline.
Uncached stall cycles	0	40	Cycles where the processor is stalled on an uncached fetch, load, or store.
ITC Load/Store stall cycles	1	40	Counts all cycles where a TC is waiting on a ITC load or store to complete and there are no other TCs that can execute.
MDU stall cycles	0	41	Counts all cycles where integer pipeline waits on MDU return data. MDU block can signal a “long stall”, in which case the waiting TC might be rescheduled so other TCs can execute instructions till the data returns.
FPU stall cycles	1	41	Counts all cycles where integer pipeline waits on FPU return data. FPU block can signal a “long stall”, in which case the waiting TC might be rescheduled so other TCs can execute instructions till the data returns.
Cp2 stall cycles	0	42	Counts all cycles where integer pipeline waits on CP2 return data. CP2 block can signal a “long stall”, in which case the waiting TC might be rescheduled so other TCs can execute instructions till the data returns.
CorExtend stall cycles	1	42	Counts all cycles where integer pipeline waits on CorExtend return data. CorExtend block can signal a “long stall”, in which case TC might be rescheduled so other TCs can execute instructions till the data returns.
ISPRAM stall cycles	0	43	Count all pipeline bubbles that are a result of multicycle ISPRAM access. Pipeline bubbles are defined as all cycles that IFU doesn’t present an instruction to ALU. The four cycles after a redirect are not counted.
DSPRAM stall cycles	1	43	Counts stall cycles created by an instruction waiting for access to DSPRAM.
CACHE instn stall cycles	0	44	Counts all cycles where pipeline is stalled due to CACHE instructions. Includes cycles where CACHE instructions themselves are stalled in the ALU, and cycles where CACHE instructions cause subsequent instructions to be stalled.
Load to Use stall cycles	0	45	Counts all cycles where integer pipeline waits on Load return data. LSU block can signal a “long stall”, in which case the waiting TC might be rescheduled so other TCs can execute instructions till the data returns.
ALU to AGEN stall cycles	1	45	Counts stall cycles due to skewed ALU where the bypass to the address generation takes an extra cycle.
Other interlocks stall cycles	0	46	Counts all cycles where integer pipeline waits on return data from MFC0, RDHWR, MFTR instructions.

Table 7.65 Event Descriptions (Continued)

Event Name	Counter	Event Number	Description
Branch mispredict stalls cycles	1	46	This counts the number of cycles from a mispredicted branch until the next non-delay slot instruction executes. Count is not very meaningful when executing from multiple TCs.
Relax stall cycles	0	47	Number of cycles that a low power op is 'executed' as requested by Policy Manager.
FSB full pipeline stall cycles	1	51	Cycles where the pipeline is stalled because the Fill-Store Buffer in LSU is full.
LDQ full pipeline stall cycles	1	53	Cycles where the pipeline is stalled because the Load Data Queue in the LSU is full.
Write Back Buffer full stall cycles	1	55	Cycles where the pipeline is stalled because the WriteBack Buffer in the BIU is full.
Coherence Events - these are events related to cache coherence			
Intervention response pending	1	36	Cycles where an intervention response is delayed because it is waiting for return data from an earlier miss
All Interventions	1	56	These events count external intervention requests and the number of them that hit in the cache. This does not include self-interventions or interventions directed only to the Instruction Cache. It includes all intervention types.
Intervention Hits	0	56	
All Invalidates	0	57	These events count external interventions of types that will leave a cache line in the invalid state. These do not include self-interventions or intervention directed to the Instruction Cache.
Invalidate Hits	1	57	
Evictions	0	58	The core writes back a dirty line to memory as a result of cache replacement or a non-coherent cache operation.
Writebacks	1	58	The core writes back a dirty line to memory as a result of cache replacement or a non-coherent cache operation, self or external memory operation.
ST_Inval	0	59	Counts the number of transitions into the I state from any other state.
ST_Exclusive	1	59	Counts the number of transitions into the E state from I or S states.
ST_Store_to_S	0	60	Counts the number of transitions from S to M due to a store hitting on a shared line
ST_Downgrade	1	60	Counts transitions to S state from M or E.
Latency Events - These events provide a statistical sampling of latencies within the system. One particular FSB entry is monitored. The latency event increments each cycle from the time a request is generated until the self-intervention or response is seen. The count events are incremented once for each request that we are counting the latency for.			
Request Latency to Self Intervention	0	61	Measures latency from miss detection to self intervention. Only counts for coherent requests.
Request Count for SI Latency	1	61	Counts number of coherent requests used for above latency counter
Request Latency to Read Response	0	62	Measures latency from miss detection until critical dword of response is returned, Only counts for cacheable reads.
Request Count for RR Latency	1	62	Counts number of cacheable read requests used for previous latency counter.
Implementation specific events - Modules that can be replaced by the customer will have an event signal associated with them.			

Table 7.65 Event Descriptions (Continued)

Event Name	Counter	Event Number	Description
Policy Manager	0	28	Implementation-specific.
Cp2	1	28	
ISPRAM	0	29	
DSPRAM	1	29	
XYM	0	31	
ITC	1	31	
CorExtend	0	30	
SI_PCEvent[7:0]	0/1	64-67	
Buffer usage events - These count the number of cycles that buffers within the CPU spend at various levels of fullness. These events cannot be qualified by TC or VPE number			
Fill Store Buffer < 1/4 full	0	50	Buffer Occupancy: The following table shows what values fall into each of the bins for the different buffer sizes that can be chosen. (see table below)
Fill Store Buffer 1/4 to 1/2 full	1	50	
Fill Store Buffer > 1/2 full	0	51	
Load Data Queue < 1/4 full	0	52	
Load Data Queue 1/4 to 1/2 full	1	52	
Load Data Queue > 1/2 full	0	53	
Write Back Buffer < 1/4 full	0	54	
Write Back Buffer 1/4 to 1/2 full	1	54	
Write Back Buffer > 1/2 full	0	55	
IFU Fill buffer allocated	1	48	Number of cycles where at least one of the IFU fill buffers is allocated (miss pending)
Refetches due to all IFU Fill Buffers allocated	0	48	Counts the number of times an instruction cache miss was detected, but both fill buffers were already allocated.

State	4 Entry Buffer	8/9 Entry Buffer
< 1/4	0	0-1
1/4-1/2	1-2	2-4
> 1/2	3+	5+

The performance counter resets to a low-power state, in which none of the counters will start counting events until software has enabled event counting, using an MTC0 instruction to the Performance Counter Control Registers.

Figure 7.56 Performance Counter Count Register

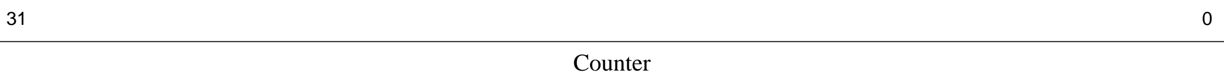


Table 7.66 Performance Counter Count Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
Counter	31:0	Counter	R/W	Undefined

7.2.59 ErrCtl Register (CP0 Register 26, Select 0)

The *ErrCtl* register controls parity protection of data and instruction caches and provides for software testing of the way-selection and scratchpad RAMs.

Parity protection can be enabled or disabled using the *PE* bit. When parity is enabled and the *PO* bit is deasserted, the CACHE Index Store Tag and Index Store Data operations will internally generate parity to be written into the RAM arrays. However, when the *PO* bit is asserted, tag array parity is written using the *P* bit of the *TagLo* register and data array parity is written using the *PI*/*PD* bits of *ErrCtl*.

ECC protection for the secondary cache is controlled by a combination of *PE* and the *L2P* bits.

A CACHE Index Load Tag operation to the instruction cache will update the *PCI* field with the instruction precode bits from the data array and the *PI* field with the parity bits from the data array if parity is supported. A CACHE Index Load Tag operation to the data cache will cause the *PD* bits to be updated with the byte parity for the selected word of the data array if parity is implemented. If parity is disabled or not implemented, the contents of the *PI* and *PD* fields after a CACHE Index Load Tag operation will be 0.

The *PCO* field can be used for testing the precode bits of the instruction cache data array. When the *PCO* bit is cleared, the CACHE Index Store Data instruction will internally generate the precode bits to be written into the instruction cache data array. However, when the *PCO* bit is set, the CACHE Index Store Data instruction will write the value in the *PCI* field to the precode bits in the data array. Setting an illegal value in the precode bits will cause unpredictable behavior. This mechanism should only be used for software testing of the cache arrays. Furthermore, the cache should be flushed after testing.

The *WST*, *SPR*, and *ITC* bits are used to enable CACHE instruction access to different arrays. On previous CPUs, these bits have been defined as orthogonal - only one of them should be set at any time. On the 1004K CPU, these bits are treated as a three-bit field to allow access to additional arrays. The different test modes are listed in Table 7.67. Refer also to “CACHE” on page 424 for additional details on CACHE operation in each of the modes.

Table 7.67 CACHE Test Mode Control

WST	SPR	ITC	Description
0	0	0	Normal mode
0	1	0	SPRAM Access - Index Ld/St Tag instructios will access SPRAM tag values
1	0	0	Way Select Test - Index Ld/St Tag instructions access Way Select RAM
1	1	0	Duplicate Tag Array - Index Ld/St Tag instructions will read and write only the duplicate cache tag array
0	0	1	ITC Access - Index Ld/St Tag instructions will access ITC tag values
	Others		Reserved for future use

Figure 7.57 ErrCtl Register

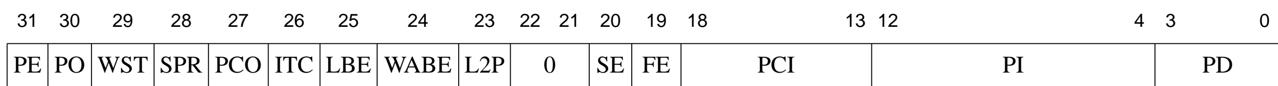


Table 7.68 ErrCtl Register Field Descriptions

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>PE</td><td>31</td><td>Parity Enable. This bit enables or disables the cache parity protection for both the instruction cache and the data cache.
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Parity disabled</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Parity enabled</td></tr></table>
This field is only write-able if the cache parity option was implemented when the CPU was built. If cache parity is not supported, this field is always read as 0. Software can test for cache parity support by attempting to write a 1 to this field, then read back the value.</td><td>R or R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>PO</td><td>30</td><td>Parity Overwrite. If set, the PI/PD fields of this register overwrites calculated parity for the data array. In addition, the P field of the TagLo register overwrites calculated parity for the tag array. This bit only has significance during CACHE Index Store Tag and CACHE Index Store Data operations.
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Use calculated parity</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Override calculated parity</td></tr></table></td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>WST,SPR ,ITC</td><td>29,28,26</td><td>As described above and in Table 7.67, these bits enable CACHE instruction access to different arrays.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0,0,0</td></tr>
<tr><td>PCO</td><td>27</td><td>Precode override. If set, the contents of the PCI field overwrite the calculated precode bits when data is written to the instruction cache for CACHE IndexStoreData operations.
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Use calculated precode</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Override calculated precode</td></tr></table></td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>ITC</td><td>26</td><td>InterThread Communication. If set, Index Load Tag and Index Store Tag CACHE instructions operate on the ITC tag.
CACHE instruction behavior is undefined if this bit is set at the same time as WST or SPR.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>LBE</td><td>25</td><td>Bit indicating that the most recent Data Bus Error was involved a load instruction. A Per-TC BE bit will indicate which TCs were impacted.</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>WABE</td><td>24</td><td>Bit indicating that the most recent Data Bus Error was due to a write allocate and that store data was lost. There is no indication of which TC(s) the store request came from.
It is possible for both LBE and WABE to be set if the bus error was on a line being used for both loads and stores.</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
</table>

Table 7.68 ErrCtl Register Field Descriptions

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>L2P</td><td>23</td><td>L2 ECC Enable. This bit can be set only if the L2 is ECC-capable. This bit in conjunction with the PE bit enables or disables the ECC protection for the L2 cache:
<table><tr><th>PE</th><th>L2P</th><th>L2 check</th></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td></tr></table></td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>22:21</td><td>Must be written as zeroes; returns zeroes when read.</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>SE</td><td>20</td><td>Indicates that a second cache error was detected before the first error was processed. This is an unrecoverable error. This bit is set when a cache error is detected while the FE bit is set. This bit is cleared on reset or when a cache error is detected with FE cleared.</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>FE</td><td>19</td><td>Indicates that this is the first cache error and therefore potentially recoverable. Error handling software should clear this bit when the error has been processed. This bit is cleared on reset. Refer to SE bit description for implications of this bit.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>PCI</td><td>18:13</td><td>Instruction precode bits read from or written to the instruction cache data RAM.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>PI</td><td>12:4</td><td>Parity bit read from or written to instruction cache data RAM.
<table><tr><th>Bits</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>12</td><td>Even parity bit for the pre-code bits</td></tr><tr><td>11:4</td><td>Per-byte even parity bits for the 64b of data</td></tr></table></td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>PD</td><td>3:0</td><td>Parity bits read from or written to data cache data RAM. PD[0] is even parity for the least-significant byte of the requested data.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
</table>

7.2.60 CacheErr Register (CP0 Register 27, Select 0)

The *CacheErr* register provides an interface with the cache error-detection logic. When a Cache Error exception is signaled, the fields of this register are set accordingly. The format of the *CacheErr* register is different for Primary caches and the Secondary Cache. The *EC* bit ([30]) indicates the format to be used for decoding the contents of the *CacheErr* register.

Figure 7.58 CacheErr Register (Primary Caches)

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21 20	19 ... 0
ER	EC	ED	ET	ES	EE	EB	EF	SP	EW	Way	Index

Table 7.69 CacheErr Register Field Descriptions (Primary Caches)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>ER</td><td>31</td><td>Error Reference. Indicates the type of reference that encountered an error.
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Instruction</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Data</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>EC</td><td>30</td><td>Indicates the cache level at which the error was detected:
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Primary</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Non-primary</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>ED</td><td>29</td><td>Error Data. Indicates a data RAM error for Instruction cache.
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No data RAM error detected</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Data RAM error detected</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>ET</td><td>28</td><td>Error Tag. Indicates a tag RAM error for Instruction cache.
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No tag RAM error detected</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Tag RAM error detected</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>ED:ET</td><td>29:28</td><td>For D-Cache, these bits encode the array in which an error was detected.
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>00</td><td>No tag or data RAM error detected</td></tr><tr><td>01</td><td>Primary tag RAM error</td></tr><tr><td>10</td><td>Data RAM error</td></tr><tr><td>11</td><td>Duplicate tag RAM error</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>ES</td><td>27</td><td>Error source. Indicates whether error was caused by internal processor or external snoop request.
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Error on internal request</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Error on external request</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>EE</td><td>26</td><td>Error external: Indicates that a parity error was seen on a coherent L1 cache in another CPU.</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>

Table 7.69 CacheErr Register Field Descriptions (Primary Caches) (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>EB</td><td>25</td><td>Error Both. Indicates that a cache error occurred in multiple instruction or data cache arrays.
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No additional data cache error</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Additional data cache error</td></tr></table>In the case of multiple errors, the Tag ram error has the highest priority, followed by the Data ram error, followed by the Way Select ram. Only the highest priority error information is recorded in the CacheErr register.</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>EF</td><td>24</td><td>Error Fatal. Indicates that a fatal cache error has occurred.
There are a few situations where software will not be able to get all information about a cache error from the CacheErr register. These situations are fatal because software cannot determine which memory locations have been affected by the error. To enable software to detect these cases, the EF bit (bit 24) has been added to the CacheErr register.
The following 7 cases are indicated as fatal cache errors by the EF bit:
1 Dirty parity error in dirty victim (dirty bit cleared)
2 Tag parity error in dirty victim
3 Data parity error in dirty victim
4 WB store miss and EW error at the requested index
5 Dual/Triple errors from different transactions, e.g. scheduled and non-scheduled load.
6 Multiple data cache errors detected before the first instruction of the cache error handler is issued.
7 Simultaneous errors in multiple of L1 Data Cache primary tag, duplicate tag, and data arrays.
In addition to the above, simultaneous instruction and data cache errors as indicated by $CacheErr_{EB}$ will cause information about the data cache error to be unavailable. However, that situation is not indicated by $CacheErr_{EF}$.</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>SP</td><td>23</td><td>Scratchpad. Indicates Scratchpad RAM parity error.
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No Scratchpad RAM error detected</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Scratchpad RAM error detected</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>EW</td><td>22</td><td>Error Way. Indicates a parity error on the dirty bits that are stored in the way selection RAM array..
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No way selection RAM error detected</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Way selection RAM error detected</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>Way</td><td>21:20</td><td>Way. Specifies the cache way in which the error was detected. It is not valid if a Tag RAM error is detected (ET=1) or Scratchpad RAM error is detected (SP=1).</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
</table>

Table 7.69 CacheErr Register Field Descriptions (Primary Caches) (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
Index	19:0	Index. Specifies the cache or Scratchpad RAM index of the double word in which the error was detected. The way of the faulty cache is written by hardware in the *Way* field. Software must combine the *Way* and *Index* read in this register with cache configuration information in the *Config1* register in order to obtain an index which can be used in an indexed CACHE instruction to access the faulty cache data or tag. Note that *Index* is aligned as a byte index, so it does not need to be shifted by software before it is used in an indexed CACHE instruction. *Index* bits [4:3] are undefined upon tag RAM errors, and *Index* bits above the MSB actually used for cache indexing will also be undefined. Bits [19:16] are only used used for errors in the Scratchpad RAM.	R	Undefined

Figure 7.59 CacheErr Register (Secondary Cache)

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21 19	18 0
	EC	ED	ET			EM	EF		EW	Way	Index

Table 7.70 CacheErr Register Field Descriptions (Secondary Cache)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
Reserved	31	Reserved	R	Undefined
EC	30	Indicates the cache level at which the error was detected: **Encoding** / **Meaning** 0 – Primary 1 – Non-primary	R	Undefined
ED	29	Error Data. Indicates a data RAM error. **Encoding** / **Meaning** 0 – No data RAM error detected 1 – Data RAM error detected	R	Undefined
ET	28	Error Tag. Indicates a tag RAM error. **Encoding** / **Meaning** 0 – No tag RAM error detected 1 – Tag RAM error detected	R	Undefined
Reserved	27	Reserved	R	Undefined
Reserved	26	Reserved	R	Undefined

Table 7.70 CacheErr Register Field Descriptions (Secondary Cache) (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>EM</td><td>25</td><td>Error Multi. Indicates that a cache error occurred in multiple L2 arrays.
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>No multi error</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Multi error</td></tr>
</table>
In the case of multiple errors, the Tag ram error has the highest priority, followed by the Data ram error, followed by the Way Select ram. Only the highest priority error information is recorded in the CacheErr register.</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>EF</td><td>24</td><td>Error Fatal. Indicates that a fatal cache error has occurred.
There are a few situations where software will not be able to get all information about a cache error from the CacheErr register. These situations are fatal because software cannot determine which memory locations have been affected by the error. To enable software to detect these cases, the EF bit (bit 24) has been added to the CacheErr register.

This bit is set when a second L2 error occurs before taking the exception for the first L2 error.</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>Reserved</td><td>23</td><td>Reserved</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>EW</td><td>22</td><td>Error Way. Indicates a way-selection RAM error.
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>No way-selection RAM error detected</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Way-selection RAM error detected</td></tr>
</table></td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>Way</td><td>21:19</td><td>Way. Specifies the cache way in which the error was detected. It is not valid if a Tag RAM error is detected (ET=1) or Scratchpad RAM error is detected (SP=1).</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>Index</td><td>18:0</td><td>Index. Specifies the cache index of the double word in which the error was detected. The way of the faulty cache is written by hardware in the Way field. Software must combine the Way and Index read in this register with cache configuration information in the Config2 register in order to obtain an index which can be used in an indexed CACHE instruction to access the faulty cache data or tag. Note that Index is aligned as a byte index, so it does not need to be shifted by software before it is used in an indexed CACHE instruction. Index bits [4:3] are undefined upon tag RAM errors and Index bits above the MSB actually used for cache indexing will also be undefined.</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
</table>

7.2.61 ITagLo Register (CP0 Register 28, Select 0)

The *ITagLo* register acts as the interface to the instruction cache tag array. The Index Store Tag and Index Load Tag operations of the CACHE instruction use the *ITagLo* register as the source of tag information. Note that the 1004K CPU does not implement the *ITagHi* register.

When the *WST* bit of the *ErrCtl* register is asserted, this register becomes the interface to the way-selection RAM. In this mode, the fields are redefined to give appropriate access the contents of the WS array instead of the Tag array. Refer to Figure 9.2 for the layout of the way-selection RAM.

This register can be optionally configured to be a read-only register that reads as 0 to save area in the core.

Figure 7.60 ITagLo Register Format ($ErrCtl_{WST}$=0, $ErrCtl_{SPR}$=0)

31 ... 11	10	9 ... 8	7	6	5	4 ... 1	0
PTagLo	U	R	V	R	L	R	P

Figure 7.61 ITagLo Register Format ($ErrCtl_{WST}$=1, $ErrCtl_{SPR}$=0)

31 ... 16	15 ... 10	9 ... 8	7 ... 5	4 ... 1	0
Unused	WSLRU	R	Unused	R	U

(Bit position labels printed above the diagram: 31, 24 23, 20 19, 15, 10, 9, 8, 7, 5, 4, 1, 0)

Figure 7.62 ITagLo Register Format ($ErrCtl_{WST}$=0, $ErrCtl_{SPR}$=1)

tag	31 ... 20	19 ... 12	11 ... 8	7	6 ... 0
0	BasePA	BasePA	0	E	0
1	0	Size	0	0	0

Table 7.71 ITagLo Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	**Bit(s)**			
Unused/U	various	Not used in certain modes of operation.	R/W	Undefined
PTagLo	31:11	This field contains the physical address of the cache line. Bit 31 corresponds to bit 31 of the PA and bit 11 corresponds to bit 11 of the PA. Bit 11 is only used when 8KB caches are implemented. For other cache sizes, this bit will not exist in the tag and will be written as a 0 on IndexLoadTag operations.	R/W	Undefined
R	9:8, 6, 4:1	Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	0	0
V	7	This field indicates whether the cache line is valid.	R/W	Undefined
L	5	Specifies the lock bit for the cache tag. When this bit is set, and the valid bit is set, the corresponding cache line will not be replaced by the cache replacement algorithm.	R/W	Undefined
P	0	Parity. Specifies the parity bit for the cache tag. This bit is updated with tag array parity on CACHE Index Load Tag operations and used as tag array parity on Index Store Tag operations when the *PO* bit of the *ErrCtl* register is set.	R/W	Undefined
WSLRU	15:10	LRU bits. This field contains the value read from the WS array after a CACHE Index Load WS operation. It is used to store into the WS array during CACHE Index Store WS operations.	R/W	Undefined

Table 7.71 ITagLo Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
BasePA	31:12	When reading pseudo-tag 0 of a scratchpad RAM, this field will contain bits [31:12] of the base address of the scratchpad region	R/W	Undefined
E	7	When reading pseudo-tag 0 of a scratchpad RAM, this bit will indicate whether the scratchpad is enabled	R/W	Undefined
Size	19:12	When reading pseudo-tag 1 of a scratchpad RAM, this field indicates the size of the scratchpad array. This field is the number of 4KB sections it contains. (Combined with the 0's in 11:0, the register will contain the number of bytes in the scratchpad region.)	R/W	Undefined

7.2.62 DTagLo Register (CP0 Register 28, Select 2

The *DTagLo* register acts as the interface to the data cache tag array. The Index Store Tag and Index Load Tag operations of the CACHE instruction use the *DTagLo* register as the source of tag information. Note that the 1004K CPU does not implement the *DTagHi* register.

When the *WST* bit of the *ErrCtl* register is asserted, this register becomes the interface to the way-selection RAM. In this mode, the fields are redefined to give appropriate access the contents of the WS array instead of the Tag array. Refer to Figure 9.2 for the layout of the way-selection RAM.

This register can be optionally configured to be a read-only register that reads as 0 to save area in the core.

Figure 7.63 DTagLo Register Format ($ErrCtl_{WST}$=0, $ErrCtl_{SPR}$=0)

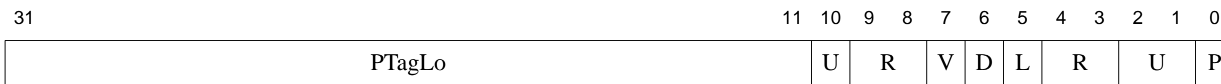


Figure 7.64 DTagLo Register Format ($ErrCtl_{WST}$=1, $ErrCtl_{SPR}$=0)

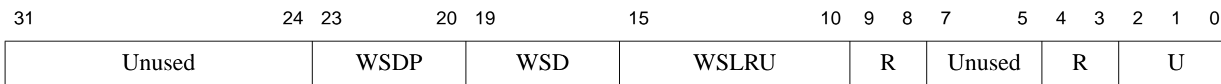


Figure 7.65 DTagLo Register Format ($ErrCtl_{WST}$=0, $ErrCtl_{SPR}$=1)

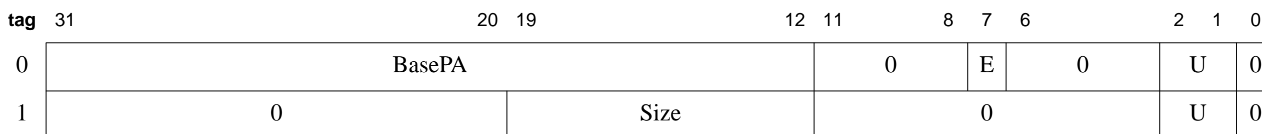


Table 7.72 DTagLo Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
Unused/U	various	Not used in certain modes of operation.	R/W	Undefined

Table 7.72 DTagLo Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
PTagLo	31:11	This field contains the physical address of the cache line. Bit 31 corresponds to bit 31 of the PA and bit 11 corresponds to bit 11 of the PA. Bit 11 is only used when 8KB caches are implemented. For other cache sizes, this bit will not exist in the tag and will be written as a 0 on IndexLoadTag operations.	R/W	Undefined
R	9:8, 4:1	Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	0	0
V	7	This field indicates whether the cache line is valid.	R/W	Undefined
D	6	This field indicates whether the cache line is dirty. It will only be set if bit 7 (valid) is also set. For L1 I-cache, this field must be written as zero and returns zero on read.	R/W	Undefined
L	5	Specifies the lock bit for the cache tag. When this bit is set, and the valid bit is set, the corresponding cache line will not be replaced by the cache replacement algorithm.	R/W	Undefined
P	0	Parity. Specifies the parity bit for the cache tag. This bit is updated with tag array parity on CACHE Index Load Tag operations and used as tag array parity on Index Store Tag operations when the *PO* bit of the *ErrCtl* register is set. This parity does not cover the dirty bit; the dirty bit has a separate parity bit placed in the way selection RAM.	R/W	Undefined
WSDP	23:20	Dirty Parity (Optional). This field contains the value read from the WS array during a CACHE Index Load WS operation. If the *PO* field of the *ErrCtl* register is asserted, then this field is used to store the dirty parity bits during a CACHE Index Store WS operation.	R/W	Undefined
WSD	19:16	Dirty bits. This field contains the value read from the WS array after a CACHE Index Load WS operation. It is used to store into the WS array during CACHE Index Store WS operations.	R/W	Undefined
WSLRU	15:10	LRU bits. This field contains the value read from the WS array after a CACHE Index Load WS operation. It is used to store into the WS array during CACHE Index Store WS operations.	R/W	Undefined
BasePA	31:12	When reading pseudo-tag 0 of a scratchpad RAM, this field will contain bits [31:12] of the base address of the scratchpad region	R/W	Undefined
E	7	When reading pseudo-tag 0 of a scratchpad RAM, this bit will indicate whether the scratchpad is enabled	R/W	Undefined
Size	19:12	When reading pseudo-tag 1 of a scratchpad RAM, this field indicates the size of the scratchpad array. This field is the number of 4KB sections it contains. (Combined with the 0's in 11:0, the register will contain the number of bytes in the scratchpad region.)	R/W	Undefined

In addition to the three uses of the *DTagLo* register specified above, there is a fourth application where *DTagLo* is used to access the pseudo-tags (control registers) of the ITC block. This is done by executing the Index Store Tag or Index Load Tag operation of the CACHE instruction with the *ErrCtlITC* set to 1 (and *ErrCtlSPR*/*ErrCtlWST* set to 0).

7.2.63 L23TagLo Register (CP0 Register 28, Select 4)

The *L23TagLo* register acts as the interface to the L2 or L3 cache tag array. The Index Store Tag and Index Load Tag operations of the CACHE instruction use the *L23TagLo* register as the source of tag information. Note that the 1004K CPU does not implement the *L23TagHi* register.

The definition of this register is dependent on the L2/L3 implementation. The CPU implements this as a general 32b R/W register.

The core can be configured without L2/L3 cache support. In this case, this register will be a read-only register that reads as 0.

7.2.64 IDataLo Register (CP0 Register 28, Select 1)

The *IDataLo* register is a register that acts as the interface to the instruction cache data array and is intended for diagnostic operations only. The Index Load Tag operation of the CACHE instruction reads the corresponding data values into the *IDataLo* register. If the *WST* bit in the *ErrCtl* register is set, then the contents of *IDataLo* can be written to the cache data array by doing an Index Store Data CACHE instruction. If the *SPR* bit in the *ErrCtl* register is set, then the contents of *IDataLo* can be written to the scratchpad RAM data array by doing an Index Store Data CACHE instruction.

This register can be optionally configured to be a read-only register that reads as 0 to save area in the core.

Figure 7.66 IDataLo Register Format

Table 7.73 IDataLo Register Field Description

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
DATA	31:0	Low-order data read from the cache data array.	R/W	Undefined

7.2.65 DDataLo Register (CP0 Register 28, Select 3)

The *DDataLo* register is a register that acts as the interface to the data cache data array and is intended for diagnostic operations only. The Index Load Tag operation of the CACHE instruction reads the corresponding data values into the *DDataLo* register. If the *WST* bit in the *ErrCtl* register is set, then the contents of *DDataLo* can be written to the cache data array by doing an Index Store Data CACHE instruction. If the *SPR* bit in the *ErrCtl* register is set, then the contents of *DDataLo* can be written to the scratchpad RAM data array by doing an Index Store Data CACHE instruction.

This register can be optionally configured to be a read-only register that reads as 0 to save area in the core.

Figure 7.67 DDataLo Register Format

Table 7.74 DDataLo Register Field Description

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
DATA	31:0	Low-order data read from the cache data array.	R/W	Undefined

7.2.66 L23DataLo Register (CP0 Register 28, Select 5)

The L23*DataLo* register is a register that acts as the interface to the L2 or L3 cache data array and is intended for diagnostic operations only. The Index Load Tag operation of the CACHE instruction reads the corresponding data values into the *L23DataLo* register. If the *WST* bit in the *ErrCtl* register is set, then the contents of *L23DataLo* can be written to the cache data array by doing an Index Store Data CACHE instruction. If the *SPR* bit in the *ErrCtl* register is set, then the contents of *L23DataLo* can be written to the scratchpad RAM data array by doing an Index Store Data CACHE instruction.

The core can be configured without L2/L3 cache support. In this case, this register will be a read-only register that reads as 0.

Figure 7.68 L23DataLo Register Format

Table 7.75 L23DataLo Register Field Description

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
DATA	31:0	Low-order data read from the cache data array.	R/W	Undefined

7.2.67 IDataHi Register (CP0 Register 29, Select 1)

The *IDataHi* register is a register that acts as the interface to the cache data array and is intended for diagnostic operations only. The Index Load Tag operation of the CACHE instruction reads the corresponding data values into the *IDataHi* register. If the *WST* bit in the *ErrCtl* register is set, then the contents of *IDataHi* can be written to the cache data array by doing an Index Store Data CACHE instruction. If the *SPR* bit in the *ErrCtl* register is set, then the contents of *IDataHi* can be written to the scratchpad RAM data array by doing an Index Store Data CACHE instruction.

The interface to the I-cache only operates on pairs of instructions - the high instruction will be written into the *IDataHi* register. Note that *IDataHi* and *IDataLo* reflect the memory ordering of the instructions. Depending on the endianness of the system, Instruction0 belongs in either *IDataHi* (BigEndian) or *IDataLo* (LittleEndian) and vice versa for Instruction1.

This register can be optionally configured to be a read-only register that reads as 0 to save area in the core.

Figure 7.69 IDataHi Register Format

Table 7.76 IDataHi Register Field Description

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
DATA	31:0	High-order data read from the cache data array.	R/W	Undefined

7.2.68 L23DataHi Register (CP0 Register 29, Select 5)

The *L23DataHi* register is a register that acts as the interface to the cache data array and is intended for diagnostic operations only. The Index Load Tag operation of the CACHE instruction reads the corresponding data values into the *L23DataHi* register. If the *WST* bit in the *ErrCtl* register is set, then the contents of *L23DataHi* can be written to the cache data array by doing an Index Store Data CACHE instruction.

The core can be configured without L2/L3 cache support. In this case, this register will be a read-only register that reads as 0.

Figure 7.70 L23DataHi Register Format

Table 7.77 L23DataHi Register Field Description

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
DATA	31:0	High-order data read from the cache data array.	R/W	Undefined

7.2.69 ErrorEPC (CP0 Register 30, Select 0)

The *ErrorEPC* register is a read/write register, similar to the *EPC* register, except that *ErrorEPC* is used on error exceptions. All bits of the *ErrorEPC* register are significant and must be writable. It is also used to store the program counter on Reset, Soft Reset, and nonmaskable interrupt (NMI) exceptions.

The *ErrorEPC* register contains the virtual address at which instruction processing can resume after servicing an error. This address can be:

- The virtual address of the instruction that caused the exception, or
- the virtual address of the immediately preceding branch or jump instruction when the error causing instruction is in a branch delay slot.

On a reset exception, VPE0’s *ErrorEPC* contains the virtual address at which TC0 would have resumed processing after servicing the error. This, in conjunction with *TCRestart* registers of other TCs, can provide valuable debug information about the state of the various TCs when the error occurred.

Unlike the *EPC* register, there is no corresponding branch delay slot indication for the *ErrorEPC* register.

In processors that implement the MIPS16 ASE, a read of the *ErrorEPC* register (via MFC0) returns the following value in the destination GPR:

$$GPR[rt] \leftarrow ErrorExceptionPC_{31..1} \,||\, ISAMode_0$$

That is, the upper 31 bits of the error exception PC are combined with the lower bit of the *ISAMode* field and written to the GPR.

Similarly, a write to the *ErrorEPC* register (via MTC0) takes the value from the GPR and distributes that value to the error exception PC and the *ISAMode* field, as follows

$$ErrprExceptionPC \leftarrow GPR[rt]_{31..1} \,||\, 0$$
$$ISAMode \leftarrow 2\#0 \,||\, GPR[rt]_0$$

That is, the upper 31 bits of the GPR are written to the upper 31 bits of the error exception PC, and the lower bit of the error exception PC is cleared. The upper bit of the *ISAMode* field is cleared and the lower bit is loaded from the lower bit of the GPR.

Figure 7.71 ErrorEPC Register Format

Table 7.78 ErrorEPC Register Field Description

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
ErrorEPC	31:0	Error Exception Program Counter.	R/W	Undefined

7.2.70 DeSave Register (CP0 Register 31, Select 0)

The Debug Exception Save (*DeSave*) register is a read/write register that functions as a simple memory location. This register is used by the debug exception handler to save one of the GPRs, which is then used to save the rest of the context to a pre-determined memory area (such as in the EJTAG Probe). This register allows the safe debugging of exception handlers and other types of code where the existence of a valid stack for context saving cannot be assumed.

Figure 7.72 DeSave Register Format

Table 7.79 DeSave Register Field Description

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
DESAVE	31:0	Debug exception save contents.	R/W	Undefined

Chapter 8

Hardware and Software Initialization of the 1004K™ CPU

A 1004K CPU contains only a minimal amount of hardware initialization and relies on software to fully initialize the device.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Section 8.1 "Hardware-Initialized Processor State"
- Section 8.2 "Software Initialized Processor State"

8.1 Hardware-Initialized Processor State

A 1004K CPU, like most other MIPS processors, is not fully initialized by hardware reset. Only a minimal subset of the processor state is cleared. This is enough to bring the CPU up while running in unmapped and uncached code space. All other processor state can then be initialized by software. Unlike previous MIPS processors, there is no distinction between cold and warm resets (or hard and soft resets). *SI_Reset* is used for both power-up reset and soft reset.

8.1.1 Coprocessor 0 State

Much of the hardware initialization occurs in Coprocessor 0.

- $MVPControl_{CPA}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- $MVPControl_{STLB}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- $MVPControl_{VPC}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- $MVPControl_{EVP}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- *Random* - cleared to maximum value on Reset (TLB MMU only)
- $VPEControl_{YSI}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- $VPEControl_{GSI}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- $VPEControl_{TE}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- $VPEConf0_{XTC}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- $VPEConf0_{MVP}$ - set to 1 for VPE0, cleared to 0 for other VPEs on Reset
- $VPEConf0_{VPA}$ - set to 1 for VPE0, cleared to 0 for other VPEs on Reset

- $YQMask_{Mask}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- $TCStatus_{TMX}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- $TCStatus_{DT}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- $TCStatus_{DA}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- $TCStatus_{A}$ - set to 1 for TC0, cleared to 0 for all other TCs on Reset
- $TCStatus_{IXMT}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- $TCBind_{TBE}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- *Wired* - cleared to 0 on Reset (TLB MMU only)
- $Status_{BEV}$ - set to 1 on Reset
- $Status_{TS}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- $Status_{NMI}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- $Status_{ERL}$ - set to 1 on Reset
- $Status_{RP}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- $CDMMBase_{EN}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- $WatchLo_{I,R,W}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- *Config* fields related to static inputs - set to input value by Reset
- $Config_{K0}$ - set to 010 (uncached) on Reset
- $Config_{KU}$ - set to 010 (uncached) on Reset (FM MMU only)
- $Config_{K23}$ - set to 010 (uncached) on Reset (FM MMU only)
- $Debug_{DM}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset (unless EJTAGBOOT option is used to boot into DebugMode, see Chapter 11, “EJTAG Debug Support in the 1004K™ CPU” on page 285 for details)
- $Debug_{LSNM}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- $Debug_{IBusEP}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- $Debug_{DBusEP}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- $Debug_{IEXI}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset
- $Debug_{SSt}$ - cleared to 0 on Reset

- *FastDebugChannel* - FIFOs are cleared to empty on Reset

8.1.2 TLB Initialization

Each TLB entry has a “hidden” state bit, which is set by Reset and is cleared when the TLB entry is written. This bit disables matches and prevents “TLB Shutdown” conditions from being generated by the power-up values in the TLB array (when two or more TLB entries match on a single address). This bit is not visible to software.

8.1.3 Bus State Machines

When a Reset exception is taken, all pending bus transactions are aborted, and the state machines in the bus interface unit are reset.

8.1.4 Static Configuration Inputs

All static configuration inputs (for example, defining the bus mode and cache size) should only be changed during Reset.

8.1.5 Fetch Address

By default, the fetch is directed to VA 0xBFC00000 (PA 0x1FC00000) upon Reset. This address is in kseg1,which is unmapped and uncached, so that the TLB and caches do not require hardware initialization.

This initial fetch address can be overridden via CPU inputs. See Section 6.5 “Exception Vector Locations” for additional details.

If EJTAGBOOT is active (see Section 11.3.3.8 “EJTAGBOOT Instruction”), the processor will begin fetching instructions directly from the EJTAG probe rather than from memory.

8.2 Software Initialized Processor State

Software is required to initialize the following parts of the device.

8.2.1 Register File

The register file powers up in an unknown state with the exception of r0 which is always 0. Initializing the rest of the register file is not required for proper operation. Good code will generally not read a register before writing to it, but the boot code can initialize the register file for added safety.

8.2.2 TLB

Because of the hidden bit indicating initialization, the CPU does not initialize the TLB upon Reset. This is an implementation specific feature of the 1004K CPU and cannot be relied upon if writing generic code for MIPS32/64 processors.

8.2.3 Caches

The cache tag and data arrays power up to an unknown state and are not affected by reset. Every tag in the cache arrays should be initialized to an invalid state using the CACHE instruction (typically the Index Invalidate function).

This can be a long process, especially since the instruction cache initialization needs to be run in an uncached address region.

8.2.4 Coprocessor 0 State

Miscellaneous COP0 states need to be initialized prior to leaving the boot code. There are various exceptions which are blocked by *ERL*=1 or *EXL*=1 and which are not cleared by Reset. These can be cleared to avoid taking spurious exceptions when leaving the boot code.

- *Cause*: *WP* (Watch Pending), SW0/1 (Software Interrupts) should be cleared.
- *Config*: *K0* (kseg0 Coherency Algorithm) should be set to the desired Cache Coherency Algorithm (CCA) prior to accessing kseg0.
- *Config*: (FM MMU only) *KU* and *K23* should be set to the desired CCA for USeg/KUSeg and kseg2/3 respectively prior to accessing those regions.
- *Count*: Should be set to a known value if Timer Interrupts are used.
- *Compare*: Should be set to a known value if Timer Interrupts are used. The write to compare will also clear any pending Timer Interrupts (and thus, *Count* should be set before *Compare*, to avoid any unexpected interrupts).
- *Status*: Desired state of the device should be set.
- Other COP0 state: Other registers should be written before they are read. Some registers are not explicitly writeable, and are only updated as a by-product of instruction execution or a taken exception. Uninitialized bits should be masked off after reading these registers.

8.2.5 Multi-threading Initialization

In order to start multi-threading on a 1004K CPU, some additional initialization steps are required. Refer to Chapter 4, "*Initializing the 1004K™ 1004k - Multi-Threaded bootstrap issues*" in *Programming the MIPS32® 1004K™ Coherent Procesing System Family* [11].

8.2.6 Multi-CPU Initialization

When the 1004K Coherent Processing System is reset, only one CPU will initially be enabled. Additional steps are required to start the other CPUs in the cluster and to enable cache coherence between them. Refer to the *1004K Coherent Processing System User's Manual* [8] for more details.

Chapter 9

Caches

The CPU has separate instruction and data caches which allows instruction and data references to proceed simultaneously. This chapter describes the caches. It contains the following sections:

- Section 9.1 "Instruction Cache"
- Section 9.2 "Data Cache"
- Section 9.3 "Write Back Buffer"
- Section 9.4 "Cache Protocols"
- Section 9.5 "CACHE Instruction"
- Section 9.6 "Software Cache Testing"
- Section 9.7 "Memory Coherence Issues"

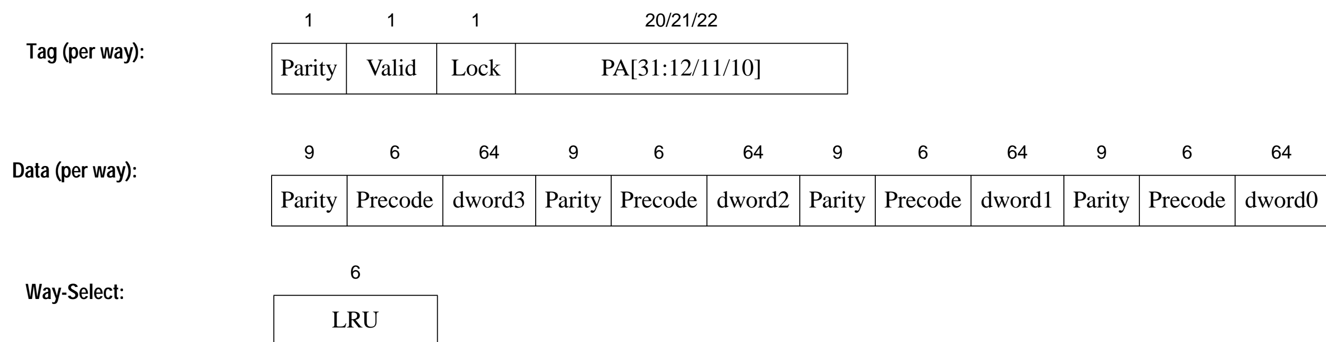
9.1 Instruction Cache

Here are the key characteristics of the instruction cache:

- No-cache option. The I-cache can be removed.
- Configurable Size: 1KB, 2KB, 4KB, 8KB, or 16KB per way.
- Configurable Associativity: Direct-mapped or 4-way set associative
- LRU Replacement on set-associative configurations
- Line locking support on set-associative configurations
- Optional Parity support
- 32B line size
- Per-VPE replacement restrictions (only available on MT cores). See the VPEOpt CP0 register.

Figure 9.1 shows the format of an entry in the three arrays comprising the instruction cache: tag, data, and way-select.

Figure 9.1 Instruction Cache Organization



9.1.1 I-Cache Virtual Aliasing

The instruction cache is virtually indexed and physically tagged. The lower bits of the virtual address are used to access the cache arrays and the physical address is used in the tags. Because the way size can be larger than the minimum TLB page size, there is a potential for virtual aliasing. This means that one physical address can exist in multiple indices within the cache if it is accessed with different virtual addresses.

This reduces the cache efficiency somewhat, but is generally not a problem unless the instruction stream is being written to. When instructions are written, software must ensure that the store data is written out to memory and the old data is invalidated in the instruction cache (via the CACHE or SYNCI instruction). For this to work correctly, the address must be invalidated from each of the possible alias locations. The 1004K processor includes a feature to simplify this task and automatically invalidate the physical address from all of the alias locations. The presence of this feature and the enable for it are located in the *Config7* register. *Config7I*$_{AR}$ =1 indicates that aliases are possible (cache > 16KB and TLB-based MMU) and this feature is present. This feature is enabled by default, but *Config7I*$_{VA}$ can be set to 1 to disable it. Looking up the other alias locations does slow down the invalidate slightly, so software can disable it when aliases are known not to be present, for example, when using an OS with 16KB TLB pages,

9.1.2 Precode Bits

In order for the fetch unit to quickly detect branches and jumps when executing code, the instruction cache array contains some additional precode bits. These bits indicate the type and location of branch or jump instructions within a 64b fetch bundle. These precode bits are not used when executing MIPS16e code.

9.1.3 Parity

Parity protection of the instruction cache arrays can optionally be included. The data array has a 9 parity bits - one for the 6 precode bits and one for each byte of the 64b data. The tag array has a single parity bit for each tag. The LRU array does not have any parity.

9.2 Data Cache

Here are the key characteristics of the instruction cache:

- No-cache option. The D-cache can be removed. NOTE: This option is not available on the 1004K CPU.

- Configurable Size: 1KB, 2KB, 4KB, 8KB, or 16KB per way.

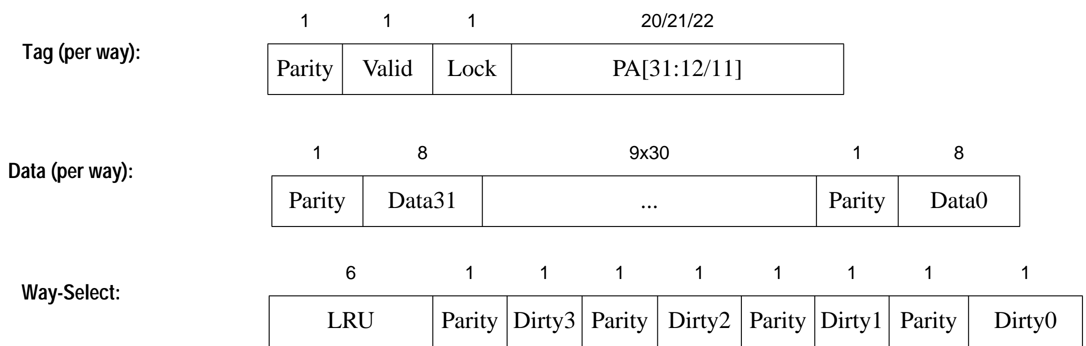
- Configurable Associativity: Direct-mapped or 4-way set associative
- LRU Replacement on set-associative configurations
- Line locking support on set-associative configurations
- Optional Parity support
- 32B line size
- Per-VPE & per-TC replacement restrictions (only available on MT cores). See the VPEOpt and TCOpt CP0 registers.

The data cache is similar to the instruction cache, with a few key differences:

- The data cache does not contain any precode information.
- To handle store bytes, the data array is byte accessible and the optional data parity is 1 bit per byte.
- The way-select array for the data cache also holds the dirty bits (and optional dirty parity bits) for each cache line, in addition to the LRU information.
- Virtual aliases must be handled differently
- 0 KByte data cache size is not supported in the 1004K CPU.
- Per-TC replacement restrictions are available on the D-Cache. (only available on MT cores)

Figure 9.2 shows the format of an entry in the three arrays comprising the data cache: tag, data, and way-select.

Figure 9.2 Data Cache Organization



9.2.1 D-Cache Virtual Aliasing

The 1004K must be configured with hardware anti-aliasing support for the data cache when the cache size (32KB or 64KB) and MMU type (TLB) make it subject to aliases. With this hardware, the data cache is effectively physically indexed and tagged.

9.2.2 Parity

Parity protection of the data cache arrays can optionally be included. The data array requires a parity bit for each byte, to correspond to the minimum write quantum for a store. The tag array has a single parity bit for each tag. The way-select array has separate parity bits to cover each dirty bit, but the LRU bits are not covered by parity.

9.2.3 Coherence State Encoding

The coherent state of the cache line is encoded using the Valid and Lock bits from the tag array and the Dirty bits from the way-select array as follows:

Table 9.1 Coherent State Encoding

Valid	Lock	Dirty	Coherent State
0	0	x	INVALID
0	1	0	SHARED
0	1	1	Reserved
1	0	0	EXCLUSIVE
1	0	1	MODIFIED
1	1	0	LOCKED/Clean[1]
1	1	1	LOCKED/Dirty[1]

1. Locked lines are not coherent

9.3 Write Back Buffer

The BIU includes a Write Back Buffer (WBB) that holds writes going to memory. This includes evictions from the data cache, as well as uncached stores, and uncached accelerated stores. The WBB consists of 8 entries, each of which is capable of holding 32B of data. The WBB also holds L2 CACHE instructions that are to be sent out on the bus.

The WBB will attempt to gather uncached accelerated (UCA)stores to allow full line burst writes. UCA behavior is described in Section 9.3.1 “Uncached Accelerated Stores”.

WBB entries are ‘flushed’ under a variety of conditions. When a buffer is flushed, the write command is queued in the BIU and the WBB entry will not accept any more activity until the data has been written to the bus and the buffer is freed up. UCA flush conditions are described in the next section. Flush conditions for other types are shown here:

- Uncached (non-accelerated) stores flush immediately
- L2 CACHE instruction commands are also flushed immediately
- Entries for D$ evictions are flushed when all 4 dwords (32B) of data have been gathered

When coherence is enabled, the CPU is the ‘owner’ of a cache line until the self-intervention for the writeback request has been seen. The WBB entry cannot be deallocated until that point so that the CPU can respond with the data if another CPU requests it. The WBB is also used for staging data responses to interventions. To avoid deadlock, one WBB entry must be reserved for this purpose.

9.3.1 Uncached Accelerated Stores

Uncached Accelerated gathering is supported for word and double word stores only.

Gathering of uncached accelerated stores will start on cache-line aligned addresses, i.e. 32 byte aligned addresses. Uncached accelerated word or double word stores that do not meet that condition will be treated like regular uncached stores.

An uncached accelerated store to the start of a new line will reserve a write-back buffer entry for gathering. Subsequent uncached accelerated word or double word stores to the same cache line will write sequentially into this buffer, *independent of the word address associated with these stores*. This specifically means that the word address of subsequent stores is not preserved. This is done to support two specific usage models:

- Write Sequential: Software is going to write all words of a line in order. The HW will match this write order and stores will go to the matching address.
- Write Identical: Software repeatedly writes to the cache-line aligned address. The HW will spread this out across the line buffer and eventually write out the data in the same order. Use in this mode would typically involve a matching memory mapped device that treated all writes to a cache line address the same. This could be used for efficient burst writes to a FIFO.

Because the hardware does not preserve the word address for stores within the same cache line, Uncached Accelerated should not be used if software writes the data out of order or randomly as the data will be reordered. For example, software writing dwords A,B,C,D to offsets 0x0, 0x18, 0x8, 0x10 could result in memory containing: 0x0 - A, 0x8 - B, 0x10 - C, 0x18 - D.

An uncached accelerated buffer is written to memory (flushed) if:

1. The last word in the entry being gathered is written. (Implicit flush)
2. A PREF Nudge which matches the address associated with the gather buffer (Explicit flush).
3. A SYNC instruction is executed. (Explicit flush)
4. Bits <31:5> of the address of a Load instruction match the address associated with the gather buffer. (Implicit flush)
5. Uncached Accelerated store to a different 32B line (Implicit flush)
6. An exception occurs. (Implicit flush)

When an uncached accelerated buffer is flushed, the address sent out on the system interface is the address associated with the gather buffer.

Caveats:

- Uncached Accelerated stores are not ordered with respect to uncached accesses. Any uncached stores and any uncached loads to unrelated addresses that occur between uncached accelerated stores that are part of a gather sequence may occur out of order.
- The only constraint imposed on the gathering is that doubleword stores are only allowed to write to double word aligned locations in the buffer. For example if uncached accelerated gathering starts with a Store Word (SW), it may not immediately be followed by a Store Double (SDC1).

- Uncached accelerated stores of the following types are not intended to be used by software and may generate unpredictable results:

  1. Sub-word (byte, halfword, tri-byte) Stores

  2. Unaligned Stores

  3. Store conditionals

- In order for software to be able to run functionally correct on implementations without uncached accelerated stores, software should always generate accesses starting on a cache-line aligned address, proceed to generate correctly incremented sequential addresses and observe the restrictions for uncached accelerated stores.

9.4 Cache Protocols

This section describes cache organization, attributes, and cache-line replacement for the instruction and data caches.

9.4.1 Cache Organization

The instruction and data caches each consist of three arrays: tag, data and way-select. The caches are virtually indexed, since a virtual address is used to select the appropriate line within each of the three arrays. The caches are physically tagged, as the tag array contains a physical, not virtual, address.

The tag and data arrays hold up to 4 ways of information per set, corresponding to the 4-way set associativity of the cache. The way-select array holds information to choose the way to be filled, as well as dirty bits in the case of the data cache.

Figure 9.1 (instruction cache) and Figure 9.2 (data cache) show the format of each line in the tag, data and way-select arrays.

A tag entry consists of the upper 20 or 21 or 22 bits of the physical address (bits [31:12/11/10]), one valid bit for the line, and a lock bit. (Direct-mapped caches do not require the lock bit) A data entry contains the four 64-bit double-words in the line, for a total of 32 bytes. All four words in the line are present or not in the data array together, hence the single valid bit stored with the tag. Once a valid line is resident in the cache, byte, halfword, triple-byte or full word stores can update all or a portion of the words in that line. The tag and data entries are repeated for each of the 4 lines in the set for 4-way configurations.

A way-select entry holds bits choosing the way to be replaced according to a Least Recently Used (LRU) algorithm. The LRU information applies to all the ways and there is one way-select entry for all the ways in the set. (LRU is not needed for direct-mapped configurations) The array with way-select entries for the data cache also holds dirty bits for the lines. One dirty bit is required per line, as shown in Figure 9.2. The instruction cache only supports reads, hence only LRU entries are stored in the instruction way-select array.

9.4.2 Cacheability Attributes

A 1004K CPU supports the following cacheability attributes:

- *UC - Uncached*: Addresses in a memory area indicated as uncached are not read from the cache. Stores to such addresses are written directly to main memory, without changing cache contents.

- *WB - Non-coherent Write-back with write allocation*: Loads and instruction fetches first search the cache, reading main memory only if the desired data does not reside in the cache. On data store operations, the cache is first searched to see if the target address is cache resident. If it is resident, the cache contents are updated, but main memory is not written. If the cache lookup misses on a store, main memory is read to bring the line into the cache and merge it with the new store data. Hence, the allocation policy on a cache miss is read- or write-allocate. Data stores will update the appropriate dirty bit in the way-select array to indicate that the line contains modified data. When a line with dirty data is displaced from the cache, it is written back to memory.

- *UCA - Uncached Accelerated: Uncached stores are gathered together for more efficient bus utilization*. See Section 9.3.1 "Uncached Accelerated Stores" for more details

- *CWB - Coherent Write-back with write allocation, exclusive on write*: Use coherent data. Load misses will bring the data into the cache in a shared state. Multiple caches can contain data in the shared state. Stores will bring data into the cache in an exclusive state - no other caches can contain that same line. If a store hits on a shared line in the cache, the line will be invalidated and brought back into the cache in an exclusive state.

- *CWBE - Coherent Write-back with write allocation, exclusive*: Similar to the above, but load misses will bring data into the cache in an exclusive state rather than shared. This can be used if data is not shared and will eventually be written. This can reduce bus traffic because the line does not have to be refetched in an exclusive state when a store is done. However, for data that is shared, this would increase bus traffic. Note: synchronization variables used in LL/SC are normally shared. The core will override this CCA and make LL misses request a shared read instead of exclusive. This is do so that starting the synchronization does not break the LL/SC sequence on another core. Other loads do not do this, so software should avoid accessing synchronization locations (which includes the enter cache line) with regular loads in a looping or polling access. Doing so could repeatedly break LL/SC sequences on another core and cause a livelock situation. This does not occur with the CWB CCA.

Some segments of memory employ a fixed caching policy; for example kseg1 is always uncacheable. Other segments of memory allow the caching policy to be selected by software. Generally, the cache policy for these programmable regions is defined by a cacheability attribute field associated with that region of memory. See Chapter 5, "Memory Management of the 1004K™ CPU" on page 103 for further details.

9.4.3 Replacement Policy

The replacement policy refers to how a way is chosen to hold an incoming cache line on a miss which will result in a cache fill. The replacement policy is least recently used (LRU), but excluding any locked ways. The LRU bit(s) in the way-select array encode the order in which ways on that line have been accessed.

On a cache miss, the lock and LRU bits for the tag and way-select entries of the selected line may be used to determine the way which will be chosen.

The LRU field in the way select array is updated as follows:

- On a cache hit, the associated way is updated to be the most recently used. The order of the other ways relative to each another is unchanged.

- On a cache refill, the filled way is updated to be the most recently used.

- On CACHE instructions, the update of the LRU bits depends on the type of operation to be performed:

  - **Index (Writeback) Invalidate**: Least-recently used.

  - **Index Load Tag**: No update.

- **Index Store Tag, WST=0:** Most-recently used if valid bit is set in *TagLo* CP0 register. Least-recently used if valid bit is cleared in *TagLo* CP0 register.

- **Index Store Tag, WST=1:** Update the field with the contents of the *TagLo* CP0 register (refer to Table 9.2 for the valid values of this field).

- **Index Store Data:** No update.

- **Hit Invalidate:** Least-recently used if a hit is generated, otherwise unchanged.

- **Fill:** Most-recently used.

- **Hit (Writeback) Invalidate:** Least-recently used if a hit is generated, otherwise unchanged.

- **Hit Writeback:** No update.

- **Fetch and Lock:** For instruction cache, no update. For data cache, most-recently used.

If all ways are valid, then any locked ways will be excluded from consideration for replacement. For the unlocked ways, the LRU bits are used to identify the way which has been used least recently, and that way is selected for replacement.

If the way selected for replacement has its dirty bit asserted in the way-select array, then that 32-byte line will be written back to memory before the new fill can occur.

9.4.4 Line Locking

When configured with 4-way set associativity, line locking is supported in both caches. A line can be locked by either Fetch and Lock or Index Store Tag CACHE instructions. Furthermore, a particular way can be excluded from being selected for replacement when a given TC or a given VPE gets a cache miss (See Chapter 7, “VPEOpt Register (CP0 Register 1, Select 7)” on page 179 and Chapter 7, “VPEOpt Register (CP0 Register 1, Select 7)” on page 179).

Locking lines in the caches is somewhat counter to the idea of coherence. If a line is locked into a particular cache, it is expected that any processes utilizing that data will be locked to that processor and coherence is not needed. Based on this usage model, locking coherent lines into the cache is not recommended. If it is done, the CPUs use the following rules:

- SYNCI instructions are user-mode instructions. Since locking is a kernel mode feature (requires the CACHE instruction), SYNCI is not allowed to unlock cache lines. This applies to both local and globalized SYNCI instructions.

- Locking overrides coherence. Intervention requests from other CPUs and I/O devices that match on a locked line are treated as misses.

- Self-intervention requests for globalized CACHE instructions are allowed to affect a locked line. This is done primarily for handling lock and unlock requests for kseg0 addresses when kseg0 is being treated coherently.

- The CPU does not support the locking/exclusion of all 4 ways of either cache at a particular index. At least one way must be both unlocked and available for replacement according to $VPEOpt_{IWX/DWX}$. If all 4 ways of the cache at a given index are locked/excluded, subsequent cache misses at that cache index will displace one of the locked/excluded lines.

9.5 CACHE Instruction

Both caches support the CACHE instructions that allow users to manipulate the contents of the Data and Tag arrays, including the locking of individual cache lines. These instructions are described in detail in Chapter 15, “1004K™ Processor CPU Instructions” on page 395.

The CACHE Index Load Tag and Index Store Tag instructions can be used to read and write the WS- RAM by setting the *WST* bit in the *ErrCtl* register. (The *ErrCtl* register is described in Section 7.2.59 “ErrCtl Register (CP0 Register 26, Select 0)”.) Similarly, the *SPR* bit in the *ErrCtl* register will cause Index Load Tag and Index Store Tag instructions to access the pseudo-tags associated with the scratchpad RAM array. Finally, the *ITC* bit in the *ErrCtl* register will cause Index Load Tag and Index Store Tag instructions to access the pseudo-tags associated with the ITC block. Note that when the *WST, ITC,* and *SPR* bits are zero, the CACHE index instructions access the cache Tag array.

Not all values of the WS field are valid for defining the order in which the ways are selected. This is only an issue, however, if the WS-RAM is written after the initialization (invalidation) of the Tag array. Valid WS field encodings for way selection order is shown in Table 9.2.

Table 9.2 Way Selection Encoding, 4 Ways

Selection Order[1]	WS[5:0]	Selection Order	WS[5:0]
0123	000000	2013	100010
0132	000001	2031	110010
0213	000010	2103	100110
0231	010010	2130	101110
0312	010001	2301	111010
0321	010011	2310	111110
1023	000100	3012	011001
1032	000101	3021	011011
1203	100100	3102	011101
1230	101100	3120	111101
1302	001101	3201	111011
1320	101101	3210	111111

1. The order is indicated by listing the least-recently used way to the left and the most-recently used way to the right, etc.

9.6 Software Cache Testing

Typically, the cache RAM arrays will be tested using BIST. It is, however, possible for software running on the processor to test all of the arrays. Of course, testing of the I-cache arrays should be done from an uncacheable space with interrupts disabled in order to maintain the cache contents. There are multiple methods for testing these arrays in software, only one is presented here.

9.6.1 I-Cache and Primary D-cache Tag Arrays

These arrays can be tested via the Index Load Tag and Index Store Tag varieties of the CACHE instruction. Index Store Tag will write the contents of the *TagLo* register into the selected tag entry. Index Load Tag will read the selected tag entry into the *TagLo*.

If parity is implemented, the parity bits can be tested as a normal bit by setting the PO bit in the ErrCtl register. This will override the parity calculation and write *P* bit in *TagLo* as the parity value.

9.6.2 Duplicate D-cache Tag Array

This array can be tested Index Load Tag and Index Store Tag varieties of the CACHE instruction. In order to access the duplicate tags, the *WST* and *SPR* bits of *ErrCtl* should both be set. Index Store Tag will write the contents of the *TagLo* register into the selected tag entry. Index Load Tag will read the selected tag entry into the *TagLo*. In normal mode, with *WST* and *SPR* cleared, IndexStoreTags will write into both the primary and duplicate tags, while Index-LoadTags will read the primary tag.

If parity is implemented, the parity bit can be tested as a normal bit by setting the *PO* bit in the *ErrCtl* register. This will override the parity calculation and write *P* bit in *TagLo* as the parity value.

9.6.3 I-Cache Data Array

This array can be tested using the Index Store Data and Index Load Tag varieties of the CACHE instruction. The Index Store Data variety is enabled by setting the *WST* bit in the *ErrCtl* register.

The precode bits in the array can be tested by setting the *PCO* bit in the *ErrCtl* register. This will write the PCI field in the *ErrCtl* register instead of calculating the precode bits on a write.

The parity bits in the array can be tested by setting the *PO* bit in the *ErrCtl* register. This will use the *PI* field in *ErrCtl* instead of calculating the parity on a write.

The rest of the data bits are read/written to/from the *DataLo* and *DataHi* registers.

9.6.4 I-Cache WS Array

The testing of this array is done with via Index Load Tag and Index Store Tag CACHE instructions. By setting the *WST* bit in the *ErrCtl* register, these operations will read and write the WS array instead of the tag array.

9.6.5 D-Cache Data Array

This array can be tested using the Index Store Tag CACHE, SW, and LW instructions. First, use Index Store Tag to set the initial state of the tags to valid with a known physical address (PA). Write the array using SW instructions to the PAs that are resident in the cache. The value can then be read using LW instructions and compared to the expected data.

The parity bits can be implicitly tested using this mechanism. The parity bits can be explicitly tested by setting the *PO* bit in *ErrCtl* and using Index Store Data and Index Load Tag CACHE operations. The parity bits (one bit per byte) are read/written to/from the *PD* field in *ErrCtl*. Unlike the I-cache, the *DataHi* register is not used and only 32b of data is read/written per operation.

9.6.6 D-cache WS Array

The dirty bits in this array will be tested when the data tag is tested. The LRU bits can be tested using the same mechanism as the I-cache WS array.

9.7 Memory Coherence Issues

The 1004K CPU supports cache coherency in a multi-CPU 1004K Coherent Processing System using Cache Coherence Attributes (CCAs) specified on a per cache-line basis and an Intervention Port containing coherent requests by all CPUs in the system. Each 1004K monitors its Intervention Port and updates the state of its cache lines (valid, lock, and dirty tag bits) accordingly.

The L1 data caches utilize a standard MESI protocol. Each cache line will be in one of the following four states:

- Invalid: The line is not present in this cache.
- Shared: This cache has a read-only copy of the line. The line may be present in other L1 data caches, also in a Shared state. The line will have the same value as it does in the L2 cache or memory.
- Exclusive: This cache has a copy of the line with the right to modify. The line is not present in other L1 data caches. The line is still clean - consistent with the value in L2 cache or memory.
- Modified: This cache has a dirty copy of the line. The line is not present in other L1 data caches. This is the only up-to-date copy of the data in the system (the value in the L2 cache or memory is stale).

The SYNC instruction may also be useful to software enforcing memory coherence, as it flushes the CPU’s write buffers.

For more information on cache coherency in a 1004K Coherent Processing System, refer to *MIPS32® 1004K™ Coherent Processor System User’s Manual* [8].

Chapter 10

Power Management in the 1004K™ CPU

A 1004K CPU offers a number of power management features, including low-power design, active power management and power-down modes of operation. The CPU is a static design that supports changing the clock frequency or even stopping the clocks to manage power. The WAIT instruction suspends execution until an interrupt is detected and can put the CPU into a low power mode.

The CPU provides two basic mechanisms for system level low-power support discussed in the following sections.

- Section 10.1 "Register-Controlled Power Management"
- Section 10.2 "Instruction-Controlled Power Management"

10.1 Register-Controlled Power Management

The RP bit in the CP0 *Status* register enables a standard software mechanism for placing the system into a low power state. The state of the RP bit is available externally via the *SI_RP* output signal. Three additional pins, *SI_EX*L, *SI_ERL*, and *EJ_DebugM* support the power management function by allowing the user to change the power state if an exception or error occurs while the CPU is in a low power state. This interface is replicated for VPE1 and consists of the *SI_RP_1*, *SI_EXL_1*, *SI_ERL_1,* and *EJ_DebugM_1* signals. The function of the VPE1 interface is the same as the VPE0 interface described below.

Setting the RP bit of the CP0 *Status* register causes the CPU to assert the *SI_RP* signal. The external agent can then decide whether to reduce the clock frequency and place the CPU into power down mode.

If an interrupt is taken while the device is in power down mode, that interrupt may need to be serviced depending on the needs of the application. The interrupt causes an exception which in turn causes the EXL bit to be set. The setting of the EXL bit causes the assertion of the *SI_EXL* signal on the external bus, indicating to the external agent that an interrupt has occurred. At this time the external agent can choose to either speed up the clocks and service the interrupt or let it be serviced at the lower clock speed.

The setting of the ERL bit causes the assertion of the *SI_ERL* signal on the external bus, indicating to the external agent that an error has occurred. At this time the external agent can choose to either speed up the clocks and service the error or let it be serviced at the lower clock speed.

Similarly, the *EJ_DebugM* signal indicates that the processor is in debug mode. Debug mode is entered when the processor takes a debug exception. If fast handling of this is desired, the external agent can speed up the clocks.

The CPU provides four power down signals that are part of the system interface. Three of the pins change state as the corresponding bits in the CP0 *Status* register are set or cleared. The fourth pin indicates that the processor is in debug mode:

- The *SI_RP* signal represents the state of the RP bit (27) in the CP0 *Status* register.
- The *SI_EXL* signal represents the state of the EXL bit (1) in the CP0 *Status* register.

- The *SI_ERL* signal represents the state of the ERL bit (2) in the CP0 *Status* register.
- The *EJ_DebugM* signal indicates that the processor has entered debug mode.

10.2 Instruction-Controlled Power Management

On a single threaded CPU, the execution of the WAIT instruction brings the CPU into a low power state where the internal clocks can be stopped and the pipeline frozen. On a multi-threaded CPU, we want to continue executing instructions on other Thread Contexts. The low power, sleep mode is only entered when all TCs are idle. TCs are considered idle in the following circumstances

- a WAIT instruction has been executed and there is not an interrupt on that VPE
- a YIELD instruction has been executed and the yield qualifier has not been met
- an ITC access is blocked
- TC is not runnable due to coprocessor0 state

When all of the Thread Contexts on the processor are in any of the above idle conditions, the CPU will be brought into a low power state. The primary clock is stopped. The internal timer and some of the input pins (*SI_Int[_1][5:0]*, *SI_NMI[_1]*, *SI_Reset,* and *EJ_DINT[_1]*) continue to run. The clock is not shut down until all bus and coprocessor transactions have completed.

If coherence is enabled, the CPU may still receive interventions from other CPUs while it is asleep. The CPU will quickly wake up, service the intervention, and then go back to sleep.

10.2.1 CPUWait IE/IXMT Ignore

A feature is included in the core that simplifies the task of using the WAIT instruction in the idle loop of an OS. The WAIT instruction is typically in block of code where the OS first checks to see if there is any pending work and if there is not, it will execute the WAIT as shown below.

```
if (!pending)
{
    wait();
}
```

There is a tricky race condition present in this code. If an interrupt arrives between the pending check and the WAIT instruction, the service routine will return and execute the WAIT and go to sleep. However, the interrupt may have been enabling some pending work to be done in the ‘bottom-half’ processing. If the core goes back to sleep, this pending work will not be done until the next interrupt arrives.

The OS can check to see if the interrupt was signalled in this window and adjust the EPC value to before the pending check, but this involves a fair amount of work. The Wait IE/IXMT Ignore feature enables a simpler solution for the race condition. With this feature, a WAIT condition will be terminated by an active interrupt signal, even if that signal is prevented from causing an interrupt by $Status_{IE}$ being clear or $TCStatus_{IXMT}$ being set. This allows interrupts to be disabled in this section of code while still allowing the WAIT to complete.

An example of the assembly code for making use of this feature follows:

```
LEAF(r4k_wait)
```

```
.set push
.set noreorder
di  t4                        # Clear Status.IE and preserve old value in t4
LONG_L t0, ti_flags($28)      # Get flag bits
andi   t0, _TIF_NEED_RESCHED  # Isolate reschedule flag
bnez   t0, 1f                 # branch around wait if pending work
nop
wait
1: mtc0t4, C0_Status          # restore status register
.set pop
jr ra
nop
END(r4k_wait)
```

Note that this sequence would not be safe to execute on a core without this feature. In that case, a normal interrupt will generally not wake up the core if $Status_{IE}$=0. The $Config7_{WII}$ bit indicates whether this feature is present on the core.

Chapter 11

EJTAG Debug Support in the 1004K™ CPU

The EJTAG debug logic in the 1004K CPU is compliant with EJTAG Specification 5.0 and includes:

1. Standard CPU debug features

2. Optional hardware breakpoints

3. Standard Test Access Port (TAP) for a dedicated connection to a debug host

4. Optional MIPS Trace capability for program counter/data address/data value trace to On-chip memory or to Trace probe

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Section 11.1 "Debug Control Register"
- Section 11.2 "Hardware Breakpoints"
- Section 11.3 "Test Access Port (TAP)"
- Section 11.4 "EJTAG TAP Registers"
- Section 11.5 "TAP Processor Accesses"
- Section 11.6 "PC Sampling"
- Section 11.7 "Fast Debug Channel"
- Section 11.8 "MIPS® Trace"
- Section 11.9 "PDtrace™ Registers (Software Control)"
- Section 11.10 "Trace Control Block (TCB) Registers (Hardware Control)"
- Section 11.11 "Enabling MIPS Trace"
- Section 11.12 "TCB Trigger Logic"
- Section 11.13 "MIPS Trace Cycle-by-Cycle Behavior"
- Section 11.14 "TCB On-Chip Trace Memory"

11.1 Debug Control Register

The Debug Control Register (*DCR*) register controls and provides information about debug issues and is always provided with the 1004K CPU. The register is memory-mapped in drseg at offset 0x0.

The DataBrk and InstBrk bits indicate if hardware breakpoints are included in the implementation, and debug software is expected to read hardware breakpoint registers for additional information.

Hardware and software interrupts are maskable for non-debug mode with the INTE bit, which works in addition to the other mechanisms for interrupt masking and enabling. NMI is maskable in non-debug mode with the NMIE bit, and a pending NMI is indicated through the NMIP bit.

The SRE bit allows implementation dependent masking of some sources for reset. The 1004K CPU does not distinguish between soft and hard reset, but typically only soft reset sources in the system would be maskable and hard sources such as the reset switch would not be. The soft reset masking should only be applied to a soft reset source if that source can be efficiently masked in the system, thus resulting in no reset at all. If that is not possible, then that soft reset source should not be masked, since a partial soft reset may cause the system to fail or hang. There is no automatic indication of whether the SRE is effective, so the user must consult system documentation.

The PE bit reflects the ProbEn bit from the EJTAG Control register (*ECR*), whereby the probe can indicate to the debug software that the probe will service dmseg accesses. The reset value in the table below takes effect on any CPU reset.

Figure 11.1 DCR Register Format

<table>
<tr><td>31</td><td>30</td><td>29</td><td>28</td><td>27</td><td>26</td><td>25</td><td>24</td><td>23</td><td>22</td><td>21</td><td>20</td><td>19</td><td>18</td><td>17</td><td>16</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">0</td><td>ENM</td><td colspan="2">0</td><td>PCIM</td><td>PCno ASID</td><td>DASQ</td><td>DASe</td><td>DAS</td><td colspan="3">0</td><td>FDC Impl</td><td>Data Brk</td><td>Inst Brk</td></tr>
<tr><td>15</td><td>14</td><td>13</td><td>12</td><td>11</td><td>10</td><td>9</td><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>IVM</td><td>DVM</td><td colspan="2">0</td><td>RD Vec</td><td>CBT</td><td>PCS</td><td colspan="3">PCR</td><td>PCSe</td><td>IntE</td><td>NMIE</td><td>NMI pend</td><td>SRstE</td><td>Prob En</td></tr>
</table>

Table 11.1 DCR Register Field Descriptions

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>ENM</td><td>29</td><td>Endianess in which the processor is running in kernel and Debug Mode:
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Little endian</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Big endian</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
</table>

Table 11.1 DCR Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>PCIM</td><td>26</td><td>Configure PC Sampling to capture all executed addresses or only those that miss the instruction cache
This feature is not supported and this bit will read as 0..<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>All PC’s captured</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Capture only PC’s that miss the cache.</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>PCnoASID</td><td>25</td><td>Controls whether the PCSAMPLE scan chain includes or omits the ASID field
ASID is always included so this bit will read as 0.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>ASID included in PCSAMPLE scan</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>ASID omitted from PCSAMPLE scan</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>DASQ</td><td>24</td><td>Qualifies Data Address Sampling using a data breakpoint.
Data address sampling is not supported so this bit will read as 0<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>All data addresses are sampled</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Sample matches of data breakpoint 0</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>DASe</td><td>23</td><td>Enables Data Address Sampling
Data address sampling is not supported so this bit will read as 0<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Data Address sampling disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Data Address sampling enabled.</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>DAS</td><td>22</td><td>Indicates if the Data Address Sampling feature is implemented.
Data address sampling is not supported so this bit will read as 0.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No DA Sampling implemented</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>DA Sampling implemented</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>FDCImpl</td><td>18</td><td>Indicates if the fast debug channel is implemented<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No fast debug channel implemented</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Fast debug channel implemented</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>1</td></tr>
</table>

Table 11.1 DCR Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>DataBrk</td><td>17</td><td>Indicates if data hardware breakpoint is implemented:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No data hardware breakpoint implemented</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Data hardware breakpoint implemented</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>InstBrk</td><td>16</td><td>Indicates if instruction hardware breakpoint is implemented:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No instruction hardware breakpoint implemented</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Instruction hardware breakpoint implemented</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>IVM</td><td>15</td><td>Indicates if inverted data value match on data hardware breakpoints is implemented:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No inverted data value match on data hardware breakpoints implemented</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Inverted data value match on data hardware breakpoints implemented</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>DVM</td><td>14</td><td>Indicates if a data value store on a data value breakpoint match is implemented:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No data value store on a data value breakpoint match implemented</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Data value store on a data value breakpoint match implemented</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>RDVec</td><td>11</td><td>Enables relocation of the debug exception vector. The value in the DebugVectorAddr register is used for EJTAG exceptions when ProbTrap=0,and RDVec=1.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>CBT</td><td>10</td><td>Indicates if complex breakpoint block is implemented:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No complex breakpoint block implemented</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Complex breakpoint block implemented</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>

Table 11.1 DCR Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>PCS</td><td>9</td><td>Indicates if the PC Sampling feature is implemented.<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No PC Sampling implemented</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>PC Sampling implemented</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>PCR</td><td>8:6</td><td>PC Sampling rate. Values 0 to 7 map to values 2^5 to 2^{12} cycles, respectively. That is, a PC sample is written out every 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, 1024, 2048, or 4096 cycles respectively. The external probe or software is allowed to set this value to the desired sample rate.</td><td>R/W</td><td>7</td></tr>
<tr><td>PCSe</td><td>5</td><td>If the PC sampling feature is implemented, then indicates whether PC sampling is initiated or not. That is, a value of 0 indicates that PC sampling is not enabled and when the bit value is 1, then PC sampling is enabled and the counters are operational.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>IntE</td><td>4</td><td>Hardware and software interrupt enable for Non-Debug Mode, in conjunction with other disable mechanisms:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Interrupt disabled</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Interrupt enabled depending on other enabling mechanisms</td></tr></table></td><td>R/W</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>NMIE</td><td>3</td><td>Non-Maskable Interrupt (NMI) enable for Non-Debug Mode:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>NMI disabled</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>NMI enabled</td></tr></table></td><td>R/W</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>NMIpend</td><td>2</td><td>Indication for pending NMI:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No NMI pending</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>NMI pending</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>SRstE</td><td>1</td><td>Controls soft reset enable:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Soft reset masked for soft reset sources dependent on implementation</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Soft reset is fully enabled</td></tr></table></td><td>R/W</td><td>1</td></tr>
</table>

Table 11.1 DCR Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	**Bits**			
ProbEn	0	Indicates value of the ProbEn value in the ECR register: **Encoding** / **Meaning** 0 — No access should occur to the dmseg segment 1 — Probe services accesses to the dmseg segment Bit is read-only (R) and reads as zero if not implemented.	R	Same value as ProbEn in ECR
0	MSB:30, 28:27, 21:19, 13:12	Must be written as zeros; return zeros on reads.	0	0

11.1.1 DebugVectorAddr Register

This register allows an alternate debug exception vector address to be specified, which can enable placing a debug monitor program into RAM for much faster execution than the default ROM address. This register is memory mapped at an offset of 0x00020 within the DRSEG memory segment.

Figure 11.2 shows the register format and Table 11.3 describes the fields in this register.

Bits 31 and 30 and fixed at 0b10, restricting the exception vector to be in kseg0 or kseg1. For the case of a cache parity error in debug mode, bit 29 will also be forced to one to place the exception vector in kseg1 to avoid cacheable accesses. Table 11.2 shows the different exception vector locations that are possible.

Table 11.2 Debug Exception Vectors

$ECR_{ProbTrap}$	DCR_{RdVec}	SI_UseExceptionBase	Cache Error?	Debug Exception Vector
1	x	x	x	16#ff200200
0	1	x	0	DebugVectorAddr$_{31\ 0}$
0	1	x	1	2#101 || DebugVectorAddr$_{28\ 0}$
0	0	1	0	2#10 || SI_ExceptionBase$_{29\ 12}$ || 16#480
0	0	1	1	2#101 || SI_ExceptionBase$_{28\ 12}$ || 16#480
0	0	0	x	16#bfc00480

Figure 11.2 DebugVectorAddr Register Format

Table 11.3 DebugVectorAddr Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
1	31	Ignored on write; returns one on read.	R	1
0	31	Ignored on write; returns zero on read.	R	0
DebugVectorOffset	29:7	Programmable Debug Exception Vector Offset	R/W	0x7f8009 (corresponds to 0xbfc00480)
0	6:1	Ignored on write, returns zero on read.	R	0
ISA	0	ISA mode to be used for debug exception handler. Only used on cores implementing microMIPS.	R	0

11.2 Hardware Breakpoints

Hardware breakpoints provide for the comparison by hardware of executed instructions and data load/store transactions. It is possible to set instruction breakpoints on addresses even in ROM area. Data breakpoints can be set to cause a debug exception on a specific data transaction. Instruction and data hardware breakpoints are alike for many aspects, and are thus described in parallel in the following. The term hardware is not applied to breakpoint, unless required to distinguish it from software breakpoint.

There are two types of simple hardware breakpoints implemented in the 1004K CPU; Instruction breakpoints and Data breakpoints.

A CPU may be configured with the following breakpoint options:

- Zero, two, or four instruction breakpoints
- Zero, one, or two data breakpoints

11.2.1 Features of Instruction Breakpoint

Instruction breaks occur on instruction fetch operations and the break is set on the virtual address used by the instruction fetch unit. Instruction breaks can also be made on the ASID value used by the TLB-based MMU. Finally, a mask can be applied to the virtual address to set breakpoints on a range of instructions.

Instruction breakpoints compare the virtual address of the executed instructions (PC) and the ASID with the registers for each instruction breakpoint including masking of address and ASID. When an instruction breakpoint matches, a trigger is generated and a debug exception is optionally signalled. An internal bit in the instruction breakpoint registers is set to indicate that the match occurred.

11.2.2 Features of Data Breakpoint

Data breakpoints occur on load/store transactions. Breakpoints are set on virtual address and ASID values, similar to the Instruction breakpoint. Data breakpoints can be set on a load, a store or both. Data breakpoints can also be set based on the value of the load/store operation. Finally, masks can be applied to both the virtual address and the load/store value.

Data breakpoints compare the transaction type (TYPE), which may be load or store, the virtual address of the transaction (ADDR), the ASID, accessed bytes (BYTELANE) and data value (DATA), with the registers for each data

breakpoint including masking or qualification on the transaction properties. When a data breakpoint matches, a trigger is generated and a debug exception is optionally signalled. An internal bit in the data breakpoint registers is set to indicate that the match occurred.

11.2.3 Instruction Breakpoint Registers Overview

The register with implementation indication and status for instruction breakpoints in general is shown in Table 11.4.

Table 11.4 Overview of Status Register for Instruction Breakpoints

Register Mnemonic	Register Name and Description
IBS	Instruction Breakpoint Status

Up to four instruction breakpoints are available and are numbered 0 to 3 for registers and breakpoints, and the number is indicated by n. The registers for each breakpoint are shown in Table 11.5.

Table 11.5 Overview of Registers for Each Instruction Breakpoint

Register Mnemonic	Register Name and Description
IBAn	Instruction Breakpoint Address n
IBMn	Instruction Breakpoint Address Mask n
IBASIDn	Instruction Breakpoint ASID n
IBCn	Instruction Breakpoint Control n

11.2.4 Data Breakpoint Registers Overview

The register with implementation indication and status for data breakpoints in general is shown in Table 11.6.

Table 11.6 Overview of Status Register for Data Breakpoints

Register Mnemonic	Register Name and Description
DBS	Data Breakpoint Status

Up to two data breakpoints are available and are numbered 0 and 1 for registers and breakpoints, and the number is indicated by *n*. The registers for each breakpoint are shown in Table 11.7.

Table 11.7 Overview of Registers for Each Data Breakpoint

Register Mnemonic	Register Name and Description
DBAn	Data Breakpoint Address *n*
DBMn	Data Breakpoint Address Mask *n*
DBASIDn	Data Breakpoint ASID *n*
DBCn	Data Breakpoint Control *n*
DBVn	Data Breakpoint Value *n*

11.2.5 Conditions for Matching Breakpoints

A number of conditions must be fulfilled in order for a breakpoint to match on an executed instruction or a data transaction, as described in this section. Breakpoints only match for instructions executed in non-debug mode, never on instructions executed in debug mode.

The match of an enabled breakpoint always generates a trigger indication and can also generate a debug exception. The *BE* and/or *TE* bits in the *IBCn* or *DBCn* registers are used to enable the breakpoints.

Debug software should not configure breakpoints to compare on an ASID value unless a TLB is present in the implementation.

11.2.5.1 Conditions for Matching Instruction Breakpoints

When an instruction breakpoint is enabled, that breakpoint is evaluated for the address of every executed instruction in non-debug mode, including execution of instructions at an address causing an address error on an instruction fetch. The breakpoint is not evaluated on instructions from a speculative fetch or execution, nor for addresses which are unaligned with an executed instruction.

A breakpoint match depends on the virtual address of the executed instruction (PC), which can be masked at the bit level, The match can also include an optional compare of the ASID and TC values. The registers for each instruction breakpoint contain the values and mask used in the compare, and the equation that determines the match is shown below in C-like notation.

```
IB_match =
          ( ! IBCn_TCuse || ( TC == IBC_TC ) ) &&
          ( ! IBCn_ASIDuse || ( ASID == IBASIDn_ASID ) ) &&
          ( <all 1's> == ( IBMn_IBM | ~ ( PC ^ IBAn_IBA ) &&
          ( (IBMn_ISAM | ~(ISAMode ^ IBAn_ISA))) )
```

The match indication for instruction breakpoints is always precise, i.e., indicated on the instruction causing the `IB_match` to be true.

11.2.5.2 Conditions for Matching Data Breakpoints

When a data breakpoint is enabled, that breakpoint is evaluated for every data transaction due to a load/store instruction executed in non-debug mode, including coprocessor loads/stores and transactions causing an address error on data access. The breakpoint is not evaluated due to a PREF instruction or other transactions which are not part of explicit load/store transactions in the execution flow, nor for addresses which are not the explicit load/store source or destination address.

A breakpoint match depends on the transaction type (`TYPE`) as load or store, the address, and optionally the data value of a transaction. Match also includes an optional compare of the TC value. The registers for each data breakpoint contain the values and mask used in the compare, and the equation that determines the match is shown below in C-like notation.

The overall match equation is the `DB_match`.

```
DB_match =
          ( !DBCn_TCuse ||( TC == DBCn_TC ) ) &&
          ( ( ( TYPE == load ) && ! DBCn_NoLB ) ||
            ( ( TYPE == store ) && ! DBCn_NoSB ) ) &&
          DB_addr_match && ( DB_no_value_compare || DB_value_match )
```

The match on the address part, DB_addr_match, depends on the virtual address of the transaction (ADDR), the ASID value, and the accessed bytes (BYTELANE) where BYTELANE[0] is 1 only if the byte at bits [7:0] on the bus is accessed, and BYTELANE[1] is 1 only if the byte at bits [15:8] is accessed, etc. The DB_addr_match is shown below.

```
DB_addr_match =
          ( ! DBCn_ASIDuse || ( ASID == DBASIDn_ASID ) ) &&
          ( <all 1's> == ( DBMn_DBM | ~ ( ADDR ^ DBAn_DBA ) ) ) &&
          ( <all 0's> != ( ~ BAI & BYTELANE ) )
```

The size of *DBCn*$_{\mathrm{BAI}}$ and BYTELANE is 8 bits. They are 8 bits to allow for data value matching on doubleword floating point loads and stores. For non-doubleword loads and stores, only the lower 4 bits will be used.

Data value compare is included in the match condition for the data breakpoint depending on the bytes (BYTELANE as described above) accessed by the transaction, and the contents of breakpoint registers. The DB_no_value_compare is shown below.

```
DB_no_value_compare =
          ( <all 1's> == ( DBCn_BLM | DBCn_BAI | ~ BYTELANE ) )
```

The size of *DBCn*$_{\mathrm{BLM}}$, *DBCn*$_{\mathrm{BAI}}$ and BYTELANE is 8 bits.

In case a data value compare is required, DB_no_value_compare is false, then the data value from the data bus (DATA) is compared and masked with the registers for the data breakpoint. The endianess is not considered in these match equations for value, as the compare uses the data bus value directly, thus debug software is responsible for setup of the breakpoint corresponding with endianess.

```
DB_value_match =
    ( ( DATA[7:0] == DBVn_DBV[7:0] ) || !BYTELANE[0] || DBCn_BLM[0] || DBCn_BAI[0] ) &&
    ( ( DATA[15:8] == DBVn_DBV[15:8] ) || !BYTELANE[1] || DBCn_BLM[1] || DBCn_BAI[1] ) &&
    ( ( DATA[23:16] == DBVn_DBV[23:16] ) || !BYTELANE[2] || DBCn_BLM[2] || DBCn_BAI[2] )&&
    ( ( DATA[31:24] == DBVn_DBV[31:24] ) || !BYTELANE[3] || DBCn_BLM[3] || DBCn_BAI[3] )&&
    ( ( DATA[39:32] == DBVn_DBV[39:32] ) || !BYTELANE[4] || DBCn_BLM[4] || DBCn_BAI[4] )&&
    ( ( DATA[47:40] == DBVn_DBV[47:40] ) || !BYTELANE[5] || DBCn_BLM[5] || DBCn_BAI[5] )&&
    ( ( DATA[55:48] == DBVn_DBV[55:48] ) || !BYTELANE[6] || DBCn_BLM[6] || DBCn_BAI[6] )&&
    ( ( DATA[63:56] == DBVn_DBV[63:56] ) || !BYTELANE[7] || DBCn_BLM[7] || DBCn_BAI[7] ))
```

The match for a data breakpoint without value compare is always precise, since the match expression is fully evaluated at the time the load/store instruction is executed. A true DB_match can thereby be indicated on the very same instruction causing the DB_match to be true. The match for data breakpoints with value compare is always imprecise.

11.2.6 Debug Exceptions from Breakpoints

Instruction and data breakpoints may be set up to generate a debug exception when the match condition is true, as described below.

11.2.6.1 Debug Exception by Instruction Breakpoint

If the breakpoint is enabled by the *BE* bit in the *IBCn* register, then a debug instruction break exception occurs if the IB_match equation is true. The corresponding *BS*[n] bit in the *IBS* register is set when the breakpoint generates the debug exception.

The debug instruction break exception is always precise, so the *DEPC* register and the *DBD* bit in the *Debug* register point to the instruction that caused the `IB_match` equation to be true.

The instruction receiving the debug exception does not update any registers due to the instruction, nor does any load or store by that instruction occur. Thus a debug exception from a data breakpoint cannot occur for instructions receiving a debug instruction break exception.

The debug handler usually returns to the instruction causing the debug instruction break exception, whereby the instruction is executed. Debug software is responsible for disabling the breakpoint when returning to the instruction; otherwise the debug instruction break exception reoccurs.

11.2.6.2 Debug Exception by Data Breakpoint

If the breakpoint is enabled by *BE* bit in the *DBCn* register, then a debug exception occurs when the DB_match condition is true. The corresponding *BS*[n] bit in the *DBS* register is set when the breakpoint generates the debug exception. A matching data breakpoint generates either a precise or imprecise debug exception.

Debug Data Break Load/Store Exception as a Precise Debug Exception

A precise debug data break exception occurs when a data breakpoint without value compare indicates a match. In this case the *DEPC* register and *DBD* bit in the *Debug* register points to the instruction that caused the `DB_match` equation to be true.

The instruction causing the debug data break exception does not update any registers due to the instruction, and the following applies to the load or store transaction causing the debug exception:

- A store transaction is not allowed to complete the store to the memory system.
- A load transaction with no data value compare, i.e. where the `DB_no_value_compare` is true for the match, is not allowed to complete the load.

The result of this is that the load or store instruction causing the debug data break exception appears as not executed.

If both data breakpoints without and with data value compare would match the same transaction and generate a debug exception, then the rules shown in Table 11.8 apply with respect to updating the *BS*[n] bits.

Table 11.8 Rules for Update of BS Bits on Data Breakpoint Exceptions

Instruction	Breakpoints that Match		Update of BS Bits for Matching Data Breakpoints	
	Without Value Compare	**With Value Compare**	**Without Value Compare**	**With Value Compare**
Load/Store	One or more	None	BS bits set for all	(No matching breakpoints)
Load	One or more	One or more	BS bits set for all	Unchanged BS bits since load of data value does not occur so match of the breakpoint cannot be determined
Load	None	One or more	(No matching breakpoints)	BS bits set for all
Store	One or more	One or more	BS bits set for all	BS bits set for all

Table 11.8 Rules for Update of BS Bits on Data Breakpoint Exceptions

Instruction	Breakpoints that Match		Update of BS Bits for Matching Data Breakpoints	
	Without Value Compare	With Value Compare	Without Value Compare	With Value Compare
Store	None	One or more	(No matching breakpoints)	BS bits set for all

Any *BS*[n] bit set prior to the match and debug exception are kept set, since *BS*[n] bits are only cleared by debug software.

The debug handler usually returns to the instruction causing the debug data break exception, whereby the instruction is re-executed. Debug software is responsible for disabling breakpoints when returning to the instruction, otherwise the debug data break exception will reoccur.

Debug Data Break Load/Store Exception as a Imprecise Debug Exception

An Debug Data Break Load/Store Imprecise exception occurs when a data breakpoint indicates an imprecise match. Imprecise matches are generated when data value compare is used. In this case, the *DEPC* register and *DBD* bit in the Debug register point to an instruction later in the execution flow rather than at the load/store instruction that caused the `DB_match` equation to be true.

The load/store instruction causing the Debug Data Break Load/Store Imprecise exception always updates the destination register and completes the access to the external memory system. Therefore this load/store instruction is not re-executed on return from the debug handler, because the *DEPC* register and *DBD* bit do not point to that instruction.

Several imprecise data breakpoints can be pending at a given time, if the bus system supports multiple outstanding data accesses. The breakpoints are evaluated as the accesses finalize, and a Debug Data Break Load/Store Imprecise exception is generated only for the first one that matches. Both the first and succeeding matches cause corresponding *BS* bits and *DDBLImpr*/*DDBSImpr* to be set, but no debug exception is generated for succeeding matches, because the processor is already in Debug Mode. Similarly, if a debug exception had already occurred at the time of the first match (for example, due to a precise debug exception), then all matches cause the corresponding *BS* bits and *DDBLImpr*/*DDBSImpr* to be set, but no debug exception is generated because the processor is already in Debug Mode.

The SYNC instruction, followed by appropriate spacing must be executed before the *BS* bits and *DDBLImpr*/*DDBSImpr* bits are accessed for read or write. This delay ensures that these bits are fully updated.

Any *BS* bit set prior to the match and debug exception remains set, because only debug software can clear the *BS* bits.

11.2.7 Breakpoint used as Triggerpoint

When an enabled instruction or data breakpoint matches, the corresponding bit in the *IBS.BS* or *DBS.BS* field is set. These fields are externalized on the *SI_Ibs* and *SI_Dbs* core outputs, respectively. These outputs are intended to be used to trigger external devices such as logic analyzers. Furthermore, breakpoint matches can also be used to start or stop PDtrace. See Section 11.11 “Enabling MIPS Trace” for details.

If the breakpoints are to be used only as trigger events, the signalling of the debug exception can be suppressed by clearing the *IBCn/DBCn.BE* field and setting the *IBCn/DBCn.TE* field.

11.2.8 Instruction Breakpoint Registers

The registers for instruction breakpoints are described below. These registers have implementation information and are used to set up the instruction breakpoints. All registers are in drseg with addresses as shown in Table 11.9.

Table 11.9 Addresses for Instruction Breakpoint Registers

Offset in drseg	Register Mnemonic	Register Name and Description
0x1000	*IBS*	Instruction Breakpoint Status
0x1100 + n * 0x100	*IBAn*	Instruction Breakpoint Address n
0x1108 + n * 0x100	*IBMn*	Instruction Breakpoint Address Mask n
0x1110 + n * 0x100	*IBASIDn*	Instruction Breakpoint ASID n
0x1118 + n * 0x100	*IBCn*	Instruction Breakpoint Control n
n is breakpoint number in range 0 to 3		

An example of some of the registers; *IBA0* is at offset 0x1100 and *IBC2* is at offset 0x1318.

11.2.8.1 Instruction Breakpoint Status (IBS) Register

Compliance Level: Implemented only if instruction breakpoints are implemented.

The Instruction Breakpoint Status (*IBS*) register holds implementation and status information about the instruction breakpoints.

The ASID applies to all the instruction breakpoints.

Figure 11.3 IBS Register Format

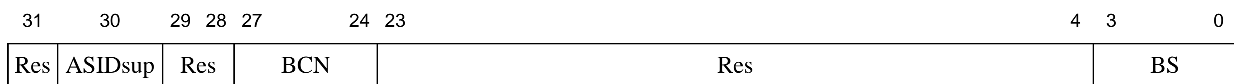


Table 11.10 IBS Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
Res	31	Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	R	0
ASIDsup	30	Hardware and software interrupt enable for Non-Debug Mode, in conjunction with other disable mechanisms: **Encoding** / **Meaning** 0 — ASID compare not supported 1 — ASID compare supported (IBASIDn register implemented)	R	Fixed MMU - 0 TLB - 1
Res	29:28	Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	R	0
BCN	27:24	Number of instruction breakpoints implemented.	R	2 or 4
Res	23:4	Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	R	0

Table 11.10 IBS Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
BS	3:0	Break status for breakpoint n is at BS[n], with n from 0 to 3. The bit is set to 1 when the corresponding breakpoint is enabled and the condition has matched. If only two instruction breakpoints are implemented, bits 2 and 3 must be written as zero and will return zero on read.	R/W	Undefined

11.2.8.2 Instruction Breakpoint Address n (IBAn) Register

Compliance Level: Implemented only for implemented instruction breakpoints.

The Instruction Breakpoint Address *n* (*IBAn*) register has the address used in the condition for instruction breakpoint *n*.

Figure 11.4 IBAn Register Format

Table 11.11 IBAn Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
IBA	31:1	Instruction breakpoint address for condition.	R/W	Undefined
ISA	0	Instruction breakpoint ISA mode for condition	R/W	Undefined

11.2.8.3 Instruction Breakpoint Address Mask n (IBMn) Register

Compliance Level: Implemented only for implemented instruction breakpoints.

The Instruction Breakpoint Address Mask *n* (*IBMn*) register has the mask for the address compare used in the condition for instruction breakpoint *n*.

Figure 11.5 IBMn Register Format

Table 11.12 IBMn Register Field Descriptions

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bit(s)</th></tr>
<tr><td>IBM</td><td>31:1</td><td>Instruction breakpoint address mask for condition:
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Corresponding address bit not masked</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Corresponding address bit masked</td></tr></table></td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>ISAM</td><td>0</td><td>Instruction breakpoint ISA mode mask for condition:
condition:
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Corresponding address bit not masked</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Corresponding address bit masked</td></tr></table>
0: ISA mode considered for match condition
1: ISA mode masked</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
</table>

11.2.8.4 Instruction Breakpoint ASID n (IBASIDn) Register

Compliance Level: Implemented only for implemented instruction breakpoints.

For processors with a TLB based MMU, this register is used to define an ASID value to be used in the match expression. For cores with a FM MMU, this register is reserved and reads as 0.

Figure 11.6 IBASIDn Register Format

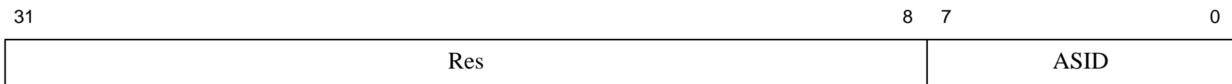


Table 11.13 IBASIDn Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
Res	31:8	Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	R	0
ASID	7:0	Instruction breakpoint ASID value for a compare.	R/W	Undefined

11.2.8.5 Instruction Breakpoint Control n (IBCn) Register

Compliance Level: Implemented only for implemented instruction breakpoints.

The Instruction Breakpoint Control *n* (*IBCn*) register controls the setup of instruction breakpoint *n*.

Figure 11.7 IBCn Register Format

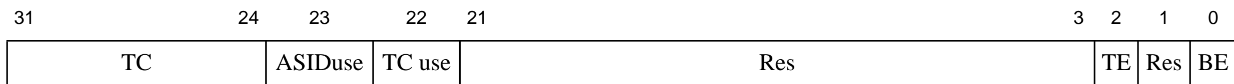


Table 11.14 IBCn Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	**Bits**			
TC	31:24	The value of TC (thread context) to match in the comparison to determine if the instruction break is to be taken. TC value is ignored if TCuse is set to 0.	R/W	Undefined
ASIDuse	23	Use ASID value in compare for instruction breakpoint n: **Encoding** / **Meaning** 0 — Don't use ASID value in compare 1 — Use ASID value in compare	R/W	Undefined
TCuse	22	Use TC value in comparison for instruction breakpoint: n: **Encoding** / **Meaning** 0 — Do not use value in compare 1 — Use TC value in compare	R/W	Undefined
Res	21:3	Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	R	0
TE	2	Trigger-only Enable. This field is ignored when BE is set. When BE is cleared and TE is set, instruction breakpoint n is enabled, but will not signal a debug exception.	R/W	0
Res	1	Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	R	0
BE	0	Breakpoint Enable. When set, instruction breakpoint n is enabled and will signal a debug exception when its condition matches.	R/W	0

11.2.9 Data Breakpoint Registers

The registers for data breakpoints are described below. These registers have implementation information and are used the setup the data breakpoints. All registers are in drseg, and the addresses are shown in Table 11.15.

Table 11.15 Addresses for Data Breakpoint Registers

Offset in drseg	Register Mnemonic	Register Name and Description
0x2000	*DBS*	Data Breakpoint Status
0x2100 + 0x100 * n	*DBAn*	Data Breakpoint Address n
0x2108 + 0x100 * n	*DBMn*	Data Breakpoint Address Mask n
0x2110 + 0x100 * n	*DBASIDn*	Data Breakpoint ASID n
0x2118 + 0x100 * n	*DBCn*	Data Breakpoint Control n
n is breakpoint number as 0 or 1		

Table 11.15 Addresses for Data Breakpoint Registers

Offset in drseg	Register Mnemonic	Register Name and Description
0x2120 + 0x100 * n	*DBVn*	Data Breakpoint Value n
0x2124 + 0x100*n	*DBVHn*	Data Breakpoint Value High n
n is breakpoint number as 0 or 1		

An example of some of the registers; *DBM0* is at offset 0x2108 and *DBV1* is at offset 0x2220.

11.2.9.1 Data Breakpoint Status (DBS) Register

Compliance Level: Implemented if data breakpoints are implemented.

The Data Breakpoint Status (*DBS*) register holds implementation and status information about the data breakpoints.

The ASIDsup field indicates whether ASID compares are supported.

Figure 11.8 DBS Register Format

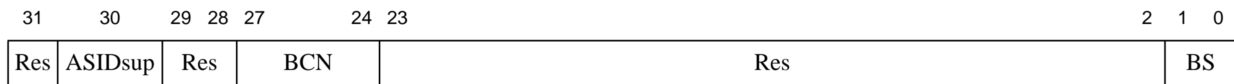


Table 11.16 DBS Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
Res	31	Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	R	0
ASID	30	Indicates that ASID compares are supported in data breakpoints. n: <table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Don’t use ASID value in compare</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Use ASID value in compare</td></tr></table> 0: Not supported 1: Supported	R	TLB MMU - 1 FM MMU - 0
Res	29:28	Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	R	0
BCN	27:24	Number of data breakpoints implemented.	R	1 or 2
Res	23:2	Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	R	0
BS	1:0	Break status for breakpoint n is at BS[n], with n from 0 to 1. The bit is set to 1 when the condition for the corresponding breakpoint has matched and the condition has matched. If only one data breakpoint is implemented, bit 1 must be written as 0 and will return 0 on reads.	R/W0	Undefined

11.2.9.2 Data Breakpoint Address n (DBAn) Register

Compliance Level: Implemented only for implemented data breakpoints.

The Data Breakpoint Address n (*DBAn*) register has the address used in the condition for data breakpoint n.

Figure 11.9 DBAn Register Format

Table 11.17 DBAn Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
DBA	31:0	Data breakpoint address for condition.	R/W	Undefined

11.2.9.3 Data Breakpoint Address Mask n (DBMn) Register

Compliance Level: Implemented only for implemented data breakpoints.

The Data Breakpoint Address Mask n (*DBMn*) register has the mask for the address compare used in the condition for data breakpoint n.

Figure 11.10 DBMn Register Format

Table 11.18 DBMn Register Field Descriptions

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bit(s)</th></tr>
<tr><td>DBM</td><td>31:0</td><td>Data breakpoint address mask for condition:
n:
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Don’t use ASID value in compare</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Use ASID value in compare</td></tr></table>
0: Corresponding address bit not masked
1: Corresponding address bit masked</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
</table>

11.2.9.4 Data Breakpoint ASID n (DBASIDn) Register

Compliance Level: Implemented only for implemented data breakpoints.

For processors with a TLB based MMU, this register is used to define an ASID value to be used in the match expression. For cores with the FM MMU, this register is reserved and reads as 0.

Figure 11.11 DBASIDn Register Format

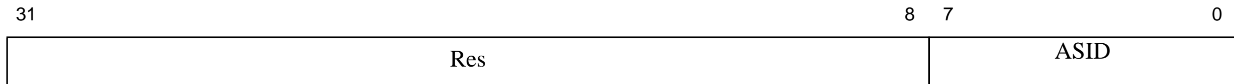


Table 11.19 DBASIDn Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
Res	31:8	Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	R	0
ASID	7:0	Data breakpoint ASID value for compares.	R/W	Undefined

11.2.9.5 Data Breakpoint Control n (DBCn) Register

Compliance Level: Implemented only for implemented data breakpoints.

The Data Breakpoint Control *n* (*DBCn*) register controls the setup of data breakpoint *n*.

Figure 11.12 DBCn Register Format

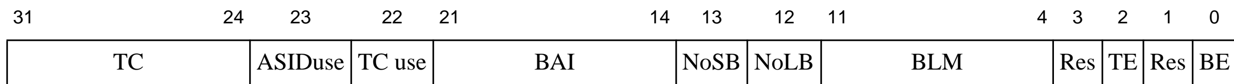


Table 11.20 DBCn Register Field Descriptions

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>TC</td><td>31:24</td><td>The value of TC to match in the comparison to determine if data break is to be taken. TC value is ignored if TCuse is set to 0</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>ASIDuse</td><td>23</td><td>Use ASID value in compare for data breakpoint n:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Don’t use ASID value in compare</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Use ASID value in compare</td></tr></table></td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>TCuse</td><td>22</td><td>Use TC value in comparison for data breakpoint n:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Do not use TC value in compare</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Use TC value in compare</td></tr></table></td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
</table>

Table 11.20 DBCn Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>BAI</td><td>21:14</td><td>Byte access ignore controls ignore of access to a specific byte. BAI[0] ignores access to byte at bits [7:0] of the data bus, BAI[1] ignores access to byte at bits [15:8], etc.:
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>Condition depends on access to corresponding byte</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Access for corresponding byte is ignored</td></tr>
</table></td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>NoSB</td><td>13</td><td>Controls if condition for data breakpoint is fulfilled on a store transaction:
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>Condition may be fulfilled on store transaction</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Condition is never fulfilled on store transaction</td></tr>
</table></td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>NoLB</td><td>12</td><td>Controls if condition for data breakpoint is fulfilled on a load transaction:
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>Condition may be fulfilled on load transaction</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Condition is never fulfilled on load transaction</td></tr>
</table></td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>BLM</td><td>11:4</td><td>Byte lane mask for value compare on data breakpoint. BLM[0] masks byte at bits [7:0] of the data bus, BLM[1] masks byte at bits [15:8], etc.:
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>Compare corresponding byte lane</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Mask corresponding byte lane</td></tr>
</table></td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>Res</td><td>3</td><td>Must be written as zero; returns zero on reads.</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>TE</td><td>2</td><td>Trigger-only Enable. This field is ignored when BE is set. When BE is cleared and TE is set, data breakpoint n is enabled, but will not signal a debug exception.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Res</td><td>1</td><td>Must be written as zero; returns zero on reads.</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>BE</td><td>0</td><td>Breakpoint Enable. When set, data breakpoint n is enabled and will signal a debug exception when its condition matches.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>

11.2.9.6 Data Breakpoint Value n (DBVn) Register

Compliance Level: Implemented only for implemented data breakpoints.

The Data Breakpoint Value n (*DBVn*) register has the value used in the condition for data breakpoint n.

Figure 11.13 DBVn Register Format

Table 11.21 DBVn Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
DBV	31:0	Data breakpoint value for condition.	R/W	Undefined

11.2.9.7 Data Breakpoint Value High n (DBVHn) Register

Compliance Level: Implemented only for implemented data breakpoints.

The Data Breakpoint Value High n (*DBVHn*) register has the value used in the condition for data breakpoint n.

Figure 11.14 DBVHn Register Format

Table 11.22 DBVHn Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
DBVH	31:0	Data breakpoint value high for condition. This register provides the high order bits [63:32] for data value on double-word floating point loads and stores.	R/W	Undefined

11.3 Test Access Port (TAP)

The following main features are supported by the TAP module:

- 5-pin industry standard JTAG Test Access Port (*TCK*, *TMS*, *TDI*, *TDO*, *TRST_N*) interface which is compatible with IEEE Std. 1149.1.
- Target chip and EJTAG feature identification available through the Test Access Port (TAP) controller.

- The processor can access external memory on the EJTAG Probe serially through the EJTAG pins. This is achieved through Processor Access (PA), and is used to eliminate the use of the system memory for debug routines.
- Support for both ROM based debugger and debugging both through TAP.

11.3.1 EJTAG Internal and External Interfaces

The external interface of the EJTAG module consists of the 5 signals defined by the IEEE standard.

Table 11.23 EJTAG Interface Pins

Pin	Type	Description
TCK	I	Test Clock Input Input clock used to shift data into or out of the Instruction or data registers. The *TCK* clock is independent of the processor clock, so the EJTAG probe can drive *TCK* independently of the processor clock frequency. The CPU signal for this is called *EJ_TCK*
TMS	I	Test Mode Select Input The *TMS* input signal is decoded by the TAP controller to control test operation. *TMS* is sampled on the rising edge of *TCK*. The CPU signal for this is called *EJ_TMS*
TDI	I	Test Data Input Serial input data (*TDI*) is shifted into the Instruction register or data registers on the rising edge of the *TCK* clock, depending on the TAP controller state. The CPU signal for this is called *EJ_TDI*
TDO	O	Test Data Output Serial output data is shifted from the Instruction or data register to the *TDO* pin on the falling edge of the *TCK* clock. When no data is shifted out, the *TDO* is 3-stated. The CPU signal for this is called *EJ_TDO* with output enable controlled by *EJ_TDOzstate*.
TRST_N	I	Test Reset Input (Optional pin) The *TRST_N* pin is an active-low signal for asynchronous reset of the TAP controller and instruction in the TAP module, independent of the processor logic. The processor is not reset by the assertion of *TRST_N*. The CPU signal for this is called *EJ_TRST_N* This signal is optional, but power-on reset must apply a low pulse on this signal at power-on and then leave it high, in case the signal is not available as a pin on the chip. If available on the chip, then it must be low on the board when the EJTAG debug features are unused by the probe.

11.3.2 Test Access Port Operation

The TAP controller is controlled by the Test Clock (*TCK*) and Test Mode Select (*TMS*) inputs. These two inputs determine whether an the Instruction register scan or data register scan is performed. The TAP consists of a small controller, driven by the *TCK* input, which responds to the *TMS* input as shown in the state diagram in Figure 11.15. The TAP uses both clock edges of *TCK*. *TMS* and *TDI* are sampled on the rising edge of *TCK*, while *TDO* changes on the falling edge of *TCK*.

At power-up the TAP is forced into the *Test-Logic-Reset* by low value on *TRST_N*. The TAP instruction register is thereby reset to IDCODE. No other parts of the EJTAG hardware are reset through the *Test-Logic-Reset* state.

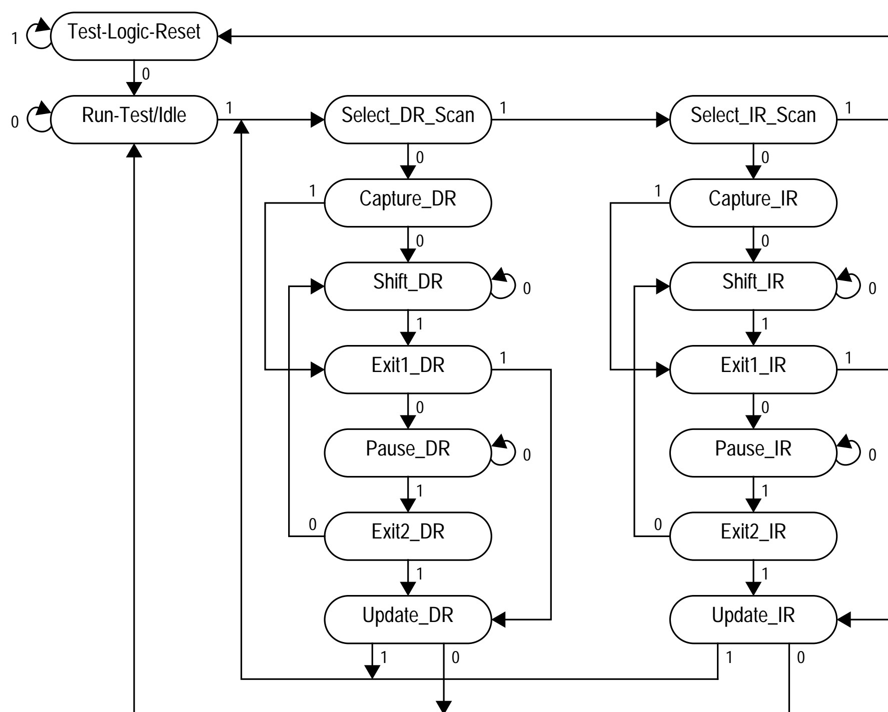
When test access is required, a protocol is applied via the *TMS* and *TCK* inputs, causing the TAP to exit the *Test-Logic-Reset* state and move through the appropriate states. From the *Run-Test/Idle* state, an Instruction register scan or a data register scan can be issued to transition the TAP through the appropriate states shown in Figure 11.15.

The states of the data and instruction register scan blocks are mirror images of each other adding symmetry to the protocol sequences. The first action that occurs when either block is entered is a capture operation. For the data registers, the *Capture-DR* state is used to capture (or parallel load) the data into the selected serial data path. In the Instruction register, the *Capture-IR* state is used to capture status information into the Instruction register.

From the *Capture* states, the TAP transitions to either the *Shift* or *Exit1* states. Normally the *Shift* state follows the *Capture* state so that test data or status information can be shifted out for inspection and new data shifted in. Following the *Shift* state, the TAP either returns to the *Run-Test/Idle* state via the *Exit1* and *Update* states or enters the *Pause* state via *Exit1*. The reason for entering the *Pause* state is to temporarily suspend the shifting of data through either the Data or Instruction Register while a required operation, such as refilling a host memory buffer, is performed. From the Pause state shifting can resume by re-entering the *Shift* state via the *Exit2* state or terminate by entering the *Run-Test/Idle* state via the *Exit2* and *Update* states.

Upon entering the data or Instruction register scan blocks, shadow latches in the selected scan path are forced to hold their present state during the Capture and Shift operations. The data being shifted into the selected scan path is not output through the shadow latch until the TAP enters the *Update-DR* or *Update-IR* state. The *Update* state causes the shadow latches to update (or parallel load) with the new data that has been shifted into the selected scan path.

Figure 11.15 TAP Controller State Diagram



11.3.2.1 Test-Logic-Reset State

In the *Test-Logic-Reset* state the boundary scan test logic is disabled. The test logic enters the *Test-Logic-Reset* state when the *TMS* input is held HIGH for at least five rising edges of *TCK*. The BYPASS instruction is forced into the instruction register output latches during this state. The controller remains in the *Test-Logic-Reset* state as long as *TMS* is HIGH.

11.3.2.2 Run-Test/Idle State

The controller enters the *Run-Test/Idle* state between scan operations. The controller remains in this state as long as *TMS* is held LOW. The instruction register and all test data registers retain their previous state. The instruction cannot change when the TAP controller is in this state.

When *TMS* is sampled HIGH on the rising edge of *TCK*, the controller transitions to the *Select_DR* state.

11.3.2.3 Select_DR_Scan State

This is a temporary controller state in which all test data registers selected by the current instruction retain their previous state. If *TMS* is sampled LOW at the rising edge of *TCK*, then the controller transitions to the *Capture_DR* state. A HIGH on *TMS* causes the controller to transition to the *Select_IR* state. The instruction cannot change while the TAP controller is in this state.

11.3.2.4 Select_IR_Scan State

This is a temporary controller state in which all test data registers selected by the current instruction retain their previous state. If *TMS* is sampled LOW on the rising edge of *TCK*, the controller transitions to the *Capture_IR* state. A HIGH on *TMS* causes the controller to transition to the *Test-Reset-Logic* state. The instruction cannot change while the TAP controller is in this state.

11.3.2.5 Capture_DR State

In this state the boundary scan register captures the value of the register addressed by the Instruction register, and the value is then shifted out in the *Shift_DR*. If *TMS* is sampled LOW at the rising edge of *TCK*, the controller transitions to the *Shift_DR* state. A HIGH on *TMS* causes the controller to transition to the *Exit1_DR* state. The instruction cannot change while the TAP controller is in this state.

11.3.2.6 Shift_DR State

In this state the test data register connected between *TDI* and *TDO* as a result of the current instruction shifts data one stage toward its serial output on the rising edge of *TCK*. If *TMS* is sampled LOW on the rising edge of *TCK*, the controller remains in the *Shift_DR* state. A HIGH on *TMS* causes the controller to transition to the *Exit1_DR* state. The instruction cannot change while the TAP controller is in this state.

11.3.2.7 Exit1_DR State

This is a temporary controller state in which all test data registers selected by the current instruction retain their previous state. If *TMS* is sampled LOW at the rising edge of *TCK*, the controller transitions to the *Pause_DR* state. A HIGH on *TMS* causes the controller to transition to the *Update_DR* state which terminates the scanning process. The instruction cannot change while the TAP controller is in this state.

11.3.2.8 Pause_DR State

The *Pause_DR* state allows the controller to temporarily halt the shifting of data through the test data register in the serial path between *TDI* and *TDO*. All test data registers selected by the current instruction retain their previous state.

If *TMS* is sampled LOW on the rising edge of *TCK*, the controller remains in the *Pause_DR* state. A HIGH on *TMS* causes the controller to transition to the *Exit2_DR* state. The instruction cannot change while the TAP controller is in this state.

11.3.2.9 Exit2_DR State

This is a temporary controller state in which all test data registers selected by the current instruction retain their previous state. If *TMS* is sampled LOW at the rising edge of *TCK*, the controller transitions to the *Shift_DR* state to allow another serial shift of data. A HIGH on *TMS* causes the controller to transition to the *Update_DR* state which terminates the scanning process. The instruction cannot change while the TAP controller is in this state.

11.3.2.10 Update_DR State

When the TAP controller is in this state the value shifted in during the *Shift_DR* state takes effect on the rising edge of the *TCK* for the register indicated by the Instruction register.

If *TMS* is sampled LOW at the rising edge of *TCK*, the controller transitions to the *Run-Test/Idle* state. A HIGH on *TMS* causes the controller to transition to the *Select_DR_Scan* state. The instruction cannot change while the TAP controller is in this state and all shift register stages in the test data registers selected by the current instruction retain their previous state.

11.3.2.11 Capture_IR State

In this state the shift register contained in the Instruction register loads a fixed pattern (00001_2) on the rising edge of *TCK*. The data registers selected by the current instruction retain their previous state.

If *TMS* is sampled LOW at the rising edge of *TCK*, the controller transitions to the *Shift_IR* state. A HIGH on *TMS* causes the controller to transition to the *Exit1_IR* state. The instruction cannot change while the TAP controller is in this state.

11.3.2.12 Shift_IR State

In this state the instruction register is connected between *TDI* and *TDO* and shifts data one stage toward its serial output on the rising edge of *TCK*. If *TMS* is sampled LOW at the rising edge of *TCK*, the controller remains in the *Shift_IR* state. A HIGH on *TMS* causes the controller to transition to the *Exit1_IR* state.

11.3.2.13 Exit1_IR State

This is a temporary controller state in which all registers retain their previous state. If *TMS* is sampled LOW at the rising edge of *TCK*, the controller transitions to the *Pause_IR* state. A HIGH on *TMS* causes the controller to transition to the *Update_IR* state which terminates the scanning process. The instruction cannot change while the TAP controller is in this state and the instruction register retains its previous state.

11.3.2.14 Pause_IR State

The *Pause_IR* state allows the controller to temporarily halt the shifting of data through the instruction register in the serial path between *TDI* and *TDO*. If *TMS* is sampled LOW at the rising edge of *TCK*, the controller remains in the *Pause_IR* state. A HIGH on *TMS* causes the controller to transition to the *Exit2_IR* state. The instruction cannot change while the TAP controller is in this state.

11.3.2.15 Exit2_IR State

This is a temporary controller state in which the instruction register retains its previous state. If *TMS* is sampled LOW at the rising edge of *TCK*, then the controller transitions to the *Shift_IR* state to allow another serial shift of data. A

HIGH on *TMS* causes the controller to transition to the *Update_IR* state which terminates the scanning process. The instruction cannot change while the TAP controller is in this state.

11.3.2.16 Update_IR State

The instruction shifted into the instruction register takes effect on the rising edge of *TCK*.

If *TMS* is sampled LOW at the rising edge of *TCK*, the controller transitions to the *Run-Test/Idle* state. A HIGH on *TMS* causes the controller to transition to the *Select_DR_Scan* state.

11.3.3 Test Access Port (TAP) Instructions

The TAP Instruction register allows instructions to be serially input into the device when TAP controller is in the *Shift-IR* state. Instructions are decoded and define the serial test data register path that is used to shift data between *TDI* and *TDO* during data register scanning.

The Instruction register is a 5-bit register. In the current EJTAG implementation only some instructions have been decoded; the unused instructions default to the BYPASS instruction.

Table 11.24 Implemented EJTAG Instructions

Value	Instruction	Function
0x01	IDCODE	Select Chip Identification data register
0x03	IMPCODE	Select Implementation register
0x08	ADDRESS	Select Address register
0x09	DATA	Select Data register
0x0A	CONTROL	Select EJTAG Control register
0x0B	ALL	Select the Address, Data and EJTAG Control registers
0x0C	EJTAGBOOT	Set EjtagBrk, ProbEn and ProbTrap to 1 as reset value
0x0D	NORMALBOOT	Set EjtagBrk, ProbEn and ProbTrap to 0 as reset value
0x0E	FASTDATA	Selects the Data and Fastdata registers
0x10	TCBCONTROLA	Selects the *TCBTCONTROLA* register in the Trace Control Block
0x11	TCBCONTROLB	Selects the *TCBTCONTROLB* register in the Trace Control Block
0x12	TCBDATA	Selects the *TCBDATA* register in the Trace Control Block
0x13	TCBCONTROLC	Selects the *TCBTCONTROLC* register in the Trace Control Block
0x14	PCSAMPLE	Selects the *PCSAMPLE* register
0x15	TCBCONTROLD	Selects the *TCBTCONTROLD* register in the Trace Control Block
0x16	TCBCONTROLE	Selects the *TCBTCONTROLE* register in the Trace Control Block
0x17	FDC	Select Fast Debug Channel
0x1F	BYPASS	Bypass mode

11.3.3.1 BYPASS Instruction

The required BYPASS instruction allows the processor to remain in a functional mode and selects the Bypass register to be connected between *TDI* and *TDO*. The BYPASS instruction allows serial data to be transferred through the processor from *TDI* to *TDO* without affecting its operation. The bit code of this instruction is defined to be all ones by the IEEE 1149.1 standard. Any unused instruction is defaulted to the BYPASS instruction.

11.3.3.2 IDCODE Instruction

The IDCODE instruction allows the processor to remain in its functional mode and selects the Device Identification (ID) register to be connected between *TDI* and *TDO*. The Device ID register is a 32-bit shift register containing information regarding the IC manufacturer, device type, and version code. Accessing the Identification Register does not interfere with the operation of the processor. Also, access to the Identification Register is immediately available, via a TAP data scan operation, after power-up when the TAP has been reset with on-chip power-on or through the optional *TRST_N* pin.

11.3.3.3 IMPCODE Instruction

This instruction selects the Implementation register for output, which is always 32 bits.

11.3.3.4 ADDRESS Instruction

This instruction is used to select the Address register to be connected between *TDI* and *TDO*. The EJTAG Probe shifts 32 bits through the *TDI* pin into the Address register and shifts out the captured address via the *TDO* pin.

11.3.3.5 DATA Instruction

This instruction is used to select the Data register to be connected between *TDI* and *TDO*. The EJTAG Probe shifts 32 bits of *TDI* data into the Data register and shifts out the captured data via the *TDO* pin.

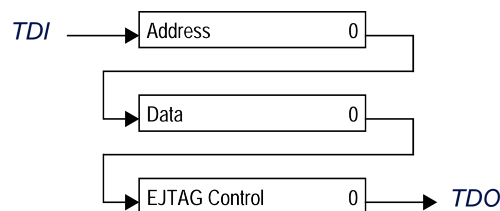
11.3.3.6 CONTROL Instruction

This instruction is used to select the EJTAG Control register to be connected between *TDI* and *TDO*. The EJTAG Probe shifts 32 bits of *TDI* data into the EJTAG Control register and shifts out the EJTAG Control register bits via *TDO*.

11.3.3.7 ALL Instruction

This instruction is used to select the concatenation of the Address and Data register, and the EJTAG Control register(ECR) between *TDI* and *TDO*. It can be used in particular to minimize the overhead in switching the instruction in the instruction register. The first bit shifted out is bit 0 of the ECR.

Figure 11.16 Concatenation of the EJTAG Address, Data and Control Registers



11.3.3.8 EJTAGBOOT Instruction

EJTAGBOOT provides a means to enter debug mode just after a reset, without fetching or executing any instructions from the normal memory area. This can be used for download of code to a system which has no code in ROM.

When the EJTAGBOOT instruction is given and the Update-IR state is left, the EJTAGBOOT indication will become active. When EJTAGBOOT is active, a core reset will set the ProbTrap, ProbEn and EjtagBrk bits in the EJTAG Control register to 1. This will cause a debug exception that is serviced by the probe immediately after reset is deasserted.

This EJTAGBOOT indication is effective until a NORMALBOOT instruction is given, *TRST_N* is asserted or a rising edge of *TCK* occurs when the TAP controller is in Test-Logic-Reset state.

Each VPE has its own TAP controller and thus EJTAGBOOT can be set independently per VPE. Even though VPE1 is not activated at core reset, EJTAGBOOT on VPE1 will still cause a debug exception immediately after reset.

The Bypass register is selected when the EJTAGBOOT instruction is given.

11.3.3.9 NORMALBOOT Instruction

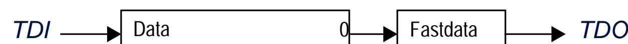
When the NORMALBOOT instruction is given and the Update-IR state is left, then the EJTAGBOOT indication will be cleared. When NORMALBOOT is active (EJTAGBOOT is not active), a core reset will set the ProbTrap, ProbEn and EjtagBrk bits in the EJTAG Control register to 0.

The Bypass register is selected when the NORMALBOOT instruction is given.

11.3.3.10 FASTDATA Instruction

This selects the Data and the Fastdata registers at once, as shown in Figure 11.17.

Figure 11.17 TDI to TDO Path When in Shift-DR State and FASTDATA Instruction is Selected



11.3.3.11 TCBCONTROLA Instruction

This instruction is used to select the TCBCONTROLA register to be connected between *TDI* and *TDO*. This register is only implemented if the Trace Control Block is present. If no TCB is present, then this instruction will select the Bypass register.

11.3.3.12 TCBCONTROLB Instruction

This instruction is used to select the TCBCONTROLB register to be connected between *TDI* and *TDO*. This register is only implemented if the Trace Control Block is present. If no TCB is present, then this instruction will select the Bypass register.

11.3.3.13 TCBCONTROLC Instruction

This instruction is used to select the TCBCONTROLC register to be connected between *TDI* and *TDO*. This register is only implemented if the Trace Control Block is present. If no TCB is present, then this instruction will select the Bypass register.

11.3.3.14 TCBDATA Instruction

This instruction is used to select the TCBDATA register to be connected between *TDI* and *TDO*. This register is only implemented if the Trace Control Block is present. If no TCB is present, then this instruction will select the Bypass register. It should be noted that the TCBDATA register is only an access register to other TCB registers. The width of the TCBDATA register is dependent on the specific TCB register.

11.3.3.15 PCSAMPLE Instruction

This instruction is used to select the PCSAMPLE register to be connected between *TDI* and *TDO*. This register is always implemented.

11.3.3.16 TCBCONTROLD Instruction

This instruction is used to select the TCBCONTROLD register to be connected between *TDI* and *TDO*. This register is only implemented if the Trace Control Block is present. If no TCB is present, then this instruction will select the Bypass register.

11.3.3.17 TCBCONTROLE Instruction

This instruction is used to select the TCBCONTROLE register to be connected between *TDI* and *TDO*. This register is only implemented if the Trace Control Block is present. If no TCB is present, then this instruction will select the Bypass register.

11.3.3.18 FDC Instruction

This instruction is used to select the Fast Debug Channel register to be connected between *TDI* and *TDO*. This register is always implemented

11.4 EJTAG TAP Registers

The EJTAG TAP Module has one Instruction register and a number of data registers, all accessible through the TAP:

11.4.1 Instruction Register

The Instruction register is accessed when the TAP receives an Instruction register scan protocol. During an Instruction register scan operation the TAP controller selects the output of the Instruction register to drive the *TDO* pin. The shift register consists of a series of bits arranged to form a single scan path between *TDI* and *TDO*. During an Instruction register scan operations, the TAP controls the register to capture status information and shift data from *TDI* to *TDO*. Both the capture and shift operations occur on the rising edge of *TCK*. However, the data shifted out from the *TDO* occurs on the falling edge of *TCK*. In the Test-Logic-Reset and *Capture-IR* state, the instruction shift register is set to 00001_2, as for the IDCODE instruction. This forces the device into the functional mode and selects the Device ID register. The Instruction register is 5 bits wide. The instruction shifted in takes effect for the following data register scan operation. A list of the implemented instructions are listed in Table 11.24.

11.4.2 Data Registers Overview

The EJTAG uses several data registers that are arranged in parallel from the primary *TDI* input to the primary *TDO* output. The Instruction register supplies the address that allows one of the data registers to be accessed during a data register scan operation. During a data register scan operation, the addressed scan register receives TAP control signals to capture the register and shift data from *TDI* to *TDO*. During a data register scan operation, the TAP selects the output of the data register to drive the *TDO* pin. The register is updated in the *Update-DR* state with respect to the write bits.

This description applies in general to the following data registers:

- Bypass Register
- Device Identification Register

- Implementation Register
- EJTAG Control Register (ECR)
- Processor Access Address Register
- Processor Access Data Register
- FastData Register

11.4.2.1 Bypass Register

The *Bypass* register consists of a single scan register bit. When selected, the Bypass register provides a single bit scan path between *TDI* and *TDO*. The Bypass register allows abbreviating the scan path through devices that are not involved in the test. The Bypass register is selected when the Instruction register is loaded with a pattern of all ones to satisfy the IEEE 1149.1 Bypass instruction requirement.

11.4.2.2 Device Identification (ID) Register

The *Device Identification* register is defined by IEEE 1149.1, to identify the device's manufacturer, part number, revision, and other device-specific information. Table 11.25 shows the bit assignments defined for the read-only Device Identification Register, and inputs to the CPU determine the value of these bits. These bits can be scanned out of the *ID* register after being selected. The register is selected when the Instruction register is loaded with the IDCODE instruction.

Figure 11.18 Device Identification Register Format

Table 11.25 Device Identification Register

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
Version	31:28	**Version** (4 bits) This field identifies the version number of the processor derivative.	R	*EJ_Version[3:0]*
PartNumber	27:12	**Part Number** (16 bits) This field identifies the part number of the processor derivative.	R	*EJ_PartNumber[15:0]*
ManufID	11:1	**Manufacturer Identity** (11 bits) Accordingly to IEEE 1149.1-1990, the manufacturer identity code shall be a compressed form of the JEDEC Publications 106-A.	R	*EJ_ManufID[10:0]*
R	0	reserved	R	1

11.4.2.3 Implementation Register

This 32-bit read-only register is used to identify the features of the EJTAG implementation. Some of the reset values are set by inputs to the CPU. The register is selected when the Instruction register is loaded with the IMPCODE instruction.

Figure 11.19 Implementation Register Format

31 29	28 25	24	23 21	20 17	16	15	14	13 0
EJTAGver	reserved	DINTsup	ASIDsize	reserved	MIPS16	0	NoDMA	reserved

Table 11.26 Implementation Register Descriptions

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bit(s)</th></tr>
<tr><td>EJTAGver</td><td>31:29</td><td>EJTAG Version.
3: Version 3.1</td><td>R</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td>reserved</td><td>28:25</td><td>reserved</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>DINTsup</td><td>24</td><td>DINT Signal Supported from Probe
This bit indicates if the DINT signal from the probe is supported:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Compare corresponding byte lane</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Mask corresponding byte lane</td></tr></table>0: DINT signal from the probe is not supported
1: Probe can use DINT signal to make debug interrupt.</td><td>R</td><td>EJ_DINTsup</td></tr>
<tr><td>ASIDsize</td><td>23:21</td><td>Size of ASID field in implementation:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Compare corresponding byte lane</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Mask corresponding byte lane</td></tr></table>0: No ASID in implementation
2: 8-bit ASID
1,3: Reserved</td><td>R</td><td>TLB MMU- 2
FM MMU- 0</td></tr>
<tr><td>reserved</td><td>20:17</td><td>reserved</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>MIPS16</td><td>16</td><td>Indicates whether MIPS16 is implemented:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Compare corresponding byte lane</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Mask corresponding byte lane</td></tr></table>0: No MIPS16 support
1: MIPS16 implemented</td><td>R</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>reserved</td><td>15</td><td>reserved</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>NoDMA</td><td>14</td><td>No EJTAG DMA Support</td><td>R</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>reserved</td><td>13:0</td><td>reserved</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>

11.4.2.4 EJTAG Control Register

This 32-bit register controls the various operations of the TAP modules. This register is selected by shifting in the CONTROL instruction. Bits in the EJTAG Control register can be set/cleared by shifting in data; status is read by shifting out the contents of this register. This EJTAG Control register can only be accessed by the TAP interface.

The EJTAG Control register is not updated in the *Update-DR* state unless the Reset occurred (Rocc) bit 31, is either 0 or written to 0. This is in order to ensure prober handling of processor accesses.

The value used for reset indicated in the table below takes effect on CPU resets, but not on TAP controller resets by e.g. *TRST_N*. *TCK* clock is not required when the CPU reset occurs, but the bits are still updated to the reset value when the *TCK* applies. The first 5 *TCK* clocks after CPU resets may result in reset of the bits, due to synchronization between clock domains.

Figure 11.20 EJTAG Control Register Format

31	30 29	28 24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11 4	3	2 0
Rocc	Psz	Res	VPED	Doze	Halt	PerRst	PRnW	PrAcc	Res	PrRst	ProbEn	ProbTrap	Res	EjtagBrk	Res	DM	Res

Table 11.27 EJTAG Control Register Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit(s)			
Rocc	31	Reset Occurred The bit indicates if a CPU reset has occurred: **Encoding** / **Meaning** 0 — No reset occurred since bit last cleared 1 — Reset occurred since bit last cleared The Rocc bit will remain set to 1 as long as reset is applied. This bit must be cleared by the probe to acknowledge that the incident was detected. The EJTAG Control register is not updated in the *Update-DR* state unless Rocc is 0 or written to 0, in order to ensure proper handling of processor access following reset.	R/W	1

Table 11.27 EJTAG Control Register Descriptions (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bit(s)</th></tr>
<tr><td>Psz[1:0]</td><td>30:29</td><td>Processor Access Transfer Size
These bits are used in combination with the lower two address bits of the Address register to determine the size of a processor access transaction. The bits are only valid when processor access is pending.
<table>
<tr><th>PAA[1:0]</th><th>Psz[1:0]</th><th>Transfer Size</th></tr>
<tr><td>00</td><td>00</td><td>Byte (LE, byte 0; BE, byte 3)</td></tr>
<tr><td>01</td><td>00</td><td>Byte (LE, byte 1; BE, byte 2)</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td>00</td><td>Byte (LE, byte 2; BE, byte 1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td>00</td><td>Byte (LE, byte 3; BE, byte 0)</td></tr>
<tr><td>00</td><td>01</td><td>Halfword (LE, bytes 1:0; BE, bytes 3:2)</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td>01</td><td>Halfword (LE, bytes 3:2; BE, bytes 1:0)</td></tr>
<tr><td>00</td><td>10</td><td>Word (LE, BE; bytes 3, 2, 1, 0)</td></tr>
<tr><td>00</td><td>11</td><td>Triple (LE, bytes 2, 1, 0; BE, bytes 3, 2,1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>01</td><td>11</td><td>Triple (LE, bytes 3, 2, 1; BE, bytes 2, 1, 0)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">All others</td><td>Reserved</td></tr>
</table>
Note: LE=little endian, BE=big endian, the byte# refers to the byte number in a 32-bit register, where byte 3 = bits 31:24; byte 2 = bits 23:16; byte 1 = bits 15:8; byte 0=bits 7:0, independently of the endianess.</td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>Res</td><td>28:24</td><td>reserved</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>VPED</td><td>23</td><td>VPE Disable state
EJTAG state is not valid if this bit is set:
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>VPE is currently enabled</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>VPE is currently disabled</td></tr>
</table></td><td>R</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>Doze</td><td>22</td><td>Doze state
The Doze bit indicates any type of low-power mode. The value is sampled in the Capture-DR state of the TAP controller:
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>CPU not in low power mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>CPU is in low power mode</td></tr>
</table>
Doze includes the Reduced Power (RP) and WAIT power-reduction modes.</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>

Table 11.27 EJTAG Control Register Descriptions (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bit(s)</th></tr>
<tr><td>Halt</td><td>21</td><td>Halt state
The Halt bit indicates if the internal system bus clock is running or stopped. The value is sampled in the Capture-DR state of the TAP controller:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Internal system clock is running</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Internal system clock is stopped</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>PerRst</td><td>20</td><td>Peripheral Reset
When the bit is set to 1, it is only guaranteed that the peripheral reset has occurred in the system when the read value of this bit is also 1. This is to ensure that the setting from the TCK clock domain takes effect in the CPU clock domain and in peripherals.
When the bit is written to 0, it must also be read as 0 before it is guaranteed that the indication is also cleared in the CPU clock domain.
This bit controls the EJ_PerRst signal on the CPU.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>PRnW</td><td>19</td><td>Processor Access Read and Write
This bit indicates if the pending processor access is for a read or write transaction, and the bit is only valid while PrAcc is set:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Read transaction</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Write transaction</td></tr></table></td><td>R</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>PrAcc</td><td>18</td><td>Processor Access (PA)
Read value of this bit indicates if a Processor Access (PA) to the EJTAG memory is pending:<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No pending processor access</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Pending processor access</td></tr></table>The probe’s software must clear this bit to 0 to indicate the end of the PA. A write of 1 is ignored.
A pending Processor Access is cleared when Rocc is set, but another PA may occur just after the reset if a debug exception occurs.
Finishing a Processor Access is not accepted while the Rocc bit is set. This is to avoid a Processor Access occurring after the reset is finished because of an indication of a Processor Access that occurred before the reset.
The FASTDATA access can clear this bit.</td><td>R/W0</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Res</td><td>17</td><td>reserved</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>

Table 11.27 EJTAG Control Register Descriptions (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bit(s)</th></tr>
<tr><td>PrRst</td><td>16</td><td>Processor Reset (Implementation dependent behavior)
When the bit is set to 1, then it is only guaranteed that this setting has taken effect in the system when the read value of this bit is also 1. This is to ensure that the setting from the TCK clock domain gets effect in the CPU clock domain, and in peripherals.
When the bit is written to 0, then the bit must also be read as 0 before it is guaranteed that the indication is cleared in the CPU clock domain also.
This bit controls the EJ_PrRst signal. If the signal is used in the system, then it must be ensured that both the processor and all devices required for a reset are properly reset. Otherwise the system may fail or hang. The bit resets itself, since the EJTAG Control register is reset by a reset.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>ProbEn</td><td>15</td><td>Probe Enable
This bit indicates to the CPU if the EJTAG memory is handled by the probe so processor accesses are answered:
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Probe does not handle EJTAG memory transactions</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Probe does handle EJTAG memory transactions</td></tr></table>
It is an error by the software controlling the probe if it sets the ProbTrap bit to 1, but resets the ProbEn to 0. The operation of the processor is UNDEFINED in this case.
The ProbEn bit is reflected as a read-only bit in the ProbEn bit, bit 0, in the Debug Control Register (DCR).
The read value indicates the effective value in the DCR, due to synchronization issues between TCK and CPU clock domains; however, it is ensured that change of the ProbEn prior to setting the EjtagBrk bit will have effect for the debug handler executed due to the debug exception.
The reset value of the bit depends on whether the EJTAGBOOT indication is given or not:
No EJTAGBOOT indication given: 0
EJTAGBOOT indication given: 1</td><td>R/W</td><td>0 or 1
from
EJTAGBOOT</td></tr>
</table>

Table 11.27 EJTAG Control Register Descriptions (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bit(s)</th></tr>
<tr><td>ProbTrap</td><td>14</td><td>Probe Trap
This bit controls the location of the debug exception vector:
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>In normal memory 0xBFC0.0480</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>In EJTAG memory at 0xFF20.0200 in dmseg</td></tr>
</table>
Valid setting of the ProbTrap bit depends on the setting of the ProbEn bit, see comment under ProbEn bit.
The ProbTrap should not be set to 1 unless the ProbEn bit is also set to 1 to indicate that the EJTAG memory may be accessed.
The read value indicates the effective value to the CPU, due to synchronization issues between TCK and CPU clock domains; however, it is ensured that change of the ProbTrap bit prior to setting the EjtagBrk bit will have effect for the EjtagBrk.
The reset value of the bit depends on whether the EJTAGBOOT indication is given or not:
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>No EJTAGBOOT indication given</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>EJTAGBOOT indication given</td></tr>
</table></td><td>R/W</td><td>0 or 1
from
EJTAGBOOT</td></tr>
<tr><td>Res</td><td>13</td><td>reserved</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>EjtagBrk</td><td>12</td><td>EJTAG Break
Setting this bit to 1 causes a debug exception to the processor, unless the CPU was in debug mode or another debug exception occurred.
When the debug exception occurs, the processor CPU clock is restarted if the CPU was in low power mode. This bit is cleared by hardware when the debug exception is taken.
The reset value of the bit depends on whether the EJTAGBOOT indication is given or not:
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>No EJTAGBOOT indication given</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>EJTAGBOOT indication given</td></tr>
</table></td><td>R/W</td><td>0 or 1
from
EJTAGBOOT</td></tr>
<tr><td>Res</td><td>11:4</td><td>reserved</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>DM</td><td>3</td><td>Debug Mode
This bit indicates the debug or non-debug mode:
<table>
<tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>Processor is in non-debug mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Processor is in debug mode</td></tr>
</table>
The bit is sampled in the Capture-DR state of the TAP controller.</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Res</td><td>2:0</td><td>Reserved</td><td>R</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>

11.4.3 Processor Access Address Register

The Processor Access Address (*PAA*) register is used to provide the address of the processor access in the dmseg, and the register is only valid when a processor access is pending. The length of the Address register is 32 bits, and this register is selected by shifting in the ADDRESS instruction.

11.4.3.1 Processor Access Data Register

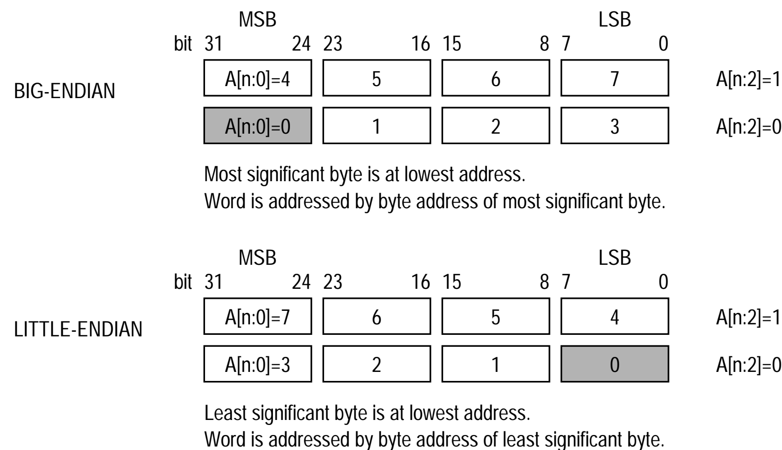
The Processor Access Data (*PAD*) register is used to provide data value to and from a processor access. The length of the Data register is 32 bits, and this register is selected by shifting in the DATA instruction.

The register has the written value for a processor access write due to a CPU store to the dmseg, and the output from this register is only valid when a processor access write is pending. The register is used to provide the data value for a processor access read due to a CPU load or fetch from the dmseg, and the register should only be updated with a new value when a processor access write is pending.

The *PAD* register is 32 bits wide. Data alignment is not used for this register, so the value in the *PAD* register matches data on the internal bus. The undefined bytes for a PA write are undefined, and for a *PAD* read 0 (zero) must be shifted in for the unused bytes.

The organization of bytes in the *PAD* register depends on the endianess of the CPU, as shown in Figure 11.21. The endian mode for debug/kernel mode is determined by the state of the *SI_Endian* input at power-up.

Figure 11.21 Endian Formats for the PAD Register



The size of the transaction and thus the number of bytes available/required for the *PAD* register is determined by the Psz field in the *ECR*.

11.4.4 Fastdata Register (TAP Instruction FASTDATA)

The width of the Fastdata register is 1 bit. During a Fastdata access, the Fastdata register is written and read, i.e., a bit is shifted in and a bit is shifted out. During a Fastdata access, the Fastdata register value shifted in specifies whether the Fastdata access should be completed or not. The value shifted out is a flag that indicates whether the Fastdata access was successful or not (if completion was requested).

Figure 11.22 Fastdata Register Format

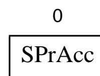


Table 11.28 Fastdata Register Field Description

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Power-up State
Name	Bits			
SPrAcc	0	Shifting in a zero value requests completion of the Fastdata access. The PrAcc bit in the EJTAG Control register is overwritten with zero when the access succeeds. (The access succeeds if PrAcc is one and the operation address is in the legal dmseg Fastdata area.) When successful, a one is shifted out. Shifting out a zero indicates a Fastdata access failure. Shifting in a one does not complete the Fastdata access and the PrAcc bit is unchanged. Shifting out a one indicates that the access would have been successful if allowed to complete and a zero indicates the access would not have successfully completed.	R/W	Undefined

The FASTDATA access is used for efficient block transfers between dmseg (on the probe) and target memory (on the processor). An "upload" is defined as a sequence of processor loads from target memory and stores to dmseg. A "download" is a sequence of processor loads from dmseg and stores to target memory. The "Fastdata area" specifies the legal range of dmseg addresses (0xFF20.0000 - 0xFF20.000F) that can be used for uploads and downloads. The Data + Fastdata registers (selected with the FASTDATA instruction) allow efficient completion of pending Fastdata area accesses.

During Fastdata uploads and downloads, the processor will stall on accesses to the Fastdata area. The PrAcc (processor access pending bit) will be 1 indicating the probe is required to complete the access. Both upload and download accesses are attempted by shifting in a zero *SPrAcc* value (to request access completion) and shifting out *SPrAcc* to see if the attempt will be successful (i.e., there was an access pending and a legal Fastdata area address was used). Downloads will also shift in the data to be used to satisfy the load from dmseg's Fastdata area, while uploads will shift out the data being stored to dmseg's Fastdata area.

As noted above, two conditions must be true for the Fastdata access to succeed. These are:

- *PrAcc* must be 1, i.e., there must be a pending processor access.
- The Fastdata operation must use a valid Fastdata area address in dmseg (0xFF20.0000 to 0xFF20.000F).

Table 11.29 shows the values of the *PrAcc* and *SPrAcc* bits and the results of a Fastdata access. .

Table 11.29 Operation of the FASTDATA Access

Probe Operation	Address Match Check	PrAcc in the Control Register	LSB (SPrAcc) Shifted In	Action in the Data Register	PrAcc Changes to	Lsb Shifted Out	Data Shifted Out
Download using FAST-DATA	Fails	x	x	none	unchanged	0	invalid
	Passes	1	1	none	unchanged	1	invalid
		1	0	write data	0 (SPrAcc)	1	valid (previ-ous) data
		0	x	none	unchanged	0	invalid
Upload using FASTDATA	Fails	x	x	none	unchanged	0	invalid
	Passes	1	1	none	unchanged	1	invalid
		1	0	read data	0 (SPrAcc)	1	valid data
		0	x	none	unchanged	0	invalid

There is no restriction on the contents of the Data register. It is expected that the transfer size is negotiated between the download/upload transfer code and the probe software. Note that the most efficient transfer size is a 32-bit word.

The Rocc bit of the Control register is not used for the FASTDATA operation.

11.5 TAP Processor Accesses

The TAP modules support handling of fetches, loads and stores from the CPU through the dmseg segment, whereby the TAP module can operate like a *slave unit* connected to the on-chip bus. The CPU can then execute code taken from the EJTAG Probe and it can access data (via a load or store) which is located on the EJTAG Probe. This occurs in a serial way through the EJTAG interface: the CPU can thus execute instructions e.g. debug monitor code, without occupying the memory.

Accessing the dmseg segment (EJTAG memory) can only occur when the processor accesses an address in the range from 0xFF20.0000 to 0xFF2F.FFFF, the ProbEn bit is set, and the processor is in debug mode (DM=1). In addition the LSNM bit in the CP0 Debug register controls transactions to/from the dmseg.

When a debug exception is taken, while the ProbTrap bit is set, the processor will start fetching instructions from address 0xFF20.0200.

A pending processor access can only finish if the probe writes 0 to PrAcc or by a reset.

11.5.1 Fetch/Load and Store From/To the EJTAG Probe Through dmseg

1. The internal hardware latches the requested address into the PA Address register (in case of the Debug exception: 0xFF20.0200).

2. The internal hardware sets the following bits in the EJTAG Control register:
   PrAcc = 1 (selects Processor Access operation)

PRnW = 0 (selects processor read operation)
Psz[1:0] = value depending on the transfer size

3. The EJTAG Probe selects the EJTAG Control register, shifts out this control register's data and tests the PrAcc status bit (Processor Access): when the PrAcc bit is found 1, it means that the requested address is available and can be shifted out.

4. The EJTAG Probe checks the PRnW bit to determine the required access.

5. The EJTAG Probe selects the PA Address register and shifts out the requested address.

6. The EJTAG Probe selects the PA Data register and shifts in the instruction corresponding to this address.

7. The EJTAG Probe selects the EJTAG Control register and shifts a PrAcc = 0 bit into this register to indicate to the processor that the instruction is available.

8. The instruction becomes available in the instruction register and the processor starts executing.

9. The processor increments the program counter and outputs an instruction read request for the next instruction. This starts the whole sequence again.

Using the same protocol, the processor can also execute a load instruction to access the EJTAG Probe's memory. For this to happen, the processor must execute a load instruction (e.g. a LW, LH, LB) with the target address in the appropriate range.

Almost the same protocol is used to execute a store instruction to the EJTAG Probe's memory through dmseg. The store address must be in the range: 0xFF20.0000 to 0xFF2F.FFFF, the ProbEn bit must be set and the processor has to be in debug mode (DM=1). The sequence of actions is found below:

1. The internal hardware latches the requested address into the PA Address register

2. The internal hardware latches the data to be written into the PA Data register.

3. The internal hardware sets the following bits in the EJTAG Control register:
PrAcc = 1 (selects Processor Access operation)
PRnW = 1 (selects processor write operation)
Psz[1:0] = value depending on the transfer size

4. The EJTAG Probe selects the EJTAG Control register, shifts out this control register's data and tests the PrAcc status bit (Processor Access): when the PrAcc bit is found 1, it means that the requested address is available and can be shifted out.

5. The EJTAG Probe checks the PRnW bit to determine the required access.

6. The EJTAG Probe selects the PA Address register and shifts out the requested address.

7. The EJTAG Probe selects the PA Data register and shifts out the data to be written.

8. The EJTAG Probe selects the EJTAG Control register and shifts a PrAcc = 0 bit into this register to indicate to the processor that the write access is finished.

9. The EJTAG Probe writes the data to the requested address in its memory.

10. The processor detects that PrAcc bit = 0, which means that it is ready to handle a new access.

The above examples imply that no reset occurs during the operations, and that Rocc is cleared.

11.6 PC Sampling

The PC sampling feature enables sampling of the PC value periodically. This information can be used for statistical profiling of the program akin to gprof. This information is also very useful for detecting hot-spots in the code. PC sampling cannot be turned on or off, that is, the PC value is continually sampled.

The presence or absence of the PC Sampling feature is available in the Debug Control register as bit 9(PCS).The sampled PC values are written into a TAP register. The old value in the TAP register is overwritten by a new value even if this register has not be read out by the debug probe. The sample rate is specified in a manner similar to the PDtrace synchronization period, with three bits. These bits in the Debug Control register are 8:6 and called PCSR (PC Sample Rate). These three bits take the value 2^5 to 2^{12} similar to SyncPeriod. Note that the processor samples PC even when it is asleep, that is, in a WAIT state. This permits an analysis of the amount of time spent by a processor in WAIT state which may be used for example to revert to a low power mode during the non-execution phase of a real-time application.

The sampled values includes a new data bit, the PC, the ASID of the sampled PC as well as the Thread Context ID if the processor implements the MIPS MT ASE. Figure shows the format of the sampled values in the TAP register PCsample. The new data bit is used by the probe to determine if the PCsample register data just read out is new or already been read and must be discarded.

Figure 11.23 TAP Register PCsample Format

48–41	40–33	32–1	0
TC (for MIPS MT processors only)	ASID	PC	New

The sampled PC value is the PC of the graduating instruction in the current cycle. If the processor is stalled when the PC sample counter overflows, then the sampled PC is the PC of the next graduating instruction. The processor continues to sample the PC value even when it is in Debug mode.

11.6.1 PC Sampling in Wait State

When the processor is in a WAIT state to save power for example, an external agent might want to know how long it stays in the WAIT state. But counting cycles to update the PC sample value is a waste of power. Hence, when in a WAIT state, the processor must simply switch the New bit to 1 every time it is set to 0 by the probe hardware. Hence, the external agent or probe reading the PC value will detect a WAIT instruction for as long as the processor remains in the WAIT state. When the processor leaves the WAIT state, then counting is resumed as before.

11.7 Fast Debug Channel

The Fast Debug Channel (FDC) mechanism provides an efficient means to transfer data between the CPU and an external device using the EJTAG TAP pins. The external device would typically be an EJTAG probe and that is the term used here, but it could be something else. FDC utilizes two First In First Out (FIFO) structures to buffer data between theCPU and probe. The probe uses the FDC TAP instruction to access these FIFOs, while the CPU itself accesses them using memory accesses. To transfer data out of the CPU, the CPU writes one or more pieces of data to the transmit FIFO. At this time, the CPU can resume doing other work. An external probe would examine the status of the transmit FIFO periodically. If there is data to be read, the probe starts to receive data from the FIFO, one entry

at a time. When all data from the FIFO has been drained, the probe goes back to waiting for more data. The CPU can either choose to be informed of the empty transmit FIFO via an interrupt, or it can choose to periodically check the status. Receiving data works in a similar manner - the probe writes to the receive FIFO. At that time, the CPU is either interrupted, or finds out via polling a status bit. The CPU can then do load accesses to the receive FIFO and receive data being sent to it by the probe. The TAP transfer is bidirectional - a single shift can be pulling transmit data and putting receive data at the same time.

The primary advantage of FDC over normal processor accesses or fastdata accesses is that it does not require the CPU to be blocked when the probe is reading or writing to the data transfer FIFOs. This significantly reduces the CPU overhead and makes the data transfer far less intrusive to the code executing on the CPU.

Refer to the EJTAG Specification [15] for the general details on FDC. The remainder of this section describes implementation specific behavior and register values.

The FDC memory mapped registers are located in the common device memory map (CDMM) region. FDC has a device ID of 0xFD.

11.7.1 Common Device Memory Map

Software on the CPU accesses FDC through memory mapped registers. These memory mapped registers are located within the Common Device Memory Map (CDMM). The CDMM is a region of physical address space that is reserved for mapping IO device configuration registers within a MIPS processor. The base address and enabling of this region is controlled by the CDMMBase CP0 register, see Section 7.2.40 “CDMMBase Register (CP0 Register 15, Select 2)”.

Refer to Volume III of the Architecture Reference Manuals [3] for full details on CDMM.

11.7.2 Fast Debug Channel Interrupt

The FDC block can generate an interrupt to inform software of incoming data being available or space being available in the outgoing FIFO. This interrupt is handled similarly to the timer or performance counter interrupts. The $Cause_{FDCI}$ bit indicates that the interrupt is pending. The interrupt is also sent to the core outputs *SI_FDCI[_1]* where it is combined with one of the *SI_Int* pins. For non-EIC mode, the *SI_IPFDCI* input indicates which interrupt pin is has been combined with and this information is reflected in the $IntCtl_{IPFDCI}$ field. Note that this interrupt is a regular interrupt and not a debug interrupt.

The FDC Configuration Register (see Section 11.7.6.2 “FDC Configuration (FDCFG) Register (Offset 0x8)”) includes fields for enabling and setting the threshold for generating each interrupt. Receive and transmit interrupt thresholds are specified independently, but they are ORed together to form a single interrupt per VPE.

The following interrupt thresholds are supported:

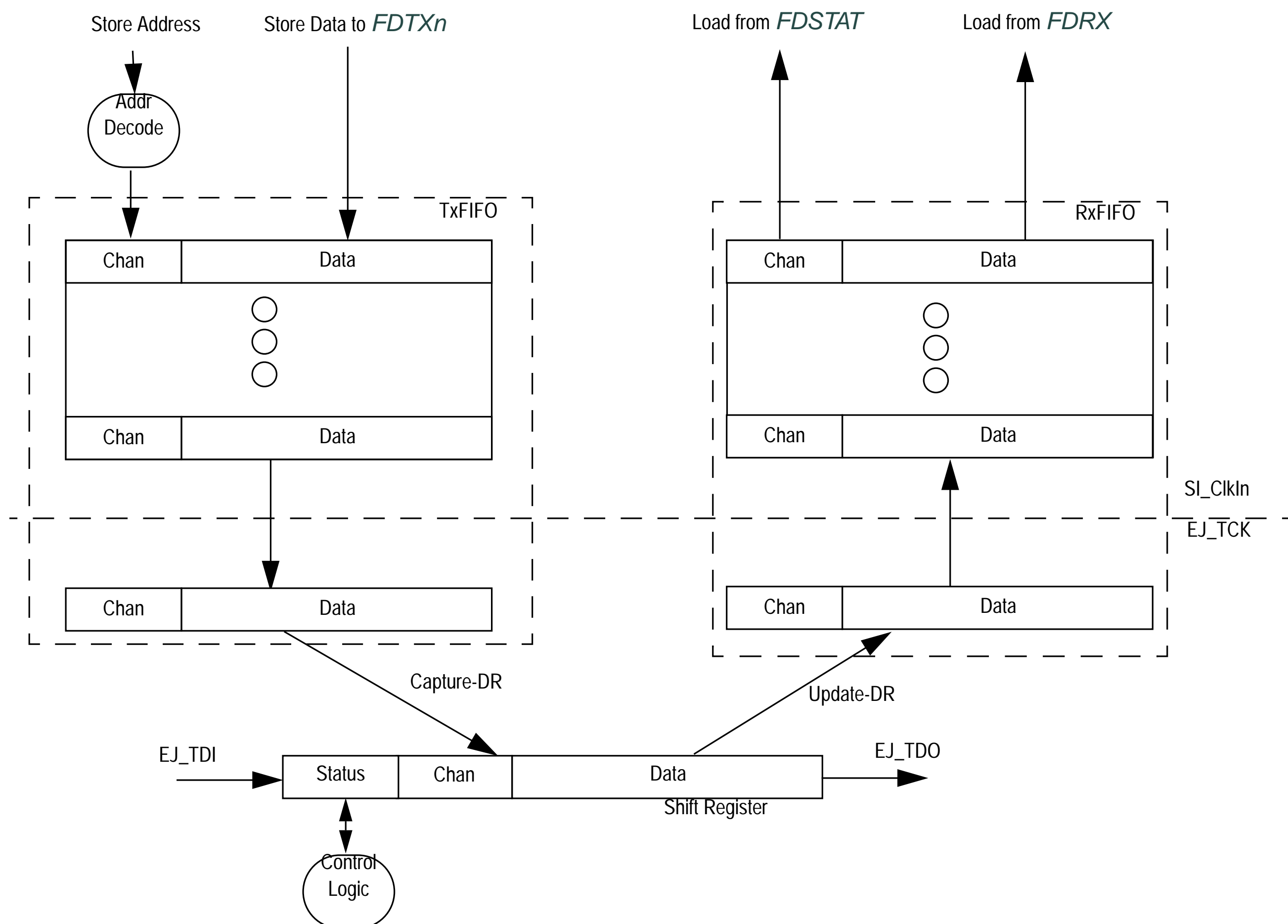
- Interrupts Disabled: No interrupt will be generated and software must poll the status registers to determine if incoming data is available or if there is space for outgoing data.
- Minimum CPU Overhead: This setting minimizes the CPU overhead by not generating an interrupt until the receive FIFO (RxFIFO) is completely full or the transmit FIFO (TxFIFO) is completely empty.
- Minimum latency: To have the CPU take data as soon as it is available, the receive interrupt can be fired whenever the RxFIFO is not empty. There is a complimentary TxFIFO not full setting although that may not be quite as useful.

- Maximum bandwidth: When configured for minimum CPU overhead, bandwidth between the probe and CPU can be wasted if the CPU does not service the interrupt before the next transfer occurs. To reduce the chances of this happening, the interrupt threshold can be set to almost full or almost empty to generate an interrupt earlier. This setting causes receive interrupts to be generated when there are 0 or 1 unused RxFIFO entries. Transmit interrupts are generated when there are 0 or 1 used TxFIFO entries (see note in following section about this condition)

11.7.3 1004K™CPU FDC Buffers

Figure 11.24 shows the general organization of the transmit and receive buffers on the 1004K CPU.

Figure 11.24 Fast Debug Channel Buffer Organization



One particular thing to note is the asynchronous crossings between the EJ_TCK and SI_ClkIn clock domains. This crossing is handled with a handshaked interface that safely transfers data between the domains. Two data registers are included in this interface, one in the source domain and one in the destination domain. The control logic actively manages these registers so that they can be used as FIFO entries. The fact that one FIFO entry is in the EJ_TCK clock domain is normally transparent, but it can create some unexpected behavior:

- TxFIFO availability: Data is first written into the *SI_Clk* FIFO entries, then it will move into the *EJ_TCK* FIFO entry. But, it takes several *EJ_TCK* cycles to complete the handshake and move the data. *EJ_TCK* is generally much slower than *SI_ClkIn* and may even be stopped (although that would be uncommon when this feature is in use). This can result in there not being space for new data, even though there are only N-1 data values queued up. To prevent the loss of data, the $FDSTAT_{TxF}$ bit is set when all of the *SI_ClkIn* FIFO entries are full. Software writing to the FIFO should always check the $FDSTAT_{TxF}$ bit prior to attempting a write and should not make any assumptions about being able to arbitrarily use all entries. ie. software seeing the $FDSTAT_{FxE}$ bit set should not assume that it can write $FDCFG_{TxCnt}$ data words without checking for full.

- TxFIFO Almost Empty Interrupt: As transmit data moves from *SI_ClkIn* to *EJ_TCK*, both of the flops will temporarily look full. This makes it difficult to determine when just 1 FIFO entry is in use. To enable a simpler condition, the almost empty TxInterrupt condition is set when all of the *SI_ClkIn* FIFO entries are empty. When this condition is met, there will be 0 or 1 valid entries. However, the interrupt will not be asserted when there is only one valid entry if it is an *SI_ClkIn* entry

- The RxFIFO has similar characteristics but these are even less visible to software since *SI_ClkIn* must be running to access the FDC registers.

11.7.4 Sleep mode

FDC data transfers do not prevent the core from entering sleep mode and will proceed normally in sleep mode. The FDC block monitors the TAP interface signals with a free-running clock. When new receive data is available or transmit data can be sent, the gated clock will be enabled for a few cycles to transfer the data and then allowed to stop again. If FDC interrupts are enabled, transferring data may cause an interrupt to be generated which can wake the core up.

11.7.5 FDC TAP Register

The FDC TAP instruction performs a 38 bit bidirectional transfer of the FDC TAP register. The register format is shown in Figure 11.25 and the fields are described in Figure 11.30

Figure 11.25 FDC TAP Register Format

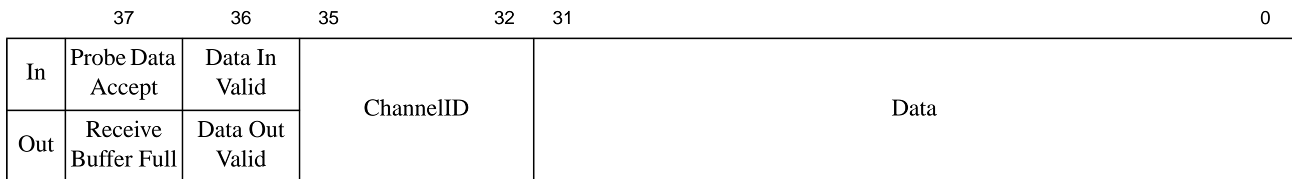


Table 11.30 FDC TAP Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
Probe Data Accept	37	Indicates to core that the probe is accepting the data that was scanned out.	W	Undefined
Data In Valid	36	Indicates to core that the probe is sending new data to the receive FIFO.	W	Undefined

Table 11.30 FDC TAP Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
Receive Buffer Full	37	Indicates to probe that the receive buffer is full and the core will not accept the data being scanned in. Analagous to ProbeDataAccept, but opposite polarity	R	0x0
Data Out Valid	36	Indicates to probe that the core is sending new data from the transmit FIFO	R	0
ChannelID	35:32	Channel number associated with the data being scanned in or out. This field can be used to indicate the type of data that is being sent and allow independent communication channels Scanning in a value with ChannelID=0xd and Data In Valid = 0 will generate a receive interrupt. This can be used when the probe has completed sending data to the core.	R/W	Undefined
Data	31:0	Data value being scanned in or out	R/W	Undefined

11.7.6 Fast Debug Channel Registers

This section describes the Fast Debug Channel registers. CPU access to FDC is via loads and stores to the FDC device in the Common Device Memory Map (CDMM) region. These registers provide access control, configuration and status information, as well as access to the transmit and receive FIFOs. The registers and their respective offsets are shown in Table 11.31

Table 11.31 FDC Register Mapping

Offset in CDMM device block	Register Mnemonic	Register Name and Description
0x0	FDACSR	FDC Access Control and Status Register
0x8	FDCFG	FDC Configuration Register
0x10	FDSTAT	FDC Status Register
0x18	FDRX	FDC Receive Register
0x20 + 0x8* n	FDTXn	FDC Transmit Register n (0 ≤ n ≤ 15)

11.7.6.1 FDC Access Control and Status (FDACSR) Register (Offset 0x0)

This is the general CDMM Access Control and Status register which defines the device type and size and controls user and supervisor access to the remaining FDC registers. The Access Control and Status register itself is only accessible in kernel mode. Figure 11.26 has the format of an Access Control and Status register (shown as a 64-bit register), and Table 11.32 describes the register fields.

Figure 11.26 FDC Access Control and Status Register

63 – 32	31 – 24	23 – 22	21 – 16	15 – 12	11 – 4	3	2	1	0
0	DevID	0	DevSize	DevRev	0	Uw	Ur	Sw	Sr

Table 11.32 FDC Access Control and Status Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
DevType	31:24	This field specifies the type of device.	R	0xfd
DevSize	21:16	This field specifies the number of extra 64-byte blocks allocated to this device. The value 0x2 indicates that this device uses 2 extra, or 3 total blocks.	R	0x2
DevRev	15:12	This field specifies the revision number of the device. The value 0x0 indicates that this is the initial version of FDC	R	0x0
Uw	3	This bit indicates if user-mode write access to this device is enabled. A value of 1 indicates that access is enabled. A value of 0 indicates that access is disabled. An attempt to write to the device while in user mode with access disabled is ignored.	R/W	0
Ur	2	This bit indicates if user-mode read access to this device is enabled. A value of 1 indicates that access is enabled. A value of 0 indicates that access is disabled. An attempt to read from the device while in user mode with access disabled will return 0 and not change any state.	R/W	0
Sw	1	This bit indicates if supervisor-mode write access to this device is enabled. A value of 1 indicates that access is enabled. A value of 0 indicates that access is disabled. An attempt to write to the device while in supervisor mode with access disabled is ignored.	R/W	0
Sr	0	This bit indicates if supervisor-mode read access to this device is enabled. A value of 1 indicates that access is enabled. A value of 0 indicates that access is disabled. An attempt to read from the device while in supervisor mode with access disabled will return 0 and not change any state..	R/W	0
0	11:4	Reserved for future use. Ignored on write; returns zero on read.	R	0

11.7.6.2 FDC Configuration (FDCFG) Register (Offset 0x8)

The FDC configuration register holds information about the current configuration of the Fast Debug Channel mechanism. Figure 11.27 has the format of the FDC Configuration register, and Table 11.33 describes the register fields.

Figure 11.27 FDC Configuration Register

31 … 20	19 … 18	17 … 16	15 … 8	7 … 0
0	Tx_IntThresh	Rx_IntThresh	TxFIFOSize	RxFIFOSize

Table 11.33 FDC Configuration Register Field Descriptions

Fields				
Name	Bits	Description	Read / Write	Reset State
0	31:20	Reserved for future use. Read as zeros, must be written as zeros.	R	0
TxIntThresh	19:18	Controls whether transmit interrupts are enabled and the state of the TxFIFO needed to generate an interrupt. **Encoding** / **Meaning** 0 - Transmit Interrupt Disabled 1 - Empty 2 - Not Full 3 - Almost Empty - zero or one entry in use*(see 11.7.2 for specifics)	R/W	0
RxIntThresh	17:16	Controls whether receive interrupts are enabled and the state of the RxFIFO needed to generate an interrupt. **Encoding** / **Meaning** 0 - Receive Interrupt Disabled 1 - Full 2 - Not empty 3 - Almost Full - zero or one entry free	R/W	0
TxFIFOSize	15:8	This field holds the total number of entries in the transmit FIFO.	R	Preset
RxFIFOSize	7:0	This field holds the total number of entries in the receive FIFO.	R	Preset

11.7.6.3 FDC Status (FDSTAT) Register (Offset 0x10)

The FDC Status register holds up to date state information for the FDC mechanism. Figure 11.28 has the format of the FDC Status register, and Table 11.34 describes the register fields.

Figure 11.28 FDC Status Register

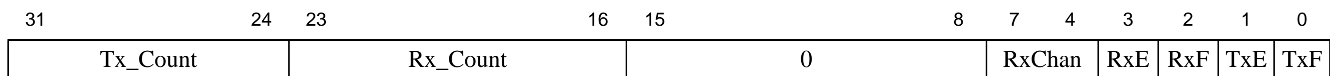


Table 11.34 FDC Status Register Field Descriptions

Fields				
Name	Bits	Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Tx_Count	31:24	This optional field is not implemented and will read as 0	R	0
Rx_Count	23:16	This optional field is not implemented and will read as 0	R	0
0	15:8	Reserved for future use. Must be written as zeros and read as zeros.	R	0

Table 11.34 FDC Status Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
RxChan	7:4	This field indicates the channel number used by the top item in the receive FIFO. This field is only valid if RxE=0.	R	Undefined
RxE	3	If RxE is set, the receive FIFO is empty. If RxE is not set, the FIFO is not empty.	R	1
RxF	2	If RxF is set, the receive FIFO is full. If RxF is not set, the FIFO is not full.	R	0
TxE	1	If TxE is set, the transmit FIFO is empty. If TxE is not set, the FIFO is not empty.	R	1
TxF	0	If TxF is set, the transmit FIFO is full. If TxF is not set, the FIFO is not full.	R	0

11.7.6.4 FDC Receive (FDRX) Register (Offset 0x18)

This register exposes the top entry in the receive FIFO. A read from this register returns the top item in the FIFO and removes it from the FIFO itself. The result of a write to this register is **UNDEFINED**. The result of a read when the FIFO is empty is also **UNDEFINED** so software must check the $FDSTAT_{RxE}$ flag prior to reading. Figure 11.29 has the format of the FDC Receive register, and Table 11.35 describes the register fields.

Figure 11.29 FDC Receive Register

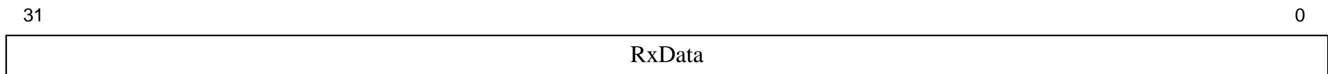


Table 11.35 FDC Receive Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
RxData	31:0	This register holds the top entry in the receive FIFO	R	Undefined

11.7.6.5 FDC Transmit n (FDTXn) Registers (Offset 0x20 + 0x8*n)

These sixteen registers all access the bottom entry in the transmit FIFO. The different addresses are used to generate a 4b channel identifier that is attached to the data value. This allows software to track different event types without needing to reserve a portion of the 32b data as a tag. A write to one of these registers results in a write to the transmit FIFO of the data value and channel ID corresponding to the register being written. Reads from these registers are **UNDEFINED**. Attempting to write to the transmit FIFO if it is full has **UNDEFINED** results. Hence, the software running on the core must check the $FDSTAT_{TxF}$ flag to ensure that there is space for the write. Figure 11.30 has the format of the FDC Transmit register, and Table 11.36 describes the register fields.

Figure 11.30 FDC Transmit Register

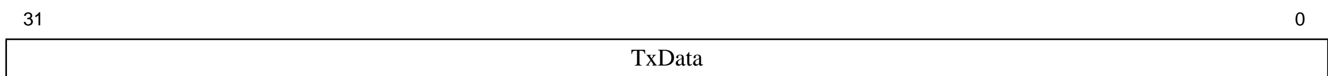


Table 11.36 FDC Transmit Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
TxData	31:0	This register holds the bottom entry in the transmit FIFO	W, Undefined value on read	Undefined

Table 11.37 FDTXn Address Decode

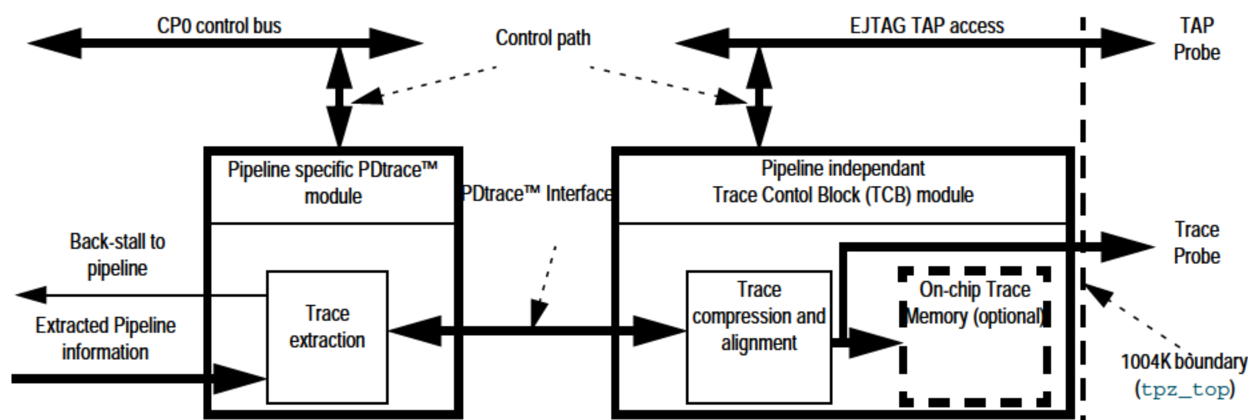
Addr	Chan		Addr	Chan		Addr	Chan		Addr	Chan
0x20	0x0		0x40	0x4		0x60	0x8		0x80	0xc
0x28	0x1		0x48	0x5		0x68	0x9		0x88	0xd
0x30	0x2		0x50	0x6		0x70	0xa		0x90	0xe
0x38	0x3		0x58	0x7		0x78	0xb		0x98	0xf

11.8 MIPS® Trace

MIPS Trace enables the ability to trace program flow, load/store addresses and load/store data. Several run-time options exist for the level of information which is traced, including tracing only when in specific processor modes (e.g., UserMode or KernelMode). MIPS Trace is an optional block in the 1004K CPU. If MIPS Trace is not implemented, the rest of this chapter is irrelevant. If MIPS Trace is implemented, the *CP0 Config3*$_{TL}$ bit is set.

There are two primary blocks involved in the MIPS Trace solution. The pipeline specific part of MIPS Trace is called the PDtrace module. It extracts the trace information from the processor pipeline, and presents it to a pipeline-independent module called the Trace Control Block (TCB). The TCB and the interface between the two blocks (PDtrace interface) are described in The PDtrace™ Interface and Trace Control Block Specification [13] While working closely together, the two parts of MIPS Trace are controlled separately by software. Figure 11.31 shows an overview of the MIPS Trace modules within the CPU.

Figure 11.31 MIPS® Trace Modules in the 1004K™ CPU



To some extent, the two modules both provide similar trace control features, but the access to these features is quite different. The PDtrace controls can only be reached through access to CP0 registers. In general, the PDtrace control registers select what information is captured for tracing.The TCB controls can be reached through EJTAG TAP access or through load/store access to registers mapped in drseg space. The TCB registers control what is traced through the PDtrace™ Interface.

Before describing the MIPS Trace implemented in the 1004K CPU, some common terminology and basic features are explained. The remaining sections of this chapter will then provide a more thorough explanation.

11.8.1 Processor Modes

Tracing can be enabled or disabled based on various processor modes. This section precisely describes these modes. The terminology is then used elsewhere in the document.

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\texttt{DebugMode} \leftarrow (\texttt{Debug}_{DM} = 1)\\
&\texttt{ExceptionMode} \leftarrow (\texttt{not DebugMode}) \texttt{ and } ((\texttt{Status}_{EXL} = 1) \texttt{ or } (\texttt{Status}_{ERL} = 1))\\
&\texttt{KernelMode} \leftarrow (\texttt{not (DebugMode or ExceptionMode)}) \texttt{ and } (\texttt{Status}_{KSU} = 2\#00)\\
&\texttt{SupervisorMode} \leftarrow (\texttt{not (DebugMode or ExceptionMode)}) \texttt{ and } (\texttt{Status}_{KSU} = 2\#01)\\
&\texttt{UserMode} \leftarrow (\texttt{not (DebugMode or ExceptionMode)}) \texttt{ and } (\texttt{Status}_{KSU} = 2\#10)
\end{aligned}
$$

11.8.2 Software Versus Hardware Control

In some of the specifications and in this text, the terms “software control” and “hardware control” are used to refer to the method for how trace is controlled. Software control is when the CP0 register *TraceControl* is used to select the modes to trace, etc. Hardware control is when the EJTAG register *TCBCONTROLA* in the TCB, via the PDtrace interface, is used to select the trace modes. The $TraceControl_{TS}$ bit determines whether software or hardware control is active. Even in Software control mode, Trace logic will need TCK to toggle atleast once before it is turned on. It is assumed that EJTAG probe will be connected while using Trace and probe reset sequence would toggle TCK. In order to extract Trace data out of TCB, *TCBCONTROLB.En* should be *set* to 1 even in “software control” mode.

11.8.3 Trace Information

The main object of trace is to show the exact program flow from a specific program execution or just a small window of the execution. In MIPS Trace this is done by providing the minimal cycle-by-cycle information necessary on the PDtrace™ interface for trace regeneration software to reproduce the trace. The following is a summary of the type of information traced:

- Only instructions which complete at the end of the pipeline are traced, and indicated with a completion-flag. The PC is implicitly pointing to the next instruction.
- Load instructions are indicated with a load-flag.
- Store instructions are indicated with a store-flag[1].
- Taken branches are indicated with a branch-taken-flag on the target instruction.
- New PC information for a branch is only traced if the branch target is unpredictable from the static program image.

1. A SC (Store Conditional) instruction is not flagged as a store instruction if the load-locked bit prevented the actual store.

- When branch targets are unpredictable, only the delta value from current PC is traced, if it is dynamically determined to reduce the number of bits necessary to indicate the new PC. Otherwise the full PC value is traced.

- When a completing instruction is executed in a different processor mode from the previous one, the new processor mode is traced.

- The first instruction is always traced as a branch target, with processor mode and full PC.

- Periodic synchronization instructions are identified with a sync-flag, and traced with the processor mode and full PC.

All the instruction flags above are combined into one 3-bit value, to minimize the bit information to trace. The possible processor modes are explained in Section 11.8.1 "Processor Modes".

The target address is statically predictable for all branch and all jump-immediate instructions. If the branch is taken, then the branch-taken-flag will indicate this. All jump-register instructions and ERET/DERET are instructions which have an unpredictable target address. These will have full/delta PC values included in the trace information. Also treated as unpredictable are PC changes which occur due to exceptions, such as an interrupt, reset, etc.

Trace regeneration software is required to know the static program image in memory, in order to reproduce the dynamic flow with the above information. But this is usually not a problem. Only the virtual value of the PC is used. Physical memory location will typically differ.

It is possible to turn on PC delta/full information for all branches, but this should not normally be necessary. As a safety check for trace regeneration software, a periodic synchronization with a full PC is sent. The period of this synchronization is cycle based and programmable.

11.8.4 Load/Store Address and Data Trace Information

In addition to PC flow, it is possible to get information on the load/store addresses, as well as the data read/written. When enabled, the following information is optionally added to the trace.

- When load-address tracing is on, the full load address of the first load instruction is traced (indicated by the load-flag). For subsequent loads, a dynamically-determined delta to the previous load address is traced to compress the information which must be sent.

- When store-address tracing is on, the full store address of the first store instruction is traced (indicated by the store-flag). For subsequent stores, a dynamically-determined delta to the previous store address is traced.

- When load-data tracing is on, the full load data read by each load instruction is traced (indicated by the load-flag). Only actual read bytes are traced.

- When store-data tracing is on, the full store data written by each store instruction is traced (indicated by the store-flag). Only written bytes are traced.

After each synchronization instruction, the first load address and the first store address following this are both traced with the full address if load/store address tracing is enabled.

11.8.5 Programmable Processor Trace Mode Options

To enable tracing, a global Trace On signal must be set. When trace is on, it is possible to enable tracing in any combination of the processor modes described in Section 11.8.1 "Processor Modes". In addition to this, trace can be turned on globally for all process, or only for specific processes by tracing only specific masked values of the ASID found in $\mathit{EntryHi}_{\mathrm{ASID}}$.

Additionally, an EJTAG Simple Break trigger point can override the processor mode and ASID selection and turn them all on. Another trigger point can disable this override again.

11.8.6 Programmable Trace Information Options

The processor mode changes are always traced:

- On the first instruction.
- On any synchronization instruction.
- When the mode changes and either the previous or the current processor mode is selected for trace.

The amount of extra information traced is programmable to include:

- PC information only.
- PC and cross product of load/store address/data
- Performance counter values, if the optional performance counter trace is enabled and the specific events as defined in Section 11.8.12 "Performance Counter Tracing" occur.

If the full internal state of the processor is known prior to trace start, PC and load data are the only information needed to recreate all register values on an instruction by instruction basis.

11.8.6.1 User Data Trace

Two special CP0 registers, *UserTraceData1* and *UserTraceData2,* can generate a data trace. When either of these registers is written, and the global Trace On is set, then the 32-bit data written is put in the trace as special User Data information. Since writing these registers is performed via an MTC0 operation, only one register is updated in any given cycle. Thus in the same cycle, only one of the UserTraceData registers is traced. However in back to back cycles, the tracing of the two registers can alternate, and is handled correctly.

Remark: The User Data is sent even if the processor is operating in an un-traced processor mode.

11.8.7 Enable Trace to Probe On-chip Memory

When trace is On, based on the options listed in Section 11.8.5 "Programmable Processor Trace Mode Options", the trace information is continuously sent on the PDtrace™ interface to the TCB. The TCB must, however, be enabled to transmit the trace information to the Trace probe or to on-chip trace memory, by having the $\mathit{TCBCONTROLB}_{\mathrm{EN}}$ bit set. It is possible to enable and disable the TCB in a number of ways:

- Set/clear the $\mathit{TCBCONTROLB}_{\mathrm{EN}}$ bit via an EJTAG TAP operation.

- Initialize a TCB trigger to set/clear the *TCBCONTROLB*$_{EN}$ bit.

- Use the drseg mapping of *TCBCONTROLB* to clear *TCBCONTROLB$_{EN}$* via a store to drseg space. See Section 11.8.17 “Memory-mapped Access to PDtrace Controls and On-Chip Trace Buffer” for special access rules.

11.8.8 TCB Trigger

The TCB can optionally include 0 to 8 triggers. A TCB trigger can be programmed to fire from any combination of:

- Probe Trigger Input to the TCB.

- Chip-level Trigger Input to the TCB.

- Processor entry into DebugMode.

When a trigger fires it can be programmed to have any combination of actions:

- Create Probe Trigger Output from TCB.

- Create Chip-level Trigger Output from TCB.

- Set, clear, or start countdown to clear the *TCBCONTROLB*$_{EN}$ bit (start/end/about trigger).

- Put an information byte into the trace stream.That is a TF6 is inserted into the trace stream.

11.8.9 Cycle-by-Cycle Information

All of the trace information listed in Section 11.8.3 “Trace Information” and Section 11.8.4 “Load/Store Address and Data Trace Information”, will be collected from the PDtrace™ interface by the TCB. The trace will then be compressed and aligned to fit in 64 bit trace words, with no loss of information. It is possible to exclude/include the exact cycle-by-cycle relationship between each instruction. If excluded, the number of bits required in the trace information from the TCB is reduced, and each trace word will only contain information from completing instructions.

11.8.10 Instruction and Data Cache Miss Tracing

It is possible to embed information about Instruction and/or Data cache misses into the trace. There are limitations in the CPU’s ability to track this and put useful information into the trace.

For the instruction cache miss indicator

- The instruction cache miss indicator is based on whether the instruction is pulled from the cache or the fill buffer. On a cache miss, the fetch is restarted when the data comes back from the BIU and the instructions will come from the Fill Buffer. The miss flag is only set for the first fetch that hits out of the FB to avoid marking every fetch from the line a miss. However, two instructions can be fetched per cycle and both will be marked as a miss. If branching to the middle of a dword though, only 1 miss will be seen.

- The IFU can prefetch down a speculative path which might not be immediately executed. These speculative fetches are filled into the cache. Subsequently, when the code accesses the same address, it is possible that the instruction will hit in the cache even if that instruction was being executed for the very first time.

- The fetch unit is highly independent from the execution unit on the 1004K CPU, so the fetch sequence can be very different from the execution sequence. This compounds the above limitations of the way the cache miss is tracked and makes the data somewhat unpredictable.

For the data cache miss indicator:

- The data cache indication was previously a bit in the TF4 trace record that was included with the load or store data. This bit still exists, but the CM trace correlation described in Section 11.8.11 “Coherence Manager Trace Correlation”provides a more accurate indication.

11.8.11 Coherence Manager Trace Correlation

In the 1004K Coherent Processing System, trace information is provided from each of the CPUs as well as the Coherence Manager. In order to correlate transactions from the CM to the instruction stream, an identifier is used in both the CPU and CM traces.

In the CPU trace, each instruction completion record (TF2, TF3, TF4) includes 1-4 bits with information about it:

- 0 -> indicates that this is not considered a load/store type instruction
- 10 -> indicates that this is a load/store type that hit in the cache
- 11<CosID> -> indicates that this is a load/store type that missed in the cache and generated a request with the two bit tag <CosID>

The CM trace includes the core ID and CosID for each request. The CosID changes relatively slowly - it is generally incremented after PCSync in the CPU or if an overflow is detected in the CM. Typically several requests in a row will use the same CosID value, and the intermediate correlation is enabled by the requests appearing in the same order in the CM and CPU traces. Because of this, and the fact that the CosID is traced as a part of the instruction completion record, correlating instructions to CM transactions is possible only when PC tracing is enabled for all TCs executing on the CPU.

11.8.12 Performance Counter Tracing

The optional feature of dumping performance counter values through the trace stream provides the ability to correlate performance counter events to the specific instruction execution path. $TraceControl3_{PeC}$ indicates if this optional feature is implemented. Furthermore the feature is enabled via $TraceControl3_{PeCE}$ / $TCBCONTROLE_{PeCE}$. When a triggering event occurs, all counters except those specifically disabled are tracedControl over which particular counters should not be traced is specified by bit *PCTD* in each *Performance Counter Control* Register. If set to zero (default setting), tracing is enabled for this performance counter, and if set to one, tracing is disabled. In the case where more than one event occurs in the same cycle, the performance counter values are traced only once for that cycle.

The four events which can trigger a trace of performance counters and the corresponding control registers are listed bellow.

1. Synchronization counter expiration will trigger tracing of the performance counter values. This is controlled by $TraceControl3_{PeCSync}$ / $TCBCONTROLE_{PeCSync}$.
2. Hardware trace breakpoint will trigger tracing of the performance counter values. This is contingent on several control bit settings. The TE bit in the breakpoint control register should be set. This allows a trigger signal to be sent to the Trace Unit. When set, $TraceControl3_{PeCBP}$ / $TCBCONTROLE_{PeCBP}$ act as the enable for performance counter tracing. Additionally the generation of a performance counter trigger is controlled by setting active both

$TraceIBPC_{PCT}$ and *$TraceIBPC_{IE}$*, and, or setting active hi both *$TraceDBPC_{PCT}$* and *$TraceDBPC_{IE}$*. Furthermore, the BreakPointControl field for the specific hardware breakpoint in *TraceIBPC* or *TraceDBPC* must be encoded as 3'b100 or 3'b101 to allow performance counter values into the trace stream.

3. Function call, function return or exception occurrence will trigger tracing of the performance counter values.This is controlled by *$TraceControl3_{PeCFCR}$* / *$TCBCONTROLE_{PeCFCR}$*.

4. An overflow of an active performance counter will trigger tracing of the performance counter values. This is controlled by *$TraceControl3_{PeCOvf}$* / *$TCBCONTROLE_{PeCOvf}$*.

The performance counter data will always be traced in a Trace Format 3 (TF3) with the PCV bit set to one. If the traced data is not performance counter data, and performance counter tracing is enabled, then the PCV bit will be zero.

The 1004K CPU does not include the optional cycle counter in its performance coutner trace.

11.8.13 Filtered Data Trace Mode

This mode is used to support tracing of events in an application code on a Linux system. This type of instrumented code tracing is primarily used for performance analysis although it can also be used for event logging and debug. Filtered data tracing mode provides a mechanism to do low overhead event tracing from user application code since the UserTraceData registers require a kernel call from user mode.

In this mode, data load and store addresses are compared to the hardware data breakpoint address, if the addresses match, the data value associated with that match along with the address are traced out.

This mode works even when data address and/or value tracing is turned on. However, the general usage model is when both PC and Data trace are turned off since it may not always be possible to identify data that was traced due to a match vs. the regular data stream. This mode is used to shadow one or more static (fixed-address) variables. When there is a store to the variable, the store value is captured into the trace. Since there are generally two or more data triggers/watchpoints, the trace will need to uniquely identify the shadowed variable by also tracing out the associated address.

Filtered Data Trace mode is controlled by *$TraceControl2_{FDT}$* / *$TCBCONTROLB_{FDT}$*.

11.8.14 PC tracing off

In order to decrease the amount of data traced, instruction completion and PC tracing can be disabled by clearing the *$TraceControl2_{Mode.PC}$* / *$TCBCONTROLC_{Mode.PC}$*. bit. Turning PC tracing off also allows for a number of special tracing modes which are contingent on the setting of other mode bits.

1. PC tracing off, *TLSM*=1 (*$TraceControl_{TLSM}$* / *$TCBCONTROLA_{TLSM}$*), Address tracing=0, Data tracing=0. For data cache misses, full PC, full address, and the associated instruction completions are traced. Instruction completions not associated with a data cache miss are not traced.

2. PC tracing off, *TLSM*=1, Address tracing=0, Data tracing=1. For data cache misses, full PC, full address, data, and the associated instruction completions are traced. Instruction completions not associated with a data cache miss are not traced.

3. PC tracing off, TLSM=1, Address tracing=1, Data tracing=0. For data cache misses, full address is traced. No instruction completions are traced.

4. PC tracing off, TLSM=1, Address tracing=1, Data tracing=1: For data cache misses, full address and data are traced. No instruction completions are traced.

5. PC tracing off, *TIM*=1 (T*raceControl*$_{TIM}$ / *TCBCONTROLA*$_{TIM}$), or TFCR=1 (T*raceControl*$_{TFCR}$ / *TCBCONTROLA*$_{TFCR}$): If an instruction cache miss or function call/return occurs, then the full PC is traced along with the corresponding instruction completion information.

6. PC tracing off, *TLSM*=0, *TIM*=0, *TFCR*=0. All trace messages related to instruction completions are disabled. Full addrss/data tracing can be enabled. TF6 with no-trace counts can still be generated if Cycle Accurate mode is enabled. TF2 should never be generated.

In addition, PC-sync messages are globally disabled. The reconstruction software would need a PC-sync in the case of *TLSM*=1 if the PCs traced out were delta PCs. However, given that the full PC is traced, there is no need for the PC-Sync message.

With PC tracing disabled, there is a significant decrease in the instruction completion information that is traced. Only if the PC must be traced out is the corresponding instruction completion also traced, else the instruction completion is dropped.

11.8.15 TMOAS Handling

The *MIPS PDtrace*™ *Specification* requires a TMOAS transaction to be inserted into the trace stream. TMOAS transactions are used to record processor mode change, start or end of the tracing activity, overflow of the internal buffers in the PDtrace unit, or periodical synchronization. The following is a summary of the cases where a TMOAS transaction is generated:

- **Start of Tracing,** When tracing is first started, or when it is re-started after a break, some basic information is needed first to allow external software to identify the trace start point in the static program image, and make some reasonable conclusions about the processor mode at the start of tracing. At the start of the tracing, a TMOAS record is sent out the same time as the first completed instruction. This trace record type shows the processor mode and the ASID value of the currently executing processor. This record is followed by a trace of the full PC value for the first instruction traced.

- **Trace Synchronization,** The synchronization tracing function is triggered when the internal synchronization counter overflows based on the synchronization period bits as set in the (T*raceControl2*$_{SyP}$/*TCBCONTROLA*$_{SyP}$). Similar to the start of tracing, when the synchronization period is reached, a TMOAS record is first sent, followed by a full PC value. Note that the TMOAS associated with synchronization is sent only when the IPC instruction has been identified, to prevent other TType records between the TMOAS and the full PC trace for the synchronization.

- **Trace Overflow and Restart.** The trace unit’s internal FIFO or buffers are used to hold address and data values waiting to be compressed, formatted, and traced out of the processor. It is possible to have a program sequence that overflows one or more of these FIFOs. In the situation that the FIFO overflows, the core is essentially losing trace data and hence the output gets illogical and no longer is a true representation of the program execution sequence. In this situation, 1004K core will abandon tracing in the current cycle, discard all entries in the FIFO, and restart tracing from the next completed instruction in the following cycle. In this situation, a TMOAS record is first sent after the overflow.

- **Tracing During Processor Mode Changes.** During normal execution, the processor will change its operation mode frequently. For example, when executing user-level code, an interrupt may cause the processor to jump to kernel mode to service the interrupt. When the interrupt has been serviced, the processor will switch back to user mode. A mode change is indicated in the tracing logic by tracing out a TMOAS for TType. In the situation that

the mode change affects tracing, for example, the tracing system has been set up to trace only in user mode and not in kernel mode, then the interrupt service routine should not be traced. Upon jumping to kernel mode, the core tracing logic will add a TMOAS as the last record. When jumping from a non-tracing mode to a tracing mode, the first record output is TMOAS to indicate the mode change. This is followed by a full PC value of the first instruction in the tracing mode. This will enable the external trace reconstruction software to re-synchronize itself and track program execution in the desired mode.

Figure 11.32 and Table 11.38 are the bit field description for a TMOAS record. A TMOAS record is usually associates with an instruction, except for the case of a trace end TMOAS, where a TMOAS is sent out because the processor enters a non-tracing mode. In this case, the TMOAS is not associated with any instruction since the processor is not tracing, some of the field in the TMOAS record can be invalid data, for example, the ISAM field can be underteminístic. This should not present an issue for the software since this TMOAS is only used as an indication that the trace has ended.

.

Figure 11.32 A TMOAS Trace Record

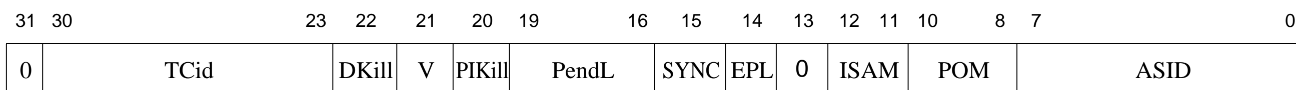


Table 11.38 TMOAS Trace Record Field Descriptions

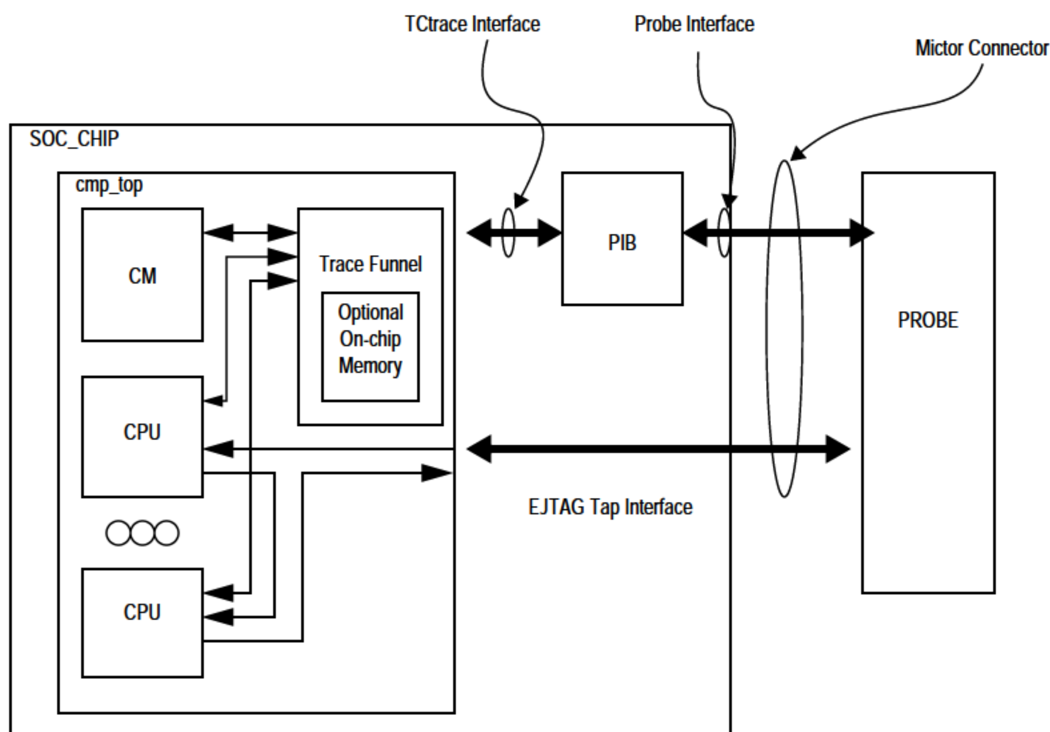
Fields		Description
Name	**Bits**	
TCid	30..23	Only required if the processor implements MT, otherwise reserved.
DKill	22	Only required if the processor implements MT, otherwise reserved.
V	21	Only required if the processor implements MT, otherwise ignored.
PIKill	20	Only required if the processor implements MT, otherwise ignored.
PendL	19:16	This field is valid only when *SYNC* is 1, see below. When *SYNC* is 1, this field indicates the number of outstanding loads and stores at the IPC cycle. If the number of loads/store is zero, then all data transmissions' TDs after that are ignored until the next load/store instruction, at which point counting is restarted. Such TD transmissions are from store instructions which could not complete before the IPC signal was sent. Note that a sync happens with an InsComp value of IPC. Depending on whether or not there is data buffered up internally waiting to be sent out, the accompanying TMOAS may not be sent until several cycles later. In the meantime, any data sent in between the IPC and the TMOAS record may be ignored (at trace start or after an overflow) since this belongs to load and store instructions that happened before the sync. Now, if there are any load or store instructions between the IPC and the TMOAS, then the data for this will only be seen after the TMOAS is transmitted, since they would get buffered behind the TMOAS.
SYNC	15	When 0, this record was sent when the *ASID*, *POM*, or *ISAM* changed. When 1, this record was sent for a synchronization event.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>EPL</td><td>14</td><td>When 1, the PendL field is to be interpreted as (PendL + 16). When 0, the PendL field is interpreted by itself. This is introduced in PDtrace rev. 6.00</td></tr>
<tr><td>ISAM</td><td>12:11</td><td><table><tr><th>Value</th><th>In Architecture Mode</th></tr><tr><td>00</td><td>MIPS32</td></tr><tr><td>01</td><td>MIPS64</td></tr><tr><td>10</td><td>MIPS16e from MIPS32 mode</td></tr><tr><td>11</td><td>MIPS16e from MIPS64 mode</td></tr></table></td></tr>
<tr><td>POM</td><td>10:8</td><td><table><tr><th>Value</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>000</td><td>Kernel Mode (EXL = 0, ERL = 0)</td></tr><tr><td>001</td><td>Exception Mode (EXL = 1, ERL = 0)</td></tr><tr><td>010</td><td>Exception Mode (EXL = don’t care, ERL = 1)</td></tr><tr><td>011</td><td>Debug Mode</td></tr><tr><td>100</td><td>Supervisor Mode</td></tr><tr><td>101</td><td>User Mode</td></tr><tr><td>110</td><td>Reserved</td></tr><tr><td>111</td><td>Reserved</td></tr></table></td></tr>
<tr><td>ASID</td><td>7:0</td><td>The ASID of the current process. If the processor does not implement the standard TLB-based MMU, this field is always traced as a zero because the EntryHi register, and hence the ASID, is not defined.</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>31,13</td><td>Reserved for future use</td></tr>
</table>

11.8.16 Controling Trace in a Multi-CPU CPS

The 1004K Coherent Processing System CPS enables debug trace information from the 1004K CPUs and the Coherence Manager to be streamed off chip or stored in on-chip RAM. As shown in Figure 11.33, each 1004K CPU produces a 64-bit debug trace stream describing its program and data flow. The CM produces a stream describing the flow of transactions within the CM. The Trace Funnel muxes the CPU and CM trace streams into a single debug trace stream which is either stored in an on-chip buffer or passed onto a Probe Interface Block (PIB). A PIB is the on-chip link between the Trace Funnel and debug probe interface, and may include functionality such as time multiplexing the 64-bit TCtrace data onto a narrower, faster probe interface.

Figure 11.33 PD Trace Architecture



Since each 1004K CPU in the CPS has its own set of TCBControl registers, one CPU must be designated as the 'master' which controls trace functionality for the CM, the on-chip trace buffer, and the PIB interface. This is done through the *PDTrace Master Select Register* located in the debug block within the Global Configuration Registers (GCR) address space, at offset 0x0000.

In addition to selecting the trace master CPU, the GCR block itself can function as the trace master in the CPS. This is done through a set of memory mapped registers that have a similar functionality to the TCB control registers in each of the 1004Ks CPUs. The GCR module is selected to be the trace master if the *TS* field of the *DPTrace Master Select Register* is set. See the Coherent Processing System User's Manual [8] for more information about GCRs.

The 1004K Coherent Processing System Cluster Power Controller (CPC), which is responsible for power gating and tree root clock gating of the CM and CPUs, does not automatically prevent a power-down or clock-off of the PDtrace master. If power-down/clock-off states are permitted on all CPUs, the GRC block in the CM should be used as the master. Alternatively, when EJTAG Tap control of CPC's trace functions is desired, one CPU must be kept in debug mode, which will prevent it from being powered-down/clocked-off, while it performs trace master functions.

11.8.17 Memory-mapped Access to PDtrace Controls and On-Chip Trace Buffer

The main access mode to the core's TCB Control registers and the on-chip trace memory is through the TAP Probe using the EJTAG Tap access port to the Trace unit. The on-chip trace memory can also be accessed directly by software using load and store instructions. Access is provided by mapping the TCB registers to drseg address space, which allows them to be accessed by software in debug mode. Since the TCB registers accessed indirectly via *TCBData* by the TAP Probe are mapped directly to drseg, the *TCBData* register does not need to be mapped.

The mapped drseg registers are shown in Table 11.39. These mappings are "active" only when an external probe is

Table 11.39 Mapping TCB Registers in drseg

Offset in drseg	Register Name	Description
0x3000	*TCBControlA*	The TCBControlA register. See Section 11.10.1 "TCBCONTROLA Register" for more details about register contents.
0x3008	*TCBControlB*	The TCBControlB register. See Section 11.10.2 "TCBCONTROLB Register" for more details about register contents.
0x3010	*TCBControlC*	The TCBControlC register. See Section 11.10.4 "TCBCONTROLC Register" for more details about register contents.
0x3018	*TCBControlD*	The TCBControlD register. See Section 11.10.5 "TCBCONTROLD Register" for more details about register contents.
0x3020	*TCBControlE*	The TCBControlE register. See Section 11.10.6 "TCBCONTROLE Register" for more details about register contents.
0x3028	*TCBConfig*	The TCBConfig register. See Section 11.10.7 "TCBCONFIG Register (Reg 0)" for more details about register contents.
0x3100	*TCBTW*	Trace Word read register. This register holds the Trace Word just read from on-line trace memory. See Section 11.10.8 "TCBTW Register (Reg 4)" for more details about register contents.
0x3108	*TCBRDP*	Trace Word Read pointer. It points to the location in the on-line trace memory where the next Trace Word will be read. A TW read has the side-effect of post-incrementing this register value to point to the next TW location. (A maximum value wraps the address around to the beginning of the trace memory). See Section 11.10.9 "TCBRDP Register (Reg 5)" for more details about register contents.
0x3110	*TCBWRP*	Trace Word Write pointer. It points to the location in the on-line trace memory where the next new Trace Word will be written. See Section 11.10.10 "TCBWRP Register (Reg 6)" for more details about register contents.
0x3118	*TCBSTP*	Trace Word Start Pointer. It points to the location of the oldest TW in the on-chip trace memory. See Section 11.10.11 "TCBSTP Register (Reg 7)" for more details about register contents.
0x3120	*BKUPRDP*	This is not a TCB register, but needed on a reset to save the *TCBRDP* value before that register is reset to 0. This allows the software that comes up after a (hard or soft) reset to know the last-known good value of *TCBRDP* before system crash, and potentially read the trace memory from or to the appropriate trace memory location.
0x3128	*BKUPWRP*	This is not a TCB register, but needed on a reset to save the *TCBWRP* value before that register is reset to 0. This allows the software that comes up after a (hard or soft) reset to know the last-known good value of *TCBWRP* before system crash, and potentially read the trace memory from or to the appropriate trace memory location.
0x3130	*BKUPSTP*	This is not a TCB register, but needed on a reset to save the *TCBSTP* value before that register is reset to 0. This allows the software that comes up after a (hard or soft) reset to know the last-known good value of *TCBSTP* before system crash, and potentially read the trace memory from or to the appropriate trace memory location.
0x3200-0x3238	*TCBTrigX*	The *TCBTrigX* set of registers. The number of implemented registers is determined by the value in $TCBCONFIG_{TRIG}$. See Section 11.10.12 "TCBTRIGx Register (Reg 16-23)" for more details about register contents.

either not present, or not enabled (i.e., the *ProbEN* bit in the *EJTAG Control* Register or *ECR* is set to zero). If the mappings are active, writes to the TCB registers via drseg are enabled (so long as these writes are otherwise permitted). If the mappings are inactive, writes to the TCB registers via drseg are ignored. Note that a hardware probe could set the *ProbEN* bit to zero and still access the TCBControl registers. Writing the TCB registers via the probe and drseg simultaneously will result in unpredictable behavior. Software should not rely on reads from the TCB registers via drseg to return reliable data when the mappings are inactive. If the mappings are active on reset (i.e., *ProbEN*=0), software is responsible for initializing all control register fields, except for $TCBCONTROLA_{On}$ and $TCBCONTROLB_{En}$.Those control bits are set to zero on a core reset if the drseg mappings are active.

On-chip trace memory can be read by doing a load instruction to *TCBTW*. On a 32-bit core, two load instructions must be executed to load a 64-bit trace word. These load instructions must target two different addresses. The first must target an offset of (+4) from the *TCBTW* register, and the second load instruction must target the *TCBTW* register. Accessing the *TCBTW* has the side effect of automatically incrementing the value of *TCBRDP* to the next trace word. The trace memory cannot be written to via this mechanism. Software can also do direct loads and stores to *TCBRDP* and *TCBWRP* at the beginning of the trace memory dump function. Note that writing to these registers in the middle of the trace logic writing into this memory can result in UNPREDICTABLE results and junked values in the trace memory.

Whether or not software has access to on-chip trace memory is controlled via one bit $TCBCONTROLB_{TRPAD}$. This is a control *DISABLE* bit. The bit in *TCBCONTROLB* is mirrored in *TraceControl3*. To access the on-chip memory control registers, namely the memory pointers, the *TCBTW*, and both of the backup pointer bits,*TRPAD* and *ProbEN*, must be zero. To access the other registers, it is sufficient to set the *ProbEN* bit to zero. Regardless of the setting of *ProbEN* and *TRPAD*, all the registers listed in Table 11.39 can be read out by software.

Tracing is stopped when the system crashes and an exception handler is invoked. The last known good values of *TCBRDP*, *TCBWRP*, and *TCBSTP* are saved in the backup registers shown in the table. Software should not rely on *TCBRDP*, *TCBWRP*, and *TCBSTP* holding their last known good values across a reset, and should use the backup registers for this purpose.

11.8.18 Trace Message Format

The TCB collects trace information every cycle from the PDtrace™ interface. This information is collected into six different Trace Formats (TF1 to TF6). One important feature is that all Trace Formats have at least one non-zero bit.

11.8.19 Trace Word Format

After the PDtrace data has been converted into Trace Formats, the trace information must be streamed to either on-chip trace memory or to the trace probe. Each of the major Trace Formats are of different size. This complicates how to store this information into an on-chip memory of fixed width without too much wasted space. It also complicates how to transmit data through a fixed-width trace probe interface to off-chip memory. To minimize memory overhead and or bandwidth-loss, the Trace Formats are collected into Trace Words of fixed width.

A Trace Word (TW) is defined to be 64 bits wide. An empty/invalid TW is built of all zeros. A TW which contains one or more valid TF's is guaranteed to have a non-zero value on one of the four least significant bits [3:0]. During operation of the TCB, each TW is built from the TF's generated each clock cycle. When all 64 bits are used, the TW is full and can be sent to either on-chip trace memory or to the trace probe.

11.9 PDtrace™ Registers (Software Control)

The CP0 registers associated with PDtrace are listed in Table 11.40 and described in Chapter 7, “CP0 Registers of the 1004K™ CPU” on page 167

Table 11.40 A List of Coprocessor 0 Trace Registers

Register Number	Sel	Register Name	Reference
23	1	TraceControl	Section 7.2.51 “Trace Control Register (CP0 Register 23, Select 1)”
23	2	TraceControl2	Section 7.2.52 “Trace Control2 Register (CP0 Register 23, Select 2)”
24	2	*TraceControl3*	Section 7.2.57 “Trace Control3 Register (CP0 Register 24, Select 2)”
23	3	UserTraceData1	Section 7.2.53 “User Trace Data1 Register (CP0 Register 23, Select 3) and User Trace Data2 Register (CP0 Register 24, Select 3)”
24	3	*UserTraceData2*	Section 7.2.53 “User Trace Data1 Register (CP0 Register 23, Select 3) and User Trace Data2 Register (CP0 Register 24, Select 3)”

11.10 Trace Control Block (TCB) Registers (Hardware Control)

The TCB registers used to control its operation are listed in Table 11.41 and Table 11.42. These registers are accessed via the EJTAG TAP interface.

Table 11.41 TCB EJTAG Registers

EJTAG Register	Name	Description	Implemented
0x10	TCBCONTROLA	Control register in the TCB mainly used for controlling the trace input signals to the CPU on the PDtrace interface. See Section 11.10.1 “TCBCONTROLA Register”.	Yes
0x11	TCBCONTROLB	Control register in the TCB that is mainly used to specify what to do with the trace information. The *REG* [25:21] field in this register specifies the number of the TCB internal register accessed by the *TCBDATA* register. A list of all the registers that can be accessed by the *TCBDATA* register is shown in Table 11.42. See Section 11.10.2 “TCBCONTROLB Register”.	Yes
0x12	TCBDATA	This is used to access registers specified by the *REG* field in the *TCBCONTROLB* register. See Section 11.10.3 “TCBDATA Register”.	Yes
0x13	TCBCONTROLC	Control Register in the TCB used to control and hold tracing information. See Section 11.10.4 “TCBCONTROLC Register”.	Yes
0x15	TCBCONTROLD	Control register in the TCB used to control tracing from the Coherence Manager Section 11.10.5 “TCBCONTROLD Register”	Yes
0x16	*TCBCONTROLE*	Control Register in the TCB used to control tracing for the performance counter tracing feature. See Section 11.10.6 “TCBCONTROLE Register”.	Yes

Table 11.42 Registers Selected by $TCBCONTROLB_{REG}$

TCBCONTROLB$_{REG}$ field	Name	Reference	Implemented
0	TCBCONFIG	Section 11.10.7 “TCBCONFIG Register (Reg 0)”	Yes
4	TCBTW	Section 11.10.8 “TCBTW Register (Reg 4)”	Yes if on-chip memory exists. Otherwise No
5	TCBRDP	Section 11.10.9 “TCBRDP Register (Reg 5)”	
6	TCBWRP	Section 11.10.10 “TCBWRP Register (Reg 6)”	
7	TCBSTP	Section 11.10.11 “TCBSTP Register (Reg 7)”	
16-23	TCBTRIGx	Section 11.10.12 “TCBTRIGx Register (Reg 16-23)”	Only the number indicated by *TCBCONFIG*$_{TRIG}$ are implemented.

11.10.1 TCBCONTROLA Register

The TCB is responsible for asserting or de-asserting the trace input control signals on the PDtrace interface to the CPU’s tracing logic. Most of the control is done using the *TCBCONTROLA* register.

The *TCBCONTROLA* register is written by an EJTAG TAP controller instruction, TCBCONTROLA (0x10). This register is also mapped to offset 0x3000 in drseg. See Section 11.8.17 “Memory-mapped Access to PDtrace Controls and On-Chip Trace Buffer” on page 343 on how this register can be accessed via drseg.

The format of the *TCBCONTROLA* register is shown below, and the fields are described in Table 11.43.

Figure 11.34 TCBCONTROLA Register Format

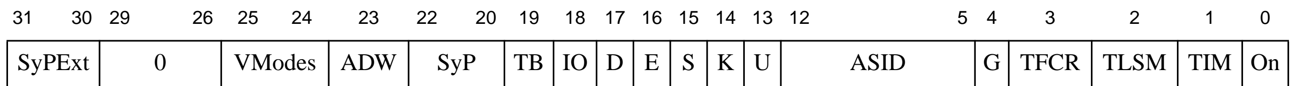


Table 11.43 TCBCONTROLA Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
SyPExt	31:30	These two bits used to be Implementation specific until PDtrace spec revision 06.00 when it reverts to architecturally defined bits to extend the SyP (sync period) field for implementations that need higher numbers of cycles between synchronization events. The value of SyP is extended by assuming that these two bits are juxtaposed to the left of the three bits of SyP (SyPExt.SyP). When only SyP was used to specify the synchronization period, the value was 2^x, where x was computed from SyP by adding 5 to the actual value represented by the bits. A similar formula is applied to the 5 bits just obtained by the juxtaposition of SyPExt and SyP. Sync period values greater than 2^{31} are UNPREDICTABLE. Since the value of 11010 represents the value of 31 (with +5), all values greater than 11010 are UNPREDICTABLE. Note that with these new bits, a sync period range of 2^5 to 2^{31} cycles can now be obtained.	R/W	0
0	29:26	Reserved. Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	R	0

Table 11.43 TCBCONTROLA Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>VModes</td><td>25:24</td><td>This field specifies the type of tracing that is supported by the processor, as follows:
<table><tr><th>Encoding</th><th>Meaning</th></tr><tr><td>00</td><td>PC tracing only</td></tr><tr><td>01</td><td>PC and Load and store address tracing only</td></tr><tr><td>10</td><td>PC, load and store address, and load and store data.</td></tr><tr><td>11</td><td>Reserved</td></tr></table>This field is preset to the value of PDO_ValidModes.</td><td>R</td><td>10</td></tr>
<tr><td>ADW</td><td>23</td><td>PDO_AD bus width.
0: The PDO_AD bus is 16 bits wide.
1: The PDO_AD bus is 32 bits wide.</td><td>R</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>SyP</td><td>22:20</td><td>Used to indicate the synchronization period.
The period (in cycles) between which the periodic synchronization information is to be sent is defined as shown in the table below.
<table><tr><th>SyP</th><th>Sync Period</th></tr><tr><td>000</td><td>2^5</td></tr><tr><td>001</td><td>2^6</td></tr><tr><td>010</td><td>2^7</td></tr><tr><td>011</td><td>2^8</td></tr><tr><td>100</td><td>2^9</td></tr><tr><td>101</td><td>2^{10}</td></tr><tr><td>110</td><td>2^{11}</td></tr><tr><td>111</td><td>2^{12}</td></tr></table>This field defines the value on the PDI_SyncPeriod signal.</td><td>R/W</td><td>000</td></tr>
<tr><td>TB</td><td>19</td><td>Trace All Branches. When set to one, this field indicates that the CPU must trace either full or incremental PC values for all branches. When set to zero, only the unpredictable branches are traced.
This field defines the value on the PDI_TraceAllBranch signal.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>IO</td><td>18</td><td>Inhibit Overflow. This bit is used to indicate to the CPU trace logic that slow but complete tracing is desired. Hence, the CPU tracing logic must not allow a FIFO overflow and discard trace data. This is achieved by stalling the pipeline when the FIFO is nearly full so that no trace records are ever lost.
This field defines the value on the PDI_InhibitOverflow signal.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>D</td><td>17</td><td>When set to one, this enables tracing in Debug mode, i.e., when the DM bit is one in the Debug register. For trace to be enabled in Debug mode, the On bit must be one, and either the G bit must be one, or the current process must match the ASID field in this register.
When set to zero, trace is disabled in Debug mode, irrespective of other bits.
This field defines the value on the PDI_DM signal.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undefined</td></tr>
</table>

Table 11.43 TCBCONTROLA Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
E	16	This controls when tracing is enabled. When set, tracing is enabled when either of the *EXL* or *ERL* bits in the *Status* register is one, provided that the *On* bit (bit 0) is also set, and either the G bit is set, or the current process ASID matches the *ASID* field in this register. This field defines the value on the *PDI_E* signal.	R/W	Undefined
S	15	When set, this enables tracing when the CPU is in Supervisor mode as defined in the MIPS32 or MIPS64 architecture specification. This is provided the On bit (bit 0) is also set, and either the G bit is set, or the current process ASID matches the *ASID* field in this register. This field defines the value on the *PDI_S* signal.	R/W	Undefined
K	14	When set, this enables tracing when the *On* bit is set and the CPU is in Kernel mode. Unlike the usual definition of Kernel Mode, this bit enables tracing only when the *ERL* and *EXL* bits in the *Status* register are zero. This is provided the On bit (bit 0) is also set, and either the G bit is set, or the current process ASID matches the *ASID* field in this register. This field defines the value on the *PDI_K* signal.	R/W	Undefined
U	13	When set, this enables tracing when the CPU is in User mode as defined in the MIPS32 or MIPS64 architecture specification. This is provided the *On* bit (bit 0) is also set, and either the *G* bit is set, or the current process ASID matches the *ASID* field in this register. This field defines the value on the *PDI_U* signal.	R/W	Undefined
ASID	12:5	The ASID field to match when the *G* bit is zero. When the *G* bit is one, this field is ignored. This field defines the value on the *PDI_ASID* signal.	R/W	Undefined
G	4	When set, this implies that tracing is to be enabled for all processes, provided that other enabling functions (like U, S, etc.,) are also true. This field defines the value on the *PDI_G* signal.	R/W	Undefined
TFCR	3	When set, this indicates to the PDtrace interface that complete information about instruction if it can be a function call or return should be traced, that is signal *PDI_TraceFuncCR* is asserted as long as this value is set to 1. It also indicates to the TCB that the optional Fcr bit must be traced in the appropriate trace formats	R/W	Undefined
TLSM	2	When set, this indicates to the PDtrace interface that complete information about Load and Store data cache miss should be traced, that is signal *PDI_TraceLSMiss* is asserted as long as this value is set to 1. It also indicates to the TCB that the optional LSm bit must be traced in the appropriate trace formats.	R/W	Undefined
TIM	1	When set, this indicates to the PDtrace interface that complete information about instruction cache miss should be traced, that is signal *PDI_TraceIMiss* is asserted as long as this value is set to 1. It also indicates to the TCB that the optional Im bit must be traced in the appropriate trace formats.	R/W	Undefined

Table 11.43 TCBCONTROLA Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
On	0	This is the global trace enable switch to the CPU. When zero, tracing from the CPU is always disabled, unless enabled by CPU internal software override of the *PDI_** input pins. When set to one, tracing is enabled whenever the other enabling functions are also true. This field defines the value on the *PDI_TraceOn* signal.	R/W	0

11.10.2 TCBCONTROLB Register

The TCB includes a second control register, *TCBCONTROLB* (0x11). This register generally controls what to do with the trace information received. This register is also mapped to offset 0x3008 in drseg. See Section 11.8.17 "Memory-mapped Access to PDtrace Controls and On-Chip Trace Buffer" on page 343 on how this register can be accessed via drseg.

The format of the *TCBCONTROLB* register is shown below, and the fields are described in Table 11.44.

Figure 11.35 TCBCONTROLB Register Format

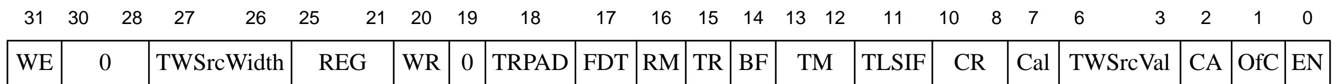


Table 11.44 TCBCONTROLB Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
WE	31	Write Enable. Only when set to 1 will the other bits be written in *TCBCONTROLB*. This bit will always read 0.	R	0
0	30:28	Reserved. Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	R	0
TWSrc-Width	27:26	Used to indicate the number of bits used in the source field of the Trace Word, this is a configuration option of the CPU that cannot be modified by software. 00 - zero source field width 01 - two bit source field width 10 - four bit source field width 11 - reserved for future use This field can only be 10 for the 1004K CPU.	R	10
REG	25:21	Register select: This field select the registers accessible through the *TCBDATA* register. Legal values are shown in Table 11.42.	R/W	0
WR	20	Write Registers: When set, the register selected by REG field is read and written when *TCBDATA* is accessed. Otherwise the selected register is only read.	R/W	0
0	19	Reserved. Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	R	0
TRPAD	18	Trace RAM access disable bit, disables program software access to the on-chip trace RAM using load/store instructions. If probe access is not provided in the implementation, then this register bit must be tied to zero value to allow software to control access.	R/W	0

Table 11.44 TCBCONTROLB Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
FDT	17	Filtered Data Trace Mode enable bit. When the bit is 0, this mode is disabled, reset value is disable. When set to 1, this mode is enabled. This mode is described in Section 11.8.13 on page 339	R/W	0
RM	16	Read on-chip trace memory. When written to 1, the read address-pointer of the on-chip memory is set to point to the oldest memory location written since the last reset of pointers. Subsequent access to the *TCBTW* register (through the *TCBDATA* register), will automatically increment the read pointer (*TCBRDP* register) after each read. [Note: The read pointer does not auto-increment if the *WR* field is one.] When the write pointer is reached, this bit is automatically reset to 0, and the *TCBTW* register will read all zeros. Once set to 1, writing 1 again will have no effect. The bit is reset by setting the *TR* bit or by reading the last Trace word in *TCBTW*. This bit is reserved if on-chip memory is not implemented. This bit will affect trace memory only if this CPU is selected to be the trace master in the *DPTrace Master Select* GCR	R/W1	0
TR	15	Trace memory reset. When written to one, the address pointers for the on-chip trace memory are reset to zero. Also the *RM* bit is reset to 0. This bit is automatically de-asserted back to 0, when the reset is completed. This bit is reserved if on-chip memory is not implemented. This bit will affect trace memory only if this CPU is selected to be the trace master in the *DPTrace Master Select* GCR	R/W1	0
BF	14	Buffer Full indicator that the TCB uses to communicate to external software in the situation that the on-chip trace memory is being deployed in the **trace-from** and **trace-to** mode. (See Section 11.14 "TCB On-Chip Trace Memory") This bit is cleared when writing 1 to the *TR* bit. This bit is reserved if on-chip memory is not implemented. This bit reflects the state of the buffer only if this CPU is selected to be the trace master in the *DPTrace Master Select* GCR	R	0

Table 11.44 TCBCONTROLB Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>TM</td><td>13:12</td><td>Trace Mode. This field determines how the trace memory is filled when using the simple-break control in the PDtrace interface to start or stop trace.
<table><tr><th>TM</th><th>Trace Mode</th></tr><tr><td>00</td><td>Trace-To</td></tr><tr><td>01</td><td>Trace-From</td></tr><tr><td>10</td><td>Reserved</td></tr><tr><td>11</td><td>Reserved</td></tr></table>In Trace-To mode, the on-chip trace memory is filled, continuously wrapping around and overwriting older Trace Words, as long as there is trace data coming from the CPU.
In Trace-From mode, the on-chip trace memory is filled from the point that the core starts tracing until the on-chip trace memory is full.
In both cases, de-asserting the EN bit in this register will also stop fill to the trace memory.
If a TCBTRIGx trigger control register is used to start/stop tracing, then this field should be set to Trace-To mode.
This bit is reserved if on-chip memory is not implemented.
This field affects trace memory only if this CPU is selected to be the trace master in the DPTrace Master Select GCR</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>TLSIF</td><td>11</td><td>When set, this indicates to the TCB that information about Load and Store data cache miss, instruction cache miss, and function call are to be taken from the PDtrace interface and trace them out in the appropriate trace formats as the three optional bits LSm, Im, and Fcr.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>CR</td><td>10:8</td><td>Off-chip Clock Ratio. Writing this field, sets the ratio of the CPU clock to the off-chip trace memory interface clock. The clock-ratio encoding is shown in Table 11.45.
Remark: As the Probe interface works in double data rate (DDR) mode, a 1:2 ratio indicates one data packet sent per CPU clock rising edge.
This bit is reserved if off-chip trace option is not implemented.
This field affects the Probe interface only if this CPU is selected to be the trace master in the DPTrace Master Select GCR</td><td>R/W</td><td>100</td></tr>
</table>

Table 11.44 TCBCONTROLB Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>Cal</td><td>7</td><td>Calibrate off-chip trace interface.
If set to one, the off-chip trace pins will produce the following pattern in consecutive trace clock cycles. If more than 4 data pins exist, the pattern is replicated for each set of 4 pins. The pattern repeats from top to bottom until the Cal bit is de-asserted.
<table>
<tr><th colspan="4">Calibrations pattern</th></tr>
<tr><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>0</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td></tr>
</table>
This pattern is replicated for every 4 bits of TR_DATA pins.
Note: The clock source of the TCB and PIB must be running.
This bit is reserved if off-chip trace option is not implemented.
This field affects the Probe interface only if this CPU is selected to be the trace master in the DPTrace Master Select GCR</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>TWSrcVal</td><td>6:3</td><td>These bits are used to indicate the value of the TW source field that will be traced if TWSrcWidth indicates a source bit field width of 2 or 4 bits. Note that if the field is 2 bits, then only bits 4:3 of this field will be used in the TW.</td><td>R</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
<tr><td>CA</td><td>2</td><td>Cycle accurate trace.
When set to 1, the trace will include stall information.
When set to 0, the trace will exclude stall information, and remove bit zero from all transmitted TF’s.
The stall information included/excluded is:
• TF6 formats with TCBcode 0001 and 0101.
• All TF1 formats.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>OfC</td><td>1</td><td>If set to 1, trace is sent to off-chip memory using TR_DATA pins.
If set to 0, trace info is sent to on-chip memory.
This bit is read only if a single memory option exists (either off-chip or on-chip only).
This field affects trace only if this CPU is select to be the trace master in the DPTrace Master Select GCR</td><td>R/W</td><td>Preset</td></tr>
</table>

Table 11.44 TCBCONTROLB Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
EN	0	Enable trace. This is the master enable for trace to be generated from the TCB. This bit can be set or cleared, either by writing this register or from a start/stop/about trigger. When set to 1, Trace Words are generated and sent to either on-chip memory or to the Trace Probe. The target of the trace is selected by the OfC bit. When set to 0, trace information is ignored. A potential TF6-stop (from a stop trigger) is generated as the last information, the TCB pipe-line is flushed, and trace output is stopped.	R/W	0

Table 11.45 Clock Ratio encoding of the CR field

CR/CRMin/CRMax	Clock Ratio
000	8:1 (Trace clock is eight times that of CPU clock)
001	4:1 (Trace clock is four times that of CPU clock)
010	2:1 (Trace clock is double that of CPU clock)
011	1:1 (Trace clock is same as CPU clock)
100	1:2 (Trace clock is one half of CPU clock)
101	1:4 (Trace clock is one fourth of CPU clock)
110	1:6 (Trace clock is one sixth of CPU clock)
111	1:8 (Trace clock is one eighth of CPU clock)

11.10.3 TCBDATA Register

The *TCBDATA* register (0x12) is used to access the registers defined by the $TCBCONTROLB_{REG}$ field; see Table 11.42. Regardless of which register or data entry is accessed through *TCBDATA*, the register is only written if the $TCBCONTROLB_{WR}$ bit is set. For read-only registers, $TCBCONTROLB_{WR}$ is a don't care.

The format of the *TCBDATA* register is shown below, and the field is described in Table 11.46. The width of *TCBDATA* is 64 bits when on-chip trace words (TWs) are accessed (*TCBTW* access).

Figure 11.36 TCBDATA Register Format

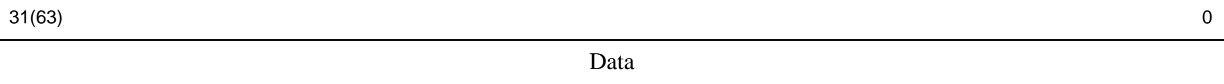


Table 11.46 TCBDATA Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read/Write	Reset State
Names	Bits			
Data	31:0 63:0	Register fields or data as defined by the $TCBCONTROLB_{REG}$ field	Only writable if $TCBCONTROLB_{WR}$ is set	0

11.10.4 TCBCONTROLC Register

The trace output from the processor on the PDtrace interface can be controlled by the trace input signals to the processor from the TCB. The TCB uses a control register, *TCBCONTROLC*, whose values are used to change the signal values on the PDtrace input interface. External software (i.e., debugger) can therefore manipulate the trace output by writing to this register.

The *TCBCONTROLC* register is written by the EJTAG TAP controller instruction, TCBCONTROLC (0x13). This register is also mapped to offset 0x3010 in drseg. See Section 11.8.17 "Memory-mapped Access to PDtrace Controls and On-Chip Trace Buffer" on page 343 on how this register can be accessed via drseg.

The format of the *TCBCONTROLC* register is shown below, and the fields are described in Table 11.47.

Figure 11.37 TCBCONTROLC Register Format

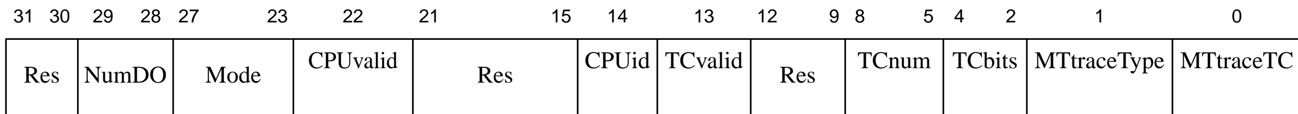


Table 11.47 TCBCONTROLC Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
Res	31:30	Reserved for future use. Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	0	0
NumDO	29:28	Specifies the number of bits needed by this implementation to specify the DataOrder: 00 - Four bits	R	Preset
Mode	27:23	When tracing is turned on, this signal specifies what information is to be traced by the CPU. It uses 5 bits, where each bit turns on a tracing of a specific tracing mode. <table><tr><th>Bit # Set</th><th>Trace The Following</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>PC</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Load address</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>Store address</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>Load data</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>Store data</td></tr></table> The table shows what trace value is turned on when that bit value is a 1. If the corresponding bit is 0, then the Trace Value shown in column two is not traced by the processor. On the 1004K CPU PC tracing is always enabled, regardless of the value on bit 23. This field defines the value on the *PDI_TraceMode* signal.	R/W	0
CPUvalid	22	This bit enables VPE based tracing. This bit is ignored if TCvalid field is set 0: Instructions for all VPEs are traced 1: Instructions from only one VPE specified in CPUId field are traced This field defines the value on the PDI_CPUIdValid signal	R/W	0
Res	21:15	Reserved for future use.	R/W	0

Table 11.47 TCBCONTROLC Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	**Bits**			
CPUId	14	This bit indicates the value of the VPEid to be traced if CPUValid field is set 0: Instructions from VPE0 are traced 1: Instructions from VPE1 are traced This field defines the value on the PDI_CPUId signal	R/W	Undefined
TCvalid	13	This bit enables TC based tracing 0: Instructions are traced based on CPUValid/CPUId settings 1: Instructions from only one TC specified in TCnum field are traced This field defines the value on the PDI_TCNumValid	R/W	0
Res	12:9	Reserved for future use.	R/W	Undefined
TCnum	8:5	This field indicates the value of the TC to be traced if TCvalid is set This field defines the value on the PDI_TCNum signal	R/W	Undefined
TCbits	4:2	This value is used by the TCB to determine the number of bits needed to represent TC value in a Trace Format(TF). Returns 3 on reads indicating 4 bits are needed to represent 9 TC value.	R	Preset
MTtrace-Type	1	This bit indicates the type of implemented multi-threading 0: Fine grained, i.e., switch threads every cycle. If MTtraceTC field is set then each Trace format is augmented by TC information 1: Coarse-grained, also known as block multi-threading. If MTtraceTC field is set then TF7 is used and each TF is not augmented. Returns 0 on read indicating that processor may switch threads every cycle if needed.	0	Preset
MTtraceTC	0	This bit controls TC value tracing. 0: TC value is not traced 1: TC value is tracing by augmenting TCId on each Trace format	R/W	Undefined

11.10.5 TCBCONTROLD Register

The TCB includes a control register, TCBCONTROLD, whose values are used to control the tracing functions of the Coherence Manager. External software (i.e., debugger) can therefore manipulate the trace output by writing to this register. Each of the cores in the 1004K Coherent Processing System has this register, and a CMP GCR specifies which CPU's value is to be used by the CM (with the exception of the *Core_CM_En* field, which is considered from each of the cores).

The *TCBCONTROLD* register is written by an EJTAG TAP controller instruction, *TCBCONTROLD* (0x14). This register is also mapped to offset 0x3018 in drseg. See Section 11.8.17 "Memory-mapped Access to PDtrace Controls and On-Chip Trace Buffer" on page 343 on how this register can be accessed via drseg.

The format of the *TCBCONTROLD* register is shown below, and the fields are described in Table 11.48.

Figure 11.38 TCBCONTROLD Register Format

31 26	25 24	23 22	21 20	19 18	17 16	15 12	9 8		5	4 3	2	1	0	
Reserved	P4_Ctl	P3_Ctl	P2_Ctl	P1_Ctl	P0_Ctl	Reserved	TWSrcVal	WB		IO	TLev	AE	C_En	En

Table 11.48 TCBCONTROLD Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
Res	31:26, 15:12, 6	Reserved for future use. Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	0	0
P4_Ctl	25:24	Trace control for port 4. See Table 11.49	R/W	11
P3_Ctl	23:22	Trace control for port 3. See Table 11.49	R/W	11
P2_Ctl	21:20	Trace control for port 2. See Table 11.49	R/W	11
P1_Ctl	19:18	Trace control for port 1. See Table 11.49	R/W	11
P0_Ctl	17:16	Trace control for port 0. See Table 11.49	R/W	11
TWSrcVal	11:8	Identifier to be included in trace words that come from the CM	R/W	0000
WB	7	When set, coherent writeback transactions will be traced	R/W	0
IO	5	Inhibit Overflow: When set, the CM will stall rather than allowing the trace FIFO to overflow and lose information	R/W	0
TLev	4:3	Trace Level - controls how much information is being traced 00 - Default, no timing information 01 - Include info on stall lengths and causes 1x - Reserved	R/W	00
AE	2	Address Enable. When set, addresses will be traced for all ports. When cleared, address tracing can be individually enabled via the Px_Ctl fields	R/W	0
CEn	1	Core_CM_Enable: The CM looks at this bit coming from each of the cores. Allows cores other than the master to enable tracing if other conditions are met	R/W	0
En	0	Enable: Overall enable for tracing from the CM	R/W	0

Table 11.49 Port Control Values

Value	Meaning
00	Tracing enabled. No address tracing
01	Tracing enabled including address tracing
10	Reserved
11	Tracing disabled

11.10.6 TCBCONTROLE Register

The trace output from the processor on the PDtrace interface can be controlled by the trace input signals to the processor from the TCB. The TCB uses a control register, *TCBCONTROLE*, whose values are used to change the signal values on the PDtrace input interface. External software (i.e., debugger), can therefore manipulate the trace output by writing the *TCBCONTROLE* register.

The *TCBCONTROLE* register is written by an EJTAG TAP controller instruction, *TCBCONTROLE* (0x16).This register is also mapped to offset 0x3020 in drseg. See Section 11.8.17 “Memory-mapped Access to PDtrace Controls and On-Chip Trace Buffer” on page 343 on how this register can be accessed via drseg.

The format of the *TCBCONTROLE* register is shown below, and the fields are described in Table 11.50.

Figure 11.39 TCBCONTROLE Register Format

31 … 9	8	7 6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	TdIDLE	0	PecOvf	PeCFCR	PeCBP	PeCSync	PeCE	PeC

Table 11.50 TCBCONTROLE Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
0	31:9	Reserved for future use. Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	0	0
TrIDLE	8	Trace Unit Idle. This bit indicates if the trace hardware is currently idle (not processing any data). This can be useful when switching control of trace from hardware to software and vice versa. The bit is read-only and updated by the trace hardware.	R	1
0	7:6	Reserved for future use; Must be written as zero; returns zero on read. (Hint to architect, Reserved for future expansion of performance counter trace events).	0	0
PeCOvf	5	Trace performance counters when one of the performance counters overflows its count value. Enabled when set to 1.	R/W	0
PeCFCR	4	Trace performance counters on function call/return or on an exception handler entry. Enabled when set to 1.	R/W	0
PeCBP	3	Trace performance counters on hardware breakpoint match trigger. Enabled when set to 1.	R/W	0
PeCSync	2	Trace performance counters on synchronization counter expiration. Enabled when set to 1.	R/W	0
PeCE	1	Performance counter tracing enable. If performance counter hardware is present, this field is read/write. If not present, this field is read-only. When set to 0, the tracing out of performance counter values as specified is disabled. To enable, this bit must be set to 1. This bit is used under software control. When trace is controlled by an external probe, this enabling is done via the *TCB Control* register.	Config Option	0
PeC	0	Specifies whether or not Performance Control Tracing is implemented. This is an optional feature that may be omitted by implementation choice. See Section 11.8.12 "Performance Counter Tracing" for details.	R	Preset

11.10.7 TCBCONFIG Register (Reg 0)

The *TCBCONFIG* register holds information about the hardware configuration of the TCB. The format of the *TCBCONFIG* register is shown below, and the fields are described in Table 11.51.

Figure 11.40 TCBCONFIG Register Format

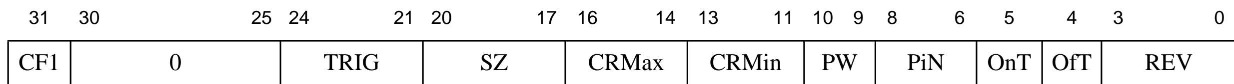


Table 11.51 TCBCONFIG Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
CF1	31	This bit is set if a *TCBCONFIG1* register exists. In this revision, *TCBCONFIG1* does not exist and this bit always reads zero.	R	0
0	30:25	Reserved. Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	R	0
TRIG	24:21	Number of triggers implemented. This also indicates the number of *TCBTRIGx* registers that exist.	R	Preset Legal values are 0 - 8
SZ	20:17	On-chip trace memory size. This field holds the encoded size of the on-chip trace memory. The size in bytes is given by $2^{(SZ+8)}$, implying that the minimum size is 256 bytes and the largest is 8Mb. This bit is reserved if on-chip memory is not implemented.	R	Preset
CRMax	16:14	Off-chip Maximum Clock Ratio. This field indicates the maximum ratio of the CPU clock to the off-chip trace memory interface clock. The clock-ratio encoding is shown in Table 11.45. This bit is reserved if off-chip trace option is not implemented.	R	Preset
CRMin	13:11	Off-chip Minimum Clock Ratio. This field indicates the minimum ratio of the CPU clock to the off-chip trace memory interface clock.The clock-ratio encoding is shown in Table 11.45. This bit is reserved if off-chip trace option is not implemented.	R	Preset
PW	10:9	Probe Width: Number of bits available on the off-chip trace interface *TR_DATA* pins. The number of TR_DATA pins is encoded, as shown in the table. **PW** / **Number of bits used on *TR_DATA*** 00 / 4 bits 01 / 8 bits 10 / 16 bits 11 / reserved This field is preset based on input signals to the TCB and the actual capability of the TCB. This bit is reserved if off-chip trace option is not implemented.	R	Preset
PiN	8:6	Pipe number. Indicates the number of execution pipelines.	R	0
OnT	5	When set, this bit indicates that on-chip trace memory is present. This bit is preset based on the selected option when the TCB is implemented.	R	Preset
OfT	4	When set, this bit indicates that off-chip trace interface is present. This bit is preset based on the selected option when the TCB is implemented, and on the existence of a PIB module (*TC_PibPresent* asserted).	R	Preset

Table 11.51 TCBCONFIG Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
REV	3:0	Revision of TCB.	R	2

11.10.8 TCBTW Register (Reg 4)

The *TCBTW* register is used to read Trace Words from the on-chip trace memory. Accesses to the memory will be allowed only if this register belongs to the CPU selected to be the trace master in the *DPTrace Master Select* GCR. The TW read is the one pointed to by the *TCBRDP* register. A side effect of reading the *TCBTW* register is that the *TCBRDP* register increments to the next TW in the on-chip trace memory. If *TCBRDP* is at the max size of the on-chip trace memory, the increment wraps back to address zero.

This register is also mapped to offset 0x3100 in drseg. See Section 11.8.17 "Memory-mapped Access to PDtrace Controls and On-Chip Trace Buffer" on page 343 on how this register can be accessed via drseg.

This register is reserved if on-chip trace memory is not implemented.

The format of the *TCBTW* register is shown below, and the field is described in Table 11.52.

Figure 11.41 TCBTW Register Format

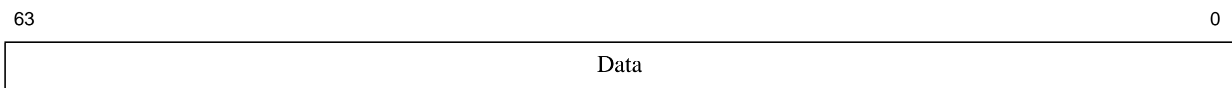


Table 11.52 TCBTW Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Names	Bits			
Data	63:0	Trace Word	R/W	0

11.10.9 TCBRDP Register (Reg 5)

The *TCBRDP* register is the address pointer to on-chip trace memory. It points to the TW read when reading the *TCBTW* register. When writing the $TCBCONTROLB_{RM}$ bit to 1, this pointer is reset to the current value of *TCBSTP*.

This register is also mapped to offset 0x3108 in drseg. See Section 11.8.17 "Memory-mapped Access to PDtrace Controls and On-Chip Trace Buffer" on page 343 on how this register can be accessed via drseg.

This register is reserved if on-chip trace memory is not implemented.

The format of the *TCBRDP* register is shown below, and the fields are described in Table 11.53. The value of n depends on the size of the on-chip trace memory. As the address points to a 64-bit TW, lower three bits are always zero.

Figure 11.42 TCBRDP Register Format

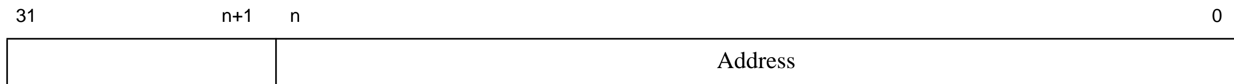


Table 11.53 TCBRDP Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Names	Bits			
Data	31:(n+1)	Reserved. Must be written zero, reads back zero.	0	0
Address	n:0	Byte address of on-chip trace memory word.	R/W	0

11.10.10 TCBWRP Register (Reg 6)

The *TCBWRP* register is the address pointer to on-chip trace memory. It points to the location where the next new TW for on-chip trace will be written.

This register is also mapped to offset 0x3110 in drseg. See Section 11.8.17 "Memory-mapped Access to PDtrace Controls and On-Chip Trace Buffer" on page 343 on how this register can be accessed via drseg.

This register is reserved if on-chip trace memory is not implemented.

The format of the *TCBWRP* register is shown below, and the fields are described in Table 11.54. The value of n depends on the size of the on-chip trace memory. As the address points to a 64-bit TW, the lower three bits are always zero.

Figure 11.43 TCBWRP Register Format

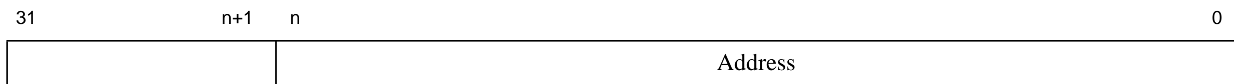


Table 11.54 *TCBWRP* Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Names	Bits			
Data	31:(n+1)	Reserved. Must be written zero, reads back zero.	0	0
Address	n:0	Byte address of on-chip trace memory word.	R/W	0

11.10.11 TCBSTP Register (Reg 7)

The *TCBSTP* register is the start pointer register. This pointer is used to determine when all entries in the trace buffer have been filled (when *TCBWRP* has the same value as *TCBSTP*). This pointer is reset to zero when the $TCBCONTROLB_{TR}$ bit is written to 1. If a continuous trace to on-chip memory wraps around the on-chip memory, *TSBSTP* will have the same value as *TCBWRP*.

This register is also mapped to offset 0x3118 in drseg. See Section 11.8.17 "Memory-mapped Access to PDtrace Controls and On-Chip Trace Buffer" on page 343 on how this register can be accessed via drseg.

This register is reserved if on-chip trace memory is not implemented.

The format of the *TCBSTP* register is shown below, and the fields are described in Table 11.55. The value of n depends on the size of the on-chip trace memory. As the address points to a 64-bit TW, lower three bits are always zero.

Figure 11.44 TCBSTP Register Format

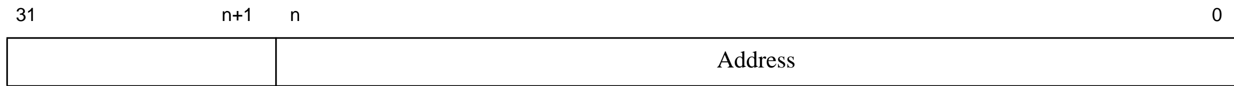


Table 11.55 TCBSTP Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Names	**Bits**			
Data	31:(n+1)	Reserved. Must be written zero, reads back zero.	0	0
Address	n:0	Byte address of on-chip trace memory word.	R/W	0

11.10.12 TCBTRIGx Register (Reg 16-23)

Up to eight Trigger Control registers are possible. Each register is named *TCBTRIGx*, where *x* is a single digit number from 0 to 7 (*TCBTRIG0* is Reg 16). The actual number of trigger registers implemented is defined in the $TCBCONFIG_{TRIG}$ field. An unimplemented register will read all zeros and writes are ignored.

Each Trigger Control register controls when an associated trigger is fired, and the action to be taken when the trigger occurs. Please also read Section 11.12 “TCB Trigger Logic”, for detailed description of trigger logic issues.

The format of the *TCBTRIGx* register is shown below, and the fields are described in Table 11.56.

Figure 11.45 TCBTRIGx Register Format

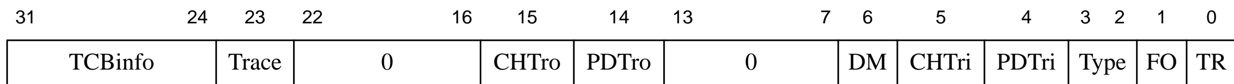


Table 11.56 TCBTRIGx Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Names	**Bits**			
TCBinfo	31:24	This field is to be used in a possible TF6 trace format when this trigger fires.	R/W	0
Trace	23	When set, generate TF6 trace information when this trigger fires. Use *TCBinfo* field for the TCBinfo of TF6 and use *Type* field for the two MSB of the TCBtype of TF6. The two LSB of *TCBtype* are 00. The write value of this bit always controls the behavior of this trigger. When this trigger fires, the read value will change to indicate if the TF6 format was ever suppressed by a simultaneous trigger. If so, the read value will be 0. If the write value was 0, the read value is always 0. This special read value is valid until the *TCBTRIGx* register is written.	R/W	0
0	22:16	Reserved. Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	R	0

Table 11.56 TCBTRIGx Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Names	Bits			
CHTro	15	When set, generate a single cycle strobe on *TC_ChipTrigOut* when this trigger fires.	R/W	0
PDTro	14	When set, generate a single cycle strobe on *TC_ProbeTrigOut* when this trigger fires.	R/W	0
0	13:7	Reserved. Must be written as zero; returns zero on read.	R	0
DM	6	When set, this Trigger will fire when a rising edge on the Debug mode indication from the CPU is detected. The write value of this bit always controls the behavior of this trigger. When this trigger fires, the read value will change to indicate if this source was ever the cause of a trigger action (even if the action was suppressed). If so the read value will be 1. If the write value was 0 the read value is always 0. This special read value is valid until the *TCBTRIGx* register is written.	R/W	0
CHTri	5	When set, this Trigger will fire when a rising edge on *TC_ChipTrigIn* is detected. The write value of this bit always controls the behavior of this trigger. When this trigger fires, the read value will change to indicate if this source was ever the cause of a trigger action (even if the action was suppressed). If so the read value will be 1. If the write value was 0 the read value is always 0. This special read value is valid until the *TCBTRIGx* register is written.	R/W	0
PDTri	4	When set, this Trigger will fire when a rising edge on *TC_ProbeTrigIn* is detected. The write value of this bit always controls the behavior of this trigger. When this trigger fires, the read value will change to indicate if this source was ever the cause of a trigger action (even if the action was suppressed). If so the read value will be 1. If the write value was 0 the read value is always 0. This special read value is valid until the *TCBTRIGx* register is written.	R/W	0

Table 11.56 TCBTRIGx Register Field Descriptions (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th></tr>
<tr><th>Names</th><th>Bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>Type</td><td>3:2</td><td>Trigger Type: The Type indicates the action to take when this trigger fires. The table below show the Type values and the Trigger action.
<table>
<tr><th>Type</th><th>Trigger action</th></tr>
<tr><td>00</td><td>Trigger Start: Trigger start-point of trace.</td></tr>
<tr><td>01</td><td>Trigger End: Trigger end-point of trace.</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td>Trigger About: Trigger center-point of trace.</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td>Trigger Info: No action trigger, only for trace info.</td></tr>
</table>
The actual action is to set or clear the $TCBCONTROLB_{EN}$ bit. A Start trigger will set $TCBCONTROLB_{EN}$, a End trigger will clear $TCBCONTROLB_{EN}$. The About trigger will clear $TCBCONTROLB_{EN}$ half way through the trace memory, from the trigger. The size determined by the $TCBCONFIG_{SZ}$ field for on-chip memory. Or from the $TCBCONTROLA_{SyP}$ field for off-chip trace.
If Trace is set, then a TF6 format is added to the trace words. For Start and Info triggers this is done before any other TF’s in that same cycle. For End and About triggers, the TF6 format is added after any other TF’s in that same cycle.
If the $TCBCONTROLB_{TM}$ field is implemented it must be set to Trace-To mode (00), for the *Type* field to control on-chip trace fill.
The write value of this bit always controls the behavior of this trigger.
When this trigger fires, the read value will change to indicate if the trigger action was ever suppressed. If so the read value will be 11. If the write value was 11 the read value is always 11. This special read value is valid until the *TCBTRIGx* register is written.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>FO</td><td>1</td><td>Fire Once. When set, this trigger will not re-fire until the *TR* bit is de-asserted. When de-asserted this trigger will fire each time one of the trigger sources indicates trigger.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>TR</td><td>0</td><td>Trigger happened. When set, this trigger fired since the *TR* bit was last written 0.
This bit is used to inspect whether the trigger fired since this bit was last written zero.
When set, all the trigger source bits (bit 4 to 13) will change their read value to indicate if the particular bit was the source to fire this trigger. Only enabled trigger sources can set the read value, but more than one is possible.
Also when set the *Type* field and the *Trace* field will have read values which indicate if the trigger action was ever suppressed by a higher priority trigger.</td><td>R/W0</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>

11.10.13 Register Reset State

Reset state for all register fields is entered when either of the following occur:

1. TAP controller enters/is in Test-Logic-Reset state.

2. *EJ_TRST_N* input is asserted low.

11.11 Enabling MIPS Trace

As there are several ways to enable tracing, it can be quite confusing to figure out how to turn tracing on and off. This section should help clarify the enabling of trace.

11.11.1 Trace Trigger from EJTAG Hardware Instruction/Data Breakpoints

If hardware instruction/data simple breakpoints are implemented in the 1004K CPU, then these breakpoint can be used as triggers to start/stop trace. When used for this, the breakpoints need not also generate a debug exception, but are capable of only generating an internal trigger to the trace logic. This is done by only setting the TE bit and not the BE bit in the Breakpoint Control register. Please see Section 11.2.8.5 “Instruction Breakpoint Control n (IBCn) Register” and Section 11.2.9.5 “Data Breakpoint Control n (DBCn) Register”, for details on breakpoint control.

In connection with the breakpoints, the Trace BreakPoint Control (*TraceBPC*) register is used to define the trace action when a trigger happens. When a breakpoint is enabled as a trigger (TE = 1), it can be selected to be either a start or a stop trigger to the trace logic. Please see Section 7.2.54 “TraceIBPC Register (CP0 Register 23, Select 4)” for detail in how to define a start/stop trigger.

11.11.2 Turning On PDtrace™ Trace

Trace enabling and disabling from software is similar to the hardware method, with the exception that the bits in the control register are used instead of the input enable signals from the TCB. The $TraceControl_{TS}$ bit controls whether hardware (via the TCB), or software (via the *TraceControl* register) controls tracing functionality.

Trace is turned on when the following expression evaluates true:

```
(
    (
        (TraceControl_TS and TraceControl_On) or
        ((not TraceControl_TS) and TCBCONTROLA_On)
    )
    and
    (MatchEnable or TriggerEnable)
)
```

where,

```
MatchEnable ←
(
    TraceControl_TS
    and
        ((TraceControl2_TCV and (TraceControl2_TCNUM equal TCIDofCompletedInst)) or
         ((not TraceControl2_TCV) and TraceControl2_CPUIdV and
            (TraceControl2_CPUId equal VPEIDofCompletedInst )) or
         (TraceControl2_TCV nor TraceControl2_CPUIdV ))
    and
    (
        TraceControl_G or
        (((TraceControl_ASID xor EntryHi_ASID) and (not TraceControl_ASID_M)) = 0)
    )
    and
    (
```

```
            (TraceControlU and UserMode)       or
            (TraceControlS and SupervisorMode) or
            (TraceControlK and KernelMode)     or
            (TraceControlE and ExceptionMode) or
            (TraceControlD and DebugMode)
        )
    )
    or
    (
        (not TraceControlTS)
        and
            ((TCBCONTROLCTCV and (TCBCONTROLCTCNUM equal TCIDofCompletedInst)) or
             ((not TCBCONTROLCTCV) and TCBCONTROLCCPUIdV and
                 (TCBCONTROLCCPUId equal VPEIDofCompletedIns )) or
             (TCBCONTROLCTCV nor TCBCONTROLCCPUIdV ))
        and
        (TCBCONTROLAG or (TCBCONTROLAASID = EntryHiASID))
        and
        (
            (TCBCONTROLAU and UserMode)        or
            (TCBCONTROLAS and SupervisorMode) or
            (TCBCONTROLAK and KernelMode)      or
            (TCBCONTROLAE and ExceptionMode)  or
            (TCBCONTROLADM and DebugMode)
        )
    )
```

and where,

```
    TriggerEnable ←
    (
        DBCiTE          and
        DBSBS[i]        and
        TraceBPCDE      and
        (TraceBPCDBPOn[i] = 1)
    )
    or
    (
        IBCiTE          and
        IBSBS[i]        and
        TraceBPCIE      and
        (TraceBPCIBPOn[i] = 1)
    )
```

As seen in the expression above, trace can be turned on only if the master switch *$TraceControl_{On}$* or *$TCBCONTROLA_{On}$* is first asserted.

Once this is asserted, there are two ways to turn on tracing. The first way, the *MatchEnable* expression, uses the input enable signals from the TCB or the bits in the *TraceControl* register. This tracing is done over general program areas. For example, all of the user-level code for a particular process (if ASID is specified), and so on.

The second way to turn on tracing, the *TriggerEnable* expression, is from the processor side using the EJTAG hardware breakpoint triggers. If EJTAG is implemented, and hardware breakpoints can be set, then using this method enables finer grain tracing control. It is possible to send a trigger signal that turns on tracing at a particular instruction. For example, it would be possible to trace a single procedure in a program by triggering on trace at the first instruction, and triggering off trace at the last instruction.

The easiest way to unconditionally turn on trace is to assert either hardware or software tracing and the corresponding trace on signal with other enables. For example, with $TraceControl_{TS}$=0, i.e., hardware controlled tracing, assert $TCBCONTROLA_{On}$, $TCBCONTROLA_{G}$, and all the other signals in the second part of expression *MatchEnable*. To only trace when a particular process with a known ASID is executing, assert $TCBCONTROLA_{On}$, the correct $TCBCONTROLA_{ASID}$ value, and all of $TCBCONTROLA_{U}$, $TCBCONTROLA_{K}$, $TCBCONTROLA_{E}$, and $TCBCONTROLA_{DM}$. (If it is known that the particular process is a user-level process, then it would be sufficient to only assert $TCBCONTROLA_{U}$ for example). When using the EJTAG hardware triggers to turn trace on and off, it is best if $TCBCONTROLA_{On}$ is asserted and all the other processor mode selection bits in *TCBCONTROLA* are turned off. This would be the least confusing way to control tracing with the trigger signals. Tracing can be controlled via software with the *TraceControl* register in a similar manner.

11.11.3 Turning Off PDtrace™ Trace

Trace is turned off when the following expression evaluates true:

```
(
    (TraceControl_TS and (not TraceControl_On)) or
    ((not TraceControl_TS) and (not TCBCONTROLA_On))
)
or
(
    (not MatchEnable)       and
    (not TriggerEnable)     and
    TriggerDisable
)
```

where,

```
TriggerDisable ←
(
    DBCi_TE          and
    DBS_BS[i]        and
    TraceBPC_DE      and
    (TraceBPC_DBPOn[i] = 0)
)
or
(
    IBCi_TE          and
    IBS_BS[i]        and
    TraceBPC_IE      and
    (TraceBPC_IBPOn[i] = 0)
)
```

Tracing can be unconditionally turned off by de-asserting the $TraceControl_{On}$ bit or the $TCBCONTROLA_{On}$ signal. When either of these are asserted, tracing can be turned off if all of the enables are de-asserted, irrespective of the $TraceControl_{G}$ bit ($TCBCONTROLA_{G}$) and $TraceControl_{ASID}$ ($TCBCONTROLA_{ASID}$) values. EJTAG hardware breakpoints can be used to trigger trace off as well. Note that if simultaneous triggers are generated, and even one of them turns on tracing, then even if all of the others attempt to trigger trace off, then tracing will still be turned on. This condition is reflected in presence of the "(not TriggerEnable)" term in the expression above.

11.11.4 TCB Trace Enabling

The TCB must be enabled in order to produce a trace on the probe or to on-chip memory, when trace information is sent on the PDtrace interface. The main switch for this is the $TCBCONTROLB_{EN}$ bit. When set, the TCB will send trace information to either on-chip trace memory or to the Trace Probe, controlled by the setting of the $TCBCONTROLB_{OfC}$ bit.

The TCB can optionally include trigger logic, which can control the $TCBCONTROLB_{EN}$ bit. Please see Section 11.12 “TCB Trigger Logic” for details.

11.11.5 Tracing a Reset Exception

Tracing a reset exception is possible. However, the $TraceControl_{TS}$ bit is reset to 0 at CPU reset, so all the trace control must be from the TCB (using *TCBCONTROLA* and *TCBCONTROLB*). The PDtrace fifo and the entire TCB are reset based on an EJTAG reset. It is thus possible to set up the trace modes, etc., using the TAP controller, and then reset the CPU.

11.12 TCB Trigger Logic

The TCB is optionally implemented with trigger unit. If this is the case, then the $TCBCONFIG_{TRIG}$ field is non-zero. This section will explain some of the issues around triggers in the TCB.

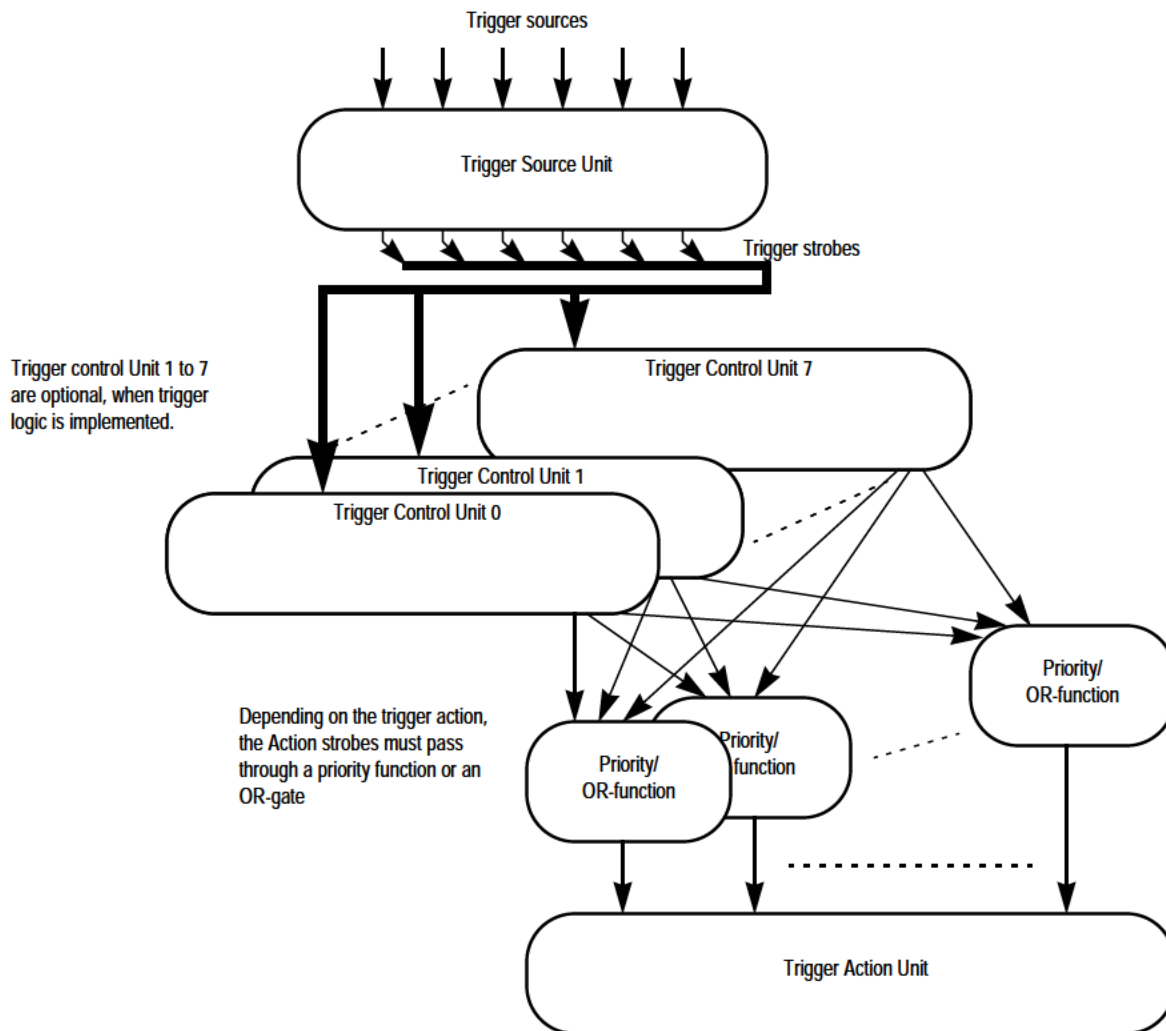
11.12.1 Trigger Units Overview

TCB trigger logic features three main parts:

1. A common Trigger Source detection unit.
2. 1 to 8 separate Trigger Control units.
3. A common Trigger Action unit.

Figure 11.46 show the functional overview of the trigger flow in the TCB.

Figure 11.46 TCB Trigger Processing Overview



11.12.2 Trigger Source Unit

The TCB has three trigger sources:

1. Chip-level trigger input (*TC_ChipTrigIn*).
2. Probe trigger input (*TR_TRIGIN)*.
3. Debug Mode (DM) entry indication from the CPU.

The input triggers are all rising-edge triggers, and the Trigger Source Units convert the edge into a single cycle strobe to the Trigger Control Units.

11.12.3 Trigger Control Units

Up to eight Trigger Control Units are possible. Each of them has its own Trigger Control Register (*TCBTRIGx, x={0..7}*). Each of these registers controls the trigger fire mechanism for the unit. Each unit has all of the Trigger Sources as possible trigger event and they can fire one or more of the Trigger Actions. This is all defined in the Trigger Control register *TCBTRIGx* (see Section 11.10.12 “TCBTRIGx Register (Reg 16-23)”).

11.12.4 Trigger Action Unit

The TCB has four possible trigger actions:

1. Chip-level trigger output (*TC_ChipTrigOut*).
2. Probe trigger output (*TR_TRIGOUT*).
3. Trace information. Put a programmable byte into the trace stream from the TCB.
4. Start, End or About (delayed end) control of the $TCBCONTROLB_{EN}$ bit.

The basic function of the trigger actions is explained in Section 11.10.12 “TCBTRIGx Register (Reg 16-23)”. Please also read the next Section 11.12.5 “Simultaneous Triggers”.

11.12.5 Simultaneous Triggers

Two or more triggers can fire simultaneously. The resulting behavior depends on trigger action set for each of them, and whether they should produce a TF6 trace information output or not. There are two groups of trigger actions: Prioritized and OR’ed.

11.12.5.1 Prioritized Trigger Actions

For prioritized simultaneous trigger actions, the trigger control unit which has the lowest number takes precedence over the higher numbered units. The *x* in *TCBTRIGx* registers defines the number. The oldest trigger takes precedence over everything.

The following trigger actions are prioritized when two or more units fire simultaneously:

- Trigger Start, End and About type triggers ($TCBTRIGx_{Type}$ field set to 00, 01 or 10), which will assert/de-assert the $TCBCONTROLB_{EN}$ bit. The About trigger is delayed and will always change $TCBCONTROLB_{EN}$ because it is the oldest trigger when it de-asserts $TCBCONTROLB_{EN}$. An About trigger will not start the countdown if an even older About trigger is using the Trace Word counter.
- Triggers which produce TF6 trace information in the trace flow (Trace bit is set).

Regardless of priority, the $TCBTRIGx_{TR}$ bit is set when the trigger fires. This is so even if a trigger action is suppressed by a higher priority trigger action. If the trigger is set to only fire once (the $TCBTRIGx_{FO}$ bit is set), then the suppressed trigger action will not happen until after $TCBTRIGx_{TR}$ is written 0.

If a Trigger action is suppressed by a higher priority trigger, then the read value, when the $TCBTRIGx_{TR}$ bit is set, for the $TCBTRIGx_{Trace}$ field will be 0 for suppressed TF6 trace information actions. The read value in the $TCBTRIGx_{Type}$ field for suppressed Start/End/About triggers will be 11. This indication of a suppressed action is sticky. If any of the

two actions (Trace and Type) are ever suppressed for a multi-fire trigger (the $TCBTRIGx_{FO}$ bit is zero), then the read values in Trace and/or Type are set to indicate any suppressed action.

About Trigger

The About triggers delayed de-assertion of the $TCBCONTROLB_{EN}$ bit is always executed, regardless of priority from another Start trigger at the time of the $TCBCONTROLB_{EN}$ change. This means that if a simultaneous About trigger action on the $TCBCONTROLB_{EN}$ bit (n/2 Trace Words after the trigger) and a Start trigger hit the same cycle, then the About trigger wins, regardless of which trigger number it is. The oldest trigger takes precedence.

However, if an About trigger has started the count down from n/2, but not yet reached zero, then a new About trigger, will NOT be executed. Only one About trigger can have the cycle counter. This second About trigger will store 11 in the $TCBTRIGx_{Type}$ field. But, if the $TCBTRIGx_{Trace}$ bit is set, a TF6 trace information will still go in the trace.

11.12.5.2 OR'ed Trigger Actions

The simple trigger actions CHTro and PDTro from each trigger unit, are effectively OR'ed together to produce the final trigger. One or more expected trigger strobes on i.e. *TC_ChipTrigOut* can thus disappear. External logic should not rely on counting of strobes, to predict a specific event, unless simultaneous triggers are known not to occur.

11.13 MIPS Trace Cycle-by-Cycle Behavior

A key reason for using trace, and not single stepping to debug a software problem, is often to get a picture of the real-time behavior. However the trace logic itself can, when enabled, affect the exact cycle-by-cycle behavior,

11.13.1 FIFO Logic in PDtrace and TCB Modules

Both the PDtrace module and the TCB module contain a fifo. This might seem like extra overhead, but there are good reasons for this. The vast majority of the information compression happens in the PDtrace module. Any data information, like PC and load/store address values (delta or full), load/store data and processor mode changes, are all sent on the same 32-bit data bus to the TCB on the internal PDtrace™ interface. When an instruction requires more than 32 bits of information to be traced properly, the PDtrace fifo will buffer the information, and send it on subsequent clock cycles.

In the TCB, the on-chip trace memory is defined as a 64-bit wide synchronous memory running at CPU-clock speed. In this case the fifo is not needed. For off-chip trace through the Trace Probe, the fifo comes into play, because only a limited number of pins (4, 8 or 16) exist. Also the speed of the Trace Probe interface can be different (either faster or slower) from that of the 1004K CPU. So for off-chip tracing, a specific TCB TW fifo is needed.

11.13.2 Handling of FIFO Overflow in the PDtrace Module

Depending on the amount of trace information selected for trace, and the frequency with which the 32-bit data interface is needed, it is possible for the PDtrace fifo overflow from time to time. There are two ways to handle this case:

1. Allow the overflow to happen, and thereby lose some information from the trace data.

2. Prevent the overflow by back-stalling the CPU, until the fifo has enough empty slots to accept new trace data.

The PDtrace fifo option is controlled by either the $TraceControl_{IO}$ or the $TCBCONTROLA_{IO}$ bit, depending on the setting of $TraceControl_{TS}$ bit.

The first option is free of any cycle-by-cycle change whether trace is turned on or not. This is achieved at the cost of potentially losing trace information. After an overflow, the fifo is completely emptied, and the next instruction is traced as if it was the start of the trace (processor mode and full PC are traced). This guarantees that only the un-traced fifo information is lost.

The second option guarantees that all the trace information is traced to the TCB. In some cases this is then achieved by back-stalling the CPU pipeline, giving the PDtrace fifo time to empty enough room in the fifo to accept new trace information from a new instruction. This option can obviously change the real-time behavior of the CPU when tracing is turned on.

If PC trace information is the only thing enabled (in $TraceControl2_{MODE}$ or $TCBCONTROLC_{MODE}$, depending on the setting of $TraceControl_{TS}$), and Trace of all branches is turned off (via $TraceControl_{TB}$ or $TCBCONTROLA_{TB}$, depending on the setting of $TraceControl_{TS}$), then the fifo is unlikely to overflow very often, if at all. This is of course very dependent on the code executed, and the frequency of exception handler jumps, but with this setting there is very little information overhead.

11.13.3 Handling of FIFO Overflow in the TCB

The TCB also holds a fifo, used to buffer the TW's which are sent off-chip through the Trace Probe. The data width of the probe can be either 4, 8 or 16 pins, and the speed of these data pins can be from 16 times the CPU-clock to 1/4 of the CPU clock (the trace probe clock always runs at a double data rate multiple to the CPU-clock). See Section 11.13.3.1 "Probe Width and Clock-ratio Settings" for a description of probe width and clock-ratio options. The combination between the probe width (4, 8 or 16) and the data speed, allows for data rates through the trace probe from 256 bits per CPU-clock cycle down to only 1 bit per CPU-clock cycle. The high extreme is not likely to be supported in any implementation, but the low one might be.

The data rate is an important figure when the likelihood of a TCB fifo overflow is considered. The TCB will at maximum produce one full 64-bit TW per CPU-clock cycle. This is true for any selection of trace mode in $TraceControl2_{MODE}$ or $TCBCONTROLC_{MODE}$. The PDtrace module will guarantee the limited amount of data. If the TCB data rate cannot be matched by the off-chip probe width and data speed, then the TCB fifo can possibly overflow. Similar to the PDtrace module FIFO, this can be handled in two ways:

1. Allow the overflow to happen, and thereby lose some information from the trace data.

2. Prevent the overflow by asserting a stall-signal back to the CPU (*PDI_StallSending*). This will in turn stall the CPU pipeline.

As a practical matter, the amount of data to the TCB can be minimized by only tracing PC information and excluding any cycle accurate information. This is explained in Section 11.13.2 "Handling of FIFO Overflow in the PDtrace Module" and below in Section 11.13.4 "Adding Cycle Accurate Information to the Trace". With this setting, a data rate of 8-bits per CPU-clock cycle is usually sufficient. No guarantees can be given here, however, as heavy interrupt activity can increase the number of unpredictable jumps considerably.

11.13.3.1 Probe Width and Clock-ratio Settings

The actual number of data pins (4, 8 or 16) is defined by the $TCBCONFIG_{PW}$ field. Furthermore, the frequency of the Trace Probe can be different from the CPU-clock frequency. The trace clock (*TR_CLK*) is a double data rate clock. This means that the data pins (*TR_DATA*) change their value on both edges of the trace clock. When the trace clock is running at clock ratio of 1:2 (one half) of CPU clock, the data output registers are running a CPU-clock frequency. The clock ratio is set in the $TCBCONTROLB_{CR}$ field. The legal range for the clock ratio is defined in $TCBCONFIG_{CRMax}$ and $TCBCONFIG_{CRMin}$ (both values inclusive). If $TCBCONTROLB_{CR}$ is set to an unsupported value, the result is UNPREDICABLE. The maximum possible value for $TCBCONFIG_{CRMax}$ is 8:1 (*TR_CLK* is run-

ning 8 times faster than CPU-clock). The minimum possible value for $TCBCONFIG_{CRMin}$ is 1:8 (*TR_CLK* is running at one eighth of the CPU-clock). See Table 11.45 for a description of the encoding of the clock ratio fields.

11.13.4 Adding Cycle Accurate Information to the Trace

Depending on the trace regeneration software, it is possible to obtain the exact cycle time relationship between each instruction in the trace. This information is added to the trace, when the $TCBCONTROLB_{CA}$ bit is set. The overhead on the trace information is a little more than one extra bit per CPU-clock cycle.

This setting only affects the TCB module and not the PDtrace module. The extra bit therefore only affects the likelihood of the TCB fifo overflowing.

11.14 TCB On-Chip Trace Memory

When on-chip trace memory is available ($TCBCONFIG_{OnT}$ is set) the memory is typically of smaller size than if it were external in a trace probe. The assumption is that it is of some value to trace a smaller piece of the program.

With on-chip trace memory, the TCB can work in three possible modes:

1. Trace-From mode.
2. Trace-To mode.
3. Under Trigger unit control.

Software can select this mode using the $TCBCONTROLB_{TM}$ field. If one or more trigger control registers (*TCBTRIGx*) are implemented, and they are using Start, End or About triggers, then the trace mode in $TCBCONTROLB_{TM}$ should be set to Trace-To mode.

11.14.1 On-Chip Trace Memory Size

The supported On-chip trace memory size can range from 256 byte to 8Mbytes, in powers of 2. The actual size is shown in the $TCBCONFIG_{SZ}$ field.

11.14.2 Trace-From Mode

In the Trace-From mode, tracing begins when the processor enters into a processor mode/ASID value which is defined to be traced or when an EJTAG hardware breakpoint trace trigger turns on tracing. Trace collection is stopped when the buffer is full. The TCB then signals buffer full using $TCBCONTROLB_{BF}$. When external software polling this register finds the $TCBCONTROLB_{BF}$ bit set, it can then read out the internal trace memory. Saving the trace into the internal buffer will re-commence again only when the $TCBCONTROLB_{BF}$ bit is reset and if the CPU is sending valid trace data (i.e., *PDO_IamTracing* not equal 0).

11.14.3 Trace-To Mode

In the Trace-To mode, the TCB keeps writing into the internal trace memory, wrapping over and overwriting the oldest information, until the processor is reaches an end of trace condition. End of trace is reached by leaving the processor mode/ASID value which is traced, or when an EJTAG hardware breakpoint trace trigger turns tracing off. At this

point, the on-chip trace buffer is then dumped out in a manner similar to that described above in Section 11.14.2 "Trace-From Mode".

Chapter 12

Inter-Thread Communication Unit of the 1004K™ CPU

This chapter describes the 1004K Inter-Thread Communication Unit (ITU) included in the 1004K CPU. This chapter contains the following sections:

- Section 12.1 "Features Overview"
- Section 12.2 "ITC Storage"
- Section 12.3 "ITC Views"
- Section 12.4 "ITC Address Space"

12.1 Features Overview

Inter-Thread Communication (ITC) Storage is a Gating Storage mechanism designed for low-level thread synchronization. Loads and stores to and from gating storage may block until the state of the storage location corresponds to some set of conditions required for completion. A blocked load or store can be precisely aborted if necessary, and restarted later.

In the 1004K CPU, the ITC storage is provided by the Inter-Thread Communication Unit (ITU). This block of logic resides outside of the CPU and connects to the CPU through the gating storage interface. SoC integrators are free to use the MIPS-supplied reference module, or to implement their own ITU module, or to not use ITC at all. This chapter describes the features of the sample ITU block supplied with the 1004K CPU. This block only supports synchronization of TCs within a single 1004K CPU.

12.2 ITC Storage

References to memory pages which map to ITC storage resolve not to main memory, but to storage locations, or cells, with special attributes. In general, it is possible that behind each ITC storage cell there is more than one memory location. This is useful for mapping hardware queues, stacks, and other structures. The reference ITU supports two kinds of storage cells: four-entry FIFO queues and single-entry Semaphore cells. All ITC cells are composed of the tag and data portions. In the single-entry cells, the data is 32 bits wide. The FIFO cells store four 32-bit data values.Although the memory space allows for 64-bit ITC cells, only the least-significant 32-bit words are present in this implementation. All ITC cells should be accessed as 32-bit memory. Partial-word access such as LH or SB will result in undefined behavior.

The tag of each ITC cell contains a number of control bits that regulate accesses to that cell. The format for the ITC tag is shown in Figure 12.1. In addition to the *E* (Empty) and *F* (Full) fields specified by the MT ASE, the tag contains four implementation-specific fields: *T*, *FIFO*, *FIFODepth*, and *FIFOPtr*. The *FIFO* and *FIFODepth* fields indicate whether a cell is a FIFO and its depth. The *FIFOPtr* indicates how many elements are currently in a FIFO; this field

is always zero for single-entry cells. The *FIFOPtr* can be reset by writing 1 into the *E* field of a FIFO. Finally, the *T* field indicates whether a Gating Storage exception should be signaled on an E/F or P/V view access to the cell.

Table 12.1 ITC Storage Cell Tag Format

Fields		Description	Read/Write	Reset State
Name	Bit			
FIFODepth	31:28	Log_2 of the cell depth. This field is set to 0x0 for single-entry cells, and to 0x2 for four-entry FIFO cells.	R	Preset
FIFOPtr	20:18	This field indicates the number of elements in a FIFO cell, and always reads zero for single-entry Semaphore cells.	R	0
FIFO	17	1 for FIFO cells and 0 for single-entry Semaphore cells.	R	Preset
T	16	Trap Bit. When set, this bit causes the processor to take a Gating Storage Exception on PV or EF accesses.	R/W	Undefined
F	1	Full Bit. This bit indicates that the cell is full	R/W	Undefined
E	0	Empty Bit. This bit indicates that the cell is empty. Writing 1 to this bit also reset FIFOPtr.	R/W	Undefined
0	27:21, 15:2	Must be written as zeros; return zeros on read	0	0

The number and type of ITC cells implemented in the ITU is configurable. The possible configurations are: 0, 1, 2, 4, 8, or 16 four-entry FIFOs and 0, 1, 2, 4, 8, or 16 single-entry Semaphores. If the implementation includes both types of cell, the FIFO cells will be grouped before the Semaphore cells. N number of FIFO cells will be located at cell addresses 0 to N-1. M number of Semaphore cells will be located at cell addresses N to N+M-1. The actual physical address is dependent on the base address and cell spacing. See Section 12.4 “ITC Address Space” for more information on addressing.

12.3 ITC Views

All ITC cells can be accessed in one of 16 ways, called views, using standard load and store instructions. The view is encoded in bits 6:3 of the memory address, such that the successive views of a cell correspond to successive 64-bit-aligned addresses. Table 12.2 shows the addresses for the various views, and the following sections describe the effects of using each of the views. If the ITC location is of type FIFO, the behavior of some of the views changes, and this is noted in the description of each view.

Table 12.2 ITC View Addresses

Address[6:3]	View
0x0	Bypass View
0x1	Control View
0x2	Empty/Full Synchronized View
0x3	Empty/Full Try View
0x4	P/V Synchronized View
0x5	P/V Try View
0x6-0xF	Reserved Views

12.3.1 Bypass View

This view of the ITC location implies that a load or a store does not cause the issuing thread to block and does not affect any of the cells state bits.The operation of SC using this view is undefined.

Accesses using Bypass view never result in Gating Storage exceptions.

A Bypass view store to a FIFO ITC location overwrites the newest FIFO entry, while a Bypass view load returns the contents of the oldest entry.

12.3.2 Control View

This view of the ITC location can be used to manipulate the tag of the ITC cell. Loads and stores access the entire 32b tag value. Table 12.1 shows the fields within that 32-bit tag.

Accesses using Control view never cause the issuing thread to block and never result in Gating Storage exceptions.

A Control view store to a FIFO location with the *E* bit set will cause the FIFO to reset its read pointer.

12.3.3 Empty/Full Synchronized View

This view of the ITC location implies that a load causes the issuing thread to block if the cell is Empty. Similarly, a store blocks if the cell is full. Accesses using this view cause an automatic update of the *Empty* and *Full* bits to reflect the new state of the cell. The operation of SC using this view is undefined.

If the *T* bit is set, then all E/F Synchronized view accesses, success or failure, cause a gated exception trap.

12.3.4 Empty/Full Try View

This view of the ITC location is similar in nature to the previous E/F Synchronized view in most respects other than the waiting policy on an access failure. It is to be used if the issuing thread can potentially find something else to do and does not wish to be blocked if the access fails. A load with this view returns a value of zero if the cell is Empty, regardless of actual data contained. Otherwise the load behaves as in the E/F Synchronized case. Normal Stores to Full locations through the E/F Try view fail silently to update the contents of the cell, rather than block the thread. SC (Store Conditional) instructions referencing the EF Try view will indicate success or failure based on whether the ITC store succeeds or fails.

If the T bit is set, then all E/F Try view accesses, success or failure, cause a gated exception trap.

12.3.5 P/V Synchronized View

This view of the ITC location does not modify the Empty and Full bits, both of which are assumed to be cleared as part of the cell initialization routine. Loads with this view return the current cell data value if the value is non-zero, and cause an atomic post-decrement of the value. If the cell value is zero, loads block until the cell takes a non-zero value. Normal Stores cause an atomic increment of the cell value, up to a maximum of 0xffff at which point the value saturates. Loads check the least significant 16bits of the cell for a 0x0 irrespective of load size. The operation of SC using this view is undefined.

If the T bit is set, then all P/V Synchronized view accesses, success or failure, cause a gated exception trap.

P/V Synchronized view accesses are not allowed to FIFO ITC locations.

12.3.6 P/V Try View

This view of the ITC location is similar in nature to the previous P/V Synchronized view in most respects other than the waiting policy on an access failure. It is to be used if the issuing thread can potentially find something else to do and does not wish to be blocked if the access fails. A load with this view returns a value of zero even if the cell contains a data value of 0x0. Otherwise the load behaves as in the E/F Synchronized case. Normal stores using this view cause a saturating atomic increment of the cell value (saturating to 0xffff), as described for the P/V Synchronized view, and cannot fail. The operation of SC using this view is undefined.

If the T bit is set, then all PV Try view accesses, success or failure, will cause a gated exception trap.

P/V Try view accesses are not allowed to FIFO ITC locations.

12.3.7 Reserved Views

These views are reserved and should not be used by software.

12.4 ITC Address Space

The ITC physical address space is defined by two, 32-bit registers: *ITCAddressMap0* and *ITCAddressMap1*. Together these two registers specify a 2^N aligned block of uncached memory. The *BaseAddress* field of the *ITCAddressMap0* register specifies the starting address of the ITC memory block. The *AddrMask* of the *ITCAddressMap1* register determines the size of the memory block which can be varied from 1KB to 128KB. Within this address space, ITC cells are spread out with a stride specified by the *EntryGrain* field. Tightly spaced cells save on memory space, but widely spaced cells spread across a number of TLB pages, permitting different cells to be mapped to different processes. The number of cells is specified by the *NumEntries* field. See Table 12.5 and Table 12.6 for a detailed description of the *AddressMap* registers.

Table 12.3 ITC AddressMap0 Register Format

31 10	9 1	0
BaseAddress	0	En

Table 12.4 ITCAddressMap1 Register Format

31	30 20	19 17	16 10	9 3	2 0
M	NumEntries	0	AddrMask	0	EntryGrain

Table 12.5 AddressMap0 Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit			
BaseAddress	31:10	The top [31:10] bits of the ITC Physical Memory Mapped Block	R/W	Undefined
En	0	ITC enable	R/W	0
0	9:1	Must be written as zeros; return zeros on read	0	0

Table 12.6 AddressMap1 Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bit			
M	31	This bit indicates if another ITC block is defined along with another pair of ITCAddressMap registers. On the 1004K, this value is hardcoded to 0	R	0
NumEntries	30:20	Number of ITC cells present	R	Preset
AddrMask	16:10	Indicates which bits of the BaseAddress field should not participate in determining an ITC memory hit. This field effectively defines the size of the ITC memory block. AddrMask set to zero implies a 1KB ITC address space, and AddrMask set to 0x3f implies a 128KB address space.	R/W	Undefined
EntryGrain	2:0	Cells are spaced at intervals of $128x2^{EntryGrain}$ bytes, or: 0x0 - 128B 0x1 - 256B 0x2 - 512B 0x3 - 1KB 0x4 - 2KB 0x5 - 4KB 0x6 - 8KB 0x7 - 16KB	R/W	Undefined
0	19:17, 9:3	Must be written as zeros; return zeros on read	0	0

Depending on the setting of the *AddrMask*, *NumEntries*, and *EntryGrain*, it is possible that ITC cells do not fill up the entire ITC address block. If for example, two cells are mapped to a 1KB area with a stride of 256B (*EntryGrain* equal to 0x1), the first cell starts at offset 0x000 and the second at offset 0x100. The remaining two 256B regions starting at offsets 0x200 and 0x300 do not map to any storage. Any access to an address that does not map to an ITC entry will result in undefined behavior. It is also possible to set the ITC registers in a way that makes some of the cells unavailable.

Chapter 13

Policy Manager in the 1004K™ CPU

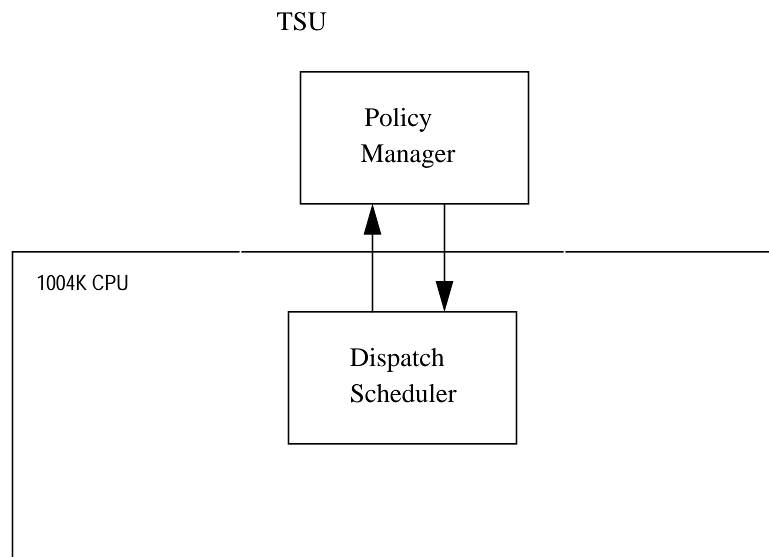
The 1004K CPU includes a Policy Manager (PM) that is tasked with giving longer-term hints to the Dispatch Scheduler so as to achieve whatever performance allocation is desired in the system. The Policy Manager will be external to the CPU. MIPS will deliver choices of the policy managers. In addition, the customer may design their own Policy Manager.

- Section 13.1 “Thread Scheduling Unit”
- Section 13.2 “Policy Managers”

13.1 Thread Scheduling Unit

The 1004K CPU contains a unit called the Thread Scheduling Unit (TSU), which has two submodules: an internal Dispatch Scheduler and an external Policy Manager.

Figure 13.1 TSU Block Diagram



The Dispatch Scheduler (DS) will make cycle-by-cycle choices on which instructions to issue/dispatch. Since it is internal to the CPU, it will not be modifiable by the customer. The DS is designed to be as simple as possible and the system-specific complexity should be put into the policy manager so as not to burden the CPU with extra area/power which is not needed in all configurations.

The Policy Manager Interface incorporates a 4-level priority scheme. Each TC will be assigned to one of 4 groups and each group will have a unique priority level. Each cycle the dispatch scheduler will choose to dispatch an instruction from a TC in the highest priority group that contains any runnable TCs. If there are multiple TCs in the selected

group, then it will choose among them using a round-robin algorithm. For more details about the Policy Manager Interface, please refer to the chapter titled “Policy Manager Interface” in the MIPS32 ® 1004K™ CPU Family Integrator’s Guide[9].

13.2 Policy Managers

MIPS provides the following reference PM designs:

- Basic Round Robin (RR)
- Weighted Round Robin (WRR)
- Enhanced Weighted Round Robin (WRR2)

These designs support thread-scheduling capabilities that are common to many systems. For more advanced and/or system-specific capabilities, users can also implement a custom policy manager. The following subsections describe the operation of each of the MIPS-supplied policy managers and the CP0 registers through which they are controlled.

13.2.1 Basic Round-Robin Policy Manager

When using the basic round robin PM, all TCs are assigned to the same priority level. Since the internal Dispatch Scheduler implements a simple round-robin among TCs in the same priority level, all TCs are statically given the same weight and bandwidth, and will be fairly allocated amongst all runnable TCs.

This PM does not implement any thread-scheduling CP0 registers. Writes to these registers will be ignored. Reads from these registers will return -1.

When a new TC is forked, it will begin to participate in the round robin pool. This will thus cause the older TCs to get lower bandwidth allocations.

13.2.2 Weighted Round-Robin Policy Manager (WRR)

The main difference between the basic round-robin policy and the weighted round-robin policy manager is software controllability. With the WRR PM, TCs are scheduled round-robin style, but bandwidth given to an individual TC can be adjusted or “weighted” by software so that a TC can get more or less than its fair share of the processor bandwidth.

The WRR PM implements the following CP0 register fields:

- *TCSchedule* *STP* and *GRP* fields
- *VPESchedule* *GPO* field
- *TCScheFBack* register.

The WRR PM does not implement the *VPEScheFBack* register.

The group rotation schedule will be implemented. See details in Section 13.2.7 “Group Rotation Schedule”. When a new TC is forked, the GRP of the new TC will be set to be the same as that of its parent.

13.2.3 Enhanced Weighted Round-Robin Policy Manager (WRR2)

Internal to the CPU, there are three buffer structures which are shared by all TCs:

- The Load Queue (LDQ). This structure is used for any outstanding load instruction.
- The Fill-Store Buffer (FSB). This structure is used for any in-progress D-cache refills. One FSB entry is generally allocated for each bus transaction.
- The Writeback Buffer (WBB). This structure is used for in-progress D-cache writebacks.

When one of these buffers becomes full, it will stall the pipeline and all TCs. In order to prevent such stalls, the Enhanced Weighted Round-Robin policy manager (WRR2) can automatically deprioritize or throttle non-critical threads when one of these structures gets close to full.

Other than the throttling function, the WRR2 functions the same as the base WRR PM. Please refer to Section 13.2.2 “Weighted Round-Robin Policy Manager (WRR)” for information on the base functionality.

13.2.3.1 Throttle Functionality and Operation

There are two programmable throttling functions, throttle0 and throttle1. The functions are as follows:

- Each throttle can be separately enabled for each queue/buffer.
- Software can set the threshold for enabling the throttle function.
- Software can set the group and stop priority override for each throttle.
- If both throttles are activated at the same time, throttle0 takes priority. Therefore, if both throttles are armed, throttle0 should generally be the more restrictive one.

The function for each throttle is: When an enabled queue falls below the programmed threshold, the throttle is activated and the effective group and stop priority is overridden with the values from the throttle. When the queue goes back above the threshold, the throttle is deactivated and the group and stop priority return to the values as programmed in *TCSchedule.GRP* and *TCSchedule.STP*, respectively.

NOTE: The throttle function is *armed* when software sets any of the queue enable bits. The throttle is *activated* by hardware dynamically without software intervention.

This function can also be used to boost priority for threads. This is especially useful for the *PM_sys_avail* input - a TC which, when running, helps to decrease the usage of such a resource could be boosted when the resource gets too full.

13.2.4 TCSchedule Register

The WRR and WRR2 policy managers implement the *TCSchedule* register. Figure 13.2 and Table 13.1 shows the format of the *TCSchedule* register.

Figure 13.2 *TCSchedule* Register (CP0 Register2, Select 6)

31–24	23	22–21	20–18	17–14	13	12–11	10–8	7–4	3	2	1–0
0	T1_STP	T1_GRP	T1_TH	T1_QE	T0_STP	T0_GRP	T0_TH	T0_QE	STP	0	GRP

Table 13.1 TCSchedule Register Field Descriptions

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Fields</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Read / Write</th><th rowspan="2">Reset State</th><th colspan="2">Implemented?</th></tr>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Bits</th><th>WRR</th><th>WRR2</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>31:24,2</td><td>Must be written as 0. Returns zero on reads.</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>T1_STP</td><td>23</td><td>Throttle1 Stop Priority. When throttle1 is activated and throttle0 is not, the effective stop priority for this TC is set to this value.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undef</td><td>No</td><td>Yes</td></tr>
<tr><td>T1_GRP</td><td>22:21</td><td>Throttle1 Group. When throttle1 is activated and throttle0 is not, the effective group for this TC is set to this value.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undef</td><td>No</td><td>Yes</td></tr>
<tr><td>T1_TH</td><td>20:18</td><td>Throttle1 Threshold. When an enabled queue input is equal to or less than this value, throttle0 is activated for this TC.
NOTE: Setting this value to 7 will disable the threshold check and activate this throttle permanently if there are any enabled queues.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undef</td><td>No</td><td>Yes</td></tr>
<tr><td>T1_QE</td><td>17:14</td><td>Throttle1 Queue Enable. When a bit is set in this vector, it sensitizes throttle1 to the available resource as follows:
<table>
<tr><th>T1_QE</th><th>PM Input Signal</th></tr>
<tr><td>17</td><td>PM_sys_avail[2:0]</td></tr>
<tr><td>16</td><td>PM_fsb_avail[2:0]</td></tr>
<tr><td>15</td><td>PM_ldq_avail[2:0]</td></tr>
<tr><td>14</td><td>PM_wbb_avail[2:0]</td></tr>
</table></td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td><td>No</td><td>Yes</td></tr>
<tr><td>T0_STP</td><td>13</td><td>Throttle0 Group. When throttle0 is activated, the effective stop priority for this TC is set to this value.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undef</td><td>No</td><td>Yes</td></tr>
<tr><td>T0_GRP</td><td>12:11</td><td>Throttle0 Group. When throttle0 is activated, the effective group for this TC is set to the this value.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undef</td><td>No</td><td>Yes</td></tr>
<tr><td>T0_TH</td><td>10:8</td><td>Throttle0 Threshold. When an enabled queue input is equal to or less than this value, throttle0 is activated for this TC.
NOTE: Setting this value to 7 will disable the threshold check and activate this throttle permanently if there are any enabled queues.</td><td>R/W</td><td>Undef</td><td>No</td><td>Yes</td></tr>
<tr><td>T0_QE</td><td>7:4</td><td>Throttle0 Queue Enable. When a bit is set in this vector, it sensitizes throttle0 to the available resource inputs as follows:
<table>
<tr><th>T0_QE</th><th>PM Input Signal</th></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td>PM_sys_avail[2:0]</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>PM_fsb_avail[2:0]</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>PM_ldq_avail[2:0]</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>PM_wbb_avail[2:0]</td></tr>
</table></td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td><td>No</td><td>Yes</td></tr>
<tr><td>STP</td><td>3</td><td>Stop Priority. Software sets this if this TC should never issue any instructions.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td><td>Yes</td><td>Yes</td></tr>
<tr><td>GRP</td><td>1:0</td><td>Group of the TC. Software sets this value to the group the TC should belong to.</td><td>R/W</td><td>0</td><td>Yes</td><td>Yes</td></tr>
</table>

13.2.5 TCScheFBack Register

The WRR and WRR2 policy managers implement the *TCScheFBack* register for each TC. Figure 13.3 and Table 13.2 show the format of the *TCScheFBack* register.

Figure 13.3 TCScheFBack Register (CP0 Register2, Select 7)

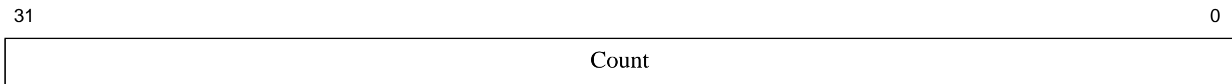


Table 13.2 TCScheFBack Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
COUNT	31:0	This is a count of the number of instructions completed by this TC. The value will saturate at 32'hffff_ffff rather than rolling over to 0.	R/W	Undefined

13.2.5.1 VPESchedule Register

The WRR and WRR2 policy managers implement the *VPESchedule* register for each VPE. Figure 13.4 and Table 13.3 shows the format of the *VPESchedule* register.

Figure 13.4 VPESchedule Register (CP0 Register1, Select 5) Register

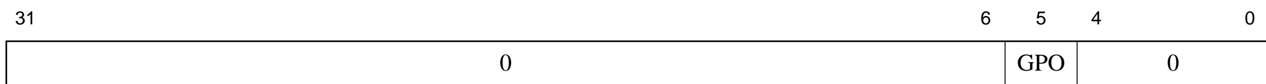


Table 13.3 VPESchedule Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
0	31:6,4:0	Must be written as 0. Returns zero on reads.	0	0
GPO	5	Group priority override. When set, the priorities of the groups will be fixed as follows: group3 will be priority3 group2 will be priority2 group1 will be priority1 group0 will be priority0 When cleared, the priorities of the groups will be rotated as described in Section 13.2.7 "Group Rotation Schedule". NOTE: GPO is a per-processor field. There is only one GPO register, which is accessible from both GPO fields in a dual-VPE system.	R/W	1

13.2.6 VPEScheFBack Register

The WRR2 policy manager implements the *VPEScheFBack* register. Figure 13.5 and Table 13.4 show the format of the *VPEScheFBack* register.

Figure 13.5 *VPEScheFBack* Register (CP0 Register1, Select 6)

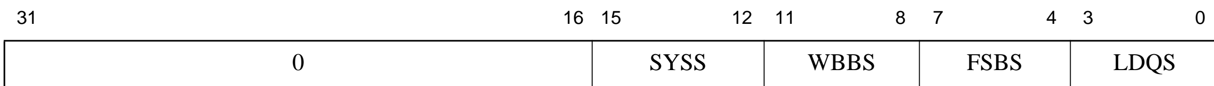


Table 13.4 *VPEScheFBack* Register Field Descriptions

Fields		Description	Read / Write	Reset State
Name	Bits			
0	31:16	Reserved. Must be written as 0.	R	0
SYSS	15:12	System Buffer Size. This is a reflection of the value on *PM_sys_size[3:0]*.	R	Preset
WBBS	11:8	WBB Size	R	Preset
FSBS	7:4	FSB Size.	R	Preset
LDQS	3:0	LDQ Size.	R	Preset

13.2.7 Group Rotation Schedule

When VPESchedule.GPO is cleared, the group priorities are rotated as described in this section. These rotations will enable a TC in a higher group to be prioritized higher than TCs in lower groups. The exact weighting function is complicated due to the interplay of non-runnable TCs, but generally, TCs in the next higher group will get at least twice the bandwidth of the TCs in the lower group.

The rotation schedule is described in Table 13.5.

Table 13.5 Rotation of Group Priority Levels

Rotation Count	Group3 Priority	Group2 Priority	Group1 Priority	Group0 Priority
4’b0001	P3	P2	P1	P0
4’b0010	P2	P3	P0	P1
4’b0011	P3	P2	P1	P0
4’b0100	P2	P0	P3	P1
4’b0101	P3	P2	P1	P0
4’b0110	P2	P3	P0	P1
4’b0111	P3	P1	P2	P0
4’b1000	P0	P2	P1	P3
4’b1001	P3	P1	P2	P0
4’b1010	P2	P3	P0	P1
4’b1011	P3	P2	P1	P0
4’b1100	P2	P0	P3	P1
4’b1101	P3	P2	P1	P0
4’b1110	P2	P3	P0	P1
4’b1111	P3	P1	P2	P0

The group priorities can easily be generated using a 4b counter and a priority encoder.

```
G3_priority = { Cnt[0] | Cnt[1] | Cnt[2], Cnt[0]};

G2_priority =
{(~Cnt[3]&~Cnt[2] | ~Cnt[2]&Cnt[1] | Cnt[1]&~Cnt[0] | ~Cnt[1]&(Cnt[2]^~Cnt[0])),
(Cnt[2]&Cnt[1] | Cnt[1]&~Cnt[0] | Cnt[3]&~Cnt[2]&~Cnt[1]&Cnt[0])};
```

The priority values for the other groups can easily be calculated from the above as follows:

```
G1_priority = ~G2_priority;
G0_priority = ~G3_priority;
```

With this mechanism, each group gets successively more slots at the highest priority. Group0 is the highest priority 1/15 slots, Group1 - 2/15, Group2 - 4/15, and Group3 - 8/15. Here are some of the properties of this rotation schedule.

For adjacent groups:

- Group3 is higher priority than group2 10/15 cycles. (G3 has 100% more bandwidth than G2)
- Group2 is higher priority than group1 10/15 cycles. (G2 has 100% more bandwidth than G1)
- Group1 is higher priority than group0 10/15 cycles. (G1 has 100% more bandwidth than G0)

For groups 2 levels apart:

- Group3 is higher priority than group1 12/15 cycles (G3 has 300% more bandwidth than G1)
- Group2 is higher priority than group0 12/15 cycles (G2 has 300% more bandwidth than G0)

And finally, for groups 3 levels apart:

- Group3 is higher priority than group0 14/15 cycles (G3 has 1300% more bandwidth than G0)

The priorities are rotated potentially every cycle. However, when the highest priority group in a given cycle has multiple runnable TCs in it, then that rotation is held for as many cycles as there are TCs in that highest priority group. This mechanism enables the relative bandwidth between groups to be maintained even when one group contains more TCs than another group.

For instance, assume we have a 4 TC system with 3 TCs in group1 and 1 TC in group0. The exact cycle by cycle priority is described in Table 13.6.

Table 13.6 Priority Level Rotation (3TCs in group1, 1 TC in group0)

Cycle Count	Rotation Count	Group3 Priority	Group2 Priority	Group1 Priority	Group0 Priority
1	4’b0001	P3	P2	P1	P0
2		P3	P2	P1	P0
3		P3	P2	P1	P0
4	4’b0010	P2	P3	P0	P1

Table 13.6 Priority Level Rotation (3TCs in group1, 1 TC in group0)

Cycle Count	Rotation Count	Group3 Priority	Group2 Priority	Group1 Priority	Group0 Priority
5	4’b0011	P3	P2	P1	P0
6		P3	P2	P1	P0
7		P3	P2	P1	P0
8	4’b0100	P2	P0	P3	P1
9		P2	P0	P3	P1
10		P2	P0	P3	P1
11	4’b0101	P3	P2	P1	P0
12		P3	P2	P1	P0
13		P3	P2	P1	P0
14	4’b0110	P2	P3	P0	P1
15	4’b0111	P3	P1	P2	P0
16		P3	P1	P2	P0
17		P3	P1	P2	P0
18	4’b1000	P0	P2	P1	P3
19	4’b1001	P3	P1	P2	P0
20		P3	P1	P2	P0
21		P3	P1	P2	P0
22	4’b1010	P2	P3	P0	P1
23	4’b1011	P3	P2	P1	P0
24		P3	P2	P1	P0
25		P3	P2	P1	P0
26	4’b1100	P2	P0	P3	P1
27		P2	P0	P3	P1
28		P2	P0	P3	P1
29	4’b1101	P3	P2	P1	P0
30		P3	P2	P1	P0
31		P3	P2	P1	P0
32	4’b1110	P2	P3	P0	P1
33	4’b1111	P3	P1	P2	P0
34		P3	P1	P2	P0
35		P3	P1	P2	P0

As can be seen in the table, the full rotation actually requires 35 cycles to complete. Out of these 35 cycles, group1 is higher priority than group0 for 30 cycles. However, since group1 contains 3 TCs, these will be round-robin’d by the DS, so on average, each of these TCs will get 33% of this group’s bandwidth, or 10cycles. (29% of all the issue slots for each of those TCs in group1). The one TC in group0 gets 5 issue slots, or 14%. As can be seen, each of the TCs in group1 gets about double the issue slots of the TC in group0.

Chapter 14

Instruction Set Overview

This chapter provides a general overview on the three CPU instruction set formats of the MIPS architecture: Immediate, Jump, and Register. Refer to Chapter 15, “1004K™ Processor CPU Instructions” on page 395 for a complete listing and description of instructions.

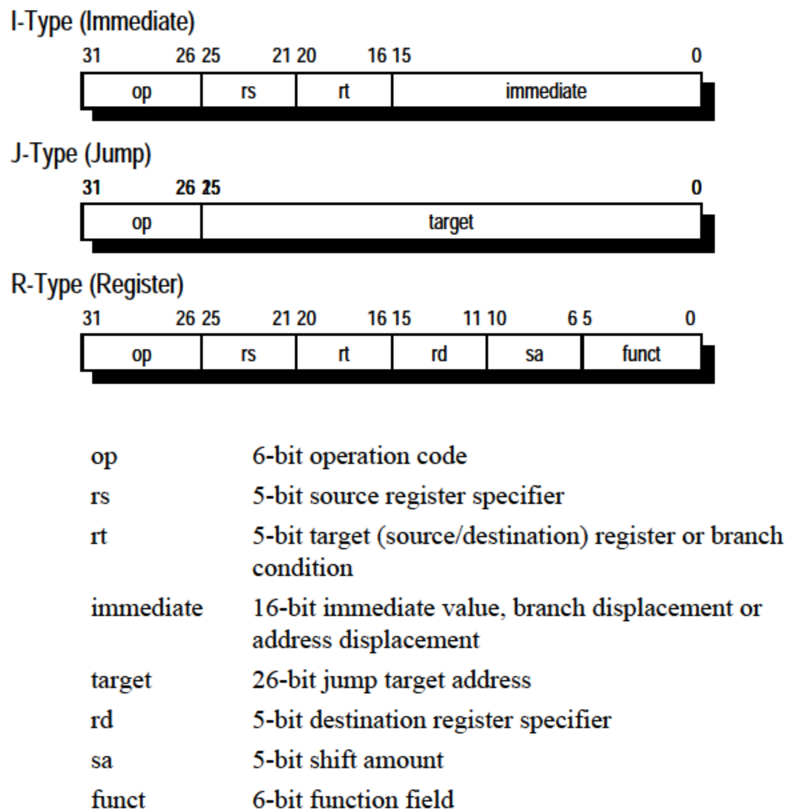
This chapter discusses the following topics

- Section 14.1 “CPU Instruction Formats”
- Section 14.2 “Load and Store Instructions”
- Section 14.3 “Computational Instructions”
- Section 14.4 “Jump and Branch Instructions”
- Section 14.5 “Control Instructions”
- Section 14.6 “Coprocessor Instructions”

14.1 CPU Instruction Formats

Each CPU instruction consists of a single 32-bit word, aligned on a word boundary. There are three instruction formats immediate (I-type), jump (J-type), and register (R-type)—as shown in Figure 14.1. The use of a small number of instruction formats simplifies instruction decoding, allowing the compiler to synthesize more complicated (and less frequently used) operations and addressing modes from these three formats as needed.

Figure 14.1 Instruction Formats



op	6-bit operation code
rs	5-bit source register specifier
rt	5-bit target (source/destination) register or branch condition
immediate	16-bit immediate value, branch displacement or address displacement
target	26-bit jump target address
rd	5-bit destination register specifier
sa	5-bit shift amount
funct	6-bit function field

14.2 Load and Store Instructions

Load and store instructions are immediate (I-type) instructions that move data between memory and the general registers. The only addressing mode that integer load and store instructions directly support is *base register plus 16-bit signed immediate offset*. Floating point load and store instructions can use either that addressing mode or *register plus register* indexed addressing.

14.2.1 Scheduling a Load Delay Slot

A load instruction that does not allow its result to be used by the instruction immediately following is called a *delayed load instruction*. The instruction slot immediately following this delayed load instruction is referred to as the *load delay slot*.

In a 1004K CPU, the instruction immediately following a load instruction can use the contents of the loaded register; however in such cases hardware interlocks insert additional real cycles. Although not required, the scheduling of load delay slots can be desirable, both for performance and R-Series processor compatibility.

14.2.2 Defining Access Types

Access type indicates the size of a CPU data item to be loaded or stored, set by the load or store instruction opcode.

Regardless of access type or byte ordering (endianness), the address given specifies the low-order byte in the addressed field. For a big-endian configuration, the low-order byte is the most-significant byte; for a little-endian configuration, the low-order byte is the least-significant byte.

The access type, together with the three low-order bits of the address, define the bytes accessed within the addressed word as shown in Table 14.1. Only the combinations shown in Table 14.1 are permissible; other combinations cause address error exceptions.

Instruction fetches are either halfword accesses (MIPS16e™ code) or word accesses (32b code). These references will be impacted by endianness the same as load/store references of those sizes.

Table 14.1 Byte Access Within a Doubleword

Access Type	Low-Order Address Bits			Bytes Accessed															
				Big Endian (63----------------31-------------------0)								Little Endian (63----------------31-------------------0)							
	2	1	0	Byte								Byte							
Doubleword	0	0	0	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Word	0	0	0	0	1	2	3									3	2	1	0
	1	0	0					4	5	6	7	7	6	5	4				
Triplebyte	0	0	0	0	1	2											2	1	0
	0	0	1		1	2	3									3	2	1	
	1	0	0					4	5	6			6	5	4				
	1	0	1						5	6	7	7	6	5					
Halfword	0	0	0	0	1													1	0
	0	1	0			2	3									3	2		
	1	0	0					4	5					5	4				
	1	1	0							6	7	7	6						
Byte	0	0	0	0															0
	0	0	1		1													1	
	0	1	0			2											2		
	0	1	1				3									3			
	1	0	0					4							4				
	1	0	1						5					5					
	1	1	0							6			6						
	1	1	1								7	7							

14.3 Computational Instructions

Computational instructions can be either in register (R-type) format, in which both operands are registers, or in immediate (I-type) format, in which one operand is a 16-bit immediate.

Computational instructions perform the following operations on register values:

- Arithmetic

- Logical
- Shift
- Count Leading Zeros/Ones
- Multiply
- Divide

These operations fit in the following four categories of computational instructions:

- ALU Immediate instructions
- Three-operand Register-type Instructions
- Shift Instructions
- Multiply And Divide Instructions

14.3.1 Cycle Timing for Multiply and Divide Instructions

Any multiply instruction in the integer pipeline is transferred to the multiplier as remaining instructions continue through the pipeline; the product of the multiply instruction is saved in the HI and LO registers. If the multiply instruction is followed by an MFHI or MFLO before the product is available, the pipeline interlocks until this product does become available. Refer to Chapter 2, “Pipeline of the 1004K™ CPU” on page 37 for more information on instruction latency and repeat rates.

14.4 Jump and Branch Instructions

Jump and branch instructions change the control flow of a program. All jump and branch instructions occur with a delay of one instruction: that is, the instruction immediately following the jump or branch (this is known as the instruction in the *delay slot*) always executes while the target instruction is being fetched from storage.

14.4.1 Overview of Jump Instructions

Subroutine calls in high-level languages are usually implemented with Jump or Jump and Link instructions, both of which are J-type instructions. In J-type format, the 26-bit target address shifts left 2 bits and combines with the high-order 4 bits of the current program counter to form an absolute address.

Returns, dispatches, and large cross-page jumps are usually implemented with the Jump Register or Jump and Link Register instructions. Both are R-type instructions that take the 32-bit byte address contained in one of the general purpose registers.

For more information about jump instructions, refer to the individual instructions in *MIPS32® Architecture Reference Manual, Volume II: The MIPS32® Instruction Set*.

14.4.2 Overview of Branch Instructions

All branch instruction target addresses are computed by adding the address of the instruction in the delay slot to the 16-bit *offset* (shifted left 2 bits and sign-extended to 32 bits). All branches occur with a delay of one instruction.

If a conditional branch likely is not taken, the instruction in the delay slot is nullified.

Branches, jumps, ERET, and DERET instructions should not be placed in the delay slot of a branch or jump.

14.5 Control Instructions

Control instructions allow the software to initiate traps; they are always R-type.

14.6 Coprocessor Instructions

CP0 instructions perform operations on the System Control Coprocessor registers to manipulate the memory management and exception handling facilities of the processor. Refer to Chapter 15, “1004K™ Processor CPU Instructions” on page 395 for a listing of CP0 instructions.

Chapter 15

1004K™ Processor CPU Instructions

This chapter supplements the MIPS32 Architecture Reference Manual by describing instruction behavior that is specific to a 1004K CPU. The chapter is divided *into* the following sections:

- Section 15.1 "Understanding the Instruction Descriptions"
- Section 15.2 "1004K™ Opcode Map"
- Section 15.3 "Floating Point Unit Instruction Format Encodings"
- Section 15.4 "MIPS32® Instruction Set for the 1004K™ CPU"

The 1004K CPU also supports the MIPS16e ASE to the MIPS32 architecture. The MIPS16e ASE instruction set is described in Chapter 16, "MIPS16e™ Application-Specific Extension to the MIPS32® Instruction Set" on page 443.

15.1 Understanding the Instruction Descriptions

Refer to Volume II of the *MIPS32 Architecture Reference Manual* [2] for more information about the instruction descriptions. There is a description of the instruction fields, definition of terms, and a description function notation available in that document.

15.2 1004K™ Opcode Map

Table 15.1 Symbols Used in the Instruction Encoding Tables

Symbol	Meaning
*	Operation or field codes marked with this symbol are reserved for future use, are valid encodings for a higher-order MIPS ISA level, or are part of an application specific extension not implemented on this core. Executing such an instruction will cause a Reserved Instruction Exception.
δ	(Also *italic* field name.) Operation or field codes marked with this symbol denotes a field class. The instruction word must be further decoded by examining additional tables that show values for another instruction field.
∇	Operation or field codes marked with this symbol represent instructions which are only legal if 64-bit floating point operations are enabled. In other cases, executing such an instruction will cause a Reserved Instruction Exception (non-coprocessor encodings or coprocessor instruction encodings for a coprocessor to which access is allowed) or a Coprocessor Unusable Exception (coprocessor instruction encodings for a coprocessor to which access is not allowed).
ϕ	Operation or field codes marked with this symbol are obsolete and will be removed from a future revision of the MIPS32 ISA. Software should avoid using these operation or field codes.

Table 15.2 MIPS32 Encoding of the Opcode Field

opcode		*bits 28..26*							
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 31..29		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	000	*SPECIAL* δ	*REGIMM* δ	J	JAL	BEQ	BNE	BLEZ	BGTZ
1	001	ADDI	ADDIU	SLTI	SLTIU	ANDI	ORI	XORI	LUI
2	010	*COP0* δ	*COP1* δ	*COP2* δ	*COP1*X	BEQL ϕ	BNEL ϕ	BLEZL ϕ	BGTZL ϕ
3	011	*	*	*	*	*SPECIAL2* δ	JALX	*	*SPECIAL3* δ
4	100	LB	LH	LWL	LW	LBU	LHU	LWR	*
5	101	SB	SH	SWL	SW	*	*	SWR	CACHE
6	110	LL	LWC1	LWC2	PREF	*	LDC1	LDC2	*
7	111	SC	SWC1	SWC2	*	*	SDC1	SDC2	*

Table 15.3 MIPS32 *SPECIAL* Opcode Encoding of Function Field

function		*bits 2..0*							
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 5..3		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	000	SLL[1]	*MOVCI* δ	*SRL* δ	SRA	SLLV	*	*SRLV* δ	SRAV
1	001	JR[2]	JALR[2]	MOVZ	MOVN	SYSCALL	BREAK	*	SYNC
2	010	MFHI	MTHI	MFLO	MTLO	*	*	*	*
3	011	MULT	MULTU	DIV	DIVU	*	*	*	*
4	100	ADD	ADDU	SUB	SUBU	AND	OR	XOR	NOR
5	101	*	*	SLT	SLTU	*	*	*	*
6	110	TGE	TGEU	TLT	TLTU	TEQ	*	TNE	*
7	111	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

1. Specific encodings of the *rt*, *rd*, and *sa* fields are used to distinguish among the SLL, NOP, SSNOP, PAUSE, and EHB functions.
2. Specific encodings of the hint field are used to distinguish JR from JR.HB and JALR from JALR.HB

Table 15.4 MIPS32 *REGIMM* Encoding of rt Field

rt		*bits 18..16*							
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 20..19		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	00	BLTZ	BGEZ	BLTZL ϕ	BGEZL ϕ	*	*	*	*
1	01	TGEI	TGEIU	TLTI	TLTIU	TEQI	*	TNEI	*
2	10	BLTZAL	BGEZAL	BLTZALL ϕ	BGEZALL ϕ	*	*	*	*
3	11	*	*	*	*	BPOSGE32	*	*	SYNCI

Table 15.5 MIPS32 *SPECIAL2* Encoding of Function Field

function		bits 2..0							
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 5..3		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	000	MADD	MADDU	MUL	*	MSUB	MSUBU	*	*
1	001	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
2	010	CorExtend							
3	011								
4	100	CLZ	CLO	*	*	*	*	*	*
5	101	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
6	110	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
7	111	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	SDBBP

Table 15.6 MIPS32 *Special3* Encoding of Function Field for Release 2 of the Architecture

function		bits 2..0							
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 5..3		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	000	EXT	*	*	*	INS	*	*	*
1	001	*	*	LX	*	INSV	*	*	*
2	010	ADDU.QB	CMPUEQ.QB	ABSQ_S.PH	SHLL_QB	*	*	*	*
3	011	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
4	100	*BSHFL* δ	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
5	101	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
6	110	DPAG.W.PH	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
7	111	EXTR.W	*	*	RDHWR	*	*	*	*

Table 15.7 MIPS32 *MOVCI* Encoding of tf Bit

tf	bit 16	
	0	1
	MOVF	MOVT

Table 15.8 MIPS32 *SRL* Encoding of Shift/Rotate

tf	bit 21	
	0	1
	SRL	ROTR

Table 15.9 MIPS32 *SRLV* Encoding of Shift/Rotate

tf	bit 6	
	0	1
	SRLV	ROTRV

Table 15.10 MIPS32 *BSHFL*Encoding of sa Field[1]

sa		bits 8..6							
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 10..9		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	00			WSBH					
1	01								
2	10	SEB							
3	11	SEH							

1. The `sa` field is sparsely decoded to identify the final instructions. Entries in this table with no mnemonic are reserved for future use by MIPS Technologies and may or may not cause a Reserved Instruction exception.

Table 15.11 MIPS32® *ADDU.QB* Encoding of the op Field[1]

op		bits 8..6							
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 10..9		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	00	ADDU.QB	SUBU.QB	*	*	ADDU_S.QB	SUBU_S.QB	MULEU_S.PH.QBL	MULEU_S.PH.QBR
1	01	*	*	ADDQ.PH	SUBQ.PH	*	*	ADDQ_S.PH	SUBQ_S.PH
2	10	ADDSC	ADDWC	MODSUB	*	RADDU.W.QB	*	ADDQ_S.W	SUBQ_S.W
3	11	*	*	*	*	MULEQ_S.W.PHL	MULEQ_S.W.PHR	*	MULQ_RS.PH

1. The op field is decoded to identify the final instructions. Entries in this table with no mnemonic are reserved for future use by MIPS Technologies and may or may not cause a Reserved Instruction exception.

Table 15.12 MIPS32® *CMPU.EQ.QB* Encoding of the op Field

op		bits 8..6							
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 10..9		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	00	CMPU.EQ.QB	CMPU.LT.QB	CMPU.LE.QB	PICK.QB	CMPGU.EQ.QB	CMPGU.LT.QB	CMPGU.LE.QB	*
1	01	CMP.EQ.PH	CMP.LT.PH	CMP.LE.PH	PICK.PH	PRECRQ.QB.PH	*	PACKRL.PH	PRECRQU_S.QB.PH
2	10	*	*	*	*	PRECRQ.PH.W	PRECRQ_RS.PH.W	*	*
3		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

Table 15.13 MIPS32® *ABSQ_S.PH* Encoding of the op Field

op	*bits 8..6*								
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 10..9		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	00	*	*	REPL.QB	REPLV.QB	PRECEQU.PH.QBL	PRECEQU.PH.QBR	PRECEQU.PH.QBLA	PRECEQU.PH.QBRA
1	01	*	ABSQ_S.PH	REPL.PH	REPLV.PH	PRECEQ.W.PHL	PRECEQ.W.PHR	*	*
2	10	*	ABSQ_S.W	*	*	*	*	*	*
3	11	*	*	*	BITREV	PRECEU.PH.QBL	PRECEU.PH.QBR	PRECEU.PH.QBLA	PRECEU.PH.QBRA

Table 15.14 MIPS32® *SHLL.QB* Encoding of the op Field

op	*bits 8..6*								
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 10..9		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	00	SHLL.QB	SHRL.QB	SHLLV.QB	SHRLV.QB	*	*	*	*
1	01	SHLL.PH	SHRA.PH	SHLLV.PH	SHRAV.PH	SHLL_S.PH	SHRA_R.PH	SHLLV_S.PH	SHRAV_R.PH
2	10	*	*	*	*	SHLL_S.W	SHRA_R.W	SHLLV_S.W	SHRAV_R.W
3	11	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

Table 15.15 MIPS32® *LX* Encoding of the op Field

op	*bits 8..6*								
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 10..9		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	00	LWX	*	*	*	LHX	*	LBUX	*
1	01	β	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
2	10	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
3	11	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

Table 15.16 MIPS32® *DPAQ.W.PH* Encoding of the op Field

op	*bits 8..6*								
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 10..9		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	00	*	*	*	DPAU.H.QBL	DPAQ_S.W.PH	DPSQ_S.W.PH	MULSAQ_S.W.PH	DPAU.H.QBR
1	01	*	*	*	DPSU.H.QBL	DPAQ_SA.L.W	DPSQ_SA.L.W	*	DPSU.H.QBR
2	10	MAQ_SA.W.PHL	*	MAQ_SA.W.PHR	*	MAQ_S.W.PHL	*	MAQ_S.W.PHR	*
3	11	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

Table 15.17 MIPS32® *EXTR.W* Encoding of the op Field

op		bits 8..6							
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 10..9		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	00	EXTR.W	EXTRV.W	EXTP	EXTPV	EXTR_R.W	EXTRV_R.W	EXTR_RS.W	EXTRV_RS.W
1	01	*	*	EXTPDP	EXTPDPV	*	*	EXTR_S.H	EXTRV_S.H
2	10	*	*	RDDSP	WRDSP	*	*	*	*
3	11	*	*	SHILO	SHILOV	*	*	*	MTHLIP

Table 15.18 MIPS32 *COP0* Encoding of rs Field

rs		bits 23..21							
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 25..24		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	00	MFC0	*	*	*	MTC0	*	*	*
1	01	*	*	RDPGPR	*MFMC0*[1] δ	*	*	WRPGPR	*
2	10	C0 δ							
3	11								

1. Release 2 of the Architecture added the MFMC0 function, which is further decoded as the DI and EI instructions.

Table 15.19 MIPS32*COP0* Encoding of Function Field When rs=*CO*

function		bits 2..0							
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 5..3		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	000	*	TLBR	TLBWI	*	*	*	TLBWR	*
1	001	TLBP	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
2	010	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
3	011	ERET	*	*	*	*	*	*	DERET
4	100	WAIT	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
5	101	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
6	110	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
7	111	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

Table 15.20 MIPS32 *COP1* Encoding of rs Field

rs		bits 23..21							
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 25..24		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	00	MFC1	*	CFC1	MFHC1	MTC1	*	CTC1	MTHC1
1	01	*BC1* δ	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
2	10	*S* δ	*D* δ	*	*	*W* δ	*L* δ	*	*
3	11	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

Table 15.21 MIPS32 *COP1* Encoding of Function Field When rs=*S*

function		*bits 2..0*							
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 5..3		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	000	ADD	SUB	MUL	DIV	SQRT	ABS	MOV	NEG
1	001	ROUND.L ∇	TRUNC.L ∇	CEIL.L ∇	FLOOR.L ∇	ROUND.W	TRUNC.W	CEIL.W	FLOOR.W
2	010	*	MOVCF δ	MOVZ	MOVN	*	RECIP ∇	RSQRT ∇	*
3	011	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
4	100	*	CVT.D	*	*	CVT.W	CVT.L ∇	*	*
5	101	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
6	110	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
7	111	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

Table 15.22 MIPS32 *COP1* Encoding of Function Field When rs=*D*

function		*bits 2..0*							
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 5..3		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	000	ADD	SUB	MUL	DIV	SQRT	ABS	MOV	NEG
1	001	ROUND.L ∇	TRUNC.L ∇	CEIL.L ∇	FLOOR.L ∇	ROUND.W	TRUNC.W	CEIL.W	FLOOR.W
2	010	*	MOVCF δ	MOVZ	MOVN	*	RECIP ∇	RSQRT ∇	*
3	011	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
4	100	CVT.S	*	*	*	CVT.W	CVT.L ∇	*	*
5	101	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
6	110	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
7	111	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

Table 15.23 MIPS32 *COP1* Encoding of Function Field When rs=*W or L*[1]

function		*bits 2..0*							
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 5..3		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	000	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
1	001	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
2	010	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
3	011	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
4	100	CVT.S	CVT.D	*	*	*	*	*	*
5	101	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
6	110	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
7	111	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

1. Format type L is legal only if 64-bit floating point operations are enabled.

Table 15.24 MIPS32 *COP1* Encoding of tf Bit When rs=*S or D,* Function=*MOVCF*

tf	*bit 16*	
	0	1
	MOVF fmt	MOVT.fmt

Table 15.25 MIPS64 *COP1X* Encoding of Function Field[1]

function		*bits 2..0*							
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 5..3		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	000	LWXC1 ∇	LDXC1 ∇	*	*	*	LUXC1 ∇	*	*
1	001	SWXC1 ∇	SDXC1 ∇	*	*	*	SUXC1 ∇	*	PREFX ∇
2	010	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
3	011	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
4	100	MADD.S ∇	MADD.D ∇	*	*	*	*	*	*
5	101	MSUB.S ∇	MSUB.D ∇	*	*	*	*	*	*
6	110	NMADD.S ∇	NMADD.D ∇	*	*	24k *	*	*	*
7	111	NMSUB.S ∇	NMSUB.D ∇	*	*	*	*	*	*

1. COP1X instructions are legal only if 64-bit floating point operations are enabled.

Table 15.26 MIPS32 *COP2* Encoding of rs Field

rs		*bits 23..21*							
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 25..24		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	00	MFC2	*	CFC2	MFHC2	MTC2	*	CTC2	MTHC2
1	01	*BC2*δ	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
2	10	C2							
3	11								

15.3 Floating Point Unit Instruction Format Encodings

Instruction format encodings for the floating point unit are presented in this section. This information is a tabular presentation of the encodings described in tables Table 15.20 and Table 15.25 above.

Table 15.27 Floating Point Unit Instruction Format Encodings

fmt field (bits 25..21 of COP1 opcode)		*fmt3* field (bits 2..0 of COP1X opcode)					
Decimal	Hex	Decimal	Hex	Mnemonic	Name	Bit Width	Data Type
0..15	00..0F	—	—	Used to encode Coprocessor 1 interface instructions (MFC1, CTC1, etc.). Not used for format encoding.			
16	10	0	0	S	Single	32	Floating Point
17	11	1	1	D	Double	64	Floating Point

Table 15.27 Floating Point Unit Instruction Format Encodings (Continued)

fmt field (bits 25..21 of COP1 opcode)		*fmt3* field (bits 2..0 of COP1X opcode)					
Decimal	Hex	Decimal	Hex	Mnemonic	Name	Bit Width	Data Type
18..19	12..13	2..3	2..3	Reserved for future use by the architecture.			
20	14	4	4	W	Word	32	Fixed Point
21	15	5	5	L	Long	64	Fixed Point
22	16	6	6	PS	Paired Single	2×32	Floating Point
23	17	7	7	Reserved for future use by the architecture.			
24..31	18..1F	—	—	Reserved for future use by the architecture. Not available for *fmt3* encoding.			

15.4 MIPS32® Instruction Set for the 1004K™ CPU

This section describes the MIPS32 instructions for the 1004K CPUs. Table 15.28 lists the instructions in alphabetical order. Instructions that have implementation dependent behavior are described afterwards. The descriptions for other instructions exist in the architecture reference manual and are not duplicated here.

Table 15.28 1004K™ CPU Instruction Set

Instruction	Description	Function
`ABS.fmt`	Floating Point Absolute Value fmt = s,d	`Fd = abs(Fs)`
`ADD`	Integer Add	`Rd = Rs + Rt`
`ADD.fmt`	Floating Point Add fmt = s,d	`Fd = Fs + Ft`
`ADDI`	Integer Add Immediate	`Rt = Rs + Immed`
`ADDIU`	Unsigned Integer Add Immediate	Rt = Rs $+_U$ Immed
`ADDIUPC`	Unsigned Integer Add Immediate to PC (MIPS16 only)	Rt = PC $+_u$ Immed
`ADDU`	Unsigned Integer Add	Rd = Rs $+_U$ Rt
`AND`	Logical AND	`Rd = Rs & Rt`
`ANDI`	Logical AND Immediate	Rt = Rs & (0_{16} || Immed)
`B`	Unconditional Branch (Assembler idiom for: `BEQ r0, r0, offset`)	`PC += (int)offset`
`BAL`	Branch and Link (Assembler idiom for: `BGEZAL r0, offset`)	`GPR[31] = PC + 8` `PC += (int)offset`
`BC1F`	Branch On Floating Point False	`if (cc[i] == 0) then` `PC += (int)offset`

Table 15.28 1004K™ CPU Instruction Set (Continued)

Instruction	Description	Function

BC1FL	Branch On Floating Point False Likely	`if (cc[i] == 0)then`
		`  PC += (int)offset`
		`else`
		`  Ignore Next Instruction`

BC1T	Branch On Floating Point True	`if(cc[i] == 1) then` `  PC += (int)offset`

BC1TL	Branch On Floating Point True Likely	`if (cc[i] == 1) then`
		`  PC += (int)offset`
		`else`
		`  Ignore Next Instruction`

BC2F	Branch On CP2 False	`if (cc[i] == 0) then` `   PC += (int)offset`

BC2FL	Branch On CP2 False Likely	`if (cc[i] == 0)then`
		`  PC += (int)offset`
		`else`
		`  Ignore Next Instruction`

BC2T	Branch On CP2 True	`if(cc[i] == 1) then` `  PC += (int)offset`

BC2TL	Branch On CP2 True Likely	`if (cc[i] == 1) then`
		`  PC += (int)offset`
		`else`
		`  Ignore Next Instruction`

BEQ	Branch On Equal	`if Rs == Rt` `  PC += (int)offset`

BEQL	Branch On Equal Likely	`if Rs == Rt`
		`  PC += (int)offset`
		`else`
		`  Ignore Next Instruction`

BGEZ	Branch on Greater Than or Equal To Zero	`if !Rs[31]` `  PC += (int)offset`

BGEZAL	Branch on Greater Than or Equal To Zero And Link	`GPR[31] = PC + 8`
		`if !Rs[31]`
		`  PC += (int)offset`

BGEZALL	Branch on Greater Than or Equal To Zero And Link Likely	`GPR[31] = PC + 8`
		`if !Rs[31]`
		`  PC += (int)offset`
		`else`
		`  Ignore Next Instruction`

BGEZL	Branch on Greater Than or Equal To Zero Likely	`if !Rs[31]`
		`  PC += (int)offset`
		`else`
		`  Ignore Next Instruction`

BGTZ	Branch on Greater Than Zero	`if !Rs[31] && Rs != 0` `  PC += (int)offset`

BGTZL	Branch on Greater Than Zero Likely	`if !Rs[31] && Rs != 0`
		`  PC += (int)offset`
		`else`
		`  Ignore Next Instruction`

Table 15.28 1004K™ CPU Instruction Set (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th>Instruction</th><th>Description</th><th>Function</th></tr>
<tr><td>BLEZ</td><td>Branch on Less Than or Equal to Zero</td><td>if Rs[31] || Rs == 0
  PC += (int)offset</td></tr>
<tr><td>BLEZL</td><td>Branch on Less Than or Equal to Zero Likely</td><td>if Rs[31] || Rs == 0
  PC += (int)offset
else
  Ignore Next Instruction</td></tr>
<tr><td>BLTZ</td><td>Branch on Less Than Zero</td><td>if Rs[31]
  PC += (int)offset</td></tr>
<tr><td>BLTZAL</td><td>Branch on Less Than Zero And Link</td><td>GPR[31] = PC + 8
if Rs[31]
  PC += (int)offset</td></tr>
<tr><td>BLTZALL</td><td>Branch on Less Than Zero And Link Likely</td><td>GPR[31] = PC + 8
if Rs[31]
  PC += (int)offset
else
  Ignore Next Instruction</td></tr>
<tr><td>BLTZL</td><td>Branch on Less Than Zero Likely</td><td>if Rs[31]
  PC += (int)offset
else
  Ignore Next Instruction</td></tr>
<tr><td>BNE</td><td>Branch on Not Equal</td><td>if Rs != Rt
  PC += (int)offset</td></tr>
<tr><td>BNEL</td><td>Branch on Not Equal Likely</td><td>if Rs != Rt
  PC += (int)offset
else
  Ignore Next Instruction</td></tr>
<tr><td>BREAK</td><td>Breakpoint</td><td>Break Exception</td></tr>
<tr><td>C.cond.fmt</td><td>Floating Point Compare
fmt = s,d</td><td>cc[i] = Fs compare_cond Ft</td></tr>
<tr><td>CACHE</td><td>Cache Operation</td><td>See Below</td></tr>
<tr><td>CEIL.L.fmt</td><td>Floating Point Ceiling to Long Fixed Point</td><td>Fd = convert_and_round(Fs)</td></tr>
<tr><td>CEIL.W.fmt</td><td>Floating Point Ceiling to Word Fixed Point</td><td>Fd = convert_and_round(Fs)</td></tr>
<tr><td>CFC1</td><td>Move Control Word From Floating Point</td><td>Rt = FP_Control[Fs]</td></tr>
<tr><td>CFC2</td><td>Move Control Word From CP2</td><td>Rt = CP2_Control[Fs]</td></tr>
<tr><td>CLO</td><td>Count Leading Ones</td><td>Rd = NumLeadingOnes(Rs)</td></tr>
<tr><td>CLZ</td><td>Count Leading Zeroes</td><td>Rd = NumLeadingZeroes(Rs)</td></tr>
<tr><td>COP2</td><td>Coprocessor 2 Operation</td><td>Implementation dependent</td></tr>
<tr><td>CTC1</td><td>Move Control Word To Floating Point</td><td>FP_Control[Fs] = Rt</td></tr>
<tr><td>CTC2</td><td>Move Control Word to CP2</td><td>CP2 Control[Fs] = Rt</td></tr>
<tr><td>CVT.D.fmt</td><td>Floating Point Convert to Double Floating Point
fmt = S,W,L</td><td>Fd = convert_and_round(Fs)</td></tr>
</table>

Table 15.28 1004K™ CPU Instruction Set (Continued)

Instruction	Description	Function
CVT.D.fmt	Floating Point Convert to Double Floating Point fmt = S,W,L	Fd = convert_and_round(Fs)
CVT.L.fmt	Floating Point Convert to Long Fixed Point fmt = S,D	Fd = convert_and_round(Fs)
CVT.S.fmt	Floating Point Convert to Single Floating Point fmt = W,D,L	Fd = convert_and_round(Fs)
CVT.W.fmt	Floating Point Convert to Word Fixed Point fmt = S,D	Fd = convert_and_round(Fs)
DERET	Return from Debug Exception	PC = DEPC Exit Debug Mode
DI	Atomically Disable Interrupts	Rt = Status; $Status_{IE}$ = 0
DIV	Divide	LO = (int)Rs / (int)Rt HI = (int)Rs % (int)Rt
DIV.fmt	Floating Point Divide fmt = S,D	Fd = Fs/Ft
DIVU	Unsigned Divide	LO = (uns)Rs / (uns)Rt HI = (uns)Rs % (uns)Rt
DMT	Clear *VPEControl[TE]*, which suspends execution of all other TCs affiliates to the same VPE	The *rt* register receives the original value of *VPEControl*; if you don't specify a register rt it receives the previous contents of the *MVPControl* register.
DVPE	Disable all multithreading, including any other TCs affiliated to other VPEs, leaving this thread running alone	Implemented as an atomic clear of the *MVPContorl[VEP]* bit. If you specify a register rt it receives the previous contents of the *MVPControl* register.
EHB	Execution Hazard Barrier	Stop instruction execution until execution hazards are cleared
EI	Atomically Enable Interrupts	Rt = Status; $Status_{IE}$ = 1
EMT	Atomically sets the *VPEControl[TE]* bit and returns the old value	VPEControl[TE] = 1

ERET	Return from Exception	if SR[2]
		  PC = ErrorEPC
		else
		  PC = EPC
		  SR[1] = 0
		SR[2] = 0
		LL = 0

EVPE	Returns the previous value of the *MVPControl* register and enable multi-VPE execution	GPR[rt] <- MVPControl; $MVPControl_{EVP}$ <- 1
EXT	Extract Bit Field	Rt = ExtractField(Rs, pos, size)
FLOOR.L.fmt	Floating Point Floor to Long Fixed Point fmt = S,D	Fd = convert_and_round(Fs)

Table 15.28 1004K™ CPU Instruction Set (Continued)

<table>
<tr><th>Instruction</th><th>Description</th><th>Function</th></tr>
<tr><td>FLOOR.W.fmt</td><td>Floating Point Floor to Word Fixed Point
fmt = S,D</td><td>Fd = convert_and_round(Fs)</td></tr>
<tr><td>FORK</td><td>Find a TC and activate it, so it starts at rs</td><td>The new thread’s rd register will be set to the value provided in rt.</td></tr>
<tr><td>INS</td><td>Insert Bit Field</td><td>Rt = InsertField(Rs, Rt, pos, size)</td></tr>
<tr><td>J</td><td>Unconditional Jump</td><td>PC = PC[31:28] || offset<<2</td></tr>
<tr><td>JAL</td><td>Jump and Link</td><td>GPR[31] = PC + 8
PC = PC[31:28] || offset<<2</td></tr>
<tr><td>JALR</td><td>Jump and Link Register</td><td>Rd = PC + 8
PC = Rs</td></tr>
<tr><td>JALR.HB</td><td>Jump and Link Register with Hazard Barrier</td><td>Like JALR, but also clears execution and instruction hazards</td></tr>
<tr><td>JALRC</td><td>Jump and Link Register Compact - do not execute instruction in jump delay slot(MIPS16 only)</td><td>Rd = PC + 2
PC = Rs</td></tr>
<tr><td>JR</td><td>Jump Register</td><td>PC = Rs</td></tr>
<tr><td>JR.HB</td><td>Jump Register with Hazard Barrier</td><td>Like JR, but also clears execution and instruction hazards</td></tr>
<tr><td>JRC</td><td>Jump Register Compact - do not execute instruction in jump delay slot (MIPS16 only)</td><td>PC = Rs</td></tr>
<tr><td>LB</td><td>Load Byte</td><td>Rt = (byte)Mem[base+offset]</td></tr>
<tr><td>LBU</td><td>Unsigned Load Byte</td><td>Rt = (ubyte)Mem[base+offset]</td></tr>
<tr><td>LDC1</td><td>Load Doubleword to Floating Point</td><td>Ft = memory[base+offset]</td></tr>
<tr><td>LDC2</td><td>Load Doubleword to CP2</td><td>Ft = memory[base+offset]</td></tr>
<tr><td>LDXC1</td><td>Load Doubleword Indexed to Floating Point</td><td>Fd = memory[base+index]</td></tr>
<tr><td>LH</td><td>Load Halfword</td><td>Rt = (half)Mem[base+offset]</td></tr>
<tr><td>LHU</td><td>Unsigned Load Halfword</td><td>Rt = (uhalf)Mem[base+offset]</td></tr>
<tr><td>LL</td><td>Load Linked Word</td><td>Rt = Mem[base+offset]
LL = 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>LUI</td><td>Load Upper Immediate</td><td>Rt = immediate << 16</td></tr>
<tr><td>LUXC1</td><td>Load Doubleword Indexed Unaligned to Floating Point</td><td>Fd =
memory[(base+index)psize-1..3</td></tr>
<tr><td>LW</td><td>Load Word</td><td>Rt = Mem[Rs+offset]</td></tr>
<tr><td>LWC1</td><td>Load Word to Floating Point</td><td>Ft = memory[base+offset]</td></tr>
<tr><td>LWC2</td><td>Load Word to CP2</td><td>Ft = memory[base+offset]</td></tr>
<tr><td>LWPC</td><td>Load Word, PC relative</td><td>Rt = Mem[PC+offset]</td></tr>
</table>

Table 15.28 1004K™ CPU Instruction Set (Continued)

Instruction	Description	Function
LWXC1	Load Word Indexed to Floating Point	Fd = memory[base+index]
LWL	Load Word Left	See Architecture Reference Manual
LWR	Load Word Right	See Architecture Reference Manual
MADD	Multiply-Add	HI | LO += (int)Rs * (int)Rt
MADD.fmt	Floating Point Multiply Add fmt = S,D	Fd = Fs * Ft + Fr
MADDU	Multiply-Add Unsigned	HI | LO += (uns)Rs * (uns)Rt
MFC0	Move From Coprocessor 0	Rt = CPR[0, Rd, sel]
MFC1	Move From FPR	Rt = $Fs_{31..0}$
MFC2	Move From CP2 Register	Rt = $Fs_{31..0}$
MFHC1	Move From High Half of FPR	Rt = $Fs_{63..32}$
MFHC2	Move From High Half of CP2 Register	Rt = $Fs_{63..32}$
MFHI	Move From HI	Rd = HI
MFLO	Move From LO	Rd = LO
MFTR	Move from thread register belonging to some other TC	Rd = Rt
MOV.fmt	Floating Point Move	Fd = Fs
MOVF	GPR Conditional Move on Floating Point False	if (cc[i] == 0) then Rd = Rs
MOVF.fmt	FPR Conditional Move on Floating Point False	if (cc[i] == 0) then Fd = Fs
MOVN	GPR Conditional Move on Not Zero	if Rt ≠ 0 then Rd = Rs
MOVN.fmt	FPR Conditional Move on Not Zero	if Rt ≠ 0 then Fd = Fs
MOVT	GPR Conditional Move on Floating Point True	if (cc[i] == 1) then Rd = Rs
MOVT.fmt	FPR Conditional Move on Floating Point True	if (cc[i] == 1) then Fd = Fs
MOVZ	GPR Conditional Move on Zero	if Rt = 0 then Rd = Rs
MOVZ.fmt	FPR Conditional Move on Zero	if (Rt == 0) then Fd = Fs
MSUB	Multiply-Subtract	HI | LO -= (int)Rs * (int)Rt
MSUB.fmt	Floating Point Multiply Subtract fmt = S,D	Fd = Fs * Ft - Fr
MSUBU	Multiply-Subtract Unsigned	HI | LO -= (uns)Rs * (uns)Rt
MTC0	Move To Coprocessor 0	CPR[0, n, Sel] = Rt
MTC1	Move To FPR	Fs = Rt
MTC2	Move to CP2 register	Fs = Rt

Table 15.28 1004K™ CPU Instruction Set (Continued)

Instruction	Description	Function
MTHC1	Move To High Half of FPR	Fd = Rt || $Fs_{31..0}$
MTHC2	Move to High Half of CP2 register	Fd = Rt || $Fs_{31..0}$
MTHI	Move To HI	HI = Rs
MTLO	Move To LO	LO = Rs
MTTR	Move to thread register belonging to some other TC	Rt = Rd
MUL	Multiply with register write	HI | LO =Unpredictable Rd = $((int)Rs * (int)Rt)_{31..0}$
MUL.fmt	Floating Point Multiply fmt = S,D	Fd = Fs * Ft
MULT	Integer Multiply	HI | LO = (int)Rs * (int)Rd
MULTU	Unsigned Multiply	HI | LO = (uns)Rs * (uns)Rd
NEG.fmt	Floating Point Negate fmt = S,D	Fd = neg(Fs)
NMADD.fmt	Floating Point Negative Multiply Add fmt = S,D	Fd = neg(Fs * Ft + Fr)
NMSUB.fmt	Floating Point Negative Multiply Subtract fmt = S,D	Fd = neg(Fs * Ft - Fr)
NOP	No Operation (Assembler idiom for: SLL r0, r0, r0)	
NOR	Logical NOR	Rd = ~(Rs | Rt)
OR	Logical OR	Rd = Rs | Rt
ORI	Logical OR Immediate	Rt = Rs | Immed
PAUSE	Wait until LLbit is cleared	
PREF	Prefetch	Load Specified Line into Cache
PREFX	Prefetch Indexed	Load Specified Line into Cache
RDHWR	Read Hardware Register	Allows unprivileged access to registers enabled by *HWREna* register
RDPGPR	Read GPR from Previous Shadow Set	Rt = SGPR[$SRSCtl_{PSS}$, Rd]
RECIP.fmt	Floating Point Reciprocal Approximation fmt = S,D	Fd = recip(Fs)
RESTORE	Restore registers and deallocate stack frame (MIPS16 only)	See Architecture Reference Manual
ROTR	Rotate Word Right	Rd = $Rt_{sa-1..0}$ || $Rt_{31..sa}$
ROTRV	Rotate Word Right Variable	Rd = $Rt_{Rs-1..0}$ || $Rt_{31..Rs}$

Table 15.28 1004K™ CPU Instruction Set (Continued)

Instruction	Description	Function
ROUND.L.fmt	Floating Point Round to Long Fixed Point fmt = S,D	Fd = convert_and_round(Fs)
ROUND.W.fmt	Floating Point Round to Word Fixed Point fmt = S,D	Fd = convert_and_round(Fs)
RSQRT.fmt	Floating Point Reciprocal Square Root Approximation fmt = S,D	Fd = rsqrt(Fs)
SAVE	Save registers and allocate stack frame (MIPS16 only)	See Architecture Reference Manual
SB	Store Byte	(byte)Mem[base+offset] = Rt
SC	Store Conditional Word	if LL = 1 mem[base+offset] = Rt Rt = LL
SDBBP	Software Debug Break Point	Trap to SW Debug Handler
SDC1	Store Doubleword from Floating Point	memory[base+offset] = Ft
SDC2	Store Doubleword from CP2	memory[base+offset] = Ft
SDXC1	Store Word Indexed from Floating Point	memory[base+index] = Fs
SEB	Sign Extend Byte	Rd = (byte)Rs
SEH	Sign Extend Half	Rd = (half)Rs
SH	Store Half	(half)Mem[base+offset] = Rt
SLL	Shift Left Logical	Rd = Rt << sa
SLLV	Shift Left Logical Variable	Rd = Rt << Rs[4:0]

SLT	Set on Less Than	if (int)Rs < (int)Rt
		Rd = 1
		else
		Rd = 0

SLTI	Set on Less Than Immediate	if (int)Rs < (int)Immed
		Rt = 1
		else
		Rt = 0

SLTIU	Set on Less Than Immediate Unsigned	if (uns)Rs < (uns)Immed
		Rt = 1
		else
		Rt = 0

SLTU	Set on Less Than Unsigned	if (uns)Rs < (uns)Immed
		Rd = 1
		else
		Rd = 0

SQRT.fmt	Floating Point Square Root fmt = S,D	Fd = sqrt(Fs)
SRA	Shift Right Arithmetic	Rd = (int)Rt >> sa
SRAV	Shift Right Arithmetic Variable	Rd = (int)Rt >> Rs[4:0]

Table 15.28 1004K™ CPU Instruction Set (Continued)

Instruction	Description	Function
SRL	Shift Right Logical	Rd = (uns)Rt >> sa
SRLV	Shift Right Logical Variable	Rd = (uns)Rt >> Rs[4:0]
SSNOP	Superscalar Inhibit No Operation	NOP
SUB	Integer Subtract	Rt = (int)Rs - (int)Rd
SUB.fmt	Floating Point Subtract fmt = S,D	Fd = Fs - Ft
SUBU	Unsigned Subtract	Rt = (uns)Rs - (uns)Rd
SUXC1	Store Doubleword Indexed Unaligned from Floating Point	memory[(base+index)psize-1..3] = Fs
SW	Store Word	Mem[base+offset] = Rt
SWC1	Store Word From Floating Point	Mem[base+offset] = Fs
SWC2	Store Word From CP2 Register	Mem[base+offset] = Fs
SWL	Store Word Left	See Architecture Reference Manual
SWR	Store Word Right	See Architecture Reference Manual
SWXC1	Store Word Indexed to Floating Point	memory[base+index] = Fs
SYNC	Synchronize	See Below
SYNCI	Synchronize Caches to Make Instruction Writes Effective	For D-cache writeback and I-cache invalidate on specified address
SYSCALL	System Call	SystemCallException
TEQ	Trap if Equal	if Rs == Rt TrapException
TEQI	Trap if Equal Immediate	if Rs == (int)Immed TrapException
TGE	Trap if Greater Than or Equal	if (int)Rs >= (int)Rt TrapException
TGEI	Trap if Greater Than or Equal Immediate	if (int)Rs >= (int)Immed TrapException
TGEIU	Trap if Greater Than or Equal Immediate Unsigned	if (uns)Rs >= (uns)Immed TrapException
TGEU	Trap if Greater Than or Equal Unsigned	if (uns)Rs >= (uns)Rt TrapException
TLBWI	Write Indexed TLB Entry	See Below
TLBWR	Write Random TLB Entry	See Below
TLBP	Probe TLB for Matching Entry	See Architecture Reference Manual
TLBR	Read Index for TLB Entry	See Below

Table 15.28 1004K™ CPU Instruction Set (Continued)

Instruction	Description	Function
TLT	Trap if Less Than	if (int)Rs < (int)Rt TrapException
TLTI	Trap if Less Than Immediate	if (int)Rs < (int)Immed TrapException
TLTIU	Trap if Less Than Immediate Unsigned	if (uns)Rs < (uns)Immed TrapException
TLTU	Trap if Less Than Unsigned	if (uns)Rs < (uns)Rt TrapException
TNE	Trap if Not Equal	if Rs != Rt TrapException
TNEI	Trap if Not Equal Immediate	if Rs != (int)Immed TrapException
TRUNC.L.fmt	Floating Point Truncate to Long Fixed Point	Fd = convert_and_round(Fs)
TRUNC.W.fmt	Floating Point Truncate to Word Fixed Point	Fd = convert_and_round(Fs)
WAIT	Wait for Interrupts	Stall until interrupt occurs
WRPGPR	Write to GPR in Previous Shadow Set	$SGPR[SRSCtl_{PSS}, Rd] = Rt$
WSBH	Word Swap Bytes Within HalfWords	$Rd = Rt_{23..16} \|\| Rt_{31..24} \|\| Rt_{7..0} \|\| Rt_{15..8}$
XOR	Exclusive OR	Rd = Rs ^ Rt
XORI	Exclusive OR Immediate	Rt = Rs ^ (uns)Immed
YIELD	A multipurpose instruction whose action depends on Rs.	Rs==0; It terminates the thread and makesthe TC available for a subsequent fork. Rs==-1; paused while other threads run and any scheduling policy change filters through. Rs==-2; is just done to poll yield inputs. Rs > 0; you wait for one of the yield input signals, but only one for which there's a corresponding bit set in Rs.
ZEB	Zero extend byte (MIPS16 only)	Rt = (ubyte) Rs
ZEH	Zero extend half (MIPS16 only)	Rt = (uhalf) Rs

.

Table 15.29 List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the Arithmetic sub-class

Instruction Mnemonics	Input Data Type	Output Data Type	Writes GPR / ac / DSPControl	App	Description
ADDQ.PH rd,rs,rt ADDQ_S.PH rd,rs,rt	Pair Q15	Pair Q15	GPR	VoIP SoftM	Element-wise addition of two vectors of Q15 fractional values, with optional saturation.
ADDQ_S.W rd,rs,rt	Q31	Q31	GPR	Audio	Add two Q31 fractional values with saturation.

Table 15.29 List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the Arithmetic sub-class (Continued)

Instruction Mnemonics	Input Data Type	Output Data Type	Writes GPR / ac / DSPControl	App	Description
ADDU.QB rd,rs,rt ADDU_S.QB rd,rs,rt	Quad Unsigned Byte	Quad Unsigned Byte	GPR	Video	Element-wise addition of vectors of four unsigned byte values. Results may be optionally saturated to 255.
SUBQ.PH rd,rs,rt SUBQ_S.PH rd,rs,rt	Pair Q15	Pair Q15	GPR	VoIP	Element-wise subtraction of two vectors of Q15 fractional values, with optional saturation.
SUBQ_S.W rd,rs,rt	Q31	Q31	GPR	Audio	Subtraction with Q31 fractional values, with saturation.
SUBU.QB rd,rs,rt SUBU_S.QB rd,rs,rt	Quad Unsigned Byte	Quad Unsigned Byte	GPR	Video	Element-wise subtraction of unsigned byte values, with optional unsigned saturation.
ADDSC rd,rs,rt	Signed Word	Signed Word	GPR & *DSPControl*	Audio	Add two signed words and set the carry bit in the *DSPControl* register.
ADDWC rd,rs,rt	Signed Word	Signed Word	GPR	Audio	Add two signed words with the carry bit from the *DSPControl* register.
MODSUB rd,rs,rt	Signed Word	Signed Word	GPR	Misc	Modulo addressing support: update a byte index into a circular buffer by subtracting a specified decrement (in bytes) from the index, resetting the index to a specified value if the subtraction results in underflow.
RADDU.W.QB rd,rs	Quad Unsigned Byte	Unsigned Word	GPR	Misc	Reduce (add together) the 4 unsigned byte values in *rs*, zero-extending the sum to 32 bits before writing to the destination register. For example, if all 4 input values are 0x80 (decimal 128), then the result in *rd* is 0x200 (decimal 512).
ABSQ_S.PH rd,rt	Pair Q15	Pair Q15	GPR	Misc	Find the absolute value of each of two Q15 fractional halfword elements in the source register, saturating values of -1.0 to the maximum positive Q15 fractional value.
ABSQ_S.W rd,rt	Q31	Q31	GPR	Misc	Find the absolute value of the Q31 fractional element in the source register, saturating the value -1.0 to the maximum positive Q31 fractional value.
PRECRQ.QB.PH rd,rs,rt	2 Pair Q15	Quad Byte	GPR	Misc	Reduce the precision of four Q15 fractional input values by truncation to create four Q7 fractional output values. The two Q15 values from register *rs* are written to the two left-most byte results, allowing an endian-agnostic implementation.

Table 15.29 List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the Arithmetic sub-class (Continued)

Instruction Mnemonics	Input Data Type	Output Data Type	Writes GPR / ac / DSPControl	App	Description
PRECR_SRA.PH.W rt,rs,sa PRECR_SRA_R.PH.W rt,rs,sa	Two Integer Words	Pair Integer Halfword	GPR	Misc	Reduce the precision of two integer word values to create a pair of integer halfword values. Each word value is first shifted right arithmetically by *sa* bit positions, and optionally rounded up by adding 1 at the most-significant discard bit position. The 16 least-significant bits of each word are then written to the corresponding halfword elements of destination register *rt*.
PRECRQ.PH.W rd,rs,rt PRECRQ_RS.PH.W rd,rs,rt	2 Q31	Pair halfword	GPR	Misc	Reduce the precision of two Q31 fractional input values by truncation to create two Q15 fractional output values. The Q15 value obtained from register *rs* creates the left-most result, allowing an endian-agnostic implementation. Results may be optionally rounded up and saturated before being written to the destination.
PRECRQU_S.QB.PH rd,rs,rt	2 Pair Q15	Quad Unsigned Byte	GPR	Misc	Reduce the precision of four Q15 fractional values by saturating and truncating to create four unsigned byte values.
PRECEQ.W.PHL rd,rt PRECEQ.W.PHR rd,rt	Q15	Q31	GPR	Misc	Expand the precision of a Q15 fractional value to create a Q31 fractional value by adding 16 least-significant bits to the input value.
PRECEQU.PH.QBL rd,rt PRECEQU.PH.QBR rd,rt PRECEQU.PH.QBLA rd,rt PRECEQU.PH.QBRA rd,rt	Unsigned Byte	Q15	GPR	Video	Expand the precision of two unsigned byte values by prepending a sign bit and adding seven least-significant bits to each to create two Q15 fractional values.
PRECEU.PH.QBL rd,rt PRECEU.PH.QBR rd,rt PRECEU.PH.QBLA rd,rt PRECEU.PH.QBRA rd,rt	Unsigned Byte	Unsigned halfword	GPR	Video	Expand the precision of two unsigned byte values by adding eight least-significant bits to each to create two unsigned halfword values.

Table 15.30 List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the GPR-Based Shift sub-class

Instruction Mnemonics	Input Data Type	Output Data Type	Writes GPR / ac / DSPControl	App	Description
SHLL.QB rd, rt, sa SHLLV.QB rd, rt, rs	Quad Unsigned Byte	Quad Unsigned Byte	GPR	Misc	Element-wise left shift of eight signed bytes. Zeros are inserted into the bits emptied by the shift. The shift amount is specified by the three least-significant bits of sa or *rs*.

Table 15.30 List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the GPR-Based Shift sub-class (Continued)

Instruction Mnemonics	Input Data Type	Output Data Type	Writes GPR / ac / DSPControl	App	Description
SHLL.PH rd, rt, sa SHLLV.PH rd, rt, rs SHLL_S.PH rd, rt, sa SHLLV_S.PH rd, rt, rs	Pair Signed halfword	Pair Signed halfword	GPR	Misc	Element-wise left shift of two signed halfwords, with optional saturation on overflow. Zeros are inserted into the bits emptied by the shift. The shift amount is specified by the four least-significant bits of sa or *rs*.
SHLL_S.W rd, rt, sa SHLLV_S.W rd, rt, rs	Signed Word	Signed Word	GPR	Misc	Left shift of a signed word, with saturation on overflow. Zeros are inserted into the bits emptied by the shift. The shift amount is specified by the five least-significant bits of sa or *rs*. Use the MIPS32 instructions SLL or SLLV for non-saturating shift operations.
SHRL.QB rd, rt, sa SHRLV.QB rd, rt, rs	Quad Unsigned Byte	Quad Unsigned Byte	GPR	Video	Element-wise logical right shift of four byte values. Zeros are inserted into the bits emptied by the shift. The shift amount is specified by the three least-significant bits of sa or *rs*.
SHRA.PH rd, rt, sa SHRAV.PH rd, rt, rs SHRA_R.PH rd, rt, sa SHRAV_R.PH rd, rt, rs	Pair Signed halfword	Pair Signed halfword	GPR	Misc	Element-wise arithmetic (sign preserving) right shift of two halfword values. Optionally, rounding may be performed, adding 1 at the most-significant discard bit position. The shift amount is specified by the four least-significant bits of *rs* or by the argument *sa*.
SHRA_R.W rd, rt, sa SHRAV_R.W rd, rt, rs	Signed Word	Signed Word	GPR	Video	Arithmetic (sign preserving) right shift of a word value. Optionally, rounding may be performed, adding 1 at the most-significant discard bit position. The shift amount is specified by the five least-significant bits of *rs* or the argument *sa*.

Table 15.31 List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the Multiply sub-class

Instruction Mnemonics	Input Data Type	Output Data Type	Writes GPR / ac / DSPControl	App	Description
MULEU_S.PH.QBL rd,rs,rt MULEU_S.PH.QBR rd,rs,rt	Pair Unsigned Byte, Pair Unsigned Halfword,	Pair Unsigned Halfword	GPR	Still Image	Element-wise multiplication of two unsigned byte values from register *rs* with two unsigned halfword values from register *rt*. Each 24-bit product is truncated to 16 bits, with saturation if the product exceeds 0xFFFF, and written to the corresponding element in the destination register.

Table 15.31 List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the Multiply sub-class (Continued)

Instruction Mnemonics	Input Data Type	Output Data Type	Writes GPR / ac / DSPControl	App	Description
MULQ_RS.PH rd,rs,rt	Pair Q15	Pair Q15	GPR	Misc	Element-wise multiplication of two Q15 fractional values to create two Q15 fractional results, with rounding and saturation. After multiplication, each 32-bit product is rounded up by adding 0x00008000, then truncated to create a Q15 fractional value that is written to the destination register. If both multiplicands are -1.0, the result is saturated to the maximum positive Q15 fractional value. To stay compliant with the base architecture, this instruction leaves the base *HI-LO* pair **UNPREDICTABLE** after the operation. The other DSP ASE accumulators *ac1-ac3* are untouched.
MULEQ_S.W.PHL rd,rs,rt MULEQ_S.W.PHR rd,rs,rt	Pair Q15	Q31	GPR	VoIP	Multiplication of two Q15 fractional values, shifting the product left by 1 bit to create a Q31 fractional result. If both multiplicands are -1.0 the result is saturated to the maximum positive Q31 value. To stay compliant with the base architecture, this instruction leaves the base *HI-LO* pair **UNPREDICTABLE** after the operation. The other DSP ASE accumulators *ac1-ac3* must be untouched.
DPAU.H.QBL DPAU.H.QBR	Pair Bytes	Halfword	Acc	Image	Dot-product accumulation. Two pairs of corresponding unsigned byte elements from source registers *rt* and *rs* are separately multiplied, and the two 16-bit products are then summed together. The summed products are then added to the accumulator.
DPSU.H.QBL DPSU.H.QBR	Pair Bytes	Halfword	Acc	Image	Dot-product subtraction. Two pairs of corresponding unsigned byte elements from source registers *rt* and *rs* are separately multiplied, and the two 16-bit products are then summed together. The summed products are then subtracted from the accumulator.

Table 15.31 List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the Multiply sub-class (Continued)

Instruction Mnemonics	Input Data Type	Output Data Type	Writes GPR / ac / DSPControl	App	Description
DPAQ_S.W.PH ac,rs,rt	Pair Q15	Q32.31	ac	VoIP / SoftM	Dot-product accumulation. Two pairs of corresponding Q15 fractional values from source registers *rt* and *rs* are separately multiplied and left-shifted 1 bit to create two Q31 fractional products. For each product, if both multiplicands are equal to -1.0 the product is clamped to the maximum positive Q31 fractional value. The products are then summed, and the sum is then sign extended to the width of the accumulator and accumulated into the specified accumulator. This instruction may be used to compute the imaginary component of a 16-bit complex multiplication operation after first swapping the operands to place them in the correct order.
DPSQ_S.W.PH ac,rs,rt	Pair Q15	Q32.31	ac	VoIP / SoftM	Dot-product subtraction. Two pairs of corresponding Q15 fractional values from source registers *rt* and *rs* are separately multiplied and left-shifted 1 bit to create two Q31 fractional products. For each product, if both multiplicands are equal to -1.0 the product is clamped to the maximum positive Q31 fractional value. The products are then summed, and the sum is then sign extended to the width of the accumulator and subtracted from the specified accumulator. This instruction may be used to compute the imaginary component of a 16-bit complex multiplication operation after first swapping the operands to place them in the correct order.
MULSAQ_S.W.PH ac,rs,rt	Pair Q15	Q32.31	ac	SoftM	Complex multiplication step. Performs element-wise fractional multiplication of the two Q15 fractional values from registers *rt* and *rs*, subtracting one product from the other to create a Q31 fractional result that is added to accumulator *ac*. The intermediate products are saturated to the maximum positive Q31 fractional value if both multiplicands are equal to -1.0.
DPAQ_SA.L.W ac,rs,rt	Q31	Q63	ac	Audio	Fractional multiplication of two Q31 fractional values to produce a Q63 fractional product. If both multiplicands are -1.0 the product is saturated to the maximum positive Q63 fractional value. The product is then added to accumulator *ac*. If the addition results in overflow or underflow, the accumulator is saturated to the maximum positive or minimum negative value.

Table 15.31 List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the Multiply sub-class (Continued)

Instruction Mnemonics	Input Data Type	Output Data Type	Writes GPR / ac / DSPControl	App	Description
DPSQ_SA.L.W ac,rs,rt	Q31	Q63	ac	Audio	Fractional multiplication of two Q31 fractional values to produce a Q63 fractional product. If both multiplicands are -1.0 the product is saturated to the maximum positive Q63 fractional value. The product is then subtracted from accumulator *ac*. If the addition results in overflow or underflow, the accumulator is saturated to the maximum positive or minimum negative value.
MAQ_S.W.PHL ac,rs,rt MAQ_S.W.PHR ac,rs,rt	Q15	Q32.31	ac	SoftM	Fractional multiply-accumulate. The product of two Q15 fractional values is sign extended to the width of the accumulator and added to accumulator *ac*. The intermediate product is saturated to the maximum positive Q31 fractional value if both multiplicands are equal to -1.0.
MAQ_SA.W.PHL ac,rs,rt MAQ_SA.W.PHR ac,rs,rt	Q15	Q31	ac	speech	Fractional multiply-accumulate with saturation after accumulation. The product of two Q15 fractional values is sign extended to the width of the accumulator and added to accumulator *ac*. The intermediate product is saturated to the maximum positive Q31 fractional value if both multiplicands are equal to -1.0. If the accumulation results in overflow or underflow, the accumulator value is saturated to the maximum positive or minimum negative Q31 fractional value.
MADD, MADDU, MSUB, MSUBU, MULT, MULTU	Word	Double-Word	ac	Misc	Allows these instructions to target accumulators ac1, ac2, and ac3 (in addition to the original ac0 destination).

Table 15.32 List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the Bit/ Manipulation sub-class

Instruction Mnemonics	Input Data Type	Output Data Type	Writes GPR / ac / DSPControl	App	Description
BITREV rd,rt	Unsigned Word	Unsigned Word	GPR	Audio / FFT	Reverse the order of the 16 least-significant bits of register *rt*, writing the result to register *rd*. The 16 most-significant bits are set to zero.
INSV rt,rs	Unsigned Word	Unsigned Word	GPR	Misc	Like the Release 2 INS instruction, except that the 5 bits for *pos* and *size* values are obtained from the *DSPControl* register. *size* = scount[14:10], and *pos* = pos[20:16].

Table 15.32 List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the Bit/ Manipulation sub-class (Continued)

Instruction Mnemonics	Input Data Type	Output Data Type	Writes GPR / ac / DSPControl	App	Description
REPL.QB rd,imm REPLV.QB rd,rt	Byte	Quad Byte	GPR	Video / Misc	Replicate a signed byte value into the four byte elements of register *rd*. The byte value is given by the 8 least-significant bits of the specified 10-bit immediate constant or by the 8 least-significant bits of register *rt*.
REPL.PH rd,imm REPLV.PH rd,rt	Signed halfword	Pair Signed halfword	GPR	Misc	Replicate a signed halfword value into the two halfword elements of register *rd*. The halfword value is given by the 16 least-significant bits of register *rt*, or by the value of the 10-bit immediate constant, sign-extended to 16 bits.

Table 15.33 List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the Compare-Pick sub-class

Instruction Mnemonics	Input Data Type	Output Data Type	Writes GPR / ac / DSPControl	App	Description
CMPU.EQ.QB rs,rt CMPU.LT.QB rs,rt CMPU.LE.QB rs,rt	Quad Unsigned Byte	Quad Unsigned Byte	DSPControl	Video	Element-wise unsigned comparison of the four unsigned byte elements of *rs* and *rt*, recording the boolean comparison results to the four right-most bits in the *ccond* field of the *DSPControl* register.
CMPGU.EQ.QB rd,rs,rt CMPGU.LT.QB rd,rs,rt CMPGU.LE.QB rd,rs,rt	Quad Unsigned Byte	Quad Unsigned Byte	GPR	Video	Element-wise unsigned comparison of the four right-most unsigned byte elements of *rs* and *rt*, recording the boolean comparison results to the four least-significant bits of register *rd*.
CMP.EQ.PH rs,rt CMP.LT.PH rs,rt CMP.LE.PH rs,rt	Pair Signed halfword	Pair Signed halfword	DSPControl	Misc	Element-wise signed comparison of the two halfword elements of *rs* and *rt*, recording the boolean comparison results to the two right-most bits in the *ccond* field of the *DSPControl* register.
PICK.QB rd,rs,rt	Quad Unsigned Byte	Quad Unsigned Byte	GPR	Video	Element-wise selection of unsigned bytes from the four bytes of registers *rs* and *rt* into the corresponding elements of register *rd*, based on the value of the four right-most bits of the *ccond* field in the *DSPControl* register. If the corresponding *ccond* bit is 1, the byte value is copied from register *rs*, otherwise it is copied from *rt*.

Table 15.33 List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the Compare-Pick sub-class (Continued)

Instruction Mnemonics	Input Data Type	Output Data Type	Writes GPR / ac / DSPControl	App	Description
PICK.PH rd,rs,rt	Pair Signed halfword	Pair Signed halfword	GPR	Misc	Element-wise selection of signed halfwords from the two halfwords in registers *rs* and *rt* into the corresponding elements of register *rd*, based on the value of the two right-most bits of the *ccond* field in the *DSPControl* register. If the corresponding *ccond* bit is 1, the halfword value is copied from register *rs*, otherwise it is copied from *rt*.
PACKRL.PH rd,rs,rt	Pair Signed Halfwords	Pair Signed Halfword	GPR	Misc	Pack two halfwords taken from registers *rs* and *rt* into destination register *rd*.

Table 15.34 List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the Accumulator and DSPControl Access sub-class

Instruction Mnemonics	Input Data Type	Output Data Type	Writes GPR / ac / DSPControl	App	Description
EXTR.W rt,ac,shift EXTR_R.W rt,ac,shift EXTR_RS.W rt,ac,shift	Q63	Q31	GPR	Misc	Extract a Q31 fractional value from the 32 least-significant bits of 64-bit accumulator *ac*. The accumulator value may be shifted right logically by *shift* bits prior to the extraction, and the extracted value may be optionally rounded or rounded and saturated before being written to register *rt*. The *shift* argument value ranges from 0 to 31. The optional rounding step adds 1 at the most-significant bit position discarded by the shift. The optional saturation clamps the extracted value to the maximum positive Q31 value if the rounding step results in overflow.
EXTR_S.H rt,ac,shift	Q63	Q15	GPR	Misc	Extract a Q15 fractional value from the 16 least-significant bits of 64-bit accumulator *ac*. The accumulator value may be shifted right logically by *shift* bits prior to the extraction, and the extracted value is saturated before being written to register *rt*. The *shift* argument value ranges from 0 to 31. The saturation clamps the extracted value to the maximum positive or minimum negative Q15 value if the shifted accumulator value cannot be represented accurately as a Q15 format value.

Table 15.34 List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the Accumulator and DSPControl Access sub-class (Continued)

Instruction Mnemonics	Input Data Type	Output Data Type	Writes GPR / ac / DSPControl	App	Description
EXTRV_S.H rt,ac,rs	Q63	Q15	GPR	Misc	Extract a Q15 fractional value from the 16 least-significant bits of 64-bit accumulator *ac*. The accumulator value may be shifted right logically by *shift* bits prior to the extraction, and the extracted value is saturated before being written to register *rt*. The *shift* argument ranges from 0 to 31 and is given by the five least-significant bits of register *rs*. The saturation clamps the extracted value to the maximum positive or minimum negative Q15 value if the shifted accumulator value cannot be represented accurately as a Q15 format value.
EXTRV.W rt,ac,rs EXTRV_R.W rt,ac,rs EXTRV_RS.W rt,ac,rs	Q63	Q31	GPR	Misc	Extract a Q31 fractional value from the 32 least-significant bits of 64-bit accumulator *ac*. The accumulator value may be shifted right logically by *shift* bits prior to the extraction, and the extracted value may be optionally rounded or rounded and saturated before being written to register *rt*. The *shift* argument value is provided by the five least-significant bits of *rs* and ranges from 0 to 31. The optional rounding step adds 1 at the most-significant bit position discarded by the shift. The optional saturation clamps the extracted value to the maximum positive Q31 value if the rounding step results in overflow.
EXTP rt,ac,size EXTPV rt,ac,rs EXTPDP rt,ac,size EXTPDPV rt,ac,rs	Unsigned DWord	Unsigned Word	GPR / *DSPControl*	Audio / Video	Extract a set of *size*+1 contiguous bits from accumulator *ac*, right-justifying and sign-extending the result to 32 bits before writing the result to register *rt*. The position of the left-most bit to extract is given by the value of the *pos* field in the *DSPControl* register (see Section 4.1.2 “DSP Control Register” for details). The number of bits (less one) to extract is provided either by the *size* immediate operand or by the five least-significant bits of *rs*. The EXTPDP and EXTPDPV instructions also decrement the *pos* field by *size*+1 to facilitate sequential bit field extraction operations.

Table 15.34 List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the Accumulator and DSPControl Access sub-class (Continued)

Instruction Mnemonics	Input Data Type	Output Data Type	Writes GPR / ac / DSPControl	App	Description
SHILO ac,shift SHILOV ac,rs	Unsigned DWord	Unsigned DWord	ac	Misc	Shift accumulator *ac* left or right by the specified number of bits, writing the shifted value back to the accumulator. The signed shift argument is specified either by the immediate operand *shift* or by the six least-significant bits of register *rs*. A negative shift argument results in a right shift of up to 32 bits, and a positive shift argument results in a left shift of up to 31 bits.
MTHLIP rs, ac	Unsigned Word	Unsigned Word	ac / *DSPControl*	Audio / Video	Copy the *LO* register of the specified accumulator to the *HI* register, copy *rs* to *LO*, and increment the *pos* field in *DSPcontrol* by 32.
MFHI/MFLO/MTHI/MTLO	Unsigned Word	Unsigned Word	GPR/ac	Misc	Copy an unsigned word to or from the specified accumulator *HI* or *LO* register to the specified GPR.
WRDSP rt,mask	Unsigned Word	Unsigned Word	*DSPControl*	Misc	Overwrite specific fields in the *DSPControl* register using the corresponding bits from the specified GPR. Bits in the *mask* argument correspond to specific fields in *DSPControl*; a value of 1 causes the corresponding *DSPControl* field to be overwritten using the corresponding bits in *rt*, otherwise the field is unchanged.
RDDSP rt,mask	Unsigned Word	Unsigned Word	GPR	Misc	Copy the values of specific fields in the *DSPControl* register to the specified GPR. Bits in the *mask* argument correspond to specific fields in *DSPControl*; a value of 1 causes the corresponding *DSPControl* field to be copied to the corresponding bits in *rt*, otherwise the bits in *rt* are unchanged.

Table 15.35 List of instructions in the MIPS32™ DSP ASE in the Indexed-Load sub-class

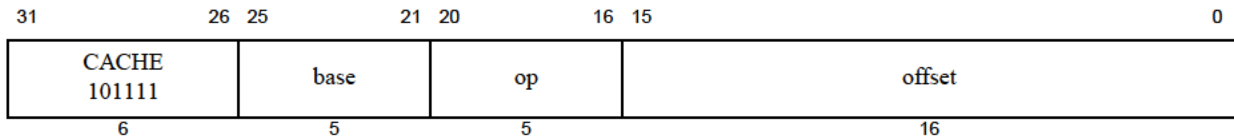
Instruction Mnemonics	Input Data Type	Output Data Type	Writes GPR / ac / DSPControl	App	Description
LBUX rd,index(base)	-	Unsigned byte	GPR	Misc	Index byte load from address base+(index). Loads the byte in the low-order bits of the destination register and zero-extends the result.
LHX rd,index(base)	-	Signed halfword	GPR	Misc	Index halfword load from address base+(index). Loads the halfword in the low-order bits of the register and sign-extends the result.

Table 15.35 List of instructions in the MIPS32™ DSP ASE in the Indexed-Load sub-class (Continued)

Instruction Mnemonics	Input Data Type	Output Data Type	Writes GPR / ac / DSPControl	App	Description
LWX rd, index(base)	-	Signed Word	GPR	Misc	Indexed word load from address base+(index).

Table 15.36 List of instructions in the MIPS32® DSP ASE in the Branch sub-class

Instruction Mnemonics	Input Data Type	Output Data Type	Writes GPR / ac / DSPControl	App	Description
BPOSGE32 offset	-	-	-	Audio / Video	Branch if the *pos* value is greater than or equal to integer 32.



Format: `CACHE op, offset(base)` **MIPS32**

Purpose: Perform Cache Operation

To perform the cache operation specified by op.

Description:

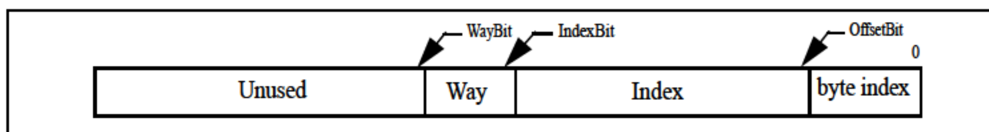
The 16-bit offset is sign-extended and added to the contents of the base register to form an effective address. The effective address is used in one of the following ways based on the operation to be performed and the type of cache as described in the following table.

Table 15.37 Usage of Effective Address

Operation Requires an	Type of Cache	Usage of Effective Address
Address	Physical	The effective address is translated by the MMU to a physical address. The physical address is then used to address the cache

Index	N/A	The effective address is used to index the cache.
		
		Assuming that the total cache size in bytes is CS, the associativity is A, and the number of bytes per tag is BPT, the following calculations give the fields of the address which specify the way and the index:
		
		`OffsetBit ← Log2(BPT)`
		`IndexBit ← Log2(CS / A)`
		`WayBit ← IndexBit + Ceiling(Log2(A))`
		$Way \leftarrow Addr_{WayBit-1..IndexBit}$
		$Index \leftarrow Addr_{IndexBit-1..OffsetBit}$

Figure 15.1 Usage of Address Fields to Select Index and Way



A TLB Refill and TLB Invalid (both with cause code equal TLBL) exception can occur on any operation. For index operations (where the address is used to index the cache but need not match the cache tag) software should use unmapped addresses to avoid TLB exceptions. This instruction never causes TLB Modified exceptions nor TLB Refill exceptions with a cause code of TLBS.

The effective address may be an arbitrarily-aligned by address. The CACHE instruction never causes an Address Error Exception due to an non-aligned address.

A Cache Error exception may occur as a by-product of some operations performed by this instruction. For example, if a Writeback operation detects a cache or bus error during the processing of the operation, that error is reported via a Cache Error exception. Similarly, a Bus Error Exception may occur if a bus operation invoked by this instruction is terminated in an error. However, cache error exceptions should not be triggered by an Index Load Tag or Index Store

Tag operation, as these operations are used for initialization and diagnostic purposes.

An address Error Exception (with cause code equal AdEL) occurs if the effective address references a portion of the kernel address space which would normally result in such an exception.

Bits [17:16] of the instruction specify the cache on which to perform the operation, as follows:

Table 15.38 Encoding of Bits[17:16] of CACHE Instruction

Code	Name	Cache	Cop0 Registers Used
2#00	I	Primary Instruction	ITagLo, IDataLo, IDataHi, ErrCtl
2#01	D	Primary Data	DTagLo, DDataLo, ErrCtl
2#10	T	Tertiary - Not supported	
2#11	S	Secondary	L23TagLo, L23DataLo, L23DataHi

Some of the operations use coprocessor0 registers as either sources or destinations. Each of the caches has a separate set of Tag and Data registers. The last column in Table 15.40 lists which registers are used by operations to each cache. In the description of the operations, these may be explicitly listed or referred to in general, such as *xTagLo*, which would refer to the TagLo register corresponding to that cache.

Bits [20:18] of the instruction specify the operation to perform. On Index Load Tag and Index Store Data operations, the specific word (primary D) or double-word (primary I, secondary) that is addressed is loaded into / read from the *DDataLo* (primary D), *L23DataLo* and *L23DataHi* (secondary), or *IDataLo* and *IDataHi* (primary I) registers. All other cache instructions are line-based and the word and byte indexes will not affect their operation.

Table 15.39 Encoding of Bits [20:18] of the CACHE Instruction, ErrCtl[WST,SPR] Cleared

Code	Caches	Name	Effective Address Operand Type	Operation	Implemented?
2#000	I	Index Invalidate	Index	Set the state of the cache line at the specified index to invalid. This encoding may be used by software to invalidate the entire instruction cache by stepping through all valid indices.	Yes
	D, S, T	Index Writeback Invalidate	Index	If the state of the cache line at the specified index is valid and dirty, write the line back to the memory address specified by the cache tag. After that operation is completed, set the state of the cache line to invalid. If the line is valid but not dirty, set the state of the line to invalid. This encoding may be used by software to invalidate the entire data cache by stepping through all valid indices. Note that Index Store Tag should be used to initialize the cache at powerup.	Yes

Table 15.39 Encoding of Bits [20:18] of the CACHE Instruction, ErrCtl[WST,SPR] Cleared (Continued)

Code	Caches	Name	Effective Address Operand Type	Operation	Implemented?
2#001	I	Index Load Tag	Index	• Read the tag for the cache line at the specified index into the *TagLo0* Coprocessor 0 register. • Read the data corresponding to the dword index into the *DataLo0* and *DataHi0* registers. • Precode bits and data array parity bits are also read into the *ErrCtl* register.	Yes
2#001	D	Index Load Tag	Index	• Read the tag for the cache line at the specified index into the *TagLo0* Coprocessor 0 register. • Read the data corresponding to the word index into the *DataLo1* register. • Data array parity bits are also read into the *ErrCtl* register.	Yes
2#001	S	Index Load Tag	Index	• Read the tag for the cache line at the specified index into the *TagLo2* Coprocessor 0 register. • Read the data corresponding to the dword index into the L23*DataLo* and L23*DataHi* registers.	Yes
2#010	All	Index Store Tag	Index	Write the tag for the cache line at the specified index from the associated *TagLoN* Coprocessor 0 register. By default, the tag parity value will be automatically calculated. For test purposes, the parity/ECC bits from the *TagLoN* register will be used if $ErrCtl_{PO}$ is set. This encoding may be used by software to initialize the entire instruction or data caches by stepping through all valid indices. Doing so requires that the *TagLo* register associated with the cache be initialized first.	Yes
2#011	I,D,T	Reserved	Unspecified	Executed as a no-op	No
2#011	S	Index Store Data	Index	Write the L23*DataHi* and *L23DataLo* Coprocessor 0 register contents at the way and dword index specified. The ECC bits are always generated by the hardware (if present)	Yes

Table 15.39 Encoding of Bits [20:18] of the CACHE Instruction, ErrCtl[WST,SPR] Cleared (Continued)

Code	Caches	Name	Effective Address Operand Type	Operation	Implemented?
2#100	All	Hit Invalidate	Address	If the cache line contains the specified address, set the state of the cache line to invalid. This encoding may be used by software to invalidate a range of addresses from the instruction cache by stepping through the address range by the line size of the cache.	Yes
2#101	I	Fill	Address	Fill the cache from the specified address. The cache line is refetched even if it is already in the cache.	Yes
	D, S, T	Hit WriteBack Invalidate	Address	If the cache line contains the specified address and it is valid and dirty, write the contents back to memory. After that operation is completed, set the state of the cache line to invalid. If the line is valid but not dirty, set the state of the line to invalid. This encoding may be used by software to invalidate a range of addresses from the data cache by stepping through the address range by the line size of the cache.	Yes
2#110	D, S, T	Hit WriteBack	Address	If the cache line contains the specified address and it is valid and dirty, write the contents back to memory. After the operation is completed, leave the state of the line valid, but clear the dirty state.	Yes
2#111	All	Fetch and Lock	Address	If the cache does not contain the specified address, fill it from memory, performing a writeback if required, and set the state to valid and locked. If the cache already contains the specified address, set the state to locked. The way selected on fill from memory is the least recently used. The lock state is cleared by executing an Index Invalidate, Index Writeback Invalidate, Hit Invalidate, or Hit Writeback Invalidate operation to the locked line, or via an Index Store Tag operation with the lock bit reset in the *xTagLo* register. It is illegal to lock all ways at a given cache index. If all ways are locked, subsequent references to that index will displace one of the locked lines.	Yes

Table 15-1 Encoding of Bits [20:18] of the CACHE Instruction, ErrCtl[WST] Set. ErrCtl[SPR] Cleared

Code	Caches	Name	Effective Address Operand Type	Operation	Implemented?
2#001	All	Index Load WS	Index	Read the WS RAM at the specified index into the *xTagLo* Coprocessor 0 register.	Yes
2#010	I	Index Store WS	Index	Update the WS RAM at the specified index from the *ITagLo* Coprocessor 0 register.	Yes
2#010	D	Index Store WS	Index	Update the WS RAM at the specified index from the *DTagLo* Coprocessor 0 register. If $ErrCtl_{PO}$ is set, the dirty parity values in the *DTagLo* register will be written to the WS RAM. Otherwise, the parity will be calculated for the write data.	Yes
2#010	S	Index Store WS	Index	Update the WS RAM at the specified index from the *L23TagLo* Coprocessor 0 register. If $ErrCtl_{PO}$ is set, the dirty parity values in the *L23TagLo* register will be written to the WS RAM. Otherwise, the parity will be calculated for the write data.	Yes
2#011	I	Index Store Data	Index	Write the *IDataHi* and *IDataLo* Coprocessor 0 register contents at the way and dword index specified. If $ErrCtl_{PO}$ is set, $ErrCtl_{PI}$ is used for the parity value. Otherwise, the parity value is calculated for the write data. If $ErrCtl_{PCO}$ is set, $ErrCtl_{PCI}$ is used for the precode values. Otherwise, the precode values will be calculated based on the write data.	Yes
2#011	D	Index Store Data	Index	Write the *DDataLo* Coprocessor 0 register contents at the way and word index specified. If ErrCtl_{PO} is set, ErrCtl_{PD} is used for the parity value. Otherwise, the parity value is calculated for the write data.	Yes
2#011	S	Index Store ECC	Index	Write the *DDataLo* Coprocessor 0 register contents to the ECC bits at the way and dword index specified.	Yes
All Oth-ers	All			Other codes should not be used while ErrCtl_{WST} is set.	

Table 15.40 Encoding of Bits [20:18] of the CACHE Instruction, ErrCtl[SPR] Set, ErrCtl[WST] Cleared

Code	Caches	Name	Effective Address Operand Type	Operation	Implemented?
2#001	I	Index Load Tag	Index	Read the SPRAM tag at the specified index into the *ITagLo* Coprocessor 0 register. Also read the instruction data and precode information corresponding to the byte index into the *IDataHi,IDataLo,* and *ErrCtl* registers	Yes
2#001	D	Index Load Tag	Index	Read the SPRAM tag at the specified index into the *DTagLo* Coprocessor 0 register.	Yes
2#010	I, D	Index Store Tag	Index	Update the SPRAM tag at the specified index from the *xTagLo* Coprocessor 0 register.	Yes
2#011	I	Index Store Data	Index	Write the *IDataLo* and *IDataHi* Coprocessor 0 register contents into the SPRAM at the dword index specified.	Yes
2#011	D	Index Store Data	Index	Write the *DDataLo* Coprocessor 0 register contents into the SPRAM at the word index specified.	Yes
All Others	I,D			Other codes should not be used while $ErrCtl_{SPR}$ is set.	
All	S,T			Secondary and Tertiary operations should not be performed while $ErrCtl_{SPR}$ is set.	

Restrictions:

The operation of this instruction is **UNDEFINED** for any operation/cache combination that is not implemented.

The operation of this instruction is **UNDEFINED** if the operation requires an address, and that address is uncacheable.

If access to Coprocessor 0 is not enabled, a Coprocessor Unusable Exception is signaled.

Operation:

```
vAddr ← GPR[base] + sign_extend(offset)
(pAddr, uncached) ← AddressTranslation(vAddr, DataReadReference)
CacheOp(op, vAddr, pAddr)
```

Exceptions:

TLB Refill Exception.

TLB Invalid Exception

Coprocessor Unusable Exception

Address Error Exception

Cache Error Exception

Bus Error Exception

31 ... 26	25 ... 21	20 ... 16	15 ... 0
LL 110000	base	rt	offset
6	5	5	16

Format: `LL rt, offset(base)` **MIPS32**

Purpose: Load Linked Word

To load a word from *memory* for an atomic read-modify-write

Description: `GPR[rt] ← memory[GPR[base] + offset]`

The LL and SC instructions provide the primitives to implement atomic read-modify-write (RMW) operations for synchronizable memory locations.

The contents of the 32-bit word at the memory location specified by the aligned effective address are fetched and written into GPR *rt*. The 16-bit signed *offset* is added to the contents of GPR *base* to form an effective address.

This begins a RMW sequence on the current processor. There can be only one active RMW sequence per processor. When an LL is executed it starts an active RMW sequence replacing any other sequence that was active. The RMW sequence is completed by a subsequent SC instruction that either completes the RMW sequence atomically and succeeds, or does not and fails.

Executing LL on one processor does not cause an action that, by itself, causes an SC for the same block to fail on another processor.

An execution of LL does not have to be followed by execution of SC; a program is free to abandon the RMW sequence without attempting a write.

Restrictions:

The addressed location must be synchronizable by all processors and I/O devices sharing the location; if it is not, the result in **UNPREDICTABLE**. Which storage is synchronizable is a function of both CPU and system implementations. See the documentation of the SC instruction for the formal definition.

The effective address must be naturally-aligned. If either of the 2 least-significant bits of the effective address is non-zero, an Address Error exception occurs.

Operation:

```
vAddr ← sign_extend(offset) + GPR[base]
if vAddr1..0 ≠ 0^2 then
    SignalException(AddressError)
endif
(pAddr, CCA) ← AddressTranslation (vAddr, DATA, LOAD)
memword ← LoadMemory (CCA, WORD, pAddr, vAddr, DATA)
GPR[rt] ← memword
LLbit ← 1
```

Exceptions:

TLB Refill, TLB Invalid, Address Error, Reserved Instruction, Watch

Programming Notes:

There is no Load Linked Word Unsigned operation corresponding to Load Word Unsigned.

31 26	25 24 21	20 16	15 11	10 6	5 0
SPECIAL 000000	0 00000	0 00000	0 00000	5 00101	SLL 000000
6	5	5	5	5	6

Format: `PAUSE` **MIPS32 Release 2/MT ASE**

Purpose: Wait for the LLBit to clear

Description:

Locks implemented using the LL/SC instructions are a common method of synchronization between threads of control. A typical lock implementation does a load-linked instruction and checks the value returned to determine whether the software lock is set. If it is, the code branches back to retry the load-linked instruction, thereby implementing an active busy-wait sequence. The PAUSE instruction is intended to be placed into the busy-wait sequence to block the instruction stream until such time as the load-linked instruction has a chance to succeed in obtaining the software lock.

The PAUSE instruction deschedules the instruction stream until the LLBit is zero. This is implemented as a short term YIELD operation which resumes at the next instruction when the LLBit is zero. It is assumed that the instruction stream which gives up the software lock does so via a write to the lock variable, which causes the processor to clear the LLBit as seen by this thread of execution.

The encoding of the instruction is such that it is backward compatible with all previous implementations of the architecture. The PAUSE instruction can therefore be placed into existing lock sequences since it will be treated as a NOP if the processor does not implement the PAUSE instruction.

Restrictions:

The operation of the processor is **UNPREDICTABLE** if a PAUSE instruction is placed in the delay slot of a branch or a jump.

Operation:

```
if LLBit ≠ 0 then
    EPC ← PC + 4                    /* Resume at the following instruction */
    DescheduleInstructionStream()
endif
```

Exceptions:

None

Programming Notes:

The PAUSE instruction is intended to be inserted into the instruction stream after an LL instruction has set the LLBit and found the software lock set. The program may wait forever if a PAUSE instruction is executed and there is no possibility that the LLBit will ever be cleared.

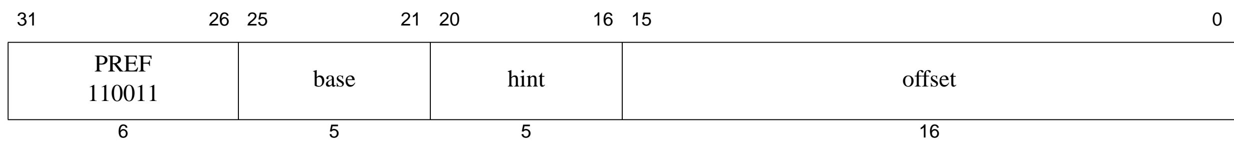
An example use of the PAUSE instruction is included in the following example:

```
acquire_lock:
    ll     t0, 0(a0)               /* Read software lock, set hardware lock */
    bnez   t0, acquire_lock_retry: /* Branch if software lock is taken */
    addiu  t0, t0, 1               /* Set the software lock */
    sc     t0, 0(a0)               /* Try to store the software lock */
    bnez   t0, 10f                 /* Branch if lock acquired successfully */
```

```
    sync
acquire_lock_retry:
    pause                       /* Wait for LLBIT to clear before retry */
    b      acquire_lock         /* and retry the operation */
    nop
10:

    Critical region code

release_lock:
    sync
    sw     zero, 0(a0)          /* Release software lock, clearing LLBIT */
                                /* for any PAUSEd waiters */
```



Format: `PREF hint,offset(base)` **MIPS32**

Purpose: Prefetch

To move data between memory and cache.

Description: `prefetch_memory(GPR[base] + offset)`

PREF adds the 16-bit signed *offset* to the contents of GPR *base* to form an effective byte address. The *hint* field supplies information about the way that the data is expected to be used.

PREF is an advisory instruction that may change the performance of the program. However, for all *hint* values except for PrepareForStore, and all effective addresses, it neither changes the architecturally visible state nor does it alter the meaning of the program.

PREF does not cause addressing-related exceptions, including TLB exceptions. If the address specified would cause an addressing exception, the exception condition is ignored and no data movement occurs.However even if no data is moved, some action that is not architecturally visible, such as writeback of a dirty cache line, can take place.

It is implementation-dependent whether a Bus Error or Cache Error exception is reported, when such an error is detected as a by-product of the action taken by the PREF instruction.

PREF neither generates a memory operation nor modifies the state of a cache line for a location with an *uncached* memory access type, whether this type is specified by the address segment (e.g., kseg1), the programmed coherency attribute of a segment (e.g., the use of the K0, KU, or K23 fields in the *Config* register), or the per-page coherency attribute provided by the TLB.

If PREF results in a memory operation, the memory access type and coherency attribute used for the operation are determined by the memory access type and coherency attribute of the effective address, just as it would be if the memory operation had been caused by a load or store to the effective address.

Any of the following conditions causes the core to treat a PREF instruction as a NOP.

- A reserved *hint* value is used
- The address has a translation error
- The address maps to an uncacheable page

In all other cases, except when *hint* equals 25, execution of the PREF instruction initiates an external bus read transaction. PREF is a non-blocking operation and does not cause the pipeline to stall while waiting for the data to be returned.

Table 15.41 Values of *hint* Field for PREF Instruction

Value	Name	Data Use and Desired Prefetch Action
0	load	Use: Prefetched data is expected to be read (not modified). Action: Fetch data as if for a load.
1	store	Use: Prefetched data is expected to be stored or modified. Action: Fetch data as if for a store.

Table 15.41 Values of *hint* Field for PREF Instruction

2-3	Reserved	Reserved - treated as a NOP.
4	load_streamed	Use: Prefetched data is expected to be read (not modified) but not reused extensively; it "streams" through cache. Action: Fetch data as if for a store. LRU replacement information is ignored and data is placed in way 0 of the cache, so it will be displaced by other streamed prefetches and not displace retained prefetches. If way 0 is locked, the prefetch will be dropped.
5	store_streamed	Use: Prefetched data is expected to be stored or modified but not reused extensively; it "streams" through cache. Action: Fetch data as if for a store. LRU replacement information is ignored and data is placed in way 0 of the cache, so it will be displaced by other streamed prefetches and not displace retained prefetches. If way 0 is locked, the prefetch will be dropped.
6	load_retained	Use: Prefetched data is expected to be read (not modified) and reused extensively; it should be "retained" in the cache. Action: Fetch data as if for a load. LRU replacement information is used, but way 0 of the cache is specifically excluded. This prevents streamed prefetches from displacing the line.
7	store_retained	Use: Prefetched data is expected to be stored or modified and reused extensively; it should be "retained" in the cache. Action: Fetch data as if for a store. LRU replacement information is used, but way 0 of the cache is specifically excluded. This prevents streamed prefetches from displacing the line.
8-24	Reserved	Reserved - treated as a NOP.
25	writeback_invalidate (also known as "nudge")	Use: Data is no longer expected to be used. Action: Schedule a writeback of any dirty data. The cache line is marked as invalid upon completion of the writeback or if the line was found clean.
26-29	Reserved	Reserved - treated as a NOP.
30	PrepareForStore	Use: Prepare the cache for writing an entire line, without the overhead involved in filling the line from memory. Action: If the reference hits in the cache, no action is taken. If the reference misses in the cache, a line is selected for replacement, any valid and dirty victim is written back to memory, the entire line is filled with zero data, and the state of the line is marked as valid and dirty. Programming Note: Because the cache line is filled with zero data only on a cache miss, software must not assume that this action, in and of itself, can be used as a fast bzero-type function.
31	Reserved	Reserved - treated as a NOP.

Restrictions:

None

Operation:

```
vAddr ← GPR[base] + sign_extend(offset)
(pAddr, CCA) ← AddressTranslation(vAddr, DATA, LOAD)
```

```
Prefetch(CCA, pAddr, vAddr, DATA, hint)
```

Exceptions:

Bus Error, Cache Error

Prefetch does not take any TLB-related or address-related exceptions under any circumstances.

Programming Notes:

Prefetch cannot move data to or from a mapped location unless the translation for that location is present in the TLB. Locations in memory pages that have not been accessed recently may not have translations in the TLB, so prefetch may not be effective for such locations.

Prefetch does not cause addressing exceptions. A prefetch may be used using an address pointer before the validity of the pointer is determined without worrying about an addressing exception.

It is implementation dependent whether a Bus Error or Cache Error exception is reported if such an error is detected as a by-product of the action taken by the PREF instruction. Typically, this only occurs in systems which have high-reliability requirements.

Prefetch operations have no effect on cache lines that were previously locked with the CACHE instruction.

31 ... 26	25 ... 21	20 ... 16	15 ... 0
SC 111000	base	rt	offset
6	5	5	16

Format: `SC rt, offset(base)` **MIPS32**

Purpose: Store Conditional Word

To store a word to memory to complete an atomic read-modify-write

Description: `if atomic_update then memory[GPR[base] + offset] ← GPR[rt], GPR[rt] ← 1 else GPR[rt] ← 0`

The LL and SC instructions provide primitives to implement atomic read-modify-write (RMW) operations for synchronizable memory locations.

The 32-bit word in GPR *rt* is conditionally stored in memory at the location specified by the aligned effective address. The 16-bit signed *offset* is added to the contents of GPR *base* to form an effective address.

The SC completes the RMW sequence begun by the preceding LL instruction executed on the processor. To complete the RMW sequence atomically, the following occur:

- The 32-bit word of GPR *rt* is stored into memory at the location specified by the aligned effective address.
- A 1, indicating success, is written into GPR *rt*.

Otherwise, memory is not modified and a 0, indicating failure, is written into GPR *rt*.

If any of the following events occurs between the execution of LL and SC, the SC fails:

- Any TC completes a store within the same cacheline as the word accessed by LL and SC.
- The TCRestart register for this TC is written
- A coherent store is completed by another processor or coherent I/O module into the cacheline containing the word.
- An ERET instruction is executed.

If either of the following events occurs between the execution of LL and SC, the SC may succeed or it may fail; the success or failure is not predictable. Portable programs should not cause one of these events.

- A memory access instruction (load, store, or prefetch) is executed on the TC executing the LL/SC.
- The instructions executed starting with the LL and ending with the SC do not lie in a 2048-byte contiguous region of virtual memory. (The region does not have to be aligned, other than the alignment required for instruction words.)

The following conditions must be true or the result of the SC is **UNPREDICTABLE**:

- Execution of SC must have been preceded by execution of an LL instruction.
- An RMW sequence executed without intervening events that would cause the SC to fail must use the same address in the LL and SC. The address is the same if the virtual address, physical address, and cache-coherence algorithm are identical.

Atomic RMW is provided only for synchronizable memory locations. A synchronizable memory location is one that is associated with the state and logic necessary to implement the LL/SC semantics. Whether a memory location is synchronizable depends on the processor and system configurations, and on the memory access type used for the location:

- **Uniprocessor atomicity:** To provide atomic RMW on a single processor, all accesses to the location must be made with memory access type of either *cached noncoherent* or *cached coherent*. All accesses must be to one or the other access type, and they may not be mixed.
- **MP atomicity:** To provide atomic RMW among multiple processors, all accesses to the location must be made with a memory access type of *cached coherent*.
- **I/O System:** To provide atomic RMW with a coherent I/O system, all accesses to the location must be made with a memory access type of *cached coherent*. If the I/O system does not use coherent memory operations, then atomic RMW cannot be provided with respect to the I/O reads and writes.

Restrictions:

The effective address must be naturally-aligned. If either of the 2 least-significant bits of the address is non-zero, an Address Error exception occurs.

Operation:

```
vAddr ← sign_extend(offset) + GPR[base]
if vAddr1..0 ≠ 0^2 then
   SignalException(AddressError)
endif
(pAddr, CCA) ← AddressTranslation (vAddr, DATA, STORE)
dataword ← GPR[rt]
if LLbit then
   StoreMemory (CCA, WORD, dataword, pAddr, vAddr, DATA)
endif
GPR[rt] ← 0^31 || LLbit
```

Exceptions:

TLB Refill, TLB Invalid, TLB Modified, Address Error, Watch

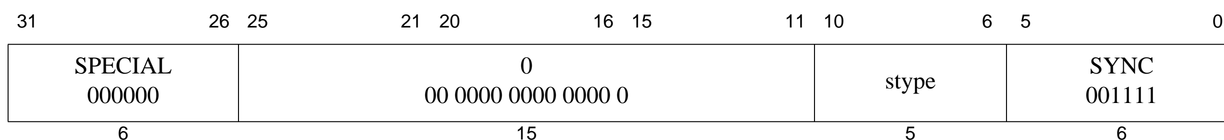
Programming Notes:

LL and SC are used to atomically update memory locations, as shown below.

```
L1:
   LL     T1, (T0)  # load counter
   ADDI   T2, T1, 1 # increment
   SC     T2, (T0)  # try to store, checking for atomicity
   BEQ    T2, 0, L1 # if not atomic (0), try again
   NOP              # branch-delay slot
```

Exceptions between the LL and SC cause SC to fail, so persistent exceptions must be avoided. Some examples of these are arithmetic operations that trap, system calls, and floating point operations that trap or require software emulation assistance.

LL and SC function on a single processor for *cached noncoherent* memory so that parallel programs can be run on uniprocessor systems that do not support *cached coherent* memory access types.



Format: `SYNC (stype = 0 implied)` **MIPS32**

Purpose: To order loads and stores for shared memory.

Description:

These types of ordering guarantees are available through the SYNC instruction:

- Completion Barriers
- Ordering Barriers

Simple Description for Completion Barrier:

- The specified memory instructions (loads or stores or both) that occur before the SYNC instruction must be completed before the specified memory instructions after the SYNC are allowed to start.
- Loads are completed when the destination register is written. Stores are completed when the stored value is visible to every other processor in the system.

Detailed Description for Completion Barrier:

- Every synchronizable specified memory instruction (loads or stores or both) that occurs in the instruction stream before the SYNC instruction must be already globally performed before any synchronizable specified memory instruction that occurs after the SYNC are allowed to be performed, with respect to any other processor or coherent I/O module.
- The barrier does not guarantee the order in which instruction fetches are performed.
- A stype value of zero will always be defined such that it performs the most complete set of synchronization operations that are defined. This means stype zero always does a completion barrier that affects both loads and stores preceding the SYNC instruction and both loads and stores that are subsequent to the SYNC instruction. Non-zero values of stype may be defined by the architecture or specific implementations to perform synchronization behaviors that are less complete than that of stype zero. If an implementation does not use one of these non-zero values to define a different synchronization behavior , then that non-zero value of stype must act the same as stype zero completion barrier. This allows software written for an implementation with a lighter-weight barrier to work on another implementation which only implements the stype zero completion barrier.
- A completion barrier is required, potentially in conjunction with SSNOP (in Release 1 of the Architecture) or EHB (in Release 2 of the Architecture), to guarantee that memory reference results are visible across operating mode changes. For example, a completion barrier is required on entry to and exit from Debug Mode to guarantee that memory affects are handled correctly.

Completion Barrier Types:

All completion barrier types will flush any pending writes and generate an external SYNC request. The CPU will

wait for all pending reads to complete as well as the SYNC response.

- 0x2 - Implementation specific stype. Intervention SYNC. When coherence is enabled, this SYNC will generate a CoherentSync request. The CoherenceManager will respond to the SYNC when the interventions for all older coherent requests have been completed. If coherence is not enabled, will default to stype 0x0.

- 0x3 - Implementation specific style. Memory SYNC. When coherence is enabled, this SYNC will also generate a CoherentSync request. When interventions for all older coherent requests have completed, the sync will be sent to memory interface unit. All pending transactions will be sent out. If the next level device (L2 or system) supports legacy SYNC transactions, as indicated by *SI_CM_SyncTxEn* = 1, and *CM_SYNC_TX_DISABLE* in the CM Control GCR is 0, an external SYNC request will also be generated. The CM will send a response to the CPU when all prior requests have completed and a SYNC response is received (if it was externalized). If coherence is not enabled, will default to stype 0x0.

- 0x0 - If coherence is enabled, this will be mapped to either a type 0x2 or 0x3 based on the value of the SYNCCTL bit in the CM Control GCR. If coherence is not enabled, a legacy SYNC request will be generated. This will bypass the intervention pipeline in the CM and go directly to the memory unit. If *SyncTxEn* = 1 and *CM_SYNC_TX_DISABLE* in the CM Control GCR is 0, an external SYNC request will be generated.

Simple Description for Ordering Barrier:

- The specified memory instructions (loads or stores or both) that occur before the SYNC instruction must always be ordered before the specified memory instructions after the SYNC.

- Memory instructions which are ordered before other memory instructions are processed by the load/store datapath first before the other memory instructions.

Detailed Description for Ordering Barrier:

- Every synchronizable specified memory instruction (loads or stores or both) that occurs in the instruction stream before the SYNC instruction must reach a stage in the load/store datapath after which no instruction re-ordering is possible before any synchronizable specified memory instruction which occurs after the SYNC instruction in the instruction stream reaches the same stage in the load/store datapath.

- If any memory instruction before the SYNC instruction in program order, generates a memory request to the external memory and any memory instruction after the SYNC instruction in program order also generates a memory request to external memory, the memory request belonging to the older instruction must be globally performed before the time the memory request belonging to the younger instruction is globally performed.

- The barrier does not guarantee the order in which instruction fetches are performed.

As compared to the completion barrier, the ordering barrier is a lighter-weight operation as it does not require the specified instructions before the SYNC to be already completed. Instead it only requires that those specified instructions which are subsequent to the SYNC in the instruction stream are never re-ordered for processing ahead of the specified instructions which are before the SYNC in the instruction stream. This potentially reduces how many cycles the barrier instruction must stall before it completes.

The Acquire and Release barrier types are used to minimize the memory orderings that must be maintained and still have software synchronization work.

Because the CPU processes loads and stores in order, ordering barriers are much lighter weight. The CPU handles all ordering barriers identically. The LSU will complete any pending evictions and the BIU will stop merging on all WBB entries. No external request will be generated and the CPU will not wait for pending transactions to complete.

For the purposes of this description, the CACHE, PREF and PREFX instructions are treated as loads and stores. That is, these instructions and the memory transactions sourced by these instructions obey the ordering and completion rules of the SYNC instruction.

Table 15.42 lists the available completion barrier and ordering barriers behaviors that can be specified using the stype field..

Table 15.42 Encodings of the Bits[10:6] of the SYNC instruction; the SType Field

Code	Name	Older instructions which must reach the load/store ordering point before the SYNC instruction completes.	Younger instructions which must reach the load/store ordering point only after the SYNC instruction completes.	Older instructions which must be globally performed when the SYNC instruction completes
0x0	SYNC or SYNC(0)	Loads, Stores	Loads, Stores	Loads, Stores
0x2	SYNC(2) Intervention Sync	Load,Stores	Loads, Stores	Loads, Stores
0x3	SYNC(3) Memory Sync	Load,Stores	Loads, Stores	Loads, Stores
0x4	SYNC_WMB or SYNC(4)	Stores	Stores	
0x10	SYNC_MB or SYNC(16)	Loads, Stores	Loads, Stores	
0x11	SYNC_ACQUIRE or SYNC(17)	Loads	Loads, Stores	
0x12	SYNC_RELEASE or SYNC(18)	Loads, Stores	Stores	
0x13	SYNC_RMB or SYNC(19)	Loads	Loads	
0x1,0x5-0xF,0x14 - 0x1F	RESERVED			

Restrictions:

None

Operation:

```
SyncOperation(stype)
```

Exceptions:

None

Software written to use a SYNC instruction with a non-zero stype value, expecting one type of barrier behavior, should only be run on hardware that actually implements the expected barrier behavior for that non-zero stype value or on hardware which implements a superset of the behavior expected by the software for that stype value. If the hardware does not perform the barrier behavior expected by the software, the system may fail.

31–26	25	24–6	5–0
COP0 010000	CO 1	Implementation-Dependent Code	WAIT 100000
6	1	19	6

Format: `WAIT` **MIPS32**

Purpose: Enter Standby Mode

Wait for Event

Description:

The WAIT instruction forces the CPU into low power mode. The pipeline is stalled and when all external requests are completed, the processor's main clock is stopped. The processor will restart when reset (*SI_Reset*) is signaled, or a non-masked interrupt is taken (*SI_NMI*, *SI_Int*, or *EJ_DINT*). Note that the CPU does not use the code field in this instruction.

If the pipeline restarts as the result of an enabled interrupt, that interrupt is taken between the WAIT instruction and the following instruction (EPC for the interrupt points at the instruction following the WAIT instruction). Note that it is also possible for an interrupt to be taken on the WAIT instruction itself (before the WAIT instruction has halted the pipeline). Software should be aware of this possibility and take appropriate actions to avoid returning to the WAIT if there is additional work to be done.This is the case for 'bottom half' interrupt processing that exists in Linux and other OSes. To facilitate this, the CPU implements a feature where the pipeline will be unfrozen by an interrupt even if $Status_{IE}$=0. The idle loop can thus disable interrupts prior to executing the WAIT and know that processing will resume after the WAIT when an interrupt is signaled. On a processor that does not support this feature, this sequence would prevent the CPU from waking up without a reset or NMI, so it should be verified that the feature is present. This CPU indicates that the feature is present by a value of 1 for $Config7_{WII}$

Restrictions:

The operation of the processor is **UNDEFINED** if a WAIT instruction is placed in the delay slot of a branch or a jump.

If access to Coprocessor 0 is not enabled, a Coprocessor Unusable Exception is signaled.

Operation:

```
I: Enter  lower power mode
I+1:/* Potential interrupt taken here */
```

Exceptions:

Coprocessor Unusable Exception

Chapter 16

MIPS16e™ Application-Specific Extension to the MIPS32® Instruction Set

This chapter describes the MIPS16e ASE as *implemented* in the 1004K CPU. Refer to Volume IV-a of the *MIPS32® Architecture Reference Manual* [4] for a general description of the MIPS16e ASE and descriptions of the instructions.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Section 16.1 "Instruction Bit Encoding"
- Section 16.2 "Instruction Listing"

16.1 Instruction Bit Encoding

Table 16.2 through Table 16.9 describe the encoding used for the MIPS16e ASE. Table 16.1 describes the meaning of the symbols used in the tables.

Table 16.1 Symbols Used in the Instruction Encoding Tables

Symbol	Meaning
*	Operation or field codes marked with this symbol are reserved for future use. Executing such an instruction cause a Reserved Instruction Exception.
δ	(Also *italic* field name.) Operation or field codes marked with this symbol denotes a field class. The instruction word must be further decoded by examining additional tables that show values for another instruction field.
β	Operation or field codes marked with this symbol represent a valid encoding for a higher-order MIPS ISA level. Executing such an instruction cause a Reserved Instruction Exception.
θ	Operation or field codes marked with this symbol are available to licensed MIPS partners. To avoid multiple conflicting instruction definitions, the partner must notify MIPS Technologies, Inc. when one of these encodings is used. If no instruction is encoded with this value, executing such an instruction must cause a Reserved Instruction Exception (*SPECIAL2* encodings or coprocessor instruction encodings for a coprocessor to which access is allowed) or a Coprocessor Unusable Exception (coprocessor instruction encodings for a coprocessor to which access is not allowed).
σ	Field codes marked with this symbol represent an EJTAG support instruction and implementation of this encoding is optional for each implementation. If the encoding is not implemented, executing such an instruction must cause a Reserved Instruction Exception. If the encoding is implemented, it must match the instruction encoding as shown in the table.
ε	Operation or field codes marked with this symbol are reserved for MIPS Application Specific Extensions. If the ASE is not implemented, executing such an instruction must cause a Reserved Instruction Exception.
ϕ	Operation or field codes marked with this symbol are obsolete and will be removed from a future revision of the MIPS64 ISA. Software should avoid using these operation or field codes.

Table 16.2 MIPS16e Encoding of the Opcode Field

opcode		bits 13..11							
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 15..14		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	00	ADDIUSP[1]	ADDIUPC[2]	B	*JAL(X)* δ	BEQZ	BNEZ	*SHIFT* δ	β
1	01	*RRI-A* δ	ADDIU8[3]	SLTI	SLTIU	*I8* δ	LI	CMPI	β
2	10	LB	LH	LWSP[4]	LW	LBU	LHU	LWPC[5]	β
3	11	SB	SH	SWSP[6]	SW	*RRR* δ	*RR* δ	*EXTEND* δ	β

1. The ADDIUSP opcode is used by the ADDIU rx, sp, immediate instruction
2. The ADDIUPC opcode is used by the ADDIU rx, pc, immediate instruction
3. The ADDIU8 opcode is used by the ADDIU rx, immediate instruction
4. The LWSP opcode is used by the LW rx, offset(sp) instruction
5. The LWPC opcode is used by the LW rx, offset(pc) instruction
6. The SWSP opcode is used by the SW rx, offset(sp) instruction

Table 16.3 MIPS16e JAL(X) Encoding of the x Field

x	bit 26	
	0	1
	JAL	JALX

Table 16.4 MIPS16e SHIFT Encoding of the f Field

f	bits 1..0			
	0	1	2	3
	00	01	10	11
	SLL	β	SRL	SRA

Table 16.5 MIPS16e RRI-A Encoding of the f Field

f	bit 4	
	0	1
	ADDIU[1]	β

1. The ADDIU function is used by the ADDIU ry, rx, immediate instruction

Table 16.6 MIPS16e I8 Encoding of the funct Field

funct	bits 10..8							
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
	000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
	BTEQZ	BTNEZ	SWRASP[1]	ADJSP[2]	*SVRS* δ	MOV32R[3]	*	MOVR32[4]

1. The SWRASP function is used by the SW ra, offset(sp) instruction

2. The ADJSP function is used by the ADDIU sp, immediate instruction
3. The MOV32R function is used by the MOVE r32, rz instruction
4. The MOVR32 function is used by the MOVE ry, r32 instruction

Table 16.7 MIPS16e RRR Encoding of the f Field

f	bits 1..0			
	0	1	2	3
	00	01	10	11
	β	ADDU	β	SUBU

Table 16.8 MIPS16e RR Encoding of the Funct Field

funct		bits 2..0							
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
bits 4..3		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	00	*J(AL)R(C)* δ	SDBBP	SLT	SLTU	SLLV	BREAK	SRLV	SRAV
1	01	β	*	CMP	NEG	AND	OR	XOR	NOT
2	10	MFHI	*CNVT* δ	MFLO	β	β	*	β	β
3	11	MULT	MULTU	DIV	DIVU	β	β	β	β

Table 16.9 MIPS16e I8 Encoding of the s Field when funct=SVRS

s	bit 7	
	0	1
	RESTORE	SAVE

Table 16.10 MIPS16e RR Encoding of the ry Field when funct=J(AL)R(C)

ry	bits 7..5							
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
	000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
	JR rx	JR ra	JALR	*	JRC rx	JRC ra	JALRC	*

Table 16.11 MIPS16e RR Encoding of the ry Field when funct=CNVT

ry	bits 7..5							
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
	000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
	ZEB	ZEH	β	*	SEB	SEH	β	*

16.2 Instruction Listing

Table 16.12 through 16.19 list the MIPS16e instruction set.

Table 16.12 MIPS16e Load and Store Instructions

Mnemonic	Instruction	Extensible Instruction
LB	Load Byte	Yes
LBU	Load Byte Unsigned	Yes
LH	Load Halfword	Yes
LHU	Load Halfword Unsigned	Yes
LW	Load Word	Yes
SB	Store Byte	Yes
SH	Store Halfword	Yes
SW	Store Word	Yes

Table 16.13 MIPS16e Save and Restore Instructions

Mnemonic	Instruction	Extensible Instruction
RESTORE	Restore Registers and Deallocate Stack Frame	Yes
SAVE	Save Registers and Setup Stack Frame	Yes

Table 16.14 MIPS16e ALU Immediate Instructions

Mnemonic	Instruction	Extensible Instruction
ADDIU	Add Immediate Unsigned	Yes
CMPI	Compare Immediate	Yes
LI	Load Immediate	Yes
SLTI	Set on Less Than Immediate	Yes
SLTIU	Set on Less Than Immediate Unsigned	Yes

Table 16.15 MIPS16e Arithmetic Two or Three Operand Register Instructions

Mnemonic	Instruction	Extensible Instruction
ADDU	Add Unsigned	No
AND	AND	No
CMP	Compare	No

Table 16.15 MIPS16e Arithmetic Two or Three Operand Register Instructions (Continued)

Mnemonic	Instruction	Extensible Instruction
MOVE	Move	No
NEG	Negate	No
NOT	Not	No
OR	OR	No
SEB	Sign-Extend Byte	No
SEH	Sign-Extend Halfword	No
SLT	Set on Less Than	No
SLTU	Set on Less Than Unsigned	No
SUBU	Subtract Unsigned	No
XOR	Exclusive OR	No
ZEB	Zero-Extend Byte	No
ZEH	Zero-Extend Halfword	No

Table 16.16 MIPS16e Special Instructions

Mnemonic	Instruction	Extensible Instruction
BREAK	Breakpoint	No
SDBBP	Software Debug Breakpoint	No
EXTEND	Extend	No

Table 16.17 MIPS16e Multiply and Divide Instructions

Mnemonic	Instruction	Extensible Instruction
DIV	Divide	No
DIVU	Divide Unsigned	No
MFHI	Move From HI	No
MFLO	Move From LO	No
MULT	Multiply	No
MULTU	Multiply Unsigned	No

Table 16.18 MIPS16e Jump and Branch Instructions

Mnemonic	Instruction	Extensible Instruction
B	Branch Unconditional	Yes

Table 16.18 MIPS16e Jump and Branch Instructions (Continued)

Mnemonic	Instruction	Extensible Instruction
BEQZ	Branch on Equal to Zero	Yes
BNEZ	Branch on Not Equal to Zero	Yes
BTEQZ	Branch on T Equal to Zero	Yes
BTNEZ	Branch on T Not Equal to Zero	Yes
JAL	Jump and Link	No
JALR	Jump and Link Register	No
JALRC	Jump and Link Register Compact	No
JALX	Jump and Link Exchange	No
JR	Jump Register	No
JRC	Jump Register Compact	No

Table 16.19 MIPS16e Shift Instructions

Mnemonic	Instruction	Extensible Instruction
SRA	Shift Right Arithmetic	Yes
SRAV	Shift Right Arithmetic Variable	No
SLL	Shift Left Logical	Yes
SLLV	Shift Left Logical Variable	No
SRL	Shift Right Logical	Yes
SRLV	Shift Right Logical Variable	No

Appendix A

References

This appendix lists other documents available from MIPS Technologies, Inc. that are referenced elsewhere in this document. These documents may be included in the `$MIPS_HOME/$MIPS_CORE/doc` area of a typical 1004K soft or hard core release, or in some cases may be available on the MIPS web site, http://www mips.com.

1. MIPS32® Architecture For Programmers, Volume I: Introduction to the MIPS32® Architecture
   MIPS document: MD0082

2. MIPS32® Architecture For Programmers, Volume II: The MIPS32® Instruction Set
   MIPS document: MD0086

3. MIPS32® Architecture For Programmers, Volume III: The MIPS32® Privileged Resource Architecture
   MIPS document: MD0090

4. MIPS32® Architecture For Programmers, Volume IV-a: The MIPS16e™ Application-Specific Extension to the MIPS32® Architecture
   MIPS document: MD00076

5. MIPS32® Architecture For Programmers, Volume IV-e: The MIPS® DSP Application-Specific Extension to the MIPS32® Architecture
   MIPS document: MD00374

6. MIPS32® Architecture for Programmers, Volume IV-f: The MIPS® MT Application-Specific Extension to the MIPS32® Architecture
   MIPS document: MD00378

7. MIPS® 1004K™ Coherent Processing System Datasheet
   MIPS document: MD00584

8. MIPS® 1004K™ Coherent Processing System User's Manual
   MIPS document: MD00597

9. MIPS32® 1004K™ CPU Family Integrator's Guide
   MIPS document: MD00620

10. MIPS32® 1004K™ CPU Family Implementor's Guide
    MIPS document: MD00621

11. Programming the MIPS32® 1004K™ Coherent Processing System Family
    MIPS document: MD00638

12. CoreExtend® Instruction Integrator's Guide for MIPS32® Cores
    MIPS document: MD00348

13. PDtrace™ Interface and Trace Control Block Specification
MIPS document: MD00439

14. Open Core Protocol Specification
Available from the OCP International Partnership at http://www.ocpip.org

15. EJTAG Specification
MIPS document: MD00047

16. Cache Configuration Application Note
MIPS document: MD00213

Appendix B

Revision History

Change bars (vertical lines) in the margins of this document indicate significant changes in the document since its last release. Change bars are removed for changes that are more than one revision old.

This document may refer to Architecture specifications (for example, instruction set descriptions and EJTAG register definitions), and change bars in these sections indicate changes since the previous version of the relevant Architecture document.

Revision	Date	Description
01.00	June 23, 2008	• Initial external release
01.01	December 19, 2008	• Added Mode column to performance counter event table • Added system specific performance counter events • Updated description of Single Threaded Mode performance counter • Added missing *DebugControlRegisterPCSe* bit as well as other DCR bits for unsupported debug features • Update $TCStatus_{TCU3-0}$ description • Reviewed usage of term CPU for consistency, particularly around MT • Added details on PAUSE instruction
1.10	July 15, 2009	• Fixed link to PageMask register in MMU chapter • Update to EJTAG 5.0/PDtrace 6.1 • Add Fast Debug Channel • Add relocatable debug exception vector • Add Common Device Memory Map and CDMMBASE cop0 register • Note that thread selection stage can be bypassed in single TC configurations • Mention Cluster Power Controller capabilities
1.20	January 21, 2011	• Clarified PAUSE operation • Clarified description of ITC cell numbering • Noted that perfcounter interrupt is also deasserted if IE bit is cleared • Added MFHC1/MTHC1 to list of FP move instructions • Added WRR2 policy Manager example module description. • Add option for 2I/1D EJTAG breakpoints • Added option for reducing instruction buffer to 6 entries
1.21	December 15, 2011	• Clarify merging operation for Uncached Accelerated Stores

Copyright © Wave Computing, Inc. All rights reserved.
www.wavecomp.ai